

STEP-UP

TO

USMLE STEP 2 CK

THIRD EDITION

Brian Jenkins • Jonathan P. Van Kleunen
Michael McInnis • Chris Lewis

- ✓ 450+ Quick Hits and mnemonics highlight key facts for the USMLE Step 2 CK
- ✓ Next Step notes ease the transition from basic science to clinical medicine
- ✓ 250+ tables and illustrations facilitate fast review



STEP-UP
TO
USMLE Step 2 CK

Third Edition

STEP-UP

TO

USMLE Step 2 CK

Third Edition

Brian Jenkins, MD

Family Medicine
President and Chief Educator
Doctors in Training.com, LLC
Fort Worth, Texas

Jonathan P. Van Kleunen, MD

Orthopedic Surgeon
Blair Orthopedics
Altoona, Pennsylvania

Michael McInnis, MD

Internal Medicine
Chief Educator
Doctors in Training.com, LLC
Fort Worth, Texas

Chris Lewis, MD

Family Medicine
Chief Educator
Doctors in Training.com, LLC
Fort Worth, Texas



Wolters Kluwer | Lippincott Williams & Wilkins

Health

Philadelphia • Baltimore • New York • London
Buenos Aires • Hong Kong • Sydney • Tokyo



Publisher: Michael Tully
Acquisitions Editor: Susan Rhyner
Product Manager: Stacey Sebring
Marketing Manager: Joy Fisher-Williams
Designer: Holly Reid McLaughlin
Production Manager: Cynthia Rudy
Compositor: Absolute Service, Inc.

3rd Edition

Copyright © 2014, 2008, 2006 Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, a Wolters Kluwer business.

351 West Camden Street
Baltimore, MD 21201

Two Commerce Square
2001 Market Street
Philadelphia, PA 19103

Printed in China

All rights reserved. This book is protected by copyright. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, including as photocopies or scanned-in or other electronic copies, or utilized by any information storage and retrieval system without written permission from the copyright owner, except for brief quotations embodied in critical articles and reviews. Materials appearing in this book prepared by individuals as part of their official duties as U.S. government employees are not covered by the above-mentioned copyright. To request permission, please contact Lippincott Williams & Wilkins at 2001 Market Street, Philadelphia, PA 19103, via email at permissions@lww.com, or via website at lww.com (products and services).

9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Van Kleunen, Jonathan P.

Step-up to USMLE step 2 CK / Jonathan P. Van Kleunen, Michael McInnis, Brian Jenkins. -- 3rd ed.
p. ; cm. -- (Step-up series)

Rev. ed. of: Step-up to USMLE step 2 / Jonathan P. Van Kleunen. 2nd ed. c2008.

Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN 978-1-4511-8959-9

I. McInnis, Michael. II. Jenkins, Brian, 1977- III. Van Kleunen, Jonathan P. Step-up to USMLE step 2. IV. Title. V. Series: Step up series.

[DNLM: 1. Clinical Medicine--United States--Outlines. W 18.2]

616.0076--dc23

2013000718

DISCLAIMER

Care has been taken to confirm the accuracy of the information present and to describe generally accepted practices. However, the authors, editors, and publisher are not responsible for errors or omissions or for any consequences from application of the information in this book and make no warranty, expressed or implied, with respect to the currency, completeness, or accuracy of the contents of the publication. Application of this information in a particular situation remains the professional responsibility of the practitioner; the clinical treatments described and recommended may not be considered absolute and universal recommendations.

The authors, editors, and publisher have exerted every effort to ensure that drug selection and dosage set forth in this text are in accordance with the current recommendations and practice at the time of publication. However, in view of ongoing research, changes in government regulations, and the constant flow of information relating to drug therapy and drug reactions, the reader is urged to check the package insert for each drug for any change in indications and dosage and for added warnings and precautions. This is particularly important when the recommended agent is a new or infrequently employed drug.

Some drugs and medical devices presented in this publication have U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) clearance for limited use in restricted research settings. It is the responsibility of the healthcare providers to ascertain the FDA status of each drug or device planned for use in their clinical practice.

To purchase additional copies of this book, call our customer service department at (800) 638-3030 or fax orders to (301) 223-2320. International customers should call (301) 223-2300.

Visit Lippincott Williams & Wilkins on the Internet: <http://www.lww.com>. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins customer service representatives are available from 8:30 am to 6:00 pm, EST.

Contents

Chapter 1. Cardiovascular Disorders

I	Normal Cardiac Anatomy, Physiology, and Function	1
II	Ischemic Heart Disease	4
III	Arrhythmias	9
IV	Heart Failure	14
V	Valvular Diseases	16
VI	Cardiomyopathies	18
VII	Pericardial Diseases	20
VIII	Myocardial Infections	20
IX	Hypertension (HTN)	22
X	Shock	25
XI	Vascular Diseases	26
XII	Pediatric Cardiology	29

Chapter 2. Pulmonary Disorders

I	Measures of Pulmonary Function	33
II	Respiratory Infections	35
III	Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome (ARDS)	40
IV	Obstructive Airway Diseases	41
V	Respiratory Neoplasms	43
VI	Interstitial Lung Diseases and Other Lung Diseases	46
VII	Vascular and Thromboembolic Pulmonary Conditions	48
VIII	Pleural Diseases	49
IX	Sleep Apnea	51
X	Pulmonary Surgical Concerns	52
XI	Pediatric Pulmonary Concerns	53

Chapter 3. Gastrointestinal Disorders

I	Gastrointestinal (GI) Infections	57
II	Oral and Esophageal Conditions	62
III	Gastric Conditions	66
IV	Intestinal Conditions	68
V	Pancreatic Disorders	79
VI	Biliary Disorders	81
VII	Hepatic Disorders	85
VIII	Pediatric GI Disorders	87

Chapter 4. Genitourinary Disorders

I	Normal Renal Function	91
II	Disorders of the Kidney	93
III	Glomerular Diseases	96
IV	Renal Failure	98
V	Acid-Base Disorders	100
VI	Electrolyte Disorders	102
VII	Bladder and Ureteral Disorders	105
VIII	Male Reproduction	107
IX	Pediatric Genitourinary Concerns	109

Chapter 5. Endocrine Disorders

I	Disorders of Glucose Metabolism	110
II	Thyroid Disorders	115
III	Parathyroid Disorders	118
IV	Pituitary and Hypothalamic Disorders	119
V	Adrenal Disorders	122
VI	Multiple Endocrine Neoplasia (MEN)	125
VII	Pediatric Endocrine Concerns	126

Chapter 6. Hematology and Oncology

I	Anemias	127
II	Genetic Disorders of Hemoglobin	134
III	Leukocyte Disorders and Hypersensitivity	137
IV	Clotting Disorders	138
V	Hematologic Infections	142
VI	Hematologic Neoplastic Conditions	147
VII	Oncologic Therapy	151
VIII	Other Pediatric Hematologic and Oncologic Concerns (Not Addressed in Other Sections)	152

Chapter 7. Selected Topics in Emergency Medicine, Critical Care, and Surgery

	EMERGENCY MEDICINE	154
I	Accidents and Injury	154
II	Toxicology	157
III	Cardiovascular Emergencies	159
IV	Traumatology	161
V	Abuse and Sexual Assault	166
	BASIC CRITICAL CARE	167
I	Issues in the Intensive Care Unit (ICU)	167
II	Hemodynamic Stability	167
	BASIC SURGICAL CONCERNS	169
I	Preoperative and Postoperative Issues	169
II	Surgical Emergencies	172
III	Transplantation	173

Chapter 8. Neurologic Disorders

I	Normal Neurologic and Neurovascular Function	176
II	Neurologic Infection	179
III	Headache	181
IV	Cerebrovascular and Hemorrhagic Diseases	181
V	Seizure Disorders	186
VI	Degenerative Neurologic Disorders	189
VII	Peripheral Neurologic and Neuromuscular Disorders	191
VIII	Neoplasms	192
IX	Sleep and Loss of Consciousness	193
X	Pediatric Neurologic Issues	195
XI	Ophthalmology	197
XII	Audiovestibular Disorders	201

Chapter 9. Musculoskeletal Disorders

I	Common Adult Orthopedic Conditions	203
II	Spine	206
III	Metabolic Bone Diseases	209
IV	Infection	211
V	Osteoarthritis (OA)	213
VI	Rheumatologic Diseases	214
VII	Neoplasms	218
VIII	Pediatric Orthopedics	219

Chapter 10. Dermatology

I	Infections	224
II	Inflammatory Skin Conditions	229
III	Bullous Diseases	233
IV	Neoplasms	234
V	Plastic Surgery	237

Chapter 11. Gynecologic and Breast Disorders

I	Menstrual Physiology	239
II	Contraception	243
III	Menstrual Disorders and Issues	245
IV	Common Gynecologic Infections	249
V	Sexually Transmitted Diseases (STDs)	250
VI	Gynecologic Neoplasms	253
VII	Disorders of the Breast	256

Chapter 12. Obstetrics

I	Normal Pregnancy Physiology	260
II	Prenatal Care	261
III	Medical Complications of Pregnancy	264

IV	Obstetric Complications of Pregnancy	270
V	Labor and Delivery	275
VI	Gestational Trophoblastic Disease	280

Chapter 13. Pediatrics

I	Development and Health Supervision	281
II	Immune Disorders	286
III	Genetic Disorders (Chromosomal Pathology)	288

Chapter 14. Psychiatric Disorders

I	Psychiatric Evaluation	292
II	Mood Disorders	294
III	Anxiety Disorders	296
IV	Psychotic Disorders	298
V	Personality Disorders	299
VI	Substance Abuse	301
VII	Eating Disorders	302
VIII	Somatoform and Factitious Disorders	303
IX	Delirium and Dementia	304
X	Pediatric Psychiatric Disorders	306

Chapter 15. Epidemiology and Ethics

I	Research Studies	308
II	Biostatistics	310
III	Ethics	312

<i>Index</i>	315
------------------------	-----

Cardiovascular Disorders

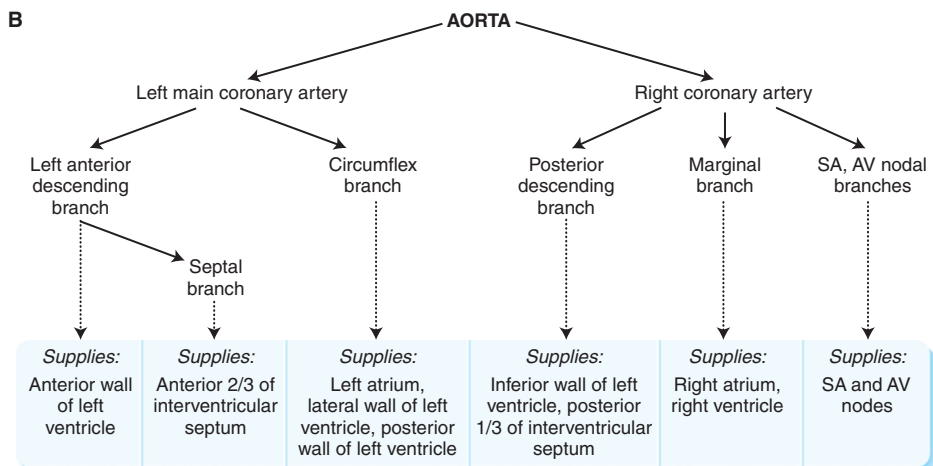
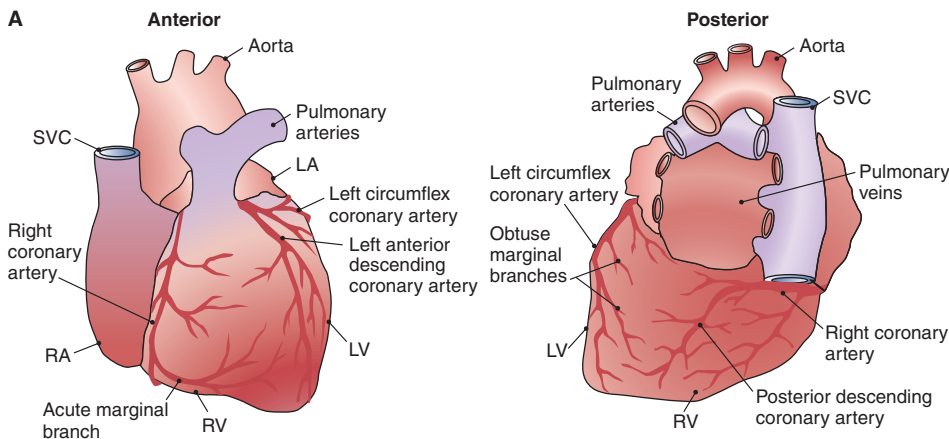


I. NORMAL CARDIAC ANATOMY, PHYSIOLOGY, AND FUNCTION

A. Cardiac and coronary artery anatomy (see Figure 1-1)

B. Cardiac cycle (see Figure 1-2)

FIGURE 1-1 Coronary artery anatomy.



(A) Anterior and posterior views of the heart. (B) Coronary artery hierarchy and regions of the heart supplied by branches. AV, atrioventricular; LA, left atrium; LV, left ventricle; RA, right atrium; RV, right ventricle; SA, sinoatrial; SVC, superior vena cava. (Modified from Lilly, L. S. [1998]. *Pathophysiology of Heart Disease*. 2nd ed. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

QUICK HIT

The **left anterior descending artery** is the most common site of coronary artery occlusion.

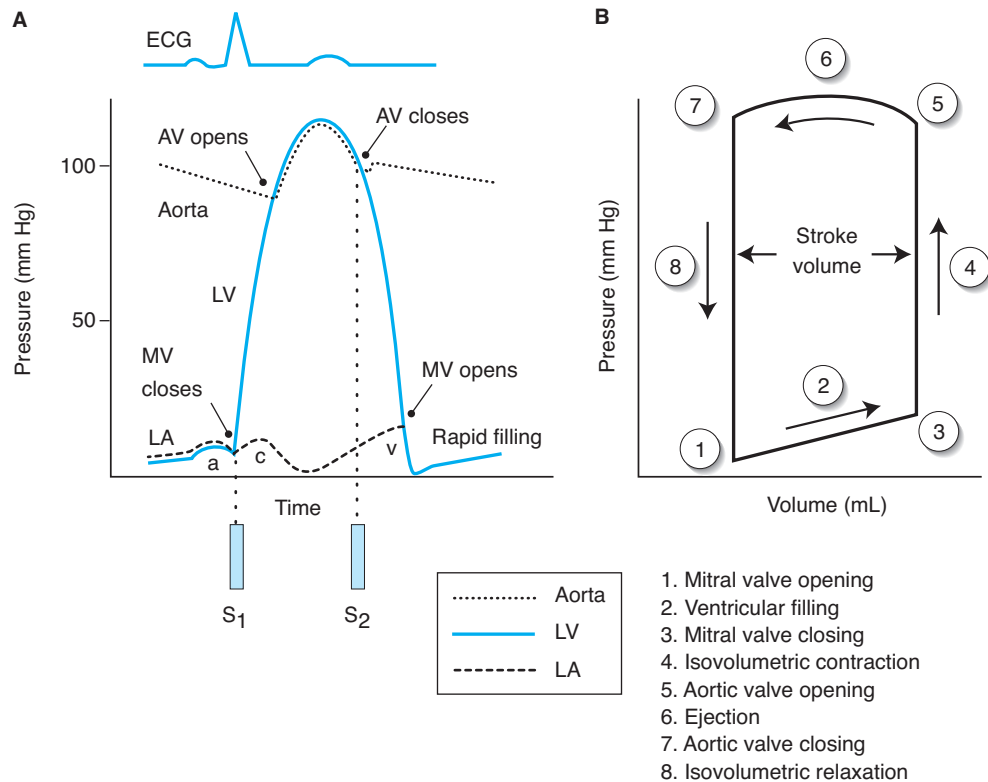
QUICK HIT

In 70% of patients, the posterior descending artery (PDA) derives from the right coronary artery. In 10%, the PDA derives from the circumflex, and in 20%, the PDA derives from an anastomosis of the right coronary and the circumflex.

QUICK HIT

Coronary arteries fill during **diastole**, whereas systemic arteries fill during **systole**; conditions or drugs that reduce diastolic filling allow less coronary perfusion.

FIGURE 1-2 (A) Pressure relationships between left-sided heart chambers and timing with normal heart sounds and the electrocardiogram for one full cardiac cycle. (B) Normal left ventricular pressure-volume loop for one full cardiac cycle.



AV, aortic valve; ECG, electrocardiogram; LA, left atrium; LV, left ventricle; MV, mitral valve.

(Modified from Lilly, L. S. [1998]. *Pathophysiology of Heart Disease*. 2nd ed. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

C. Cardiac output (CO)

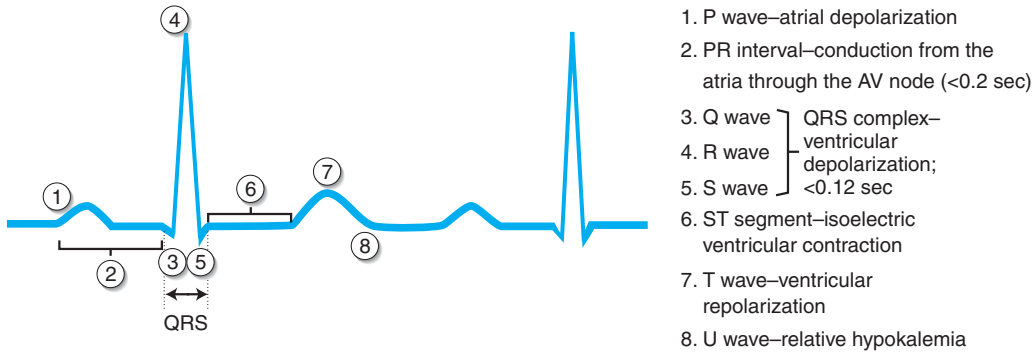
1. Heart rate (HR)
 - a. Number of cardiac contractions per unit time; commonly expressed as beats per minute (bpm)
 - b. If HR is too high (normal = 60 to 100 bpm), then diastolic filling is decreased.
2. Stroke volume (SV)
 - a. SV is the change in blood volume from immediately before initiation of contraction to completion of contraction (i.e., SV = end diastolic volume to end systolic volume).
 - b. It is determined by contractility (i.e., SV = [end diastolic volume] – [end systolic volume]), preload (amount of myocardial stretch at end of diastole), and afterload (resistance ventricles must overcome to empty their contents).
 - c. SV increases with catecholamine release, an increase in intracellular Ca, a decrease in extracellular Na, digoxin use, anxiety, and exercise.
 - d. SV decreases with β-blockers, heart failure, acidosis, and hypoxia.
3. Fick principle

$$CO = SV \times HR = \frac{(\text{rate of } O_2 \text{ use})}{[(\text{arterial } O_2 \text{ content}) - (\text{venous } O_2 \text{ content})]}$$

- a. Rate of O₂ use can be determined by comparing O₂ content in expired air to that in inhaled air; arterial and venous O₂ content can be measured directly from the corresponding vasculature.
- b. CO increases during exercise, initially by increasing SV and later by increasing HR.
4. Mean arterial pressure = CO × total peripheral resistance (TPR)

$$= \text{diastolic arterial pressure} + \frac{1}{3} \text{ pulse pressure}$$
5. Pulse pressure = systolic arterial pressure – diastolic arterial pressure

FIGURE 1-3 General structure of the electrocardiogram tracing and significance of specific regions.

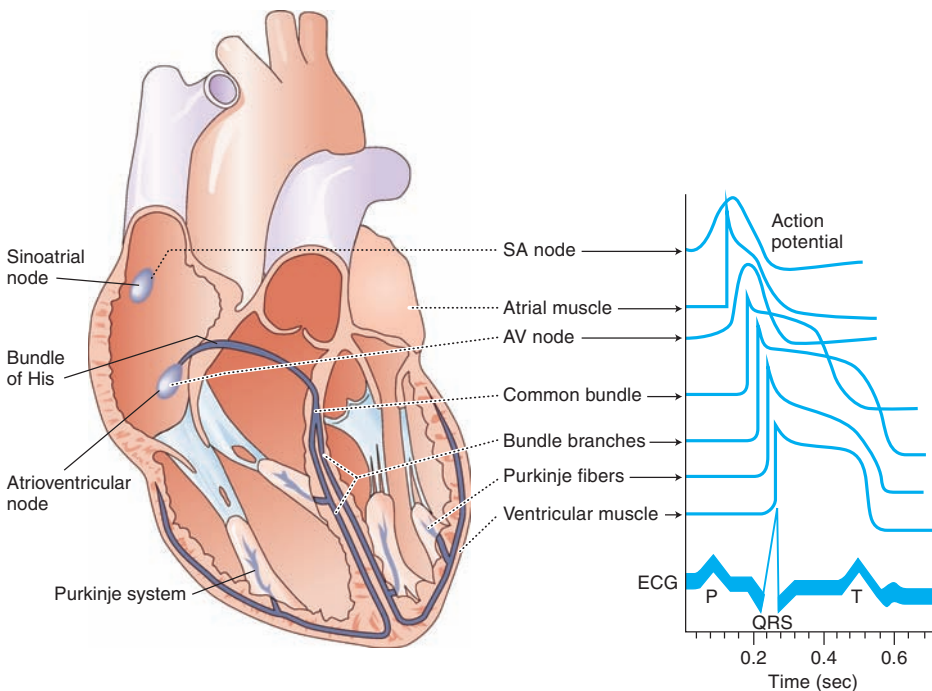


AV, atrioventricular.
 (Modified from Lilly, L. S. [1998]. *Pathophysiology of Heart Disease*. 2nd ed. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

D. Electrocardiogram (ECG) (see Figure 1-3)

1. Measures flow of electrical impulses through the heart to provide information regarding cardiac function
2. Reviewing an ECG (a consistent order of analysis is useful for picking up abnormalities)
 - a. Check calibration on tracing
 - b. Rhythm (regular, irregular, pathognomonic signs?)
 - c. Rate (normal, tachycardia, bradycardia?)
 - d. Intervals (PR, QRS, ST)
 - e. QRS axis (normal, deviated?)
 - f. P wave (normal, abnormal?)
 - g. QRS complex (normal, hypertrophy, widened, infarction?)
 - h. ST segment and T wave (normal, depressed, elevated, inverted?)
3. Morphology of action potentials varies with location in the heart (see Figure 1-4).

FIGURE 1-4 Morphology of action potentials at different locations along the conduction pathways of the heart and their relation to the electrocardiogram.



AV, atrioventricular; ECG, electrocardiogram; SA, sinoatrial.



II. ISCHEMIC HEART DISEASE

A. Brief introduction to ischemic heart disease

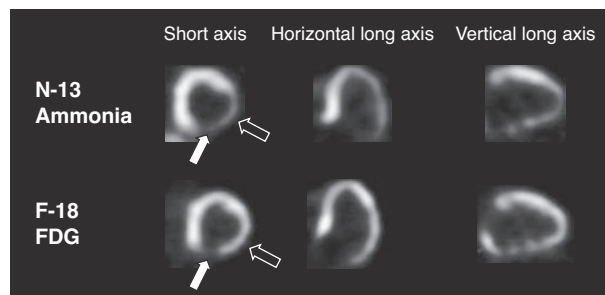
1. Inadequate supply of O₂ for a given myocardial demand leads to myocardial hypoxia and an accumulation of waste products.
2. Most cases of ischemic heart disease arise from atherosclerosis of the coronary arteries (coronary artery disease [CAD]).

B. Atherosclerosis

1. Gradual narrowing of arteries caused by endothelial dysfunction, progressive formation of plaques (which consist of lipids and smooth muscle), and the associated inflammatory response
2. Plaques can calcify, rupture, and thrombose, which leads to further narrowing of arteries and progressive occlusion of blood flow.
3. **History and physical (H/P)** = asymptomatic for most of disease progression; later sequelae include angina, claudication, progressive hypertension (HTN), retinal changes, extra heart sounds, myocardial infarction (MI), and stroke
4. **Labs** = stress testing, echocardiography, nuclear studies, or angiography can be used to detect coronary ischemia
 - a. Exercise stress test—patient exercises on an aerobic fitness machine at increasingly strenuous workloads; heart rate and ECG are constantly monitored; test is continued until patient achieves 85% of predicted maximal heart rate (predicted maximal heart rate = 220 – age) or patient develops angina or signs of ischemia as seen on ECG; ischemic heart disease is diagnosed with signs of **reproducible angina** or obvious signs of **ischemia at low workloads**
 - b. Nuclear exercise test—thallium-201 or technetium-99m-sestamibi is injected during exercise testing, and scintigraphy (e.g., planar or single positron emission computed tomography [SPECT]) is performed to assess myocardial perfusion; used in cases of suspected ischemic heart disease in which results of regular exercise stress testing are equivocal
 - c. Exercise stress test with echocardiography—exercise stress testing performed in conjunction with echocardiography to increase sensitivity of detecting myocardial ischemia
 - d. Pharmacologic stress testing—administration of cardiac inotrope (e.g., dobutamine) in place of exercise to increase myocardial demand; frequently performed in conjunction with SPECT or performed in patients for whom comorbidities interfere with the ability to perform exercise
 - e. Positron emission tomography (PET) myocardial imaging—injection of positron-emitting isotopes with subsequent three-dimensional detection imaging to evaluate heart for perfusion defects and tissue viability (see Figure 1-5)
 - f. Coronary angiography—gold standard for identifying CAD but more invasive than other techniques

FIGURE 1-5

Positron emission tomography (PET) scan using N-13 ammonia to examine perfusion and F-18 fluorodeoxyglucose to examine metabolism in a patient with perfusion-metabolism mismatch (*open arrows*) and tissue with impaired function caused by scarring (*closed arrows*).



(From Topol, E. J. [Ed.]. [2002]. *Textbook of Cardiovascular Medicine* [2nd ed., p. 1267]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.)

5. **Treatment** = management is primarily intended to minimize risk factors (e.g., tobacco use, HTN, hyperglycemia, hypercholesterolemia); diet low in fats and cholesterol and high in antioxidants (e.g., vitamins E and C, β -carotene) is helpful in preventing disease

C. Hypercholesterolemia

1. Abnormal serum cholesterol levels (**high** low-density lipoprotein [LDL] and/or **low** high-density lipoprotein [HDL]) that are associated with increased risk of ischemic heart disease
2. Can result from a congenital disorder (less common) or an acquired condition (most common)
3. **Normal cholesterol physiology**
 - a. Cholesterols and triglycerides are carried by lipoproteins.
 - b. Increased LDL leads to increased CAD risk; increased HDL is protective.
 - c. Increased LDL and decreased HDL result from a diet high in fatty foods, tobacco use, obesity, alcohol use, diabetes mellitus (DM), and certain medications (e.g., oral contraceptive pills [OCP], diuretics).
4. **H/P** = usually asymptomatic; extremely high triglycerides and LDL lead to xanthomas (i.e., lipid deposits in tendons), xanthelasmas (i.e., lipid deposits in eyelids), and cholesterol emboli in retina (visible on fundoscopic examination); symptoms are more severe and appear earlier in life in primary disorders compared with acquired conditions
5. **Labs** = increased total cholesterol and LDL; possible decreased HDL; total cholesterol may be >300 to 600 mg/dL in primary disorders; screening for hyperlipidemia is performed in men >35 years of age and women >45 years of age (younger if patient has other risk factors for CAD)
6. **Treatment** = focuses on **prevention** of cardiovascular disease and includes tobacco cessation, exercise, and dietary restrictions (e.g., low fat, low cholesterol); cholesterol-lowering medications are used in patients with increased cardiac risk (see Figure 1-6) or in patients unlikely to achieve ideal cholesterol levels with nonpharmacologic treatment alone (see Table 1-1); goal LDL should be <160 mg/dL in patients with <2 CAD risk factors, <130 mg/dL in most patients with 2 or more risk factors, and <100 mg/dL in patients with known CAD, PVD, AAA, symptomatic carotid disease, or multiple risk factors that confer a 10-year risk of CAD of >20%

QUICK HIT

Most cases of hypercholesterolemia are **acquired**.

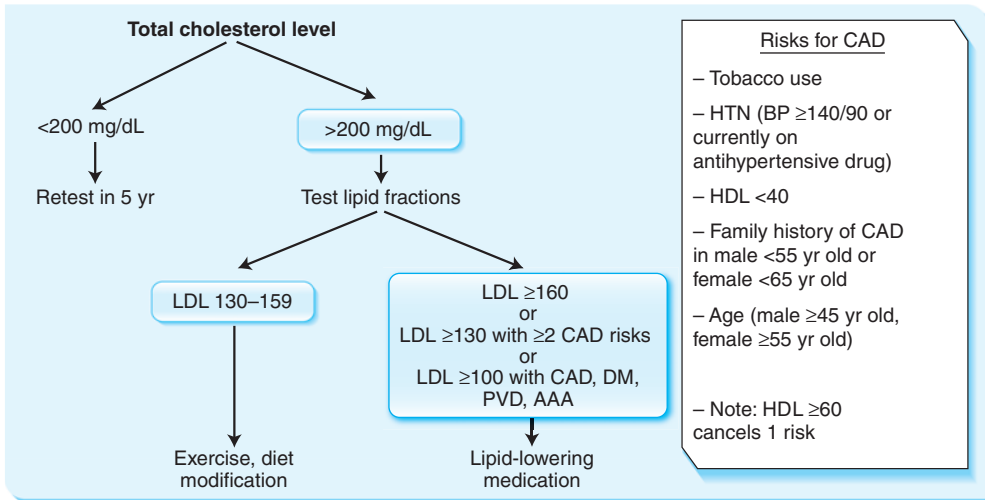
QUICK HIT

High serum levels of **homocysteine** have been associated with a threefold risk of significant atherosclerosis.

QUICK HIT

Blood for serum cholesterol levels should be collected from a **fasting** patient (12–14 hr) to minimize postprandial influence.

FIGURE 1-6 Decision tree for screening for hypercholesterolemia.



CAD, coronary artery disease; DM, diabetes mellitus; HDL, high-density lipoprotein; HTN, hypertension; LDL, low-density lipoprotein; PVD, peripheral vascular disease.

TABLE 1-1 Lipid-Lowering Agents

Drug	Site of Action	Effect on LDL	Effect on HDL	Effect on Triglycerides	Side Effects
HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors (lovastatin, pravastatin, simvastatin)	Liver	↓	↑	↓	Myositis, increased LFT (check before starting medication)
Cholesterol absorption inhibitors (ezetimibe)	Intestines	↓↓	No change	No change	Myalgias, possible increased LFT
Fibric acids (gemfibrozil, fenofibrate)	Blood (all stimulate lipoprotein lipase)	↓↓	↑	↓↓↓	Myositis, increased LFT (check before starting medication)
Bile acid sequestrants (cholestyramine, colestipol, colesevelam)	GI tract	↓↓	No change	—/↑	Bad taste, GI upset
Niacin	Liver	↓↓	↑↑	↓	Facial flushing, nausea, paresthesias, pruritus, increased LFT, insulin resistance, exacerbates gout

GI, gastrointestinal; HDL, high-density lipoprotein; LDL, low-density lipoprotein; LFT, liver function tests; ↑, increased; ↑↑, more increased; ↑↑↑, most increased; —/↑, no change or increased.

QUICK HIT

Myocardial ischemia can be asymptomatic in patients with DM because of **sensory neuropathy**.

NEXT STEP

Use a formal stress test to rule out a cardiac cause for chest pain before considering alternative diagnoses.

QUICK HIT

Nitroglycerin may also reduce the effects of GERD and esophageal spasm.

D. Angina pectoris

- Etiology
 - Temporary myocardial ischemia during exertion that causes chest pain
 - Most commonly caused by CAD; also occurs secondary to arterial vasospasm (Prinzmetal angina) and valvular disease
 - Gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD) and esophageal spasm can mimic symptoms.
- H/P = **substernal chest pain** that may radiate to left shoulder, arm, jaw, or back
- Labs = stress testing or nuclear studies used for diagnosis
 - Important in assessment of chest pain
 - Seeks to increase cardiac workload to assess myocardial ischemia
 - Accomplished either through exercise or pharmacologic testing
- Treatment = **sublingual nitroglycerin** and cessation of intense activity until completion of workup; full workup (including stress testing or nuclear studies) for cause is needed to define long-term treatment

E. Unstable angina

- Worsening angina that occurs at rest
- Frequently caused by **plaque rupture**, hemorrhage, or thrombosis in coronary arteries
- One-third of patients have an MI within 3 years.
- H/P = angina with worse pain and increased frequency than in prior episodes; **symptoms occur at rest**; less responsive to prior treatment regimens
- ECG = **ST depression**, T-wave flattening or inversion
- Any patient suspected of having an MI must have a workup in a hospital setting with an ECG and **serial cardiac enzymes**.
- Treatment = seeks to relieve cause of ischemia and decrease myocardial O₂ demand
 - Pharmacotherapy = IV morphine, supplemental O₂, nitroglycerin, aspirin, β-blockers (to reduce cardiac workload), a statin (preferably before percutaneous coronary intervention [PCI]); if no PCI planned, use clopidogrel or ticagrelor for antiplatelet therapy; if PCI, use glycoprotein (GP) IIb/IIIa inhibitor (abciximab, tirofiban, or eptifibatide) for antiplatelet therapy; anticoagulate with unfractionated heparin (if PCI planned) or low molecular weight heparin (if no PCI planned) to help prevent further thrombus formation; administer potassium and magnesium to keep K⁺ levels >4 mEq/L and Mg²⁺ levels >2 mEq/L

b. Percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty (PTCA)

- (1) Suggested in cases that are nonresponsive to medications
- (2) Catheter inserted through femoral or brachial artery and maneuvered through heart to stenotic vessel
- (3) Balloon on catheter inflated to dilate stenosis
- (4) Catheters can also be used for atherectomy (i.e., plaque is shaved by burr on catheter) or stent placement (i.e., intravascular support structure).

c. Coronary artery bypass graft (CABG)

- (1) Considered for left main stenosis >50%, three-vessel disease, or history of CAD and DM
- (2) Donor vessel grafted to coronary artery to bypass obstruction
- (3) Saphenous vein and internal mammary artery are most commonly used.

F. Myocardial infarction (MI)

1. Tissue death resulting from ischemia caused by occlusion of coronary vessels or vasospasm; often secondary to thrombus formation following plaque rupture
2. Risk factors = increased age, HTN, hypercholesterolemia, family history of CAD, DM, and tobacco use; males > females; postmenopausal females > premenopausal females
3. H/P = chest pain (“elephant on chest”) in distribution similar to episodes of angina; possible shortness of breath, diaphoresis, nausea, and vomiting; examination findings can include tachycardia, decreased blood pressure, pulmonary rales, new S₄, and new systolic murmur
4. ECG = ST elevation and T-wave changes; possible new arrhythmia, left bundle branch block (LBBB), or Q-wave changes (see Figure 1-7; Table 1-2)
5. Labs = serial cardiac enzymes
 - a. Changes in enzymes in the initial 24 hr after MI are helpful for making a diagnosis of acute infarction, so enzymes are measured every 8 hr in the first 24 hr after presentation (three sets total).
 - b. Creatine kinase myocardial fraction (CK-MB) increases 2 to 12 hr post-MI, peaks in 12 to 40 hr, and decreases in 24 to 72 hr.
 - c. Lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) increases in 6 to 24 hr and peaks in 3 to 6 days (rarely used for diagnosis).
 - d. Troponin-I increases in 2 to 3 hr, peaks in 6 hr, and gradually decreases over 7 days.

NEXT STEP

Reversible myocardial ischemia is an indication for cardiac catheterization to assess the need for percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty (PTCA) or coronary artery bypass graft (CABG).



MNEMONIC

To remember the differential diagnosis for chest pain, use the mnemonic **CHEST PAIN**: Cocaine/Costochondritis, Hyperventilation/Herpes zoster, Esophagitis/Esophageal spasm, Stenosis of aorta, Trauma, Pulmonary embolism/Pneumonia/Pericarditis/Pancreatitis, Angina/Aortic dissection/Aortic aneurysm, Infarction (myocardial), Neuropsychiatric disease (depression).



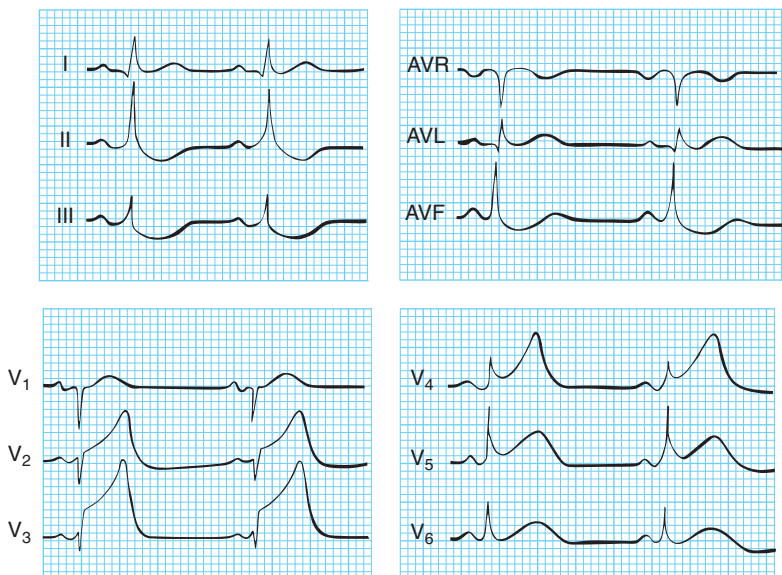
QUICK HIT

Because general CK will be increased with significant muscular trauma or degradation, CK-MB is a better indicator of cardiac muscle damage.

NEXT STEP

Troponin is the best choice to detect MI. CK-MB is less sensitive and less specific.

FIGURE 1-7 Acute myocardial infarction shown on electrocardiogram.



Note the ST elevation in leads V₂ to V₆, suggesting anterior wall involvement. (From Thaler, M. S. [2007]. *The Only EKG Book You'll Ever Need* [5th ed., p. 242]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

TABLE 1-2 Relation of ECG Changes to Location of Infarct

ECG Leads with Changes	Area of Infarct	Coronary Artery Branch
V ₂ , V ₃ , V ₄	Anterior	Left anterior descending
V ₁ , V ₂ , V ₃	Septal	Left anterior descending
II, III, aVF	Inferior	Posterior descending or marginal branch
I, aVL, V ₄ , V ₅ , V ₆	Lateral	Left anterior descending or circumflex
V ₁ , V ₂ (frequent comorbid inferior MI)	Posterior	Posterior descending

ECG, electrocardiogram; MI, myocardial infarction.



MNEMONIC

For acute treatment of MI, remember the mnemonic “**MONA had Hep B**”: **M**orphine, **O**₂, **N**itroglycerin, **A**SA, **H**eparin (or LMWH), **B**eta-blocker.

6. Treatment

- a. Acutely, give IV morphine, supplemental O₂, nitroglycerin, aspirin, heparin (unfractionated heparin for patients undergoing percutaneous coronary intervention [PCI], low molecular weight heparin for patients not managed with PCI), β-blocker, a statin, and antiplatelet therapy (clopidogrel or ticagrelor).

TABLE 1-3 Common Medications Used in Ischemic Disease

Drug	Indications	Cardiovascular Benefits	Contraindications
ASA	MI prevention; during and after MI	Decreases thrombosis risk	High risk of GI bleeding
Clopidogrel	During angina and MI; after PTCA	Decreases thrombosis risk	High risk of GI bleeding
GP IIb/IIIa inhibitor (abciximab, eptifibatid)	During angina or NSTEMI; after PTCA or thrombolysis	Decreases thrombosis risk	High risk of GI bleeding, thrombocytopenia
Nitroglycerin	During angina and MI	Decreases venous pressure, causing decrease in preload and end-diastolic volume; as a result, blood pressure, ejection time, and O ₂ consumption decrease while contractility and heart rate increase	Significant hypotension
β-Blocker	MI prevention; during angina; during and post-MI	Decreases blood pressure, contractility, heart rate, and O ₂ consumption; increases end-diastolic volume and ejection time; decreases mortality following MI	Long-term use with PVD, asthma, COPD, DM (can mask hypoglycemia), and depression (can worsen symptoms)
ACE-I (or ARB)	Post-MI	Decreases afterload, leading to decreased O ₂ consumption and blood pressure; decreases mortality following MI; particularly helpful with comorbid CHF or DM	Pregnancy
HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors (e.g., statins)	Post-MI	Decreases risk of atherosclerosis progression by lowering LDL level	Use of multiple lipid-lowering medications
Heparin	Immediately post-MI, inpatient setting	Decreases risk of thrombus formation	Active hemorrhage
Morphine	During and immediately post-MI	No direct cardiac benefit but decreases pain during MI, leading to decreased heart rate, blood pressure, and O ₂ consumption	Respiratory distress
Thrombolytics (tPA, urokinase)	Immediately post-STEMI, inpatient setting	Breaks up thrombus; decreases mortality if used within 12 hr post-MI	High bleeding risk

ACE-I, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors; ASA, acetylsalicylic acid; CHF, congestive heart failure; COPD, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease; DM, diabetes mellitus; ECG, electrocardiogram; GI, gastrointestinal; MI, myocardial infarction; PTCA, percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty; PVD, peripheral vascular disease.

- b. For ST-elevation MI (STEMI), perform PCI if possible; patients undergoing PCI should also receive a GP IIb/IIIa inhibitor (abciximab, tirofiban, or eptifibatid). If PCI is not available within 12 hours of presentation, consider fibrinolysis with tPA.
 - c. Administer potassium and magnesium to keep levels >4 mEq/L and >2 mEq/L; if patient is hypotensive, stop nitroglycerin and give intravenous (IV) fluids; give amiodarone for patients with ventricular tachycardia (Vtach).
 - d. If emergent cardiac catheterization was not performed, perform cardiac catheterization to measure vessel patency and consider possible PTCA or CABG if significant stenosis is found.
 - e. Long-term treatment = risk reduction medications should include **low-dose acetylsalicylic acid (ASA) or clopidogrel, a β -blocker, an angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor (ACE-I), an aldosterone antagonist, and a statin (HMG-CoA reductase inhibitor)**; exercise, smoking cessation, and dietary modifications are also important for risk reduction (see Table 1-3).
7. **Complications** = infarct extension, arrhythmias, myocardial dysfunction, papillary muscle necrosis, wall rupture, aneurysm, mural thrombus, pericarditis, **Dressler syndrome** (fever, pericarditis, and increased erythrocyte sedimentation rate [ESR] 2 to 4 weeks post-MI)

**QUICK HIT**

The greatest risk of sudden cardiac death is in the first few hours post-MI from **Vtach, ventricular fibrillation (Vfib), or cardiogenic shock.**

**QUICK HIT**

The greatest risk of ventricular wall rupture is 4–8 days post-MI.

**III. ARRHYTHMIAS****A. Heart block**

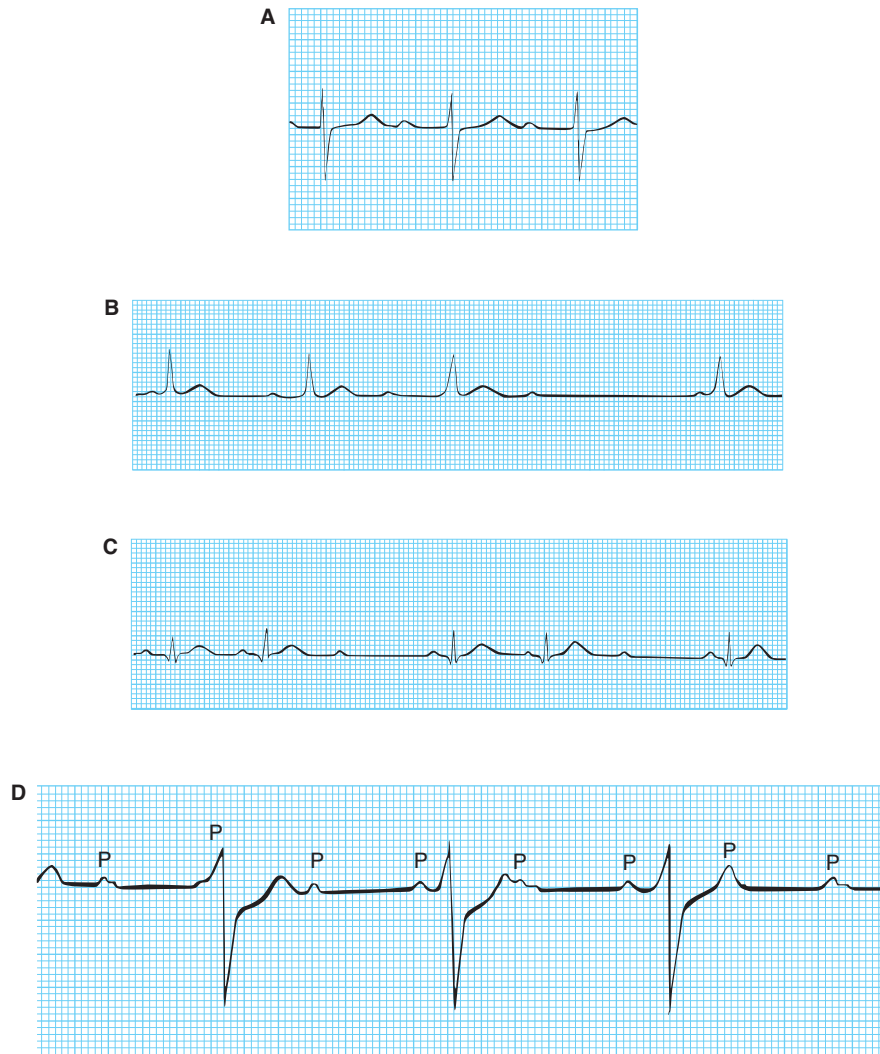
1. Impaired myocardial conduction that occurs when electrical impulses encounter tissue that is electronically inexcitable, resulting in an arrhythmia
2. First degree
 - a. **Caused** by increased vagal tone or functional conduction impairment
 - b. **H/P** = asymptomatic
 - c. **ECG** = PR >0.2 sec (see Figure 1-8A)
 - d. **Treatment** = none necessary
3. Second degree—Mobitz I (Wenckebach)
 - a. **Caused** by **intranodal** or His bundle conduction defect, drug effects (e.g., β -blockers, digoxin, calcium channel blockers), or increased vagal tone
 - b. **H/P** = asymptomatic
 - c. **ECG** = **progressive PR lengthening** until skipped QRS; PR progression, then resets and begins again (see Figure 1-8B)
 - d. **Treatment** = adjust doses of medications associated with heart block; treatment usually not necessary unless symptomatic bradycardia is present (pacemaker indicated)
4. Second degree—Mobitz II
 - a. **Caused** by an **infranodal** conduction problem (bundle of His, Purkinje fibers)
 - b. **H/P** = usually asymptomatic
 - c. **ECG** = **randomly skipped QRS** without changes in PR interval (see Figure 1-8C)
 - d. **Treatment** = ventricular pacemaker
 - e. **Complications** = can progress to third-degree heart block
5. Complete or third-degree heart block
 - a. Cause is **absence** of conduction between atria and ventricles
 - b. **H/P** = syncope, dizziness, hypotension
 - c. **ECG** = no relationship between P waves and QRS (see Figure 1-8D)
 - d. **Treatment** = avoid medications affecting atrioventricular (AV) conduction; ventricular pacemaker

B. Paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia (PSVT)

1. Tachycardia (HR >100 bpm) arising in atria or AV junction
2. Occurs mostly in **young patients with healthy hearts**
3. Cause frequently is reentry anomaly
 - a. **AV nodal reentry**—presence of both slow and fast conduction pathways in AV node; conduction proceeds quickly through fast pathway and progresses up slow pathway in retrograde fashion; conduction loop is created, resulting in reentrant tachycardia (see Figure 1-9)

FIGURE 1-8

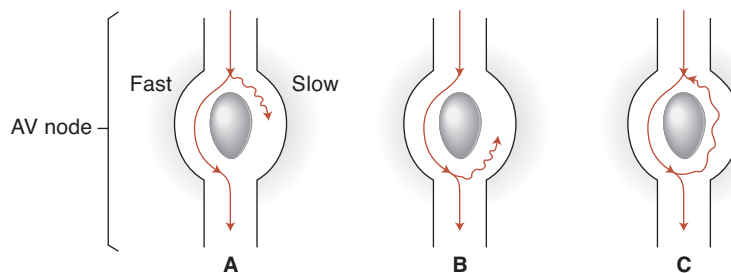
(A) Primary heart block: regular PR prolongation without skipped QRS. (B) Secondary-Mobitz I heart block: progressive lengthening of PR until QRS is skipped. (C) Secondary-Mobitz II heart block: regular PR with random skipped QRS. (D) Tertiary heart block: no relationship between P and QRS.



(From Thaler, M. S. [2007]. *The Only EKG Book You'll Ever Need* [5th ed., pp. 157, 161, 164]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

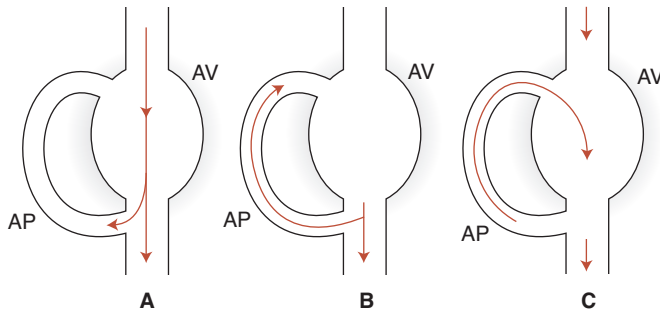
FIGURE 1-9

Mechanism of atrioventricular nodal reentry tachycardia.



AV, atrioventricular. (A) Action potential reaches division in conduction pathway with both fast and slow fibers. (B) Conduction proceeds quickly down fast pathway to reach distal fibers and also proceeds up slow pathway in retrograde fashion. (C) Impulse returns to original division point after fibers have repolarized, allowing a reentry conduction loop and resultant tachycardia.

FIGURE 1-10 Mechanism of atrioventricular reentry tachycardia as seen for Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome.



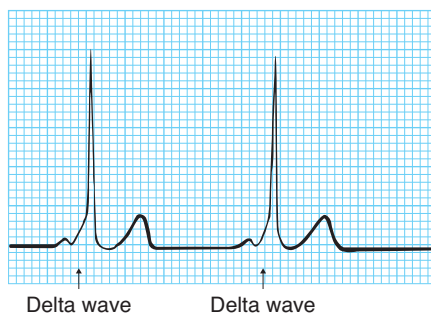
AV, atrioventricular node; AP, accessory pathway. (A) Action potential passes through AV node and encounters accessory pathway during conduction to ventricles. (B) Accessory pathway conducts action potential back to AV node. (C) Return of secondary action potential to AV node completes reentry loop and results in tachycardia.

- b. AV reentry as found in Wolff-Parkinson-White (WPW) syndrome—similar to AV nodal reentry, but instead of fast and slow pathways existing in the AV node, a separate accessory conduction pathway exists between the atria and ventricles that returns a conduction impulse to the AV node to set up a reentry loop; ECG shows a delta wave (i.e., slurred upstroke of the QRS) and shortened PR (see Figure 1-10)
- 4. H/P = sudden tachycardia; possible chest pain, shortness of breath, palpitations, syncope
- 5. ECG = P waves hidden in T waves; 150 to 250 bpm HR; normal QRS (see Figure 1-11)
- 6. Treatment = carotid massage, Valsalva maneuver, or IV adenosine may halt an acute arrhythmia, but cardioversion or calcium channel blocker is required in cases of hemodynamic instability; pharmacologic therapy (e.g., β -blocker or calcium channel blocker for AV nodal reentrant tachycardia and type IA or IC antiarrhythmic for WPW syndrome) or catheter ablation of accessory conduction pathways is frequently used for long-term control in symptomatic patients

C. Multifocal atrial tachycardia (MAT)

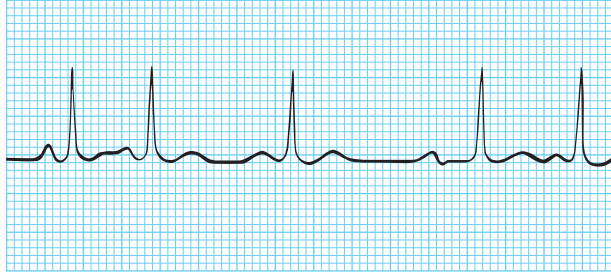
- 1. Caused by several ectopic foci in the atria that discharge automatic impulses (multiple pacemakers), resulting in tachycardia
- 2. H/P = usually asymptomatic
- 3. ECG = variable morphology of P waves; HR >100 bpm (see Figure 1-12)
- 4. Treatment = calcium channel blockers or β -blockers acutely; catheter ablation or surgery to eliminate abnormal pacemakers

FIGURE 1-11 Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome on electrocardiogram.



Note the presence of delta waves, slurred upstrokes preceding each QRS that are characteristic of the condition. (From Thaler, M. S. [2007]. *The Only EKG Book You'll Ever Need* [5th ed., p.197]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

FIGURE 1-12 Multifocal atrial tachycardia (MAT).



Note the variety in shape of P waves and PR intervals and the irregular ventricular rate.

(From Thaler, M. S. [2007]. *The Only EKG Book You'll Ever Need* [5th ed., p. 129]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

D. Bradycardia

1. HR <60 bpm
2. Caused by increased vagal tone or nodal disease
3. **Risk factors** = elderly, history of CAD
4. **H/P** = frequently asymptomatic; possible weakness, syncope
5. Predisposition to development of ectopic beats
6. **Treatment** = stop precipitating medications; pacemaker if severe

E. Atrial fibrillation (Afib)

1. Lack of coordinated atrial contractions with independent sporadic ventricular contractions
2. Caused by rapid, disorderly firing from a second atrial focus
3. **Risk factors** = pulmonary disease, CAD, HTN, anemia, valvular disease, pericarditis, hyperthyroidism, rheumatic heart disease (RHD), sepsis, alcohol use
4. **H/P** = possibly asymptomatic; shortness of breath, chest pain, palpitations, irregularly irregular pulse
5. **ECG** = **no discernible P waves**, irregular QRS rate (see Figure 1-13)
6. **Treatment** = **anticoagulation**; rate control via calcium channel blockers, β -blockers, or digoxin; electric or chemical (i.e., class IA, IC, or III antiarrhythmics) cardioversion if presenting within initial 2 days; cardioversion can be performed in delayed presentation if absence of thrombi is confirmed by transesophageal echocardiogram; if presenting after 2 days or if thrombus is seen on ECG, then anticoagulate and wait 3 to 4 weeks before cardioversion; AV nodal ablation can be considered for recurrent cases
7. **Complications** = increased risk of MI, heart failure; poor atrial contraction causes blood stasis, which leads to mural thrombi formation and a risk of embolization



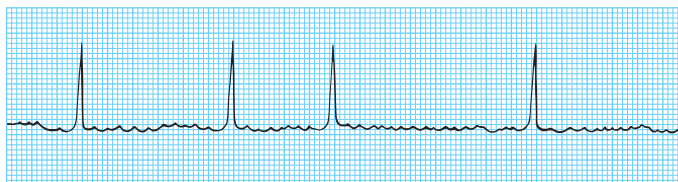
MNEMONIC

To remember the common risk factors for Afib, use the mnemonic **PIRATES**: **P**ulmonary disease, **I**schemia (CAD), **R**heumatic heart disease, **A**nemia, hyper**T**h thyroid, **E**thanol, and **S**epsis.

NEXT STEP

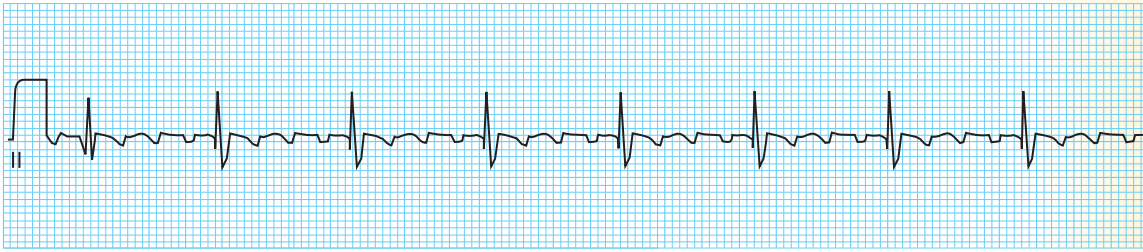
In a patient with Afib >2 days, TEE should be performed **before** cardioversion to rule out mural thrombus formation.

FIGURE 1-13 Atrial fibrillation—irregular QRS rate and no discernable P waves.



(From Thaler, M. S. [2007]. *The Only EKG Book You'll Ever Need* [5th ed., p. 128]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

FIGURE

1-14 Atrial flutter—rapid sawtooth P waves preceding QRS.

(From Thaler, M. S. [2007]. *The Only EKG Book You'll Ever Need* [5th ed., p. 303]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

F. Atrial flutter (Aflutter)

1. Caused by rapid firing of an ectopic focus in the atria
2. **Risk factors** = CAD, congestive heart failure (CHF), chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), valvular disease, pericarditis
3. **H/P** = possibly asymptomatic; palpitations, syncope
4. **ECG** = regular tachycardia >150 bpm with occasionally set ratio of P waves to QRS; sawtooth pattern of P waves (see Figure 1-14)
5. **Treatment** = rate control with calcium channel blockers, β -blockers; electrical or chemical (class IA, IC, or III antiarrhythmics) cardioversion if unable to be controlled with medication; catheter ablation to remove ectopic focus may be possible in some cases
6. **Complications** = may degenerate into Afib

G. Premature ventricular contraction (PVC)

1. Caused by ectopic beats from a ventricular origin
2. Common, frequently benign; can also be caused by hypoxia, abnormal serum electrolyte levels, hyperthyroidism, caffeine use
3. **H/P** = usually asymptomatic; possible palpitations, syncope
4. **ECG** = early and wide QRS without preceding P wave followed by brief pause in conduction
5. **Treatment** = none if patient is healthy; β -blockers in patients with CAD
6. **Complications** = associated with increased risk of sudden death in patients with CAD

H. Ventricular tachycardia (Vtach)

1. Series of 3+ PVCs with HR 160 to 240 bpm
2. **Risk factors** = CAD, history of MI
3. **H/P** = possibly asymptomatic if brief; palpitations, syncope, hypotension
4. **ECG** = series of regular, wide QRS complexes independent of P waves (see Figure 1-15)

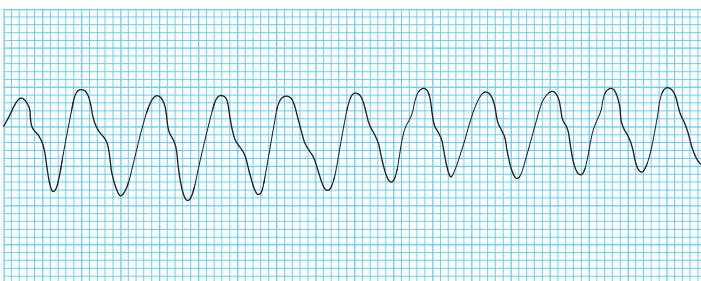
**QUICK HIT**

PVCs become concerning for the development of other ventricular arrhythmias if there are >3 PVCs/min.

**QUICK HIT**

Torsades de pointes is Vtach with a sine wave morphology; it carries a poor prognosis and can rapidly convert to Vfib; Mg may be useful in treatment.

FIGURE

1-15 Ventricular tachycardia—wide, rapid QRS with no discernable P waves.

(From Thaler, M. S. [2007]. *The Only EKG Book You'll Ever Need* [5th ed., p. 134]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)


QUICK HIT

Amiodarone also functions as a Na channel blocker.

TABLE 1-4 Classes of Antiarrhythmic Medications

Class	General Mechanism of Action	Examples	Potential Uses
IA	Na ⁺ channel blockers (prolong action potential)	Quinidine, procainamide	PSVT, Afib, Aflutter, Vtach
IB	Na ⁺ channel blockers (shorten action potential)	Lidocaine, tocainide	Vtach
IC	Na ⁺ channel blockers (no effect on action potential)	Flecainide, propafenone	PSVT, Afib, Aflutter, PSVT
II	β-Blockers	Propranolol, esmolol, metoprolol	PVC, PSVT, Afib, Aflutter, Vtach
III	K ⁺ channel blockers	Amiodarone, sotalol, bretylium	Afib, Aflutter, Vtach (not bretylium)
IV	Ca ²⁺ channel blockers	Verapamil, diltiazem	PSVT, MAT, Afib, Aflutter
Other	K ⁺ channel activation, decrease in intracellular cAMP	Adenosine	PSVT

Afib, atrial fibrillation; Aflutter, atrial flutter; cAMP, cyclic adenosine monophosphate; MAT, multifocal atrial tachycardia; PSVT, paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia; PVC, premature ventricular contraction; Vtach, ventricular tachycardia.

- Treatment** = electrical cardioversion followed by antiarrhythmic medications (class IA, IB, II, or III); for recurrent Vtach, internal defibrillator may be necessary (senses ventricular arrhythmia and automatically releases electric pulse to restore normal rhythm)
- Complications** = sustained Vtach can quickly deteriorate into Vfib if not corrected

I. Ventricular fibrillation (Vfib)

- Lack of ordered ventricular contraction leads to **no CO** and is rapidly fatal.
- Frequently occurs after severe MI, post-Vtach
- Risk factors** = CAD, MI
- H/P** = syncope, hypotension, pulselessness
- ECG** = **totally erratic tracing**; no P waves or QRS
- Treatment** = CPR, immediate electric (± chemical) cardioversion

J. Antiarrhythmic medications (see Table 1-4)

IV. HEART FAILURE
A. Heart physiology

- Principles of contraction
 - Increases in diastolic ventricular volume cause increases in cardiac muscle fiber stretching; this increased stretching leads to increased contraction force—the Frank-Starling relationship (i.e., increased **preload** causes increased ventricular output).
 - Pressure generated by ventricles and end-systolic volume is dependent on load-opposing contraction (i.e., **afterload**, approximated at the mean arterial pressure) but independent of stretch on fibers before contraction.
 - Increasing **contractility** (force of contraction independent of preload and afterload) leads to greater tension at isometric contraction for a given preload.
- Ejection fraction (EF) = $\frac{SV}{\text{end diastolic volume}}$ (normal EF = 55% to 75%)

- Changes in volume—pressure relationship determines compliance of heart
- Insufficient CO for systemic demand results from progressive heart dysfunction (i.e., CHF).

B. Systolic dysfunction

- Inadequate CO for systemic demand
- Caused by decreased contractility, increased preload, increased afterload, HR abnormalities, or high output conditions (e.g., anemia, hyperthyroidism)

C. Diastolic dysfunction

- Decreased ventricular compliance leads to decreased ventricular filling, increased diastolic pressure, and decreased CO.
- Caused by hypertrophy or restrictive cardiomyopathy

D. Congestive heart failure (CHF)

- Left side of heart
 - Left ventricle **unable to produce adequate CO**
 - Blood backs up, leading to pulmonary edema, which eventually causes pulmonary HTN
 - Progressive **left ventricular hypertrophy (LVH)** to compensate for poor output causes eventual failure because the heart is unable to keep pace with systemic need for CO.
- Right side of heart
 - Increased pulmonary vascular resistance leads to **right ventricular hypertrophy (RVH)** and systemic venous stasis.
 - Most commonly caused by left-sided failure**; also can result from unrelated pulmonary HTN, valvular disease, or congenital defects
- Risk factors** = CAD, HTN, valvular disease, cardiomyopathy, COPD, drug toxicity, alcohol use
- H/P** = fatigue, dyspnea on exertion, orthopnea, paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea, cough; displaced point of maximal impulse, S_3 , jugular vein distention (JVD) peripheral edema, hepatomegaly; symptoms and signs are more severe during exacerbations
- Labs** = plasma brain natriuretic peptide (BNP) and N-terminal pro-BNP will be increased with left ventricle dysfunction
- Radiology** = chest X-ray (CXR) shows cardiac enlargement, **Kerley B lines** (i.e., increased marking of lung interlobular septa caused by pulmonary edema), **cephalization of pulmonary vessels** (i.e., increased marking of superior pulmonary vessels caused by congestion and stasis); echocardiogram can assess chamber size and function
- ECG = possible findings consistent with ischemic disease, possible LVH
- Treatment**
 - Systolic dysfunction—start pharmacologic therapy with **loop diuretics** (decrease preload) and **ACE-I** or angiotensin receptor blockers (ARB) (decrease preload and afterload and increase CO); add β -blocker, if needed, once stable dose of ACE-I prescribed; digoxin (increases contractility) can be added to improve symptoms; spironolactone (as adjunct to ACE-I) or vasodilators can be added for persistent symptoms (see Figure 1-16)
 - Diastolic dysfunction—use calcium channel blocker, ARB, or ACE-I to control blood pressure; β -blockers are useful for controlling HR and decreasing cardiac workload; aldosterone antagonists should be given to reduce cardiac hypertrophy caused by aldosterone
 - Recombinant BNP (i.e., nesiritide) may reduce dyspnea during acute exacerbations but does not improve mortality or prevent hospitalizations.
 - Treat underlying conditions that cause dysfunction (e.g., HTN, valvular pathology); salt-restricted diet helps avoid excessive intravascular fluid volume; assistive devices or cardiac transplant may be required in progressive cases.



QUICK HIT

The heart does well in adjusting to changes in blood volume and work demands, but persistently high demands placed on it will cause it to gradually fail.



QUICK HIT

COPD leads to right-side hypertrophy that ends in right-sided failure (i.e., **cor pulmonale**).



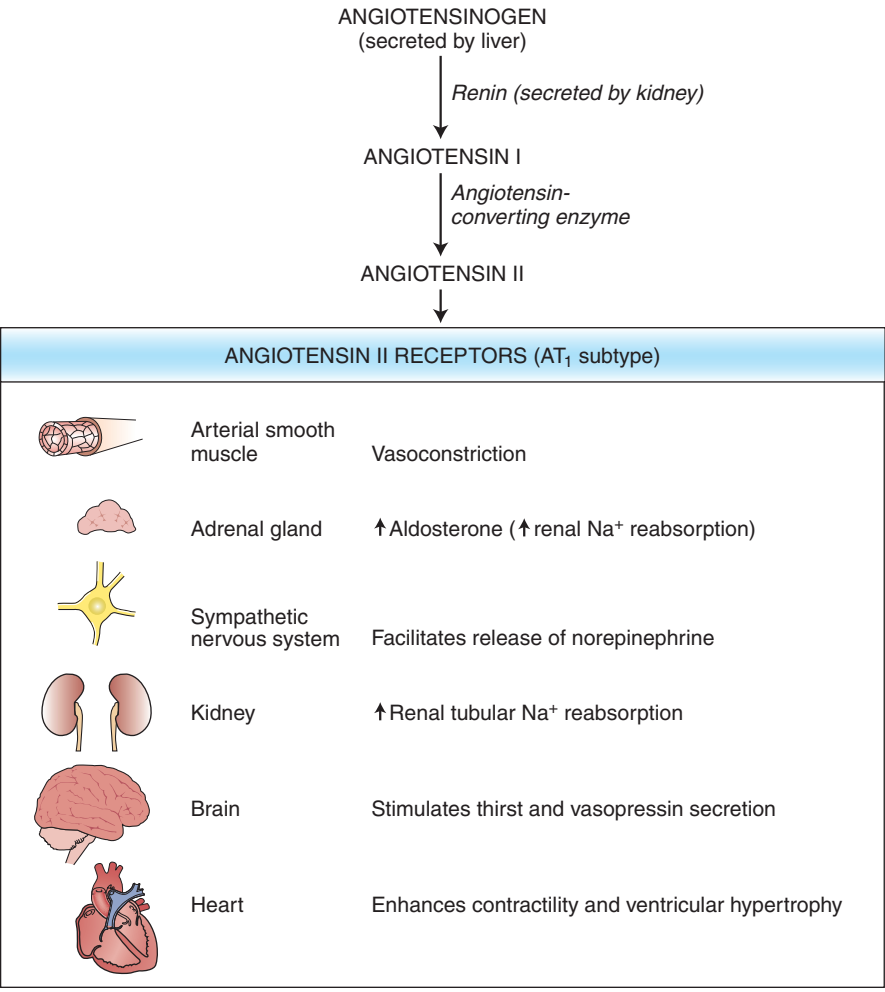
QUICK HIT

S_3 is the most frequent sign of CHF.

NEXT STEP

ACE-I, β -blockers (bisoprolol, carvedilol, or extended-release metoprolol) and **spironolactone** have been shown to decrease mortality in CHF; consider incorporating these drugs in the treatment plans, when appropriate, because other medications have not been proved to reduce mortality.

FIGURE 1-16 Renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system and its end effects, which contribute to hypertension.



QUICK HIT
 In aortic stenosis, the Valsalva maneuver will **decrease** the murmur; in hypertrophic obstructive cardiomyopathy (HOCM), it will **increase** the murmur.

QUICK HIT
 Successful treatment and surgical correction of valvular diseases depend on diagnosing the disorder before severe symptoms develop.

ACE-I, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor; ARB, angiotensin receptor blockers. ACE-I act to inhibit the conversion of angiotensin I to angiotensin II, and ARB block angiotensin II activity at the receptor level. (Modified from Lilly, L. S. [1998]. *Pathophysiology of Heart Disease* [2nd ed.]. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

NEXT STEP
 Perform an echocardiogram to diagnose any suspected valvular lesion.

V. VALVULAR DISEASES (see Figure 1-17; Table 1-5)

FIGURE 1-17 Common murmurs associated with valvular diseases.

Diagram	Murmur Type	Examples (Location/Radiation)
	Systolic ejection	Aortic stenosis (2nd right interspace → neck but may radiate widely) Pulmonic stenosis (2nd–3rd left interspace)
	Holosystolic	Mitral regurgitation (Apex → axilla) Tricuspid regurgitation (LLSB → RLSB)
	Late systolic	Mitral valve prolapse (Apex → axilla)
	Early diastolic	Aortic regurgitation (Along left side of sternum) Pulmonic regurgitation (Upper left side of sternum)
	Mid/late diastolic	Mitral stenosis (Apex)

(Modified from Lilly, L. S. [1998]. *Pathophysiology of Heart Disease* [2nd ed.]. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

TABLE 1-5 Valvular Diseases

Valvular Disease (Description)	Causes	Symptoms	Exam	Radiology	Treatment
Aortic stenosis (narrowing of aortic valve causes obstructed blood flow from LV)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Congenital defect • RHD • Calcification in elderly patients • Tertiary syphilis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Chest pain • Dyspnea on exertion • Syncope 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Weak, prolonged pulse • Crescendo-decrescendo systolic murmur radiating from right upper sternal border to carotids • Weak S₂ • Valsalva decreases murmur 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Calcified aortic valve, dilated aorta on CXR • Echo and cardiac catheterization helpful for diagnosis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Valve replacement
Mitral regurgitation (mitral valve incompetency causes blood back-flow to LA)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mitral valve prolapse (floppy valve) • RHD • Papillary muscle dysfunction • Endocarditis • LV dilation 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Asymptomatic in early/mild cases • Palpitations • Dyspnea on exertion • Orthopnea • Paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Harsh blowing holosystolic murmur radiating from apex to axilla • S₃ • Widely split S₂ • Midsystolic click 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • LVH; LA enlargement on CXR • Echo helpful for diagnosis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Vasodilators if symptomatic • Prophylactic antibiotics for increased infection risk • Prophylactic anticoagulation • Surgical repair in severe or acute cases
Aortic regurgitation (aortic valve incompetency causes blood back-flow to LV)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Congenital defect • Endocarditis • RHD • Tertiary syphilis • Aortic root dilatation (possibly from aortic dissection) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Initially asymptomatic • Dyspnea on exertion • Chest pain • Orthopnea 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bounding pulses • Widened pulse pressure • Diastolic decrescendo murmur at right second intercostal space • Late diastolic rumble (Austin-Flint murmur) • Capillary pulsations in nail bed, more visible when pressure is applied (Quincke sign) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dilated aorta; LV enlargement on CXR • Echo helpful for diagnosis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ACE-I, calcium channel blockers, or nitrates (decrease afterload) • Valve replacement
Mitral stenosis (obstructed blood flow to LV causes increased LA volume)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RHD 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Initially asymptomatic (~10 y) • Dyspnea on exertion • Orthopnea • Paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea • Peripheral edema • Hepatomegaly 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Opening snap after S₂ • Diastolic rumble • Loud S₁ 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RVH; LA enlargement; mitral valve calcification on CXR • Echo helpful for diagnosis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Diuretics (reduce preload) • Antiarrhythmics for Afib secondary to atrial enlargement • Surgical repair prior to symptomatic progression

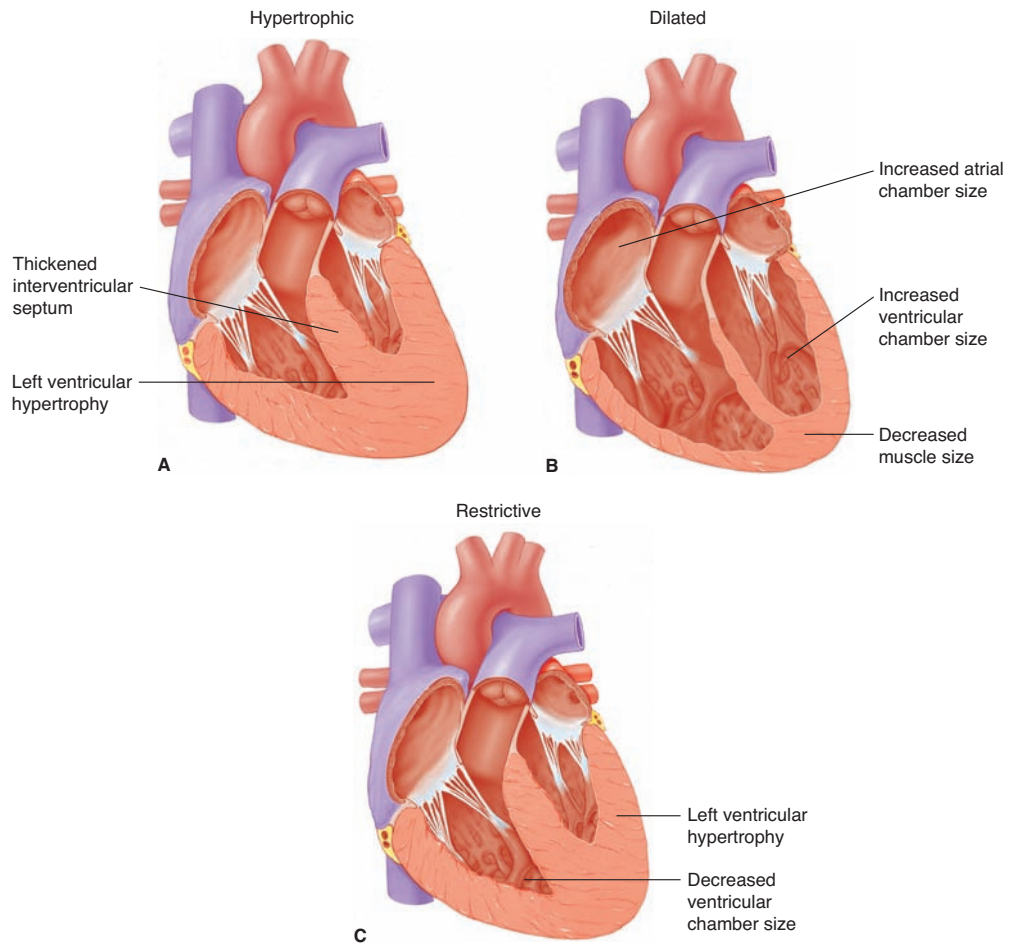
ACE-I, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors; Afib, atrial fibrillation; CXR, chest X-ray; Echo, echocardiogram; LA, left atrium; LV, left ventricle; LVH, left ventricular hypertrophy; RHD, rheumatic heart disease; RVH, right ventricular hypertrophy.

NEXT
STEP

Differentiate restrictive cardiomyopathy from constrictive pericarditis with CT or MRI.

VI. CARDIOMYOPATHIES (see Figure 1-18; Table 1-6)

FIGURE 1-18 Diagrams of most common variations of cardiomyopathy.




(A) Hypertrophic: note ventricular wall and septal thickening leading to outlet obstruction. (B) Dilated: note decreased wall thickness and increased ventricular size. (C) Restrictive: note increased ventricular wall thickness and decreased chamber size. (From Honkonen, B. [2005]. *Atlas of Pathophysiology* [2nd ed., Figures 41a–41c]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.)

TABLE 1-6 **Cardiomyopathies**

Cardiomyopathy (Description)	Causes	Symptoms	Exam	Radiology	Treatment
Hypertrophic (Ventricular hypertrophy; thickened septum causes decreased filling; LV outflow obstruction; both systolic and diastolic dysfunction)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Congenital (autosomal dominant) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Syncope • Dyspnea • Palpitations • Chest pain • Symptoms worse with exertion 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • S₄ • Systolic murmur • Sustained apical impulse • ECG may show arrhythmia, LVH, abnormal Q waves 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Boot-shaped heart on CXR • Echo helpful for diagnosis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • β-Blockers • Calcium channel blockers • Pacemaker • Partial septal excision
Dilated (Ventricular dilation causes systolic dysfunction)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Idiopathic • Alcohol use • Beriberi • Coxsackievirus B • Cocaine use • Doxorubicin • HIV • Pregnancy • Hemochromatosis • Ischemic heart disease • Chagas disease 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Similar to CHF and bi-valvular regurgitation 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • S₃ • Systolic and diastolic murmurs • ECG may show ST and T wave changes, weak QRS, tachycardia, LBBB 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Balloon-like heart on CXR • Echo helpful in diagnosis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stop alcohol or cocaine use • Diuretics • ACE-I • β-Blockers • Anticoagulation
Restrictive (Decreased heart compliance causes impaired diastolic filling)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sarcoidosis • Amyloidosis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Similar to CHF with right-sided symptoms worse 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ascites • JVD • Biopsy is diagnostic 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Often normal 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Treat underlying cause • Palliative treatment for heart failure

ACE-I, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors; CHF, congestive heart failure; CXR, chest X-ray; ECG, electrocardiogram; JVD, jugular vein distention; LBBB, left bundle branch block; LV, left ventricle; LVH, left ventricular hypertrophy.




QUICK HIT

Squatting relieves symptoms in HOCM.



QUICK HIT

HOCM is the most common cause of sudden death in **young athletes**.



QUICK HIT

Dilated cardiomyopathy accounts for 90% of all cardiomyopathies.

Cardiovascular Disorders

**QUICK HIT**

ST elevation is seen in acute pericarditis as well as in MI, but acute pericarditis also demonstrates **PR depression** and ST elevation in **most leads** (MI frequently does not show PR depression, and ST elevation is focal).

NEXT STEP

If ST elevation is seen on ECG, full workup is required to rule out MI.

NEXT STEP

Pericardial effusions are usually **transudates** (low in proteins, specific gravity <1.012); if **exudates** (rich in proteins, specific gravity >1.020) are collected during pericardiocentesis, perform workup for neoplasm, fibrotic disease, or tuberculous pericarditis.

NEXT STEP

With a finding of **Beck triad** (hypotension, distant heart sounds, and distended neck veins), think of cardiac tamponade and perform an urgent pericardiocentesis!

**QUICK HIT**

Myocarditis in South and Central America is commonly caused by *Trypanosoma cruzi* (**Chagas disease**) and, in these cases, may be associated with **achalasia**.

VII. PERICARDIAL DISEASES**A. Acute pericarditis**

1. Acute inflammation of the pericardial sac accompanied by pericardial effusion
2. Caused by **viral infection**, tuberculosis, systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), uremia, neoplasm, drug toxicity (e.g., isoniazid, hydralazine), post-MI inflammation (**Dressler syndrome**), **radiation**, **recent heart surgery**
3. **H/P** = anterior chest pain with inspiration (i.e., **pleuritic chest pain**), dyspnea, cough; **pain lessens with leaning forward**; fever, **friction rub** (best heard when leaning forward); **pulsus paradoxus** (i.e., fall in systolic blood pressure >10 mm Hg with inspiration) occurs because increased physiologic right ventricle (RV) filling during inspiration combined with pathologic left ventricle (LV) compression by pericardial effusion causes impaired LV filling, decreased stroke volume, and decreased inspiratory systolic blood pressure
4. **ECG** = global ST elevation, PR depression
5. **Radiology** = CXR is helpful in ruling out other systemic causes; effusion frequently seen on echocardiogram
6. **Treatment** = treat underlying cause; pericardiocentesis for large effusions; nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) for pain and inflammation; colchicine may be useful for preventing recurrence owing to viral or idiopathic causes
7. **Complications** = chronic constrictive pericarditis if untreated

B. Chronic constrictive pericarditis

1. Sequela of chronic untreated pericardial irritation
2. Diffuse thickening of pericardium with possible calcifications leads to decreased diastolic filling and decreased CO.
3. Most commonly caused by **radiation** or **heart surgery**
4. **H/P** = symptoms consistent with heart failure (JVD, dyspnea on exertion, orthopnea, peripheral edema), increasing JVD with inspiration (**Kussmaul sign**); Afib common
5. **Labs** = cardiac catheterization shows **equal pressure in all chambers**
6. **Radiology** = possible pericardial calcifications on CXR; echocardiogram, computed tomography (CT), and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) show pericardial thickening
7. **Treatment** = NSAIDs, colchicine, corticosteroids; surgical excision of pericardium (high mortality)

C. Cardiac tamponade

1. Large pericardial effusion causes compression of heart and **greatly decreased CO**; can result from progressive, **acute pericarditis**, **chest trauma**, LV rupture following MI, or dissecting aortic aneurysm
2. High mortality
3. **H/P** = dyspnea, tachycardia, tachypnea; JVD, pulsus paradoxus
4. **Radiology** = enlarged heart shadow on CXR; large effusion seen on echocardiogram
5. **ECG** = low voltage, sinus tachycardia
6. **Treatment** = **immediate pericardiocentesis**

VIII. MYOCARDIAL INFECTIONS**A. Myocarditis**

1. Inflammatory reaction in heart limited to cardiac muscle involvement
2. Most commonly caused by infection (e.g., viruses [**Coxsackie virus**, parvovirus B-19, HHV-6, adenovirus, echovirus, Epstein-Barr virus (EBV), cytomegalovirus (CMV), influenza virus], bacteria, rickettsiae, fungi, parasites)
3. Occasionally caused by **drug toxicity** (e.g., doxorubicin, chloroquine, penicillins, sulfonamides, cocaine, radiation), toxins, or endocrine abnormalities

4. **H/P** = patient may report history of recent upper respiratory infection; pleuritic chest pain, dyspnea, S₃ or S₄ heart sound, possible diastolic murmur, possible friction rub
5. **ECG** = ST- and T-wave changes, conduction abnormalities
6. **Radiology** = possible cardiomegaly on CXR; echocardiogram useful in assessing heart function
7. **Labs** = difficult to diagnose because of variations in laboratory findings; viral titers and serology may help suggest a particular infectious agent; myocardial biopsy frequently shows myocyte inflammation with primarily monocytes and macrophages and focal areas of necrosis
8. **Treatment** = treat infection; stop offending medications; avoid exertional activity; treat heart failure symptoms as for acute exacerbation of heart failure



QUICK HIT

Several of the drugs that cause myocarditis are used in **cancer** therapy (cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, daunorubicin).

B. Acute rheumatic fever

1. Uncommon sequela of **untreated group A streptococcus** infection
2. Streptococcus infection can provoke autoantibodies that attack joints and heart valves (mitral > aortic > tricuspid).
3. Incidence is low in the United States because of antibiotic treatment.
4. The term “**rheumatic heart disease**” describes both the acute carditis (pericarditis, myocarditis, valvulitis) and chronic valvular damage.
5. **H/P** = migratory arthritis, hot and swollen joints, fever, subcutaneous nodules on extensor surfaces, Sydenham chorea (i.e., purposeless involuntary movement), erythema marginatum (i.e., painless rash)
6. Diagnosis made using Jones criteria (see Figure 1-19)
7. **Labs** = increased erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR), C-reactive protein (CRP), and white blood cell (WBC) count; 90% of patients have antistreptococcal antibodies
8. **ECG** = increased PR interval
9. **Treatment** = NSAIDs for joint inflammation; use corticosteroids, if carditis is severe; β-lactam (penicillin family) antibiotic for infection
10. **Complications** = progressive valve damage if untreated



QUICK HIT

RHD only occurs in 3% of untreated streptococcal infections.

FIGURE

1-19 JONES criteria mnemonic for diagnosis of rheumatic heart disease (RHD).

JONES CRITERIA for Acute Rheumatic Fever — Think J♥NES PEACE	
Major Criteria	Minor Criteria
J: Joints (polyarthritis, hot/swollen joints)	P: Previous rheumatic fever
♥: Heart (carditis, valve damage)	E: ECG with PR prolongation
N: Nodules (subcutaneous, extensor surfaces)	A: Arthralgias
E: Erythema marginatum (painless rash)	C: CRP and ESR elevated
S: Sydenham chorea (flinching movement disorder)	E: Elevated temperature

Diagnosis of RHD is made with a history of recent streptococcal infection and either the presence of 2 major criteria or 1 major with 2 minor criteria.

CRP, C-reactive protein; ECG, electrocardiogram; ESR, erythrocyte sedimentation rate; RHD, rheumatic heart disease.

C. Endocarditis

1. Bacterial infection of endocardium (i.e., inner lining of heart), with or without valve involvement
2. More common in patients with **congenital heart defects, intravenous drug abuse, or prosthetic valves**
3. Patients with SLE may present in a similar manner with noninfective endocarditis (Libman-Sacks endocarditis).



MNEMONIC

Negative-culture endocarditis can result from the **HACEK** bacteria: *Haemophilus*, *Actinobacillus*, *Cardiobacterium*, *Eikenella*, and *Kingella*.



QUICK HIT

Prosthetic valves are particularly susceptible to *Staphylococcus epidermidis* and *Staphylococcus aureus* infection.

TABLE 1-7 Duke Criteria for Diagnosis of Infective Endocarditis

Definitive diagnosis of infective endocarditis requires:

- Direct histologic evidence of infective endocarditis
- OR**
- Positive Gram stain or culture from surgical debridement of cardiac abscess or autopsy specimen
- OR**
- 2 major criteria
- OR**
- 1 major and 3 minor criteria
- OR**
- 5 minor criteria

Major Criteria

- Serial blood cultures positive for organisms associated with infective endocarditis
- Presence of vegetations or cardiac abscess seen on echocardiogram
- Evidence of new onset valvular regurgitation
- Blood culture positive for *Coxiella burnetii*

Minor Criteria

- Predisposing heart condition or intravenous drug use
- Fever $\geq 38^{\circ}\text{C}$
- Vascular phenomenon (e.g., arterial emboli, septic pulmonary infarcts, mycotic aneurysm, intracranial hemorrhage, conjunctival hemorrhage, Janeway lesions)
- Immunologic phenomenon (e.g., glomerulonephritis, Osler nodes, Roth spots, positive rheumatoid factor)
- Positive cultures not meeting requirements for major criteria
- OR**
- Serologic evidence of infection without positive culture

4. Both acute (sudden presentation) and subacute (insidious progression) forms
 - a. **Acute endocarditis** is caused by *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, *Streptococcus pyogenes*, *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*
 - b. **Subacute endocarditis** caused by viridans streptococci, *Enterococcus*, fungi, and *Staphylococcus epidermidis*
5. **Duke criteria** are used as guide for making diagnosis (see Table 1-7)
6. **H/P** = fever (very high in acute form), chills, night sweats, fatigue, arthralgias; possible new murmur; small, tender nodules on finger and toe pads (i.e., **Osler nodes**); peripheral petechiae (i.e., **Janeway lesions**), subungual petechiae (i.e., **splinter hemorrhages**), retinal hemorrhages (i.e., **Roth spots**)
7. **Labs** = serial blood cultures will grow same pathogen; increased ESR; increased CRP
8. **Radiology** = echocardiogram (preferably transesophageal echocardiogram [TEE]) may show vegetations on valves; CXR may reveal congestion consistent with septic emboli and right-sided heart failure
9. **Treatment** = long-term (4 to 6 weeks) IV antibiotics (initially broad spectrum, then bug specific); β -lactam plus an aminoglycoside is the most commonly used regimen (adjusted for resistance and particular pathogen); antibiotic prophylaxis before surgery or dental work if valves are damaged; valve replacement may be necessary for severely damaged valves
10. **Complications** = severe damage to endocardium and valves, **septic embolization**, or abscess formation, if untreated

**QUICK HIT**

The patient should be sitting quietly for 5 minutes before blood pressure is measured to minimize **false high readings**.

NEXT STEP

If patient has been normotensive in the past and now systolic blood pressure is >140 mm Hg or diastolic blood pressure >90 mm Hg, recheck in 2 months.

**IX. HYPERTENSION (HTN)****A. Primary (essential) HTN**

1. Cause is idiopathic
2. Accounts for $>95\%$ all cases of HTN
3. Diagnosed when systolic blood pressure ≥ 140 mm Hg and/or diastolic blood pressure ≥ 90 mm Hg, as measured in three readings taken at three separate appointments
4. **Risk factors** = family history of HTN, high-salt diet (especially if salt sensitive), tobacco use, obesity, increased age; blacks $>$ whites
5. **H/P** = asymptomatic until progression, then headache may be the only symptom until complications develop; blood pressure $\geq 140/90$ mm Hg; arteriovenous

nicking (i.e., apparent retinal-vein narrowing secondary to arterial wall thickening), cotton-wool spots, or retinal hemorrhages (i.e., **flame hemorrhages**) on fundoscopic examination; loud S₂, possible S₄

6. **Treatment** = do not start medications until three consecutive high readings have been recorded
 - a. Initially, prescribe weight loss, exercise, salt restriction, and alcohol reduction.
 - b. Thiazide diuretic is typically the first drug prescribed unless comorbid condition indicates otherwise (e.g., calcium channel blocker, β-blocker; see Table 1-8, Table 1-9); ACE-I, ARB, calcium channel blockers can be added to regimen if additional control required.
7. **Complications** = untreated or poorly treated disease increases risk of CAD, stroke, aortic aneurysm, aortic dissection, CHF, kidney disease, and ophthalmologic disease



QUICK HIT

ACE-I drugs are contraindicated in cases of **bilateral renal artery stenosis** because they can accelerate renal failure by impeding sufficient renal perfusion and lowering glomerular filtration rate.

TABLE 1-8 Common Antihypertensive Agents

Class of Medication	Examples	Mechanism of Action	Prescription Strategy	Side Effects
Diuretics	Thiazides (HCTZ, etc.); K ⁺ -sparing (spironolactone, etc.); loop diuretics too potent for regular anti-HTN use	Reduce circulatory volume to decrease CO and mean arterial pressure	Early; particularly effective in blacks and salt-sensitive patients	Increased serum glucose, cholesterol, or triglycerides; hypokalemia; hyponatremia
α-Blockers	Prazosin, doxazosin, terazosin	Block α-adrenergic receptors (primary controllers of vascular tone) to decrease total peripheral resistance	Adjunct to other medications; less commonly used	Postural hypotension, headache, rebound HTN if stopped
β-Blockers	Nonselective (propranolol, timolol); β ₁ -selective (metoprolol, atenolol, esmolol)	Decrease HR, contractility, CO, and decrease renin secretion to decrease total peripheral resistance	Early; many important cardiac uses; more effective in white patients	Bronchoconstriction if non-β ₁ selective, HDL reduction, increased triglycerides
Ca ²⁺ channel blockers	Dihydropyridines (nifedipine, amlodipine)	Reduce influx of calcium in vascular smooth muscle to cause vasodilation	Second line; dihydropyridines mainly affect vascular smooth muscle and are utilized more often for HTN	Hypotension, headache, constipation, increased GI reflux
	Nondihydropyridines (diltiazem, verapamil)	Reduce influx of calcium in coronary arteries, slows automaticity and conduction of AV node	Nondihydropyridine are less frequently used for HTN	Bradycardia, hypotension, headache, increased GI reflux
Vasodilators	Hydralazine, minoxidil, nitroprusside	Direct relaxation of vascular smooth muscle	Adjunct to other medications; less commonly used	Reflex tachycardia, possible adverse cardiovascular incidents
ACE-I	Lisinopril, captopril, enalapril	Block conversion of angiotensin I to angiotensin II and increase circulating bradykinin to decrease angiotensin II vasoconstrictor activity and aldosterone secretion, causing decrease in total peripheral resistance	Early or second line; important cardiac and renal uses; more effective in young white patients	Dry cough, angioedema, azotemia, hyperkalemia, teratogenicity
ARB	Losartan, valsartan, irbesartan	Block binding of angiotensin II to second-line receptors to inhibit vasoconstrictor activity and decrease aldosterone secretion		Azotemia, hyperkalemia, teratogenicity

ACE-I, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors; ARB, angiotensin receptor blockers; CO, cardiac output; GI, gastrointestinal; HCTZ, hydrochlorothiazide; HDL, high-density lipoprotein; HA, heart rate; HTN, hypertension.

TABLE 1-9 Recommendations and Contraindications for Antihypertensive Drug Selection

Comorbid Condition	Recommended Antihypertensive	Reason for Recommendation	Contraindicated Antihypertensive	Reason for Contraindication
DM	ACE-I	Delays renal damage	±Thiazide diuretic ±β-Blocker	Impaired glucose tolerance Can mask signs of hypoglycemia
CHF	ACE-I/ARB Aldosterone antagonist β-Blocker	Improves mortality Improves mortality Improves mortality	Ca ²⁺ channel blocker	Reduced rate/contractility can exacerbate heart failure
Post-MI	β-Blocker ACE-I/ARB Aldosterone antagonist	Improves mortality Improves mortality Improves mortality		
Benign prostatic hypertrophy	Selective α ₁ -blocker	Reduces symptoms		
Migraine headache	β-Blocker	May reduce symptoms		
Osteoporosis	Thiazide diuretic	Maintains normal/high serum calcium		
Asthma/COPD			Nonselective β-blocker	Exacerbates bronchoconstriction
Pregnancy	Hydralazine Methyldopa Labetalol Nifedipine		±Thiazide diuretic ACE-I ARB	Increased blood volume during pregnancy should be maintained Teratogenic Teratogenic
Gout			Diuretic	Increase serum uric acid
Depression			β-Blocker	May worsen symptoms

ACE-I, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors; ARB, angiotensin receptor blocker; CHF, congestive heart failure; COPD, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease; DM, diabetes mellitus; MI, myocardial infarction.



QUICK HIT

Renal diseases are the most common cause of secondary HTN.

B. Secondary HTN

1. HTN due to an identifiable cause (see Table 1-10)
2. Some causes can be reversible, whereas others are progressive.

C. Hypertensive urgency


1. Blood pressure $\geq 180/120$ mm Hg (nonpregnant patient) without symptoms and without evidence of end-organ damage
2. H/P = possibly asymptomatic or mildly symptomatic; signs of renal failure, hematuria, change of mental status, papilledema, retinal vascular changes, unstable angina, MI, pulmonary edema
3. **Hypertensive emergency** (malignant HTN) = BP $\geq 180/120$ mm Hg with evidence of end-organ damage (e.g., progressive renal failure, pulmonary edema, aortic dissection, encephalopathy, papilledema)

TABLE 1-10 Causes of Secondary HTN

Condition	Common Patient Group	Signs/Symptoms	Diagnosis	Treatment
Renal diseases (various)		Depends on disease identity	Depends on disease identity	ACE-I (delays progression)
Renal artery stenosis	<25 yr of age (fibromuscular dysplasia) or >50 yr of age (atherosclerosis)	Renal artery bruit, hypokalemia	Arteriography, MRA, CT, renal artery duplex scan	Angioplasty, stent placement, ACE-I if one-sided, surgical repair
OCP (combination pill)	Women >35 yr of age, obese women, long-term OCP use		History	Stop use, change to progestin-only pill or intramuscular medroxyprogesterone
Pheochromocytoma	Young patients; patients with history of endocrine tumors	Episodic HTN, diaphoresis, headaches; symptoms occur suddenly	Increased 24-hr urinary catecholamines or vanillyl-mandelic acid; CT, MRI	Surgical removal of tumor with pharmacologic control of HTN up until time of surgery
Primary hyperaldosteronism (Conn syndrome)		Headache, hypokalemia, metabolic alkalosis	High ratio of plasma aldosterone to plasma renin activity (high PAC:PRA ratio)	Surgical removal of tumor; aldosterone antagonists
Excess glucocorticoids (Cushing syndrome)		Central obesity, hirsutism, buffalo hump, striae, and glucose intolerance	Serum cortisol, dexamethasone suppression test	Treat underlying cause, reduce exogenous steroids
Coarctation of the aorta	Male > female; Turner syndrome, aortic valve pathology, PDA	HTN in arm but not in legs, weak femoral pulse	Possible LVH on ECG; echocardiogram can localize defect	Surgical repair
Hyperparathyroidism (hypercalcemia)		Confusion, nephrolithiasis, constipation	Increased serum calcium and PTH level, decreased serum phosphates	Hydration

ACE-I, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors; CT, computed tomography; ECG, electrocardiogram; HTN, hypertension; LVH, left ventricular hypertrophy; MRI, magnetic resonance imaging; OCP, oral contraceptive pill; PDA, patent ductus arteriosus.

4. **Treatment** = for hypertensive emergency, rapidly reduce diastolic blood pressure to 100 mm Hg using IV nitroprusside, labetalol, nicardipine, or fenoldopam; once blood pressure is controlled, use oral β -blockers and ACE-I to gradually reduce mean diastolic pressure to 100 to 105 mm Hg over 2 hours; use diuretics to reduce pulmonary edema



QUICK HIT

In a hypertensive emergency, the **initial decrease** (first 2 hours) in diastolic blood pressure **should not exceed 25%** of the presenting pressure to avoid triggering an ischemic event.

X. SHOCK (See Table 1-11)

- A.** Circulatory collapse in which blood delivery is inadequate for tissue demands
- B.** High mortality without timely treatment
- C.** H/P = history should consider allergies, changes in medications, recent medication use, infection history, or recent cardiac/neurologic events; hypotension, cool/clammy skin, changes in mental status, decreased urine output
- D.** Labs = complete blood count (CBC), electrolyte panel, arterial blood gases (ABG), cardiac enzymes, liver function tests, prothrombin time or partial thromboplastin time (PT/PTT), toxicology screen; urinalysis should be included in workup

TABLE 1-11 Common Types of Shock

Type of Shock	Mechanism	Cause	Treatment
Cardiogenic	Failure of myocardial pump	MI, arrhythmias, cardiac tamponade, pulmonary embolism	Inotropes (dobutamine), intra-aortic balloon pump, PTCA (for MI)
Septic	Decreased total peripheral resistance	Gram-negative bacteria, DIC, possibly endotoxin mediated	Treat underlying infection, pressor agents (norepinephrine), IV fluids
Hypovolemic	Inadequate blood or plasma volume	Hemorrhage, severe burns, trauma	IV fluids, transfusions, surgery may be required to stop volume loss; specialized dressings, skin grafts may be required with severe burns to prevent ongoing fluid loss
Anaphylactic	Generalized hypersensitivity type I reaction	Massive degranulation of mast cells and basophils in response to allergic reaction	Maintain airway, epinephrine, diphenhydramine, IV fluids
Neurogenic	Widespread peripheral vasodilation and bradycardia	CNS or spinal cord injury	IV fluids, pressor agents, atropine for bradycardia

CNS, central nervous system; DIC, disseminated intravascular coagulation; IV, intravenous; MI, myocardial infarction; PTCA, percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty.

XI. VASCULAR DISEASES

A. Aortic conditions

- Abdominal aortic aneurysm (AAA)
 - Localized dilation of aorta, most commonly inferior to the renal arteries
 - Risk factors** = tobacco use, age >55 years, atherosclerosis, HTN, family history
 - H/P** = frequently asymptomatic until later progression; possible lower back pain; pulsating abdominal mass, abdominal bruits; hypotension and severe pain occur with any rupture
 - Radiology** = ultrasound (US) can detect location and size quickly; CT or MRI are used for more accurate localization and size determination
 - Screening** = United States Preventive Services Task Force (USPSTF) recommends a one-time screening US for men ages 65 to 75 years with a history of smoking
 - Treatment** = monitor with periodic US if <5.5 cm diameter; surgical repair (open or using endovascular stenting) if symptomatic or ≥5.5 cm diameter
 - Complications** = untreated aortic aneurysms can rupture with >90% mortality
- Aortic dissection
 - Intimal tear leads to blood entering media, causing formation of false lumen
 - Stanford classification—**Stanford A** aortic dissection involves ascending aorta; **Stanford B** is distal to left subclavian artery
 - Risk factors** = HTN, trauma, coarctation of the aorta, syphilis, Ehlers-Danlos syndrome, Marfan syndrome
 - H/P** = acute, “ripping” chest pain, syncope; decreased peripheral pulses, normal or increased blood pressure
 - ECG** = normal or LVH
 - Radiology** = widening of aorta and superior mediastinum on CXR; CT with contrast, echocardiogram, MRI, magnetic resonance angiography (MRA), or angiography good for definite diagnosis



QUICK HIT

Normal aortic diameter is 1.5–2.5 cm; an increase to twice this size or more is considered aneurysmal.



QUICK HIT

Rupture of an aortic aneurysm is usually fatal.

NEXT STEP

If a patient presents with new severe chest pain, an immediate ECG may help to differentiate an aortic dissection from an acute MI (ECG will be normal or will show mild LV hypertrophy in aortic dissection and will be abnormal in MI, except during early evolution).

- g. **Treatment** = stabilize blood pressure (e.g., nitroprusside, β -blockers) if unstable; Stanford A dissections need emergency surgery; Stanford B dissections can be treated medically unless rupture or occlusion develops
- h. **Complications** = possible MI, renal insufficiency, ischemic colitis, stroke, or paraplegia

B. Peripheral vascular disease (PVD)

1. Occlusion of peripheral blood supply secondary to atherosclerosis
2. **Risk factors** = HTN, DM, CAD, smoking
3. **H/P** = leg pain with activity that improves with rest (i.e., **intermittent claudication**), resting leg pain in severe disease; dry skin, skin ulcers, decreased hair growth in affected area; male impotence with aortoiliac disease
4. **Labs** = ankle-brachial index (ABI) is ratio of systolic blood pressure at ankle to that at brachial artery; ABI <1 indicates vascular insufficiency at ankle; ABI <0.4 indicates severe disease (frequently seen with resting pain)
5. **Radiology** = US is useful for locating stenosis and variations in blood pressure; arteriography will map narrowing in the arterial distribution of interest
6. **Treatment** = exercise (increases collateral circulation); instruction in foot examination (early detection of ulcers from vascular insufficiency); treatment of underlying diseases; ASA, **pentoxifylline**, or **cilostazol** to help to slow occlusion; percutaneous transluminal angioplasty (PTA) indicated for failed nonoperative treatment, significant disability caused by claudication, or predictable benefit and improvement in prognosis; bypass grafting if incapacitating claudication, resting pain, or necrotic foot lesions develop; prolonged ischemia may require limb amputation

C. Venous conditions

1. **Varicosities**
 - a. Incompetent venous valves that cause elongation, dilation, and tortuosity of veins
 - b. **H/P** = usually asymptomatic; pain and fatigue that lessens with leg elevation; possible visible or palpable veins, increased local pigmentation, edema, or ulceration
 - c. **Treatment** = exercise, compression hosiery, leg elevation; surgical removal or injection sclerotherapy for cosmetic improvement or symptomatic varicosities
2. **Arteriovenous malformations (AVM)**
 - a. Abnormal communications between arteries and veins
 - b. Congenital or acquired
 - c. **H/P** = palpable, warm, pulsating masses, if superficial; painful if mass compresses adjacent structures
 - d. Large AVM can cause local ischemia and increase the risk of thrombus formation.
 - e. **Treatment** = surgical removal or sclerosis, if symptomatic, or if located in brain or bowel
3. **Deep vein thrombosis (DVT)**
 - a. Development of thrombosis in large vein; most common in lower extremity
 - b. Location, in order of decreasing frequency: **calf**, femoral, popliteal, and iliac veins
 - c. Can cause inflammation of affected vein (i.e., **thrombophlebitis**)
 - d. **Risk factors** = **prolonged inactivity** (travel, immobilization), heart failure, disorders of coagulation, neoplasm, **pregnancy**, oral contraceptive pill (OCP) use, **tobacco use**, vascular trauma
 - e. **H/P** = possibly asymptomatic; deep leg pain, swelling, warmth
 - f. **Labs** = D-dimer will be elevated with DVT formation, but test is more useful in using a normal result to rule out DVT
 - g. **Radiology** = compressive venous US and contrast venography are used for detection
 - h. **Treatment** = leg elevation; low molecular weight heparin or unfractionated heparin initially, warfarin for long-term management; inferior vena cava (IVC) filter should be placed in a patient with contraindications to anticoagulation
 - i. **Complications** = clot can embolize to lungs (i.e., **pulmonary embolus**) with 40% mortality; chronic DVT can cause chronic venous insufficiency



MNEMONIC

Remember the six Ps to grade PVD severity: **Pain**, **Pallor**, **Poikilothermia**, **Pulselessness**, **Paresthesia**, and **Paralysis**.



QUICK HIT

Removal or sclerotherapy of the saphenous vein is discouraged because of its potential use in bypass grafting.



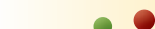
QUICK HIT

Virchow triad = blood stasis, hypercoagulability, and vascular damage increase patients' risk of DVT.



QUICK HIT

Homan sign (calf pain with passive foot dorsiflexion) is unreliable for DVT detection.



NEXT STEP

Patients with recent surgery or who are at increased risk for hemorrhage should receive an **IVC filter** instead of anticoagulation to reduce the risk of pulmonary embolism.



**NEXT
STEP**

If temporal arteritis is suggested from the H/P, do not wait for temporal artery biopsy to start prednisone.

D. Vasculitis

1. **Polyarteritis nodosa**
 - a. Inflammation of small or medium arteries leads to ischemia.
 - b. Affects kidneys, heart, gastrointestinal (GI) tract, muscles, nerves, joints (anything with a vascular supply)
 - c. **Risk factors** = hepatitis B or C; young > elderly; men > women
 - d. **H/P** = fever, HTN, hematuria, anemia, neuropathy, weight loss, joint pain, palpable purpura, or ulcers on skin
 - e. **Labs** = increased WBC, decreased hemoglobin (Hgb) and hematocrit, increased ESR, proteinuria, hematuria; negative perinuclear antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies (p-ANCA); arterial biopsy may help in diagnosis
 - f. **Radiology** = angiography may show numerous aneurysms
 - g. **Treatment** = corticosteroids, immunosuppressive agents
2. **Temporal (giant cell) arteritis**
 - a. Commonly caused by subacute granulomatous inflammation of the external carotid and vertebral arteries
 - b. **Risk factors** = women > men, 50 years of age and older
 - c. Half of patients also have **polymyalgia rheumatica**.
 - d. **H/P** = **new onset of headache** (unilateral or bilateral) with scalp pain, **temporal region tenderness**, jaw claudication, **transient or permanent monocular blindness**, weight loss, myalgias, arthralgias, fever; fundoscopic examination should be performed to address vision loss (may show thrombosis of ophthalmic or ciliary arteries)
 - e. **Labs** = increased ESR; temporal artery biopsy shows inflammation in vessel media and lymphocytes, plasma cells, or giant cells in vessel adventitia
 - f. **Radiology** = US may show stenosis or occlusion of temporal or occipital arteries
 - g. **Treatment** = prednisone for 1 to 2 months followed by taper; low-dose ASA to reduce risk of vision loss or stroke from vessel occlusion; vitamin D and calcium supplementation to reduce risk of osteoporosis from prolonged high-dose corticosteroid use; ophthalmology follow-up
3. **Takayasu arteritis**
 - a. Inflammation of aorta and its branches
 - b. Can cause cerebrovascular and myocardial ischemia
 - c. **Risk factors** = Asian heritage, women 10 to 40 years of age
 - d. **H/P** = malaise, vertigo, syncope; fever, decreased carotid and limb pulses
 - e. **Labs** = biopsy of affected vessel shows plasma cells and lymphocytes in media and adventitia, giant cells, and vascular fibrosis
 - f. **Radiology** = arteriography may detect abnormal vessels and stenoses; CT or MRI is useful for detecting vessel wall abnormalities
 - g. **Treatment** = corticosteroids, immunosuppressive agents; bypass grafting of obstructed vessels
4. **Allergic granulomatosis with angiitis (Churg-Strauss syndrome)**
 - a. Inflammation of small or medium arteries
 - b. **H/P** = **asthmatic symptoms**, fatigue, malaise, mononeuropathy (pain, paresthesia, or weakness); erythematous or papular rash
 - c. **Labs** = increased serum eosinophils, increased ESR, p-ANCA; lung biopsy may show eosinophilic granulomas
 - d. **Treatment** = corticosteroids, immunosuppressive agents
5. **Henoch-Schönlein purpura**
 - a. IgA immune complex-mediated vasculitis affecting arterioles, capillaries, and venules
 - b. More frequently in **children** than adults
 - c. **H/P** = **recent upper respiratory infection**; polyarticular arthritis, fever, hemorrhagic urticaria, palpable purpura, **abdominal pain**, possible GI bleeding
 - d. **Labs** = biopsy of purpura demonstrates **IgA deposition**; similar findings in renal biopsy
 - e. **Treatment** = frequently self-limited; use corticosteroids for severe GI symptoms
6. **Kawasaki disease**
 - a. Necrotizing inflammation of large, medium, and small vessels
 - b. Most commonly seen in **young children**

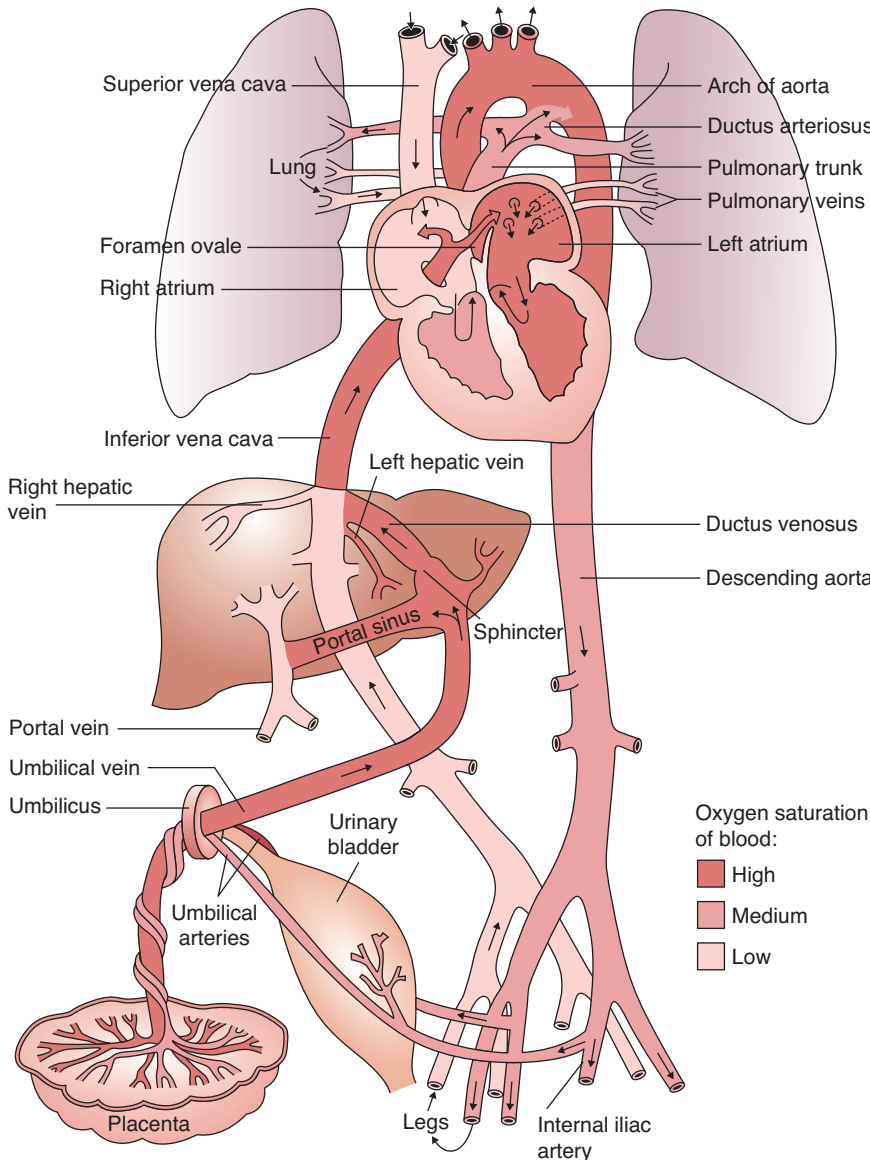
- c. Coronary vasculitis develops in 25% of patients, leading to possible aneurysm, MI, or sudden death.
- d. H/P = fever, lymphadenopathy, conjunctival lesions, maculopapular rash, edema, eventual desquamation of hands and feet
- e. Labs = possible autoantibodies to endothelial cells
- f. Radiology = echocardiogram can detect coronary artery aneurysms (particularly useful when performed with dobutamine stress test); angiography can detect coronary vessel irregularities
- g. Treatment = ASA, IV gamma globulin; frequently self-limited

XII. PEDIATRIC CARDIOLOGY

A. Fetal circulation (see Figure 1-20)

1. Gas exchange occurs in uteroplacental circulation.
2. Fetal Hgb has greater O₂ affinity than adult Hgb and pulls O₂ from maternal blood.

FIGURE 1-20 Diagram of fetal circulation—arrows indicate the direction of blood flow; three shunts (ductus venosus, foramen ovale, ductus arteriosus) exist in utero but close shortly after birth.



(From Lilly, L. S. [1998]. *Pathophysiology of Heart Disease* [2nd ed.]. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

3. Umbilical arteries carry deoxygenated blood to placenta; umbilical veins carry oxygenated blood from placenta to portal system.
4. Changes occurring after birth
 - a. Lung expansion causes increased pulmonary blood flow, leading to an increase in relative blood oxygenation.
 - b. A decreasing serum level of prostaglandin E_2 results in **ductus arteriosus closure**; umbilical cord clamping results in end of placental circulation and an increase in systemic vascular resistance.
 - c. This increased vascular resistance, in turn, induces **ductus venosus closure** and umbilical artery and vein constriction.
 - d. Left atrial pressure increases (because of increased pulmonary blood flow) and umbilical circulation decreases, causing a decrease in IVC pressure.
 - e. Decrease in IVC and right atrial pressures leads to **foramen ovale closure**.

B. Ventricular septal defect (VSD)

1. Opening in ventricular septum allowing shunting of blood (see Figure 1-21A)
2. **Most common** congenital heart defect
3. **H/P** = asymptomatic if small; frequent respiratory infections, failure to thrive, dyspnea, shortness of breath, heart failure symptoms with larger defects; pansystolic murmur at lower left sternal border, loud pulmonic S_2 , systolic thrill
4. **ECG** = left ventricular hypertrophy, right ventricular hypertrophy; frequently normal
5. **Radiology** = echocardiogram shows shunt
6. **Treatment** = clinically, follow small defects; diuretics or ACE-I are useful for decreasing fluid volume and vascular resistance in patients with large shunts; repair large defects soon (before Eisenmenger syndrome develops)
7. **Complications** = if untreated, Eisenmenger syndrome develops (irreversible); increased risk of endocarditis

C. Atrial septal defect (ASD)

1. Opening in atrial septum allowing movement of blood between atria (see Figure 1-21B)
2. Initially, blood flow is left-to-right across defect.
3. **H/P** = possibly asymptomatic; large defects can cause cyanosis, heart failure symptoms, dyspnea, fatigue, or failure to thrive; strong impulse at lower left sternal border, **wide fixed split S_2** , systolic ejection murmur at upper left sternal border
4. **ECG** = right axis deviation
5. **Radiology** = echocardiogram shows blood flow between atria, dilated RV, and large heart; CXR shows increased pulmonary vascular markings caused by pulmonary HTN
6. **Treatment** = small defects do not need repair but require **antibiotic prophylaxis** before surgery or dental work; surgical closure for symptomatic infants or when pulmonary blood flow is twice that of systemic blood flow
7. **Complications** = untreated ASD leads to right-to-left shunt (i.e., **Eisenmenger syndrome**), RV dysfunction, pulmonary HTN, arrhythmias

D. Patent ductus arteriosus (PDA)

1. Failure of ductus arteriosus to close after birth (see Figure 1-21C)
2. Left-to-right shunt (aorta to pulmonary artery)
3. **Risk factors** = **prematurity**, high altitude, first-trimester maternal rubella, maternal prostaglandin administration; females > males
4. **H/P** = possibly asymptomatic; heart failure symptoms, dyspnea; wide pulse pressure, continuous “machinery” murmur at second left intercostal space, loud S_2 , bounding pulses
5. **ECG** = possible LVH
6. **Radiology** = possible cardiomegaly on CXR; echocardiogram shows large left atrium (LA) and LV; angiography confirms diagnosis
7. **Treatment** = **indomethacin** induces closure; surgical closure if unresponsive



QUICK HIT

Atrial septal defect (ASD) has a **fixed split S_2** ; VSD does not.



QUICK HIT

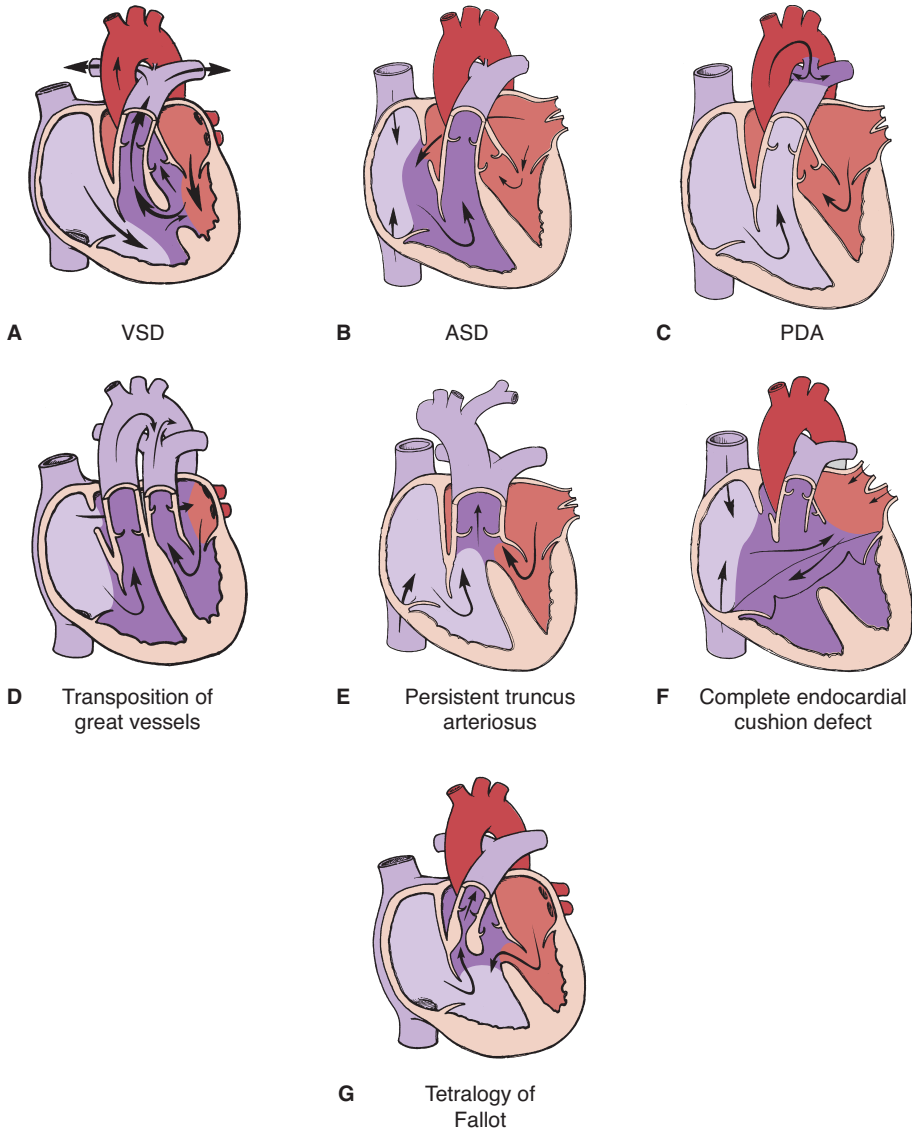
Patients with ASD are more susceptible to oxygen desaturation at **high altitudes** and decompression sickness during **deep sea diving**.



MNEMONIC

Treatment for a PDA may be remembered with the mnemonic **Come In and Close the Door**: (indomethacin **closes** a PDA).

FIGURE 1-21 Common congenital heart defects.



(A) Ventricular septal defect (VSD)—the *arrows* depict shunting of blood predominantly from the left to right ventricle. (B) Atrial septal defect (ASD)—the *arrow* depicts shunting of blood from the left to right atrium. (C) Patent ductus arteriosus (PDA)—the *arrow* depicts shunting of blood from the aorta to pulmonary arteries. (D) Transposition of the great vessels—the aorta arises from the right ventricle, and the pulmonary artery arises from the left ventricle. Shunting can occur between the great vessels via a PDA. (E) Persistent truncus arteriosus—single vessel exits both ventricles (with VSD) and gives rise to both systemic and pulmonary circulation. (F) Complete endocardial cushion defect—ASD, VSD, and single atrioventricular canal. (G) Tetralogy of Fallot—combination of ventricular septal defect, right ventricular outflow obstruction, aorta overriding the ventricular septum, and right ventricular hypertrophy.



MNEMONIC

To remember cyanotic congenital heart diseases, use the **5 Ts** mnemonic: **T**runcus arteriosus, **T**ransposition of the great vessels, **T**ricuspid atresia, **T**etralogy of Fallot, and **T**otal anomalous pulmonary venous return.

E. Transposition of the great vessels

1. Parallel pulmonary and systemic circulations; aorta connected to RV; pulmonary artery connected to LV (see Figure 1-21D)
2. Cause is poorly understood but is likely linked to cardiac septal development in the truncus arteriosus.
3. Incompatible with life (fetus is stillborn) unless comorbid PDA or VSD
4. **Risk factors** = Apert syndrome, Down syndrome, cri-du-chat syndrome, trisomy 13 or 18
5. **H/P** = cyanosis after birth; cyanosis worsens as PDA closes; loud S₂



QUICK HIT

A PDA or VSD is necessary for survival with transposition of the great vessels.

6. **Radiology** = narrow heart base, abnormal pulmonary markings on CXR; echocardiogram used for diagnosis
7. **Treatment** = keep PDA open with prostaglandin E; balloon atrial septostomy to widen VSD; prompt surgical correction

F. Persistent truncus arteriosus

1. Failure of aorta and pulmonary artery to separate during development results in a single vessel that supplies systemic and pulmonary circulation (see Figure 1-21E)
2. **H/P** = cyanosis after birth; dyspnea, fatigue, failure to thrive; heart failure symptoms soon develop; harsh systolic murmur at lower left sternal border, loud S_1 and S_2 , bounding pulses
3. **ECG** = likely LVH, RVH
4. **Radiology** = angiography or echocardiogram used for diagnosis; CXR may show boot-shaped heart, no pulmonary artery, and large aorta arching to right side
5. **Treatment** = surgical correction

G. Endocardial cushion defect

1. Malformation of atrioventricular valves, atrial septum, and/or ventricular septum during fetal development causes a variety of valvular and septal defects (see Figure 1-21F).
2. **Complete defect** has ASD, VSD, and a single atrioventricular canal.
3. **Incomplete defect** has ASD and minor atrioventricular valve abnormalities.
4. Found in **20% of children with Down syndrome**
5. **H/P** = incomplete form resembles presentation for ASD; complete form causes heart failure symptoms, pneumonitis; murmurs consistent with particular defect
6. **ECG** = left axis deviation
7. **Radiology** = echocardiogram or cardiac catheterization used for diagnosis
8. **Treatment** = surgical correction

H. Tetralogy of Fallot

1. VSD, RV outflow obstruction, RVH, and overriding aorta (see Figure 1-21G)
2. **Risk factors** = Down syndrome, cri-du-chat syndrome, trisomy 13 and 18
3. **H/P** = early cyanosis, dyspnea, fatigue; children squat for relief during hypoxic episodes; systolic ejection murmur at left sternal border, RV lift, single S_2
4. **ECG** = right axis deviation
5. **Radiology** = echocardiogram or cardiac catheterization used for diagnosis; boot-shaped heart seen on CXR
6. **Treatment** = prostaglandin E to maintain PDA; O_2 , propranolol, IV fluids, morphine, knee-to-chest positioning during cyanotic episodes; surgical correction



MNEMONIC

To remember the characteristics of tetralogy of Fallot, use the mnemonic **The Problems Of Small Hearts: Pulmonary stenosis, Overriding aorta, Septal defect (ventricular), Hypertrophy (of right ventricle).**

Pulmonary Disorders

I. MEASURES OF PULMONARY FUNCTION

A. Pulmonary function tests (PFTs)

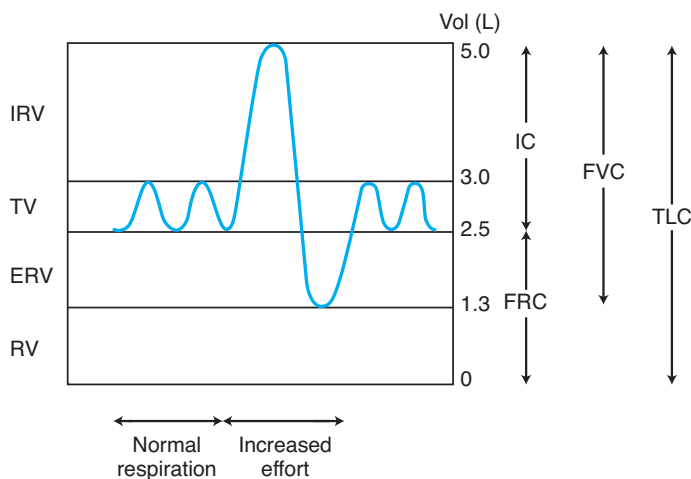
1. Uses for PFTs
 - a. Categorizing various types of lung processes and changes in lung air volumes
 - b. Assessing severity of pulmonary disease
 - c. Evaluating success of treatment
2. Specific measurements
 - a. Lung volumes (see Figure 2-1, Table 2-1, Table 2-2)
 - b. Airflow (see Figure 2-2)
 - (1) FEV_1/FVC is ratio of air volume expired in 1 second to functional vital capacity (FEV = forced expiratory volume).
 - (2) $FEF_{25\%-75\%}$ is forced expiratory flow rate between 25% and 75% of FVC.
 - c. Alveolar membrane permeability
 - (1) Diffusing capacity of lungs, or D_{Lco} , is a relative measurement of the lungs' ability to transfer gases from alveoli to pulmonary capillaries.
 - (2) PFTs usually list D_{Lco} as a percentage of the normal expected value.



QUICK HIT

Normal FEV_1/FVC is 80%; <80% suggests obstructive pathology; >110% suggests a restrictive pattern.

FIGURE 2-1 Healthy lung volumes and variation with effort of breathing.



ERV, expiratory reserve volume; FRC, functional reserve capacity; FVC, functional vital capacity; IC, inspiratory capacity; IRV, inspiratory reserve volume; RV, residual volume; TLC, total lung capacity; TV, tidal volume.

TABLE 2-1 Definitions of Lung Volume Terms and Formulas

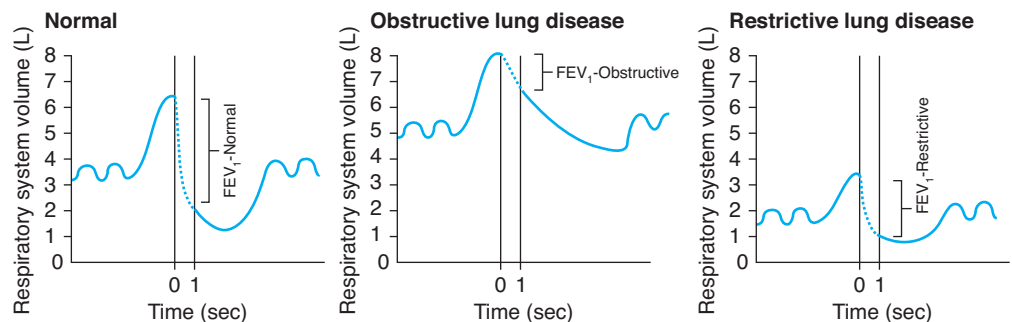
Lung Volume	Definition
Tidal volume (TV)	Inspiratory volume during normal respiration
Inspiratory reserve volume (IRV)	Air volume beyond normal tidal volume that is filled during maximal inspiration
Inspiratory capacity (IC)	Total inspiratory air volume considering both tidal volume and inspiratory reserve volume (IC = TV + IRV)
Expiratory reserve volume (ERV)	Air volume beyond tidal volume that can be expired during normal respiration
Residual volume (RV)	Remaining air volume left in lungs following maximal expiration
Functional reserve capacity (FRC)	Air volume remaining in lungs after expiration of tidal volume (FRC = RV + ERV)
Functional vital capacity (FVC)	Maximal air volume that can be inspired and expired (FVC = IC + ERV)
Total lung capacity (TLC)	Total air volume of lungs (TLC = FVC + RV)

TABLE 2-2 Changes in Pulmonary Function Tests from Normal Lung to Obstructive and Restrictive Disease States

Measurement	Obstructive	Restrictive
TLC	↑	↓
FVC	↓	↓
RV	↑	↓
FRC	↑	↓
FEV ₁	↓	↓
FEV ₁ /FVC	↓ (70%)	Normal or ↑

FEV₁, 1-second forced expiratory volume; FRC, functional reserve capacity; FVC, functional vital capacity; RV, residual volume; TLC, total lung capacity; ↑, increase; ↓, decrease.

FIGURE 2-2 Spirometry tracings for normal respiration compared with obstructive and restrictive pulmonary diseases.



FEV₁, 1-second forced expiratory volume.

(Modified from Mehta, S., Milder, E. A., Mirachi, A. J., & Milder, E. [2003]. *Step-Up: A High-Yield, Systems-Based Review for the USMLE Step 1* [2nd ed.]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

B. Alveolar-arterial (A-a) gradient (see Table 2-3)

1. This measurement compares the oxygenation status of arterial blood (P_{aO_2}) to alveoli (PA_{O_2}).
2. Normal A-a gradient = 5 to 15 mm Hg
3. Increased A-a gradient is seen in pulmonary embolism (PE), pulmonary edema, and right-to-left vascular shunts.
4. False-normal A-a gradient may be seen in cases of hypoventilation or at high altitudes.

TABLE 2-3 Calculation of the Alveolar-arterial (A-a) Gradient

Variable	Definition	Value
P_{aO_2}	Arterial O_2 content	Measured directly from arterial blood gas sample; normal value is roughly 90–100 mm Hg
PA_{O_2}	Alveolar O_2 content	Calculated as: $= (\text{Atmospheric air pressure}) \times (F_{iO_2}) - \frac{PaCO_2}{0.8}$ for room air , this becomes: $= 713 \text{ mm Hg} \times 0.21 - \frac{PaCO_2}{0.8}$ $= 150 \text{ mm Hg} - \frac{PaCO_2}{0.8}$
$PaCO_2$	Arterial CO_2 content	Measured directly from arterial blood gas sample; normal value is roughly 40 mm Hg
F_{iO_2}	Fraction of O_2 in inspired air	For room air, this fraction is typically 0.21
A-a gradient	Difference between alveolar and arterial oxygenation status	$PA_{O_2} - P_{aO_2} = 713 \text{ mm Hg} \times 0.21 - \frac{PaCO_2}{0.8} - P_{aO_2}$ 5–15 mm Hg is considered a normal A-a gradient

II. RESPIRATORY INFECTIONS**A. Upper respiratory infections (URIs)** (see Figure 2-3)

1. Common cold (viral rhinitis)
 - a. Inflammation of the upper airways most commonly caused by rhinovirus, coronavirus, or adenovirus
 - b. **History and physical (H/P)** = nasal and throat irritation, sneezing, **rhinorrhea** (i.e., nasal congestion and increased secretions), **nonproductive cough**; possible fever, no exudates or productive cough
 - c. **Labs** = negative throat culture
 - d. **Treatment** = rest, analgesia, treat symptoms; antibiotics are **not** helpful
2. Pharyngitis
 - a. Pharyngeal infection caused by group A β -hemolytic streptococci (“strep throat”) or common cold virus
 - b. **H/P** = **sore throat**, lymphadenopathy, possible nasal congestion; fever, red and swollen pharynx, **tonsillar exudates** (more common with bacterial infection)
 - c. **Labs** = throat culture grows streptococcal species, and rapid streptococcal antigen test is positive for strep throat; negative culture suggests viral etiology
 - d. **Treatment** = self-limited; β -lactam antibiotics (e.g., penicillin, amoxicillin, etc.) reduce infection time
 - e. **Complications** = untreated infection can cause acute rheumatic fever and **rheumatic heart disease**; treatment does not affect the development of poststreptococcal glomerulonephritis (characterized by a high antistreptolysin O titer)

**QUICK HIT**

Upper respiratory infections are those that occur in the **sinuses or pharynx**; **lower** respiratory infections are those that occur in the **lungs or bronchi**.

**QUICK HIT**

Prescribing antibiotics for viral rhinitis is a contributing factor to the development of resistant strains of bacteria.

**QUICK HIT**

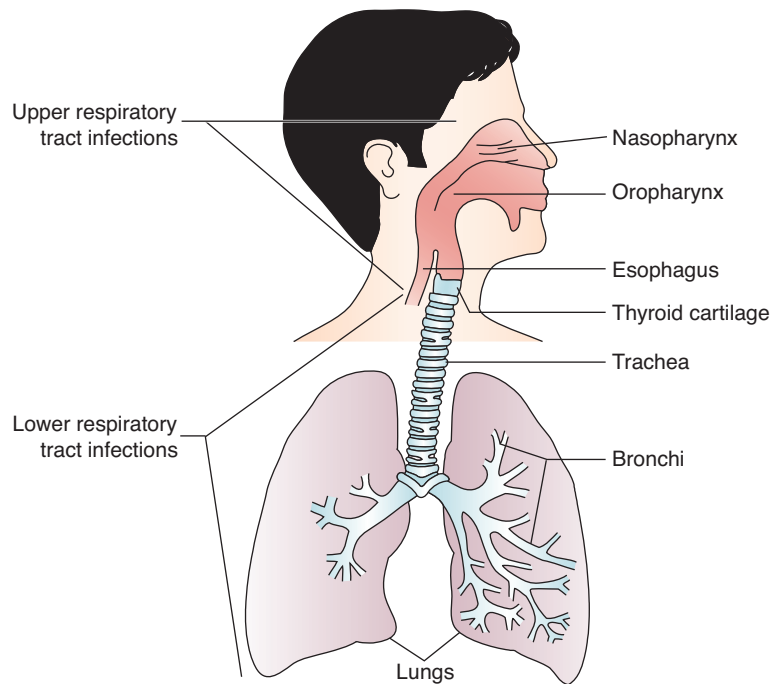
It is important to complete the full prescribed course of an antibiotic to achieve cure and prevent relapse and complications as well as to prevent development of **antibiotic-resistant strains**.

**QUICK HIT**

Approximately **3%** of untreated streptococcal infections will result in rheumatic heart disease.

FIGURE 2-3

Diagram of the upper and lower respiratory regions and appropriate sites of infection.



QUICK HIT

Signs of a peritonsillar abscess include difficulty opening the mouth, asymmetric tonsils, and displacement of the uvula away from the abscess.



QUICK HIT

Acute sinusitis can spread to the central nervous system (CNS) and cause meningitis if untreated.



QUICK HIT

Sinusitis most commonly affects the maxillary sinuses.

3. Tonsillar infections

- Spread of streptococcal pharyngitis to palatine tonsils, leading to tonsillar inflammation (i.e., **tonsillitis**)
- H/P = similar to streptococcal pharyngitis; ear pain, difficulty swallowing, possible high fever, **tonsillar exudates**
- Treatment** = same as streptococcal pharyngitis
- Complications** = airway compromise; abscess (requires intravenous [IV] antibiotics and surgical incision and drainage followed by tonsillectomy after resolution to prevent recurrence)

4. Viral influenza

- Generalized infection with URI symptoms caused by one of several influenza viruses
- H/P = arthralgias, **myalgias**, sore throat, nasal congestion, nonproductive cough, nausea, **vomiting, diarrhea**; **high fevers** (typically $>100^{\circ}\text{F}/37.8^{\circ}\text{C}$ and can reach up to $106^{\circ}\text{F}/41^{\circ}\text{C}$), lymphadenopathy
- Labs** = rapid antigen immunoassay of respiratory secretions (nasal swab); polymerase chain reaction (PCR) has better sensitivity but takes several hours
- Treatment** = treat symptoms; **fluid intake important** to replace losses from vomiting and diarrhea; self-limited (several days), but **oseltamivir** or **zanamivir** may shorten course of disease; annual vaccination is recommended for all persons >6 months old

5. Sinusitis

- Sinus infection associated with allergic rhinitis, barotrauma, viral infection, prolonged nasogastric tube placement, or asthma
- Acute sinusitis** is usually caused by *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, *Haemophilus influenzae*, *Moraxella catarrhalis*, or viral infection.
- Chronic sinusitis** (lasting >3 months) is usually caused by sinus obstruction, anaerobic infection; patients with diabetes mellitus (DM) are predisposed to mucormycosis.
- H/P = **pain over infected sinuses**, purulent nasal discharge, maxillary toothache pain, pain on palpation of affected sinuses; transillumination test (i.e., light held close to sinuses) may detect congestion in frontal of maxillary sinuses but is **unreliable**

- e. **Radiology** = radiograph shows opacification and fluid levels in affected sinuses; computed tomography (CT) is diagnostic; frequently, radiologic tests are not needed because of clinical diagnosis
- f. **Treatment** = treat symptoms; amoxicillin for 2 weeks in acute cases and for 6 to 12 weeks in chronic cases; surgical drainage or correction of anatomic obstruction may be required for full cure

B. Lower respiratory infections (see Figure 2-3)

1. Acute bronchitis

- a. Inflammation of trachea and bronchi caused by spread of URI or exposure to inhaled irritants
- b. H/P = **productive cough**, sore throat; fever, wheezing, tight breath sounds
- c. **Labs** = sputum culture is only performed in persistent cases and is most commonly negative
- d. **Radiology** = chest X-ray (CXR) may show only mild congestion
- e. **Treatment** = self-limited if viral (**most cases**); patient groups with an increased risk of bacterial infection (e.g., smokers, elderly, patients with other lung disease) may be given antibiotics (e.g., fluoroquinolones, tetracycline, erythromycin)

2. Pneumonia

- a. Infection of the bronchoalveolar tree can be caused by common nasopharyngeal bacteria or bacteria, viruses, or fungi from the surrounding environment; common causes vary by age group (see Table 2-4, Table 2-5).
- b. H/P = productive or nonproductive cough, dyspnea, chills, night sweats, **pleuritic chest pain**; **decreased breath sounds**, rales, wheezing, **dullness to percussion**, egophony (i.e., change in voice quality heard during auscultation over a consolidated region of lung), tactile fremitus, **tachypnea**
- c. **Labs** = increased white blood cell count (WBC) (slight increase with viral cause, significant increase with bacterial or fungal cause) with left shift (more immature forms); positive sputum culture and possible positive blood culture with bacterial or fungal cause (see Figure 2-4)
- d. **Radiology** = CXR shows **lobar consolidation**, infiltrates, or general increased density of lung fields
- e. **Treatment** = viral pneumonia is self-limited and only requires supportive care; bacterial and fungal pneumonias require antibiotics (started as broad coverage and changed to pathogen-specific therapy as culture results become available); healthier patients may be able to be treated as outpatients; admission criteria include elderly patients, multiple medical comorbidity, significant laboratory abnormalities, multilobar involvement, and signs of sepsis

3. Tuberculosis (TB)

- a. Pulmonary infection caused by *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*
- b. Following primary infection, disease enters inactive state; untreated infections can become reactivated (most active cases) and extend to extrapulmonary sites (i.e., miliary TB).
- c. Although the number of yearly cases in the United States decreased with the advent of pharmacologic treatment in the 1950s, the incidence of cases has slowly **increased** since 1985 (now approximately 10 new cases per 100,000 people each year), in large part because of the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) **epidemic**.
- d. **Risk factors** = immunosuppression, alcoholism, lung disease, DM, advanced age, homelessness, malnourishment, crowded living conditions, and close proximity to infected patients (e.g., **health care workers**); TB is significantly more common in **developing nations** than in the United States
- e. H/P = cough, hemoptysis, dyspnea, weight loss, night sweats; fever, rales
- f. **Labs** = positive purified protein derivative (PPD) tuberculin skin test is screening test for exposure (see Table 2-6); positive sputum acid-fast stain, positive culture (may take weeks, so not useful in planning therapy); one bronchoscopy is considered equal to three sputum samples for specimen collection (see Figure 2-5)
- g. **Radiology** = CXR may show apical fibronodular infiltrates (reactivated disease), lower-lobe infiltrates (primary lesion), and calcified granulomas/lymph nodes (Ghon complexes)

NEXT STEP

Because sinusitis is an occasional cause of unexplained persistent fevers, order a CT scan to evaluate the sinuses for opacification if unable to determine another cause.



QUICK HIT

Mycoplasma pneumoniae is the most common bacterial cause of acute bronchitis in nonsmokers and can be diagnosed by a high cold agglutinin titer; *Streptococcus pneumoniae* and *Haemophilus influenzae* are common causes in smokers.



QUICK HIT

Gram-positive bacteria typically cause community-acquired pneumonia; gram-negative bacteria typically cause nosocomial pneumonia.



QUICK HIT

Symptoms and signs of tuberculosis are more common in **reactivated** disease, and primary disease may be asymptomatic.

NEXT STEP

A positive PPD should be followed by a CXR to look for signs of TB.



QUICK HIT

Recipients of the Bacillus Calmette-Guérin (BCG) vaccine (commonly used in other countries) will show a false-positive PPD.

TABLE 2-4 Overview of Etiologies of Pneumonia

Pathogen	Patients Affected	Characteristic Symptoms	Treatment
Viral pneumonia Viral (influenza, parainfluenza, adenovirus, cytomegalovirus, respiratory syncytial virus)	Most common pneumonia in children ; common in adults	Classic symptoms ^a ; nonproductive cough	Self-limited
Typical bacterial pneumonia <i>Streptococcus pneumoniae</i>	Most common pneumonia in adults ; higher risk of infection in patients with sickle cell disease	Classic symptoms; high fevers, pleuritic pain, productive cough	β-Lactams, macrolides
<i>Haemophilus influenzae</i>	Patients with COPD; higher risk of infection in patients with sickle cell disease	Classic symptoms; slower onset	β-Lactams, TMP-SMX
<i>Staphylococcus aureus</i>	Nosocomial pneumonia, immunocompromised patients	Classic symptoms; abscess formation	β-Lactams
<i>Klebsiella pneumoniae</i>	Alcoholics, patients with high risk of aspiration, patients staying in the hospital for extended amounts of time, patients with sickle cell disease	Classic symptoms; “currant-jelly” sputum	Both cephalosporins and aminoglycosides (gentamicin, tobramycin)
<i>Pseudomonas aeruginosa</i>	Chronically ill and immunocompromised patients, patients with cystic fibrosis , nosocomial pneumonia	Classic symptoms; rapid onset	Fluoroquinolones (ciprofloxacin), aminoglycosides, 3rd-generation cephalosporins
Group B <i>Streptococcus</i> <i>Enterobacter</i> sp.	Neonates and infants Nosocomial pneumonia, elderly patients	Respiratory distress, lethargy Classic symptoms	β-Lactams TMP-SMX
Atypical bacterial pneumonia <i>Mycoplasma pneumoniae</i>	Young adults	Less severe symptoms; possible rash; positive cold agglutinin test	Macrolides (azithromycin, clarithromycin, erythromycin)
<i>Legionella pneumophila</i>	Associated with aerosolized water (air conditioners)	Slow onset of classic symptoms; nausea, diarrhea, confusion, or ataxia	Macrolides, fluoroquinolones
<i>Chlamydomphila pneumoniae</i>	More common in very young and elderly	Slow onset of classic symptoms; frequent sinusitis	Doxycycline, macrolides
Fungal pneumonia Fungi	Travelers to southwest United States (coccidioidomycosis), caves (histoplasmosis), or Central America (blastomycosis)	Less severe symptoms; subacute disease for initial history	Antifungal agents (amphotericin B, fluconazole [<i>Coccidioides</i>], itraconazole [<i>Histoplasma</i> , <i>Blastomyces</i>])
<i>Pneumocystis jirovecii</i>	Immunocompromised patients (HIV) (CD4 count <200)	Slow onset of classic symptoms; GI symptoms	TMP-SMX

^aClassic symptoms = productive or nonproductive cough, dyspnea, chills, night sweats, pleuritic chest pain.

COPD, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease; GI, gastrointestinal; HIV, human immunodeficiency virus; TMP-SMX, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole.



MNEMONIC

Remember the multidrug regimen for TB as **RIPE** (Rifampin, Isoniazid, Pyrazinamide, Ethambutol).

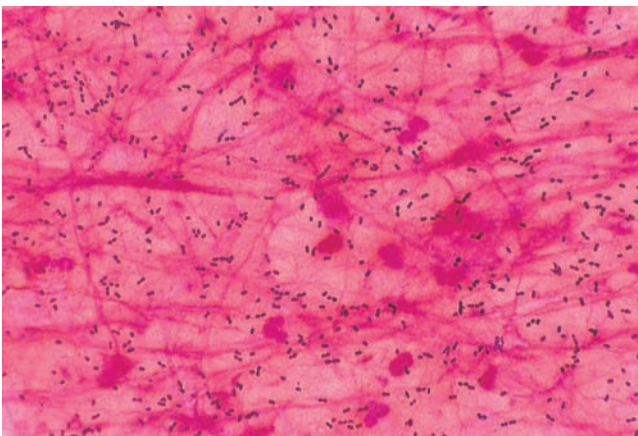
- h. **Treatment** = respiratory isolation for any inpatient; report all diagnosed cases to local and state health agencies; **multidrug treatment** initially with isoniazid (INH), rifampin, pyrazinamide, and ethambutol followed by INH and rifampin only for a total of 6 months; give vitamin B₆ with INH to prevent peripheral neuritis (INH competes with vitamin B₆ as a cofactor in neurotransmitter synthesis, so supplemental vitamin B₆ helps offset this competition); monthly sputum acid-fast tests should be performed during therapy to confirm adequate treatment; treat all patients with an asymptomatic positive PPD with INH for 9 months (or various alternate regimens)
- i. **Complications** = meningitis, bone involvement (i.e., Pott disease), widespread dissemination to multiple organs (i.e., miliary TB)

TABLE 2-5 Most Common Etiologies of Pneumonia by Age Group

Age Group	Community Acquired	Nosocomial
Neonatal	Group B streptococcus <i>Escherichia coli</i> <i>Klebsiella pneumoniae</i> <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i> <i>Streptococcus pneumoniae</i>	<i>Staphylococcus aureus</i> Group B streptococcus <i>Klebsiella pneumoniae</i> Respiratory syncytial virus
Infant–5 yr of age	Respiratory syncytial virus <i>Streptococcus pneumoniae</i> <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i> <i>Mycoplasma pneumoniae</i> <i>Chlamydomphila pneumoniae</i>	<i>Staphylococcus aureus</i> <i>Klebsiella pneumoniae</i> Respiratory syncytial virus
5–20 yr of age	<i>Streptococcus pneumoniae</i> <i>Mycoplasma pneumoniae</i> <i>Chlamydomphila pneumoniae</i> Respiratory syncytial virus	<i>Staphylococcus aureus</i> <i>Klebsiella pneumoniae</i> Respiratory syncytial virus
20–40 yr of age	<i>Mycoplasma pneumoniae</i> <i>Streptococcus pneumoniae</i> Viruses (various) <i>Chlamydomphila pneumoniae</i>	<i>Streptococcus pneumoniae</i> Viruses (various) <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i>
40–60 yr of age	<i>Streptococcus pneumoniae</i> <i>Mycoplasma pneumoniae</i>	<i>Streptococcus pneumoniae</i> <i>Haemophilus influenzae</i> <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i> <i>Enterobacter</i> spp.
60+ yr of age	<i>Streptococcus pneumoniae</i> <i>Haemophilus influenzae</i> <i>Chlamydomphila pneumoniae</i> <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i> <i>Escherichia coli</i> Respiratory syncytial virus	<i>Streptococcus pneumoniae</i> <i>Haemophilus influenzae</i> <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i> <i>Enterobacter</i> spp.

Modified from Mehta, S., Milder, E. A., Mirachi, A. J., & Milder, E. (2003). *Step-Up: A High-Yield, Systems-Based Review for the USMLE Step 1* (2nd ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.

FIGURE 2-4 Paired gram-positive cocci seen in sputum consistent with *Streptococcus pneumoniae* pneumonia.



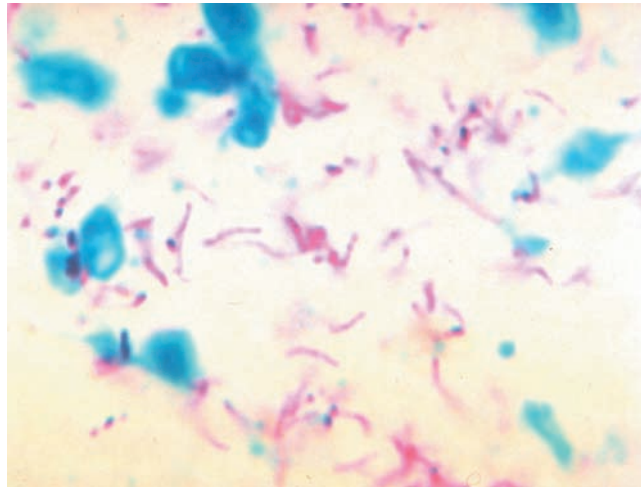
(From McClatchey, K. D. [2002]. *Clinical Laboratory Medicine* [2nd ed., Figure 51.3]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

TABLE 2-6 Criteria Used to Determine Positive PPD for Tuberculosis

Size of Induration ^a	When Considered Positive
5 mm	HIV positive, close contact with TB-infected patient, signs of TB seen on CXR
10 mm	Homeless patients, immigrants from developing nations, IVDA patients, chronically ill patients, health care workers, patients with recent incarceration
15 mm	Always considered positive

^aInduration is considered the firm cutaneous region and not the region of erythema.
CXR, chest X-ray; HIV, human immunodeficiency virus; IVDA, intravenous drug abuse; PPD, purified protein derivative; TB, tuberculosis.

FIGURE 2-5 Numerous acid-fast bacilli seen in pulmonary histologic section consistent with *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* infection.



(From Rubin, E., & Farber, J. L. [1999]. *Pathology* [3rd ed., Figure 9-46]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)



MNEMONIC

Remember the common causes of ARDS by the acronym ARDS: **A**spiration/**A**cute pancreatitis/**A**ir or **A**mniotic embolism, **R**adiation, **D**rug overdose/**D**iffuse lung disease/**D**IC/**D**rowning, **S**hock/**S**epsis/**S**moke inhalation.



III. ACUTE RESPIRATORY DISTRESS SYNDROME (ARDS)

- A.** Acute respiratory failure caused by sepsis, trauma, aspiration, near drowning, drug overdose, shock, or lung infection that is characterized by refractory hypoxemia, decreased lung compliance, and pulmonary edema, and carries a high mortality
- B.** H/P = acute dyspnea and pulmonary decompensation in setting of serious underlying condition; cyanosis, tachypnea (begins within 48 hours of initial insult), wheezing, rales, rhonchi
- C.** Labs = arterial blood gas (ABG) shows respiratory alkalosis, decreased O₂ (caused by impairment of O₂ transfer to pulmonary capillaries by pulmonary edema), decreased CO₂ (caused by hyperventilation); other tests should reflect underlying pathology; Swan-Ganz catheterization shows wedge pressure <18 mm Hg; Pao₂:Fio₂ ratio will be <200 during mechanical ventilation
- D.** Radiology = bilateral pulmonary edema and infiltrates
- E.** Treatment = treatment in intensive care unit with mechanical ventilation frequently required; mechanical ventilation should include positive end-expiratory pressure

(PEEP), increased inspiratory times, and F_{iO_2} adjusted to maintain O_2 saturation (S_{aO_2}) $>90\%$; **underlying cause must be treated**; keep fluid volumes low to prevent pulmonary edema; use of extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) may improve outcome in severe cases

IV. OBSTRUCTIVE AIRWAY DISEASES

A. Asthma

1. Reversible airway obstruction secondary to bronchial hyperactivity, acute airway inflammation, mucus plugging, and smooth muscle hypertrophy
2. Exacerbations (i.e., sudden bronchoconstriction and airway inflammation) are triggered by allergens (e.g., dust, smoke, pollen, fumes, pet dander), URI, exercise, stress, β -blockers, aspirin (rare), and sulfites (rare).
3. Although the prevalence of asthma in the United States has increased in the past 20 years, the reasons for this trend are poorly understood.
4. Risk factors = family history of asthma, allergies, atopic dermatitis, low socioeconomic status
5. Disease can be worse in childhood and improve with age.
6. H/P = cough, dyspnea, wheezing, chest tightness; tachypnea, tachycardia, prolonged expiratory duration, decreased breath sounds, wheezing, accessory muscle use, possible pulsus paradoxus; cyanosis, decreased arterial O_2 saturation (S_{aO_2}) on pulse oximetry, or difficulty talking in severe attacks
7. Labs = peak expiratory flow rate (PEFR) decreased and used along with clinical symptoms and frequency of medication use to classify disease as **mild intermittent, mild persistent, moderate persistent, or severe** (see Table 2-8); PFT shows decreased FEV_1 , normal/elevated D_{LCO} ; ABG may show mild hypoxia and respiratory alkalosis but is less useful except during severe exacerbations
8. Radiology = CXR shows hyperinflation
9. Treatment = algorithm of medications depends on classification of disease severity (see Table 2-7, Table 2-8); patient education for avoidance of exacerbating factors and recognition of impending respiratory collapse is important to long-term control

B. Chronic bronchitis

1. Chronic bronchial inflammation associated with tobacco use (common) or chronic asthma (uncommon); occurs in continuum with emphysema as **chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD)**
2. H/P = productive cough, recurrent respiratory infections, dyspnea; wheezing, rhonchi
3. Diagnosis made with history of **productive cough for 3 months of the year for >2 years**
4. Labs = PFTs show gradually worsening signs of obstructive disease as condition progresses
5. Treatment = **tobacco cessation**, antibiotics given for URI because of the greater incidence of a bacterial etiology; bronchodilators during exacerbations
6. Complications = emphysema frequently results without smoking cessation

C. Emphysema (later stage—COPD)

1. Long-term tobacco use leads to chronic bronchoalveolar inflammation associated with release of proteolytic enzymes by neutrophils and macrophages; **destruction of alveoli and bronchioles** results with panacinar airspace enlargement and a decreased capillary bed.
2. Less common form (appears at younger age) caused by α_1 -antitrypsin deficiency
3. H/P = **dyspnea**, possible productive cough, morning headache; barrel chested, **pursed-lip breathing**, prolonged expiratory duration, decreased heart sounds, decreased breath sounds, wheezing, rhonchi, accessory muscle use, jugular venous distension (JVD); exacerbations present with worsening symptoms

NEXT STEP

Status asthmaticus is a prolonged, nonresponsive asthma attack that can be fatal and should be treated with **aggressive** bronchodilator therapy, corticosteroids, O_2 , and, possibly, intubation.

NEXT STEP

A normal CO_2 during an exacerbation signals impending respiratory failure and requires additional β_2 -waggonists, supplemental O_2 , and, possibly, ventilation.



MNEMONIC

Patients with **chronic bronchitis** are "**blue bloaters**" because secondary development of cor pulmonale causes cyanosis and peripheral edema; patients with **emphysema** are "**pink puffers**" because of their pursed-lip breathing, dyspnea, and barrel chests.

NEXT STEP

To differentiate between emphysema and chronic bronchitis, check the D_{LCO} ; it is normal in chronic bronchitis but decreased in emphysema.



QUICK HIT

The common form of emphysema has a centrilobular distribution, whereas the form associated with α_1 -antitrypsin deficiency has a panlobular distribution.

TABLE 2-7 Commonly Used Medications for Treatment of Asthma

Medication	Mechanism of Action	Role
Rapid-acting β_2 -agonists (albuterol, pirbuterol, bitolterol)	Bronchodilators that relax airway smooth muscle; have rapid onset of action	First-line therapy in mild intermittent cases and during exacerbations
Long-acting β_2 -agonists (salmeterol, formoterol, sustained-release albuterol)	Bronchodilators that relax airway smooth muscle; have gradual onset and sustained activity	Regular use in patients with moderate persistent or severe asthma
Inhaled corticosteroids (beclomethasone, flunisolide)	Decrease number and activity of cells involved with airway inflammation	Mild persistent or worse cases; frequently combined with β_2 -agonist use
Leukotriene inhibitors (zafirlukast, zileuton)	Block activity or production of leukotrienes that are involved in inflammation and bronchospasm	Oral agents; adjunctive therapy in mild persistent or worse cases
Theophylline	Bronchodilator	Former first-line therapy, but now replaced by β_2 -agonists because of side effects (tachycardia, seizures) and interactions with other drugs; may be useful as adjunct in mild persistent or worse cases
Anticholinergic agents (ipratropium)	Blocks vagal-mediated smooth muscle contraction	Adjunctive therapy in moderate to severe cases
Systemic steroids (methylprednisolone, prednisone)	Similar action to inhaled steroids; stronger effect than inhaled preparation	Adjunctive therapy in severe, refractory cases

4. **Labs** = PFT shows decreased FEV₁, **decreased FEV₁/FVC**, increased total lung capacity (TLC), decreased PEF; ABG during acute exacerbations shows decreased O₂ and increased CO₂ (beyond a baseline increase already seen in these patients)
5. **Radiology** = CXR shows **flat diaphragm, hyperinflated lungs**, subpleural blebs and bullae (i.e., small fluid-filled sacs), and decreased vascular markings
6. **Treatment** = **smoking cessation**; supplemental O₂; inhaled, short-acting β_2 -agonists; inhaled anticholinergics; inhaled corticosteroids and long-acting β_2 -agonists may be useful in severe cases; antibiotics given for respiratory infections; pneumococcal and influenza vaccines important to reduce infection risk; enzyme replacement may have a role in α_1 -antitrypsin deficiency therapy; lung transplant may be an option in late severe disease
7. **Complications** = chronic respiratory decompensation, cor pulmonale, frequent respiratory infections, frequent comorbid lung cancer



NEXT STEP

If a patient with COPD has a resting SaO₂ ≤ 88%, a home O₂ program should be initiated.

D. Bronchiectasis

1. **Permanent dilation** of small and medium bronchi because of destruction of bronchial elastic components
2. Occurs secondary to **chronic airway obstruction**, chronic tobacco use, TB, fungal infections, severe pneumonia, or cystic fibrosis
3. **H/P** = persistent, productive cough; hemoptysis, frequent respiratory infections, dyspnea; **copious sputum**, wheezing, rales, and hypoxemia
4. **Radiology** = multiple cysts and bronchial crowding seen on CXR; CT shows dilation of bronchi, bronchial wall thickening, and bronchial wall cysts
5. **Treatment** = pulmonary hygiene (e.g., hydration, sputum removal), chest physical therapy; antibiotics given when sputum production increases; inhaled β_2 -agonists and corticosteroids may reduce symptoms; resection of severely diseased regions of lung indicated for hemorrhage, substantial sputum production, or inviability
6. **Complications** = cor pulmonale, massive hemoptysis, abscess formation

TABLE 2-8 Classification of Asthma Severity and Treatment Algorithms

Type	Symptoms	PEFR	Treatment of Exacerbations	Long-term Control
Mild intermittent	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ≤ 2 times/wk • Nocturnal awakening ≤ 2 times/month • May only occur during exercise 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When asymptomatic, $>80\%$ predicted value 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Inhaled short-acting β_2-agonist • IV corticosteroids if persistent symptoms 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No daily medications needed • May use mast cell stabilizers if known trigger
Mild persistent	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bronchodilator use >2 times/wk • Nocturnal awakening $>$every 2 wk 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • $>20\%$ fluctuations over time 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Inhaled short-acting β_2-agonist • IV corticosteroids if persistent symptoms 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Inhaled low-dose corticosteroid • Consider mast cell stabilizer, leukotriene inhibitor, or theophylline
Moderate persistent	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Daily symptoms • Daily bronchodilator use • Symptoms interfere with activity • Nocturnal awakening >1 time/wk 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 60%–80% predicted value 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Inhaled short-acting β_2-agonist • IV corticosteroids if persistent symptoms 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Inhaled low to medium dose corticosteroids and long-acting β_2-agonist • Consider leukotriene inhibitor or theophylline
Severe	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Symptoms with minimal activity • Awake multiple times/night • Require multiple medications on daily basis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wide variations • Rarely $>70\%$ predicted value • Associated $FEV_1 < 60\%$ predicted value 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Inhaled short-acting β_2-agonist • IV corticosteroids if persistent symptoms 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Inhaled high-dose corticosteroids and long-acting β_2-agonist • Consider systemic corticosteroids

FEV₁, 1-second forced expiratory volume; IV, intravenous; PEFR, peak expiratory flow rate.

V. RESPIRATORY NEOPLASMS

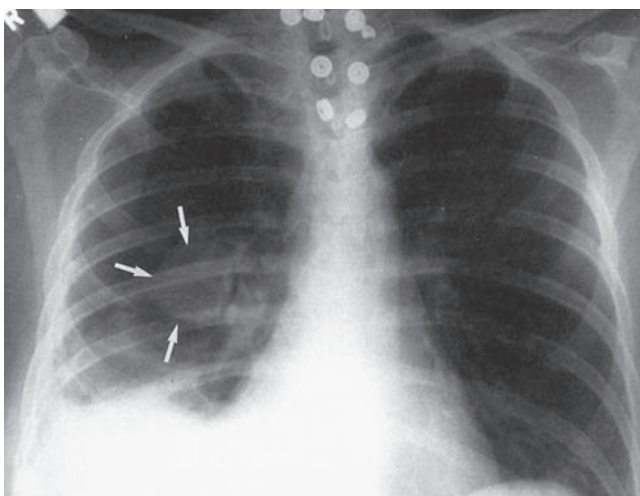
A. Solitary pulmonary nodule

1. A lung nodule <5 cm diameter may be discovered incidentally on CXR or CT (see Figure 2-6, Figure 2-7).
2. Can be granuloma, hamartoma, cancer (primary or metastasis), carcinoid tumor, or pneumonia

QUICK HIT

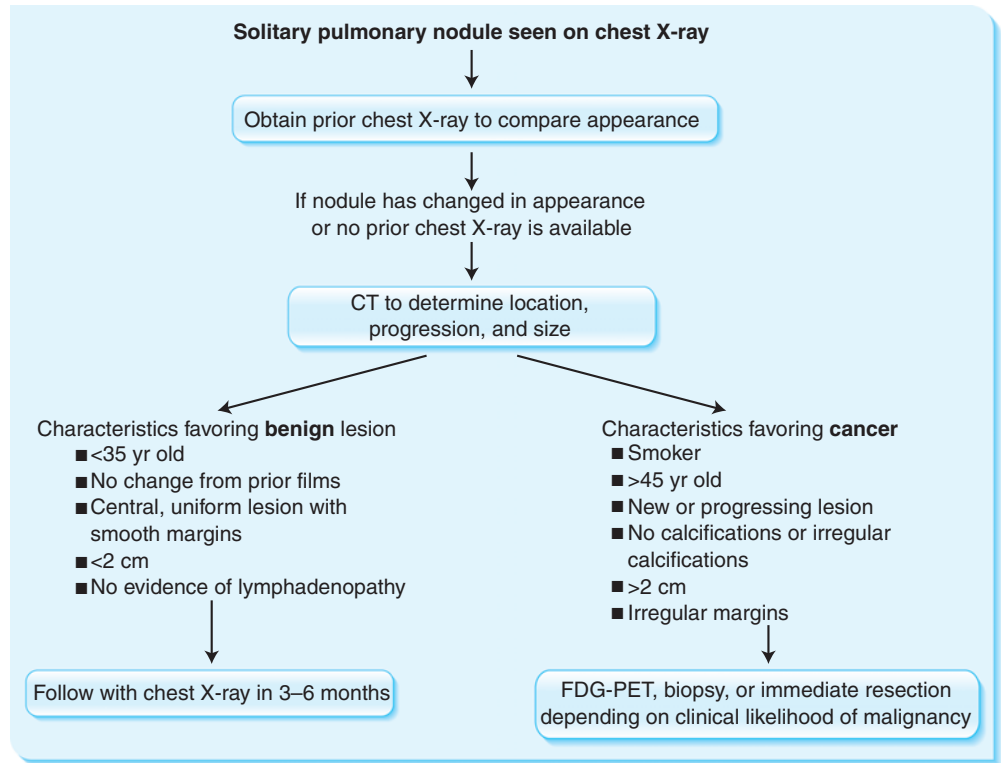
Solitary pulmonary nodules are cancerous in 40% of cases.

FIGURE 2-6 Chest X-ray demonstrating a solitary pulmonary nodule (arrows); in this patient, the finding was determined to be a loculated pleural effusion.



(From Daffner, R. H. [1999]. *Clinical Radiology: The Essentials* [2nd ed.]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

FIGURE 2-7 Workup of the solitary pulmonary nodule.



CT, computed tomography; FDG-PET, (18)F-2-fluoro-2-deoxy-D-glucose positron emission tomography.

B. Lung cancer

1. Most frequently associated with tobacco use (roughly 90% of cases); can also be caused by occupational exposures (e.g., smoke, asbestos, radon)
2. Classified according to cell lineage and histologic appearance (see Table 2-9)
3. H/P = possibly asymptomatic; hemoptysis, cough, dyspnea, pleuritic chest pain, fatigue, weight loss, frequent pulmonary infections; additional symptoms may accompany **paraneoplastic syndromes** (see Table 2-10); local extension of tumors may result in the following:
 - a. **Horner syndrome**: miosis, ptosis, and anhidrosis caused by invasion of cervical ganglia

QUICK HIT

Metastases make up 10% of solitary cancerous lesions and are most commonly associated with breast, colon, prostate, endometrial, and cervical cancers.

QUICK HIT

Adenocarcinoma is the most common type of lung cancer seen in **nonsmokers**.

TABLE 2-9 Common Types of Primary Lung Cancer

Primary Lung Cancer Type	Primary Malignancies (%)	Location	Characteristics
Squamous cell carcinoma	25–35	Central	Cavitary lesions; direct extension to hilar lymph nodes
Adenocarcinoma	25–35	Peripheral	Wide metastases; can be caused by asbestos; pleural effusions show increased hyaluronidase levels; bronchioloalveolar cancer is a subtype that is low grade and occurs in single nodules
Small cell carcinoma	20–25	Central	Rapidly growing; early distant metastases; several paraneoplastic syndromes
Large cell carcinoma	5–15	Peripheral	Late distant metastases, early cavitation

TABLE 2-10 Common Paraneoplastic Syndromes Associated with Primary Lung Cancers

Primary Lung Cancer Type	Associated Paraneoplastic Syndromes
Squamous cell	Hypercalcemia Dermatomyositis
Adenocarcinoma	Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC) Thrombophlebitis Microangiopathic hemolytic anemia Dermatomyositis
Small cell	Cushing syndrome Syndrome of inappropriate ADH secretion (SIADH) Ectopic growth hormone and ACTH secretion Peripheral neuropathy Subacute cerebellar degeneration Eaton-Lambert syndrome (similar presentation to myasthenia gravis) Subacute sensory neuropathy Limbic encephalitis Dermatomyositis
Large cell	Gynecomastia Dermatomyositis

ACTH, adrenocorticotropic hormone; ADH, antidiuretic hormone.

- b. **Pancoast syndrome:** Horner syndrome plus brachial plexus involvement
- c. **Superior vena cava syndrome:** obstruction of venous drainage through superior vena cava and associated head swelling and CNS symptoms
- 4. **Radiology** = initially seen on CXR or CT as pulmonary nodule; bronchoscopy with biopsy and brushings or fine needle aspiration of lesion are diagnostic
- 5. **Treatment** = use of **surgical resection, chemotherapy, and/or radiation therapy** based on **type** of lung cancer (large cell, squamous cell, or adenocarcinoma vs. small cell) and **staging** of disease (based on local extension, lymph node involvement, and presence of metastases) (see Table 2-11)

 **QUICK HIT**

Smoking cessation is the only action shown to prevent lung cancer in active smokers (**never smoking** also prevents lung cancer).

 **MNEMONIC**

The most common sites for lung cancer metastases are listed in the acronym **BLAB**: **B**one, **L**iver, **A**drenals, **B**rain.

TABLE 2-11 Treatment for Lung Cancer Based on Staging Algorithm

Neoplasm Type	Staging	Surgery	Chemotherapy	Radiation Therapy
Non–small cell (squamous cell, adenocarcinoma, large cell)	No mediastinal invasion, no lymph node involvement beyond ipsilateral hilar nodes , no metastases	Surgical resection (lobectomy, video-assisted thoroscopic surgery)	Adjuvant therapy to surgery	Primary therapy (medically inappropriate for surgery) or postoperative adjuvant therapy to surgery
	No mediastinal invasion or metastases, has extension to ipsilateral mediastinal nodes	Consider if significant decrease in tumor size following radiation	Induction therapy if considering surgery or adjuvant to radiation	Primary therapy, continue postoperatively if surgery performed
	Mediastinal invasion, distant nodes, and/or metastases	None	Palliative	Palliative
Small cell	Small lesion, no nodal spread, no metastases	Consider for very small lesions	Primary therapy	Adjuvant therapy to chemotherapy
	All other lesions	None	Primary therapy	Adjuvant therapy after chemotherapy

6. **Complications** = poor prognosis (approximately 10% 5-year survival); recurrence common for primary tumors

C. Laryngeal cancer

1. Squamous cell cancer of the larynx associated with tobacco and alcohol use
2. **H/P** = hoarseness that worsens with time (over several weeks), dysphagia, ear pain, hemoptysis; laryngoscopy may visualize mass and airway obstruction
3. **Labs** = biopsy is diagnostic
4. **Radiology** = magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) or CT with contrast detects soft tissue mass; positron emission tomography (PET) may be useful for detecting lesions earlier in disease course
5. **Treatment** = partial or total laryngectomy used to remove lesions confined to larynx; radiation therapy can be used in conjunction with surgery or as sole therapy in extensive lesions; advanced cases may require combination of surgery, radiation, and chemotherapy to resect lesion while preserving surrounding structures



VI. INTERSTITIAL LUNG DISEASES AND OTHER LUNG DISEASES

A. Idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis (IPF)

1. Inflammatory lung disease causing lung fibrosis; it is of unknown cause and generally affects patients >50 years of age
2. **H/P** = progressive exercise intolerance, dyspnea; dry crackles, JVD, tachypnea, and possible digital clubbing
3. **Labs** = PFT will show restrictive lung disease characteristics (e.g., FEV₁/FVC normal, decreased FVC, decreased TLC, decreased compliance); bronchioalveolar lavage shows increased polymorphonuclear (PMN) cells; lung biopsy demonstrates extensive fibrosis and loss of parenchymal architecture
4. **Radiology** = CXR shows reticulonodular pattern and “honeycomb” lung in advanced cases; CT will show lung fields with “ground glass” appearance
5. **Treatment** = corticosteroids combined with either azathioprine or cyclophosphamide are helpful in some patients (follow PFTs to evaluate effectiveness); worsening PFTs should indicate need to change drug regimen; lung transplant is frequently indicated
6. **Complications** = progressive lung fibrosis with frequent mortality within 5 years; most patients do not survive sufficiently long to receive a lung transplant

B. Sarcoidosis

1. Systemic disease characterized by noncaseating granulomas, hilar adenopathy, pulmonary infiltrates, and skin lesions; unknown etiology
2. **Risk factors** = blacks > whites; females > males; most frequently occurs between 10 and 40 years of age
3. **H/P** = cough, malaise, weight loss, dyspnea, arthritis (knees, ankles), chest pain; fever, erythema nodosum (i.e., tender red nodules on shins and arms), lymphadenopathy, vision loss, cranial nerve palsies
4. **Labs** = increased serum angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE), increased calcium, hypercalciuria, increased alkaline phosphatase, decreased WBC, increased erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR); PFT shows decreased FVC and decreased D_{Lco}
5. **Radiology** = CXR shows bilateral hilar lymphadenopathy and pulmonary infiltrates (ground glass appearance)
6. **Treatment** = occasionally self-resolving; corticosteroids in chronic cases; cytotoxic drugs can be used with failure of steroid therapy; lung transplantation is rarely required (only in severe cases)

C. Pneumoconioses

1. Interstitial lung diseases that result from long-term occupational exposure to substances that cause pulmonary inflammation (see Table 2-12)



QUICK HIT

Patients with sarcoidosis frequently show anergy (no reaction) to a skin test or PPD.

TABLE 2-12 Common Pneumoconioses and How to Diagnose Them

Disease	Exposure	Labs	Radiology	Complications
Asbestosis	Working with insulation, construction, demolition, building maintenance, automobiles	PFT shows restrictive pattern; asbestos fibers seen in pleural biopsy ^a	Multinodular opacities, pleural effusions, blurring of heart/diaphragm; chest CT shows linear pleural/parenchymal fibrosis	Increased risk of malignant mesothelioma and lung cancer; synergistic effect with tobacco
Silicosis	Mining, pottery making, sandblasting, cutting granite	PFT shows restrictive pattern	Small apical nodular opacities; hilar adenopathy	Increased risk of TB infection ; progressive fibrosis
Coal worker disease	Coal mining	PFT shows restrictive pattern	Small apical nodular opacities	Progressive fibrosis
Berylliosis	Electronics , ceramics, tool, die manufacturing	Pulmonary edema, diffuse granuloma formation	Diffuse infiltrates; hilar adenopathy	Increased risk of lung cancer; may need chronic corticosteroid treatment to maintain respiratory function

^aNot needed for diagnosis with known exposure to asbestos and suggestive radiographic workup. CT, computed tomography; PFT, pulmonary function test; TB, tuberculosis.

- H/P = symptoms begin when significant pulmonary fibrosis has occurred (several years between exposure and onset of symptoms is common); cough, dyspnea on exertion, heavy sputum production; rales and wheezing are heard on auscultation, digital clubbing
- Labs = PFT shows a restrictive pattern
- Radiology = CXR shows multinodular opacities; CT shows signs of pulmonary fibrosis
- Treatment = usually, no successful treatments are available for these conditions; prevention (e.g., proper air filters, following safe-handling recommendations) is vital to avoiding disease

D. Goodpasture syndrome

- Progressive autoimmune disease of lungs and kidneys caused by **antiglomerular basement membrane (anti-GBM) antibodies** and characterized by intra-alveolar hemorrhage and glomerulonephritis
- H/P = **hemoptysis**, dyspnea, recent respiratory infection
- Labs = positive **anti-GBM antibodies**; PFT shows restrictive pattern but increased $D_{L_{CO}}$ (caused by the presence of Hgb in alveoli); urinalysis shows proteinuria and granular casts; renal biopsy shows crescentic glomerulonephritis and IgG deposition along glomerular capillaries
- Radiology = CXR shows bilateral alveolar infiltration
- Treatment = plasmapheresis to remove autoantibodies; corticosteroids and immunosuppressive agents

E. Granulomatosis with polyangiitis (Wegener)

- Rare disease with granulomatous inflammation and necrosis of lung and other organ systems; previously called Wegener's granulomatosis
- Caused by systemic vasculitis that mainly affects lung and kidney, causing formation of noncaseating granulomas and destruction of lung parenchyma
- H/P = hemoptysis, dyspnea, myalgias, chronic sinusitis; **ulcerations of nasopharynx**, fever; additional symptoms from renal (e.g., mild hematuria), CNS (e.g., hearing loss, sensory neuropathy, cranial nerve dysfunction), ophthalmologic

**QUICK HIT**

95% of PEs arise from a deep venous thrombosis (DVT) in the leg.

**MNEMONIC**

Risk factors for PE may be remembered as the 7 Hs: **H**eridity (genetic hypocoagulability), **H**istory (prior DVT or PE), **H**ypomobility (fracture, prolonged travel, surgery, obesity), **H**ypovolemia (dehydration), **H**ypercoagulability (cancer, smoking), **H**ormones (pregnancy, oral contraceptive pill [OCP] use), and **H**yperhomocysteinemia.

NEXT STEP

A positive or negative V/Q scan is diagnostic or rules out PE, but an equivocal scan indicates need for angiography.

**QUICK HIT**

LMWH is an acceptable alternative to heparin and does not require partial thromboplastin time (PTT) monitoring (but may be assessed by measuring antifactor Xa levels).

- (e.g., conjunctivitis, proptosis, corneal ulceration, diplopia), and cardiac (e.g., arrhythmia) involvement
4. **Labs** = positive cytoplasmic antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibody (c-ANCA); biopsy shows noncaseating granulomas; renal biopsy detects vasculitic process
 5. **Treatment** = cytotoxic therapy (e.g., cyclophosphamide), corticosteroids
 6. **Complications** = rapidly fatal if untreated

VII. VASCULAR AND THROMBOEMBOLIC PULMONARY CONDITIONS

A. Pulmonary embolism (PE)

1. Occlusion of pulmonary vasculature by a dislodged thrombus
2. Increasing pulmonary artery pressure caused by occlusion leads to right-sided heart failure, hypoxia, and pulmonary infarction
3. **Risk factors** = **immobilization**, **cancer**, prolonged travel, recent surgery, pregnancy, oral contraceptive use, hypercoagulability, obesity, fractures, prior DVT, or severe burns
4. **H/P** = **sudden dyspnea**, pleuritic chest pain, cough, syncope, feeling of impending doom; fever, tachypnea, tachycardia, cyanosis, loud S₂, decreased breath sounds over regions of effusion
5. **Labs** = increased D-dimer; ABG shows decreased O₂ (<80 mm Hg), **increased A-a gradient**; ventilation-perfusion (V/Q) **scan** may show areas of mismatch
6. **Electrocardiogram (ECG)** = tachycardia, may show S wave in lead I and T-wave inversion in lead III
7. **Radiology** = CXR may be normal or may show pleural effusion or wedge-shaped infarct; pulmonary angiography is diagnostic but a higher risk study; **spiral CT** may detect proximal PE; V/Q scan can detect areas of V/Q mismatch
8. **Treatment** = **supplemental O₂** to maximize saturation; IV fluids or cardiac pressors as needed for hypotension; **anticoagulate** initially with either low molecular weight heparin (LMWH) or unfractionated heparin (titrated for PTT 1.5 to 2.5 times normal); patients treated with unfractionated heparin need to be converted to either LMWH or warfarin (given to achieve goal international normalized ratio [INR] 2 to 3) for **3 to 6 months**; inferior vena cava filter can be placed if anticoagulation is contraindicated; thrombolysis may be considered for patients with massive PE or those with no cardiac contraindications, recent trauma, or surgery

B. Pulmonary hypertension

1. Increased pulmonary artery pressure caused by PE, **valvular disease**, left-to-right shunts, COPD, or idiopathic causes
2. Idiopathic pulmonary hypertension has a high mortality rate within a few years of diagnosis.
3. **H/P** = dyspnea, fatigue, deep chest pain, cough, syncope, cyanosis; digital clubbing, **loud S₂**, JVD, hepatomegaly
4. **Labs** = increased red blood cell count (RBC) and WBC
5. **ECG** = right ventricular hypertrophy
6. **Radiology** = CXR shows large pulmonary artery and large right ventricle; echocardiogram is useful for measuring pulmonary artery pressure noninvasively and detecting valvular disease; cardiac catheterization is the gold standard test for measuring pressures but carries greater risks than other studies; PFTs may be useful in diagnosing underlying pulmonary disease
7. **Treatment** = treat underlying condition; supplemental O₂ helps maintain blood oxygenation; vasodilators indicated for idiopathic and pulmonary causes to decrease pulmonary vascular resistance; anticoagulants indicated in patients with idiopathic, embolic, or cardiac causes to decrease risk of pulmonary thrombus formation

C. Pulmonary edema

1. Increased fluid in lungs caused by increased pulmonary venous pressure and hydrostatic leak of fluid from vessels
2. Caused by **left-sided heart failure**, myocardial infarction (MI), **valvular disease**, arrhythmias, ARDS
3. **H/P** = dyspnea, **orthopnea**, **paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea**; tachycardia, frothy sputum, wheezing, rhonchi, rales, dullness to percussion, peripheral edema, S₃ or S₄ heart sound, hypertension
4. **Labs** = increased brain natriuretic peptide (BNP) or abnormal cardiac enzymes help elucidate a cardiac cause
5. **ECG** = T-wave abnormalities or QT prolongation are common changes and can occur suddenly with acute onset
6. **Radiology** = CXR shows fluid throughout lungs, cephalization of vessels (i.e., increased vascular markings in upper lung fields), and Kerley B lines (i.e., prominent horizontal interstitial markings in lower lung fields)
7. **Treatment** = treat underlying condition; diuretics, salt restriction, O₂, vasodilators; nesiritide may improve symptoms in cases with a cardiac cause; pressors may be required to improve cardiac output if perfusion is inadequate; Swan-Ganz catheter placement is useful for monitoring response to therapy



QUICK HIT

A pulmonary wedge pressure measured with a Swan-Ganz catheter is suggestive of a cardiac cause for pulmonary edema if >18 mm Hg and is suggestive of ARDS if <18 mm Hg.

VIII. PLEURAL DISEASES

A. Pleural effusion

1. Serous or lymphatic fluid collection in pleural space is classified according to protein and lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) content and is caused by **changes in hydrostatic and oncotic pressure** (transudative), **inflammation** (exudative), or lymphatic duct rupture (lymphatic).
2. **H/P** = possibly asymptomatic; dyspnea, pleuritic chest pain, weakness; decreased breath sounds, dullness to percussion, decreased tactile fremitus
3. **Labs** = pleural fluid analysis used for protein and LDH levels (i.e., transudate vs. exudates), glucose (low in TB, malignancy, autoimmune diseases), pH (acidic in malignancy, TB, empyema), amylase (high in pancreatitis, esophageal rupture, some malignancies), triglycerides (high in thoracic duct rupture), complete blood cell count (CBC), Gram stain, and cytology (see Table 2-13)
4. **Radiology** = CXR shows blunting of costophrenic angles; decubitus CXR can demonstrate whether fluid is loculated or free-flowing; CT is useful for measuring pleural thickness or distinguishing a discrete collection from a diffuse one (e.g., abscess vs. empyema)
5. **Treatment** = **treat underlying condition**; relieve pressure on lung with thoracentesis and chest tube placement; for cases with empyema (i.e., effusion of pus due to infection), a chest tube is required; if recurrent malignant effusion occurs, use pleurodesis (talc or other irritant) to scar the pleural layers together



QUICK HIT

25% of pleural effusions are associated with neoplasm.

TABLE 2-13 Distinctive Characteristics and Causes of Types of Pleural Effusions

Effusion	Pleural: Serum Protein Ratio	Pleural: Serum LDH Ratio	Total Pleural LDH	Causes
Transudate	<0.5	<0.6	<2/3 the upper limit of normal serum LDH	CHF, cirrhosis, kidney diseases (nephrotic syndrome)
Exudate	>0.5	>0.6	>2/3 the upper limit of normal serum LDH	Infection, cancer, vasculitis

CHF, congestive heart failure; LDH, lactate dehydrogenase.

**MNEMONIC**

Remember the common causes of PTX by the acronym **A CHEST IN**: **A**sthma, **C**ystic fibrosis, **H**IV (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome [AIDS]), **E**mphysema, **S**pontaneous Trauma, **I**atrogenic, **N**eoplasm.

**QUICK HIT**

The classic patient for a spontaneous closed pneumothorax is a young, thin, and tall male.

TABLE 2-14 Types of Pneumothorax and Their Causes

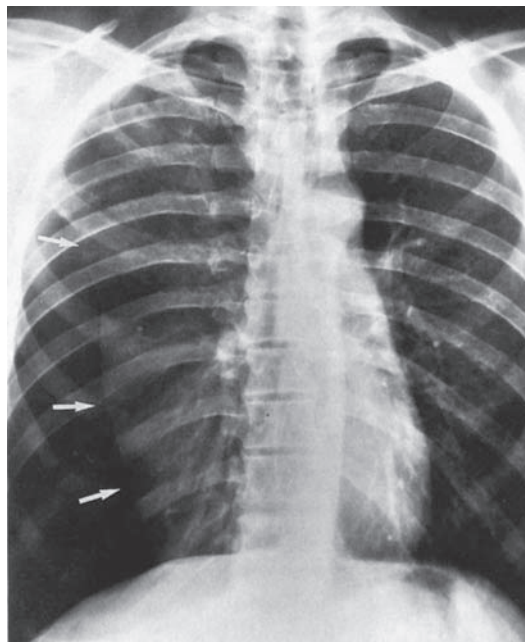
Type of Pneumothorax	Mechanism	Causes
Closed	Internal rupture of respiratory system; chest wall intact	Spontaneous, COPD, TB, blunt trauma
Open	Passage of air through opening in chest wall	Penetrating trauma, iatrogenic (central line placement, thoracocentesis, biopsy)
Tension	Open pneumothorax; “ball-valve” condition allows air to enter but not leave pleural space	Trauma

COPD, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease; TB, tuberculosis.

B. Pneumothorax (PTX)

1. Collection of air in pleural space that predisposes patient to pulmonary collapse
2. Can occur spontaneously (less common) or secondary to trauma or a pulmonary medical condition (more common) (see Table 2-14)
3. **H/P** = **unilateral chest pain**, dyspnea; **decreased chest wall movement**, unilateral decreased breath sounds, increased resonance to percussion, decreased tactile fremitus; respiratory distress, decreased Sao_2 , hypotension, JVD, or tracheal deviation suggest tension pneumothorax
4. **Radiology** = CXR shows lung retraction and mediastinal shift away from affected side; tension PTX will demonstrate tracheal deviation (see Figure 2-8)
5. **Treatment**
 - a. Small (<15% lung field) PTX may resolve with supplemental O_2 only.
 - b. Larger (>15%) PTX requires **chest tube placement**.

FIGURE 2-8 Chest X-ray demonstrating tension pneumothorax. Note compressed visceral pleural edge (arrows) caused by intrapleural air and tracheal deviation and mediastinal shift toward the left.



(From Daffner, R. H. [1999]. *Clinical Radiology: The Essentials* [2nd ed.]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

- c. Open PTX with small wound is treated with chest tube and occlusive dressing.
- d. Open PTX with larger wounds should be treated with attempted closure and should carry a low threshold for intubation.
- e. Tension pneumothorax requires **immediate needle decompression** (fourth or fifth intercostal space at the midaxillary line, or the second or third intercostal space at the midclavicular line) and chest tube placement.
- f. Recurrent pneumothorax may require pleurodesis.



NEXT STEP

With clinical suspicion for tension pneumothorax, do not wait for a CXR—perform **immediate needle decompression**.

C. Hemothorax

1. Collection of blood in pleural space caused by trauma, malignancy, TB, or pulmonary infarction
2. H/P = dyspnea, pleuritic chest pain, weakness; decreased breath sounds, dullness to percussion, decreased tactile fremitus
3. Labs = thoracentesis shows bloody effusion
4. Radiology = CXR resembles that for pleural effusion (i.e., blunting of costophrenic angles)
5. Treatment = supplemental O₂, chest tube placement; treat underlying cause
6. Complications = thrombi formation; fibrosis can occur if blood is not drained from pleural space

D. Malignant mesothelioma

1. Uncommon tumor occurring on visceral pleura or pericardium with very poor prognosis
2. **Increased incidence with asbestos exposure** (occurs 20 years after exposure)
3. H/P = nonpleuritic chest pain, dyspnea; dullness to percussion over lung bases, palpable chest wall mass, scoliosis toward lesion
4. Labs = pleural biopsy is usually diagnostic; thoracentesis of an associated pleural effusion can be used for cytology studies
5. Radiology = CXR shows pleural thickening, pleural effusion; chest CT can display extent of local disease; PET scan can be used to detect extrathoracic disease
6. Treatment = extrapleural pneumonectomy with adjuvant chemotherapy and radiation therapy; chemotherapy alone used for unresectable disease



IX. SLEEP APNEA

A. Episodic cessation of airflow during sleep leading to desaturations and frequent arousals

B. Types

1. **Obstructive:** obstruction of upper airway during sleep with continued respiratory effort; most often associated with obesity or abnormal pharyngeal anatomy
2. **Central:** loss of central respiratory drive leads to cessation of airflow **and** respiratory effort
3. **Mixed:** combines both obstructive and central characteristics

C. Risk factors = obesity, sedative use; males more than females

D. Etiology is unknown but may be linked to abnormal feedback control during sleep or decreased sensitivity of upper airway muscles to stimulation.

E. H/P = fatigue, excessive daytime sleepiness, snoring, gasping or choking during sleep, morning headaches or confusion, impaired daytime function because of sleepiness; obesity common, anatomic abnormalities of palate or pharynx may be visible

F. Labs = Epworth sleepiness scale is useful for predicting likelihood of sleep apnea as cause for daytime somnolence (score >10 common in sleep apnea); polysomnography is definitive test that measures apnea index (AI; average apneic episodes per hour), Sao₂, and number of arousals

**QUICK HIT**

Bariatric surgery is associated with resolution of sleep apnea in 86% of cases.

**QUICK HIT**

Atelectasis is frequently blamed for postoperative fever, but the relationship is more likely coincidental than causal.

**QUICK HIT**

If atelectasis lasts >72 hr, pneumonia is likely to develop.

NEXT STEP

It is important to **visualize** insertion of the endotracheal tube between the vocal cords to reduce the risk of **esophageal** placement.

G. Treatment

1. **Obstructive** = consider weight loss (possibly bariatric surgery) and stop sedative use; **continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP)** is helpful in chronic cases to maintain airway patency; surgical correction of tonsillar hypertrophy, polyp removal, correction of congenital upper airway deformities, or tracheostomy may be necessary in severe or refractory cases
2. **Central** = respiratory stimulants; phrenic nerve pacemaking may be needed in severe cases

**X. PULMONARY SURGICAL CONCERNS****A. Atelectasis**

1. Localized alveolar collapse; **common after surgery** (especially abdominal) and **anesthesia** (generally not clinically serious); can also occur in asthmatics, after foreign body aspiration, or from mass effect (e.g., tumors, pulmonary lesions, or lymphadenopathy)
2. **H/P** = asymptomatic if mild or slow development; pleuritic chest pain, dyspnea; fever, decreased breath sounds, dullness to percussion over affected area
3. **Radiology** = CXR will show fluffy infiltrates in mild cases and lobar collapse in cases of airway obstruction
4. **Treatment** = **incentive spirometry**, ambulation, and inpatient physical therapy are important for prevention in the hospital and postoperatively; severe cases require upper airway suctioning or bronchoscopy with deeper suctioning

B. Intubation

1. Placement of tube into trachea to maintain airway patency and allow mechanical ventilation during anesthesia and times of respiratory distress
2. Almost all intubations are performed **orally** (nasal intubation performed for oral surgery, jaw surgery, and in cases when a laryngoscope cannot help to visualize the vocal cords).
3. **Placement**
 - a. Appropriate anesthesia ± muscle relaxants administered
 - b. Patient positioned with moderate cervical flexion
 - c. Laryngoscope inserted into mouth and used to lift jaw and visualize lower pharynx (pressure applied to **cricoid** may aid in visualization)
 - d. Endotracheal tube inserted past vocal cords (**direct visualization is important**) to depth of 21 to 23 cm (measured at lips)
 - e. Proper placement is checked by measuring **end tidal CO₂** (rise should follow expiration) and confirming bilateral lung expansion with **auscultation**.
 - f. Endotracheal tube cuff is inflated, and tube is secured.
4. **Complications** = dental injury during placement, placement of tube in esophagus, increased risk of infection
5. If intubation is required for >3 weeks, convert to a **tracheostomy** (i.e., surgical insertion of breathing tube through anterior neck into trachea)

C. Ventilation

1. Ventilation is assisted respiration that is required during surgery under anesthesia; it may also be required to maintain patent airway or in cases where the patient is not able to breathe without assistance (e.g., neurologic injury, respiratory decompensation, oxygenation failure, decreased respiratory drive) (see Table 2-15).
2. Inspiration is ventilator driven; expiration occurs through natural recoil of the lungs.
3. Tidal volume (TV), respiratory rate, Fio₂, and inspiratory pressure (i.e., pressure forcing each inspiration) may be adjusted depending on patient's respiratory drive, pulmonary compliance, and oxygenation status.
4. PEEP helps to prevent alveolar collapse during expiration.

TABLE 2-15 Modes of Mechanical Ventilation

Mode	Machine Actions	Patient Actions	Uses
Controlled mechanical ventilation (CMV)	Determines and automatically delivers tidal volume (TV) and rate	No effort	General anesthesia, overdose
Intermittent mandatory ventilation (IMV)	Determines and automatically delivers TV and rate	Can breathe spontaneously between mechanical breaths	Weaning patient from ventilator
Synchronized intermittent mandatory ventilation (SIMV)	Machine tries to synchronize rate with patient-initiated breaths; automatically delivers TV and rate	Can breathe spontaneously between mechanical breaths	More comfortable for patient because of attempted synchronization; frequently used in place of IMV
Assist-control ventilation (AC)	Machine senses patient's attempt to breathe and delivers full preset TV; backup rate if no spontaneous breaths	Patient-driven unless no attempts to breathe (backup rate)	Used when patient is more awake and in progressive weaning
Continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP)	Machine maintains airway patency to decrease work of breathing	Patient does all breathing	Used when patient relies less on ventilator; intubation not required

- Patients are weaned from the ventilator by changing from more patient-independent modes to more patient-dependent modes (e.g., synchronized intermittent mandatory ventilation [SIMV] to CPAP).
- Extubation** (removal of the tube) can be performed when the patient is capable of breathing independently.
 - Ventilator is weaned to allow spontaneous breathing by the patient.
 - Predictors of weaning success include maximal inspiratory pressure <30 cm H₂O, vital capacity >10 mL/kg, minute ventilation <10 L/min, Pao₂:Fio₂ ratio >200, and frequency:tidal volume ratio <100 breaths/min/L.

XI. PEDIATRIC PULMONARY CONCERNS

A. Croup

- Acute inflammation of larynx caused by **parainfluenza virus types 1 and 2**; less commonly by parainfluenza virus types 2 and 3, respiratory syncytial virus (RSV), influenza virus, rubeola, adenovirus, or *Mycoplasma pneumoniae*
- Most common between 3 months and 5 years of age
- H/P = nasal congestion, **barking cough**, dyspnea, **inspiratory stridor**; fever, mild pharyngeal erythema, lymphadenopathy; respiratory distress in severe cases
- Radiology** = neck radiographs may show subglottic narrowing of airway (i.e., **steeple sign**) (see Figure 2-9)
- Treatment** = supportive care (e.g., hydration, humidified air, rest, analgesia); aerosolized epinephrine and inhaled corticosteroids can be used in severe cases to decrease pharyngeal inflammation; with concerns for respiratory distress, the child should be admitted for observation

B. Epiglottitis

- Rapidly progressive infection of epiglottitis and surrounding tissues that can cause airway obstruction
- Most common in children from 2 to 7 years of age
- Caused by ***Haemophilus influenzae* type B (Hib)** infection; can also be caused by streptococcal or other *H. influenzae* bacteria
- H/P = **dysphagia**, drooling, soft stridor, **muffled voice**, anxiety from symptoms; sudden high fever, inspiratory retractions; child may lean forward with hands on knees to aid breathing; erythematous and swollen epiglottitis



MNEMONIC

Remember the symptoms of severe cases of croup by the **3 Ss**: **S**eal-bark cough, **S**ubglottic swelling, and **S**tridor.

NEXT STEP

If child develops stridor at rest, hospitalization and respiratory monitoring is needed.



QUICK HIT

In cases of suspected epiglottitis, examine the patient's throat **only** in a setting in which prompt intubation is possible because examination of the patient's throat can lead to additional throat irritation and resulting occlusion.



QUICK HIT

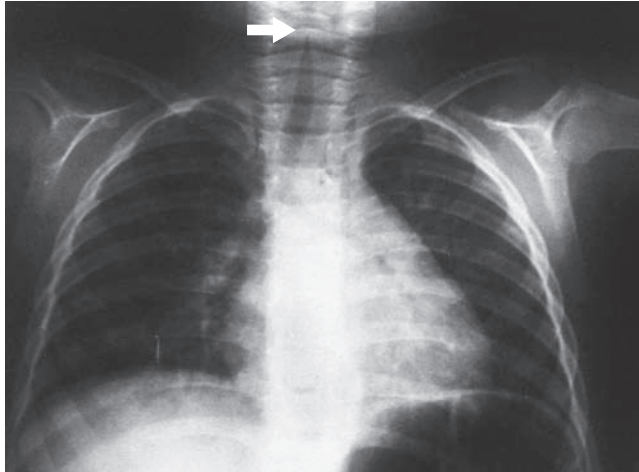
Widespread use of the **Hib vaccine** has greatly decreased the incidence of epiglottitis.

**MNEMONIC**

Remember the causes of acute stridor in a child by the mnemonic **ABCDEFGH**: Abscess, Bacterial tracheitis, Croup, Diphtheria, Epiglottitis, Foreign body, Gas (poisonous), Hypersensitivity reaction.

FIGURE 2-9

Chest X-ray of a child with croup demonstrating subglottic narrowing of the airway (arrow), which is reminiscent of the shape of a steeple (steeple sign).



(From Harwood-Nuss, A., Wolfson, A. B., Linden, C. H., Shepherd, S. M., & Stenklyft, P. H. [2001]. *The Clinical Practice of Emergency Medicine* [3rd ed.]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

5. **Labs** = culture from swab of epiglottis can determine causative bacteria (should only be performed if patient is intubated)
6. **Radiology** = neck radiographs show swollen, opacified epiglottis that partially obstructs the airway (i.e., **thumbprint sign**); laryngoscope (only used in controlled situations) can visualize red and swollen epiglottis (see Figure 2-10)
7. **Treatment** = keep child calm; admit for close observation and respiratory monitoring; unless airway obstruction is mild, **intubate** (nasotracheal) to maintain airway patency; antibiotics for 7 to 10 days; airway obstruction preventing intubation requires emergent tracheostomy

C. Bronchiolitis

1. Viral infection of bronchioles caused by RSV (most cases) or parainfluenza virus type 3 (less common)
2. Most commonly occurs in winter and spring; usually found in children <2 years of age
3. **H/P** = nasal congestion, cough, **respiratory distress**; wheezing, fever, tachypnea, crackles, prolonged expiration, hyperresonance to percussion

FIGURE 2-10

Lateral chest X-ray of a child with epiglottitis demonstrating a swollen epiglottis (arrow) that resembles a thumbprint (thumbprint sign).



(From Harwood-Nuss, A., Wolfson, A. B., Linden, C. H., Shepherd, S. M., & Stenklyft, P. H. [2001]. *The Clinical Practice of Emergency Medicine* [3rd ed.]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

4. **Radiology** = CXR shows hyperinflation of lungs and patchy infiltrates
5. **Treatment** = adequate hydration, humidified air, inhaled corticosteroids, and β_2 -agonists; children with respiratory distress or hypoxemia should be admitted for observation and respiratory monitoring
6. **Complications** = increased risk of developing asthma

D. Respiratory distress syndrome of the newborn

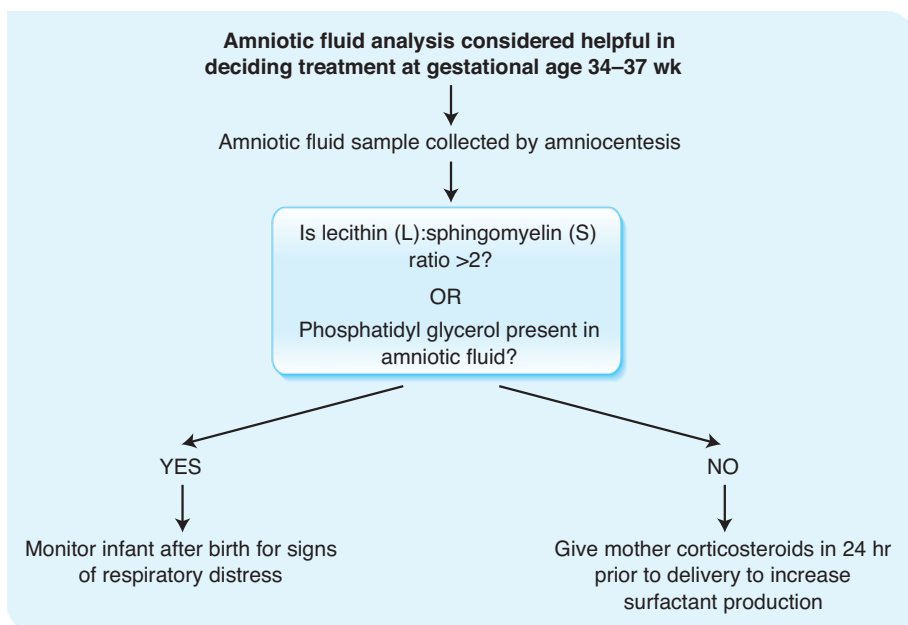
1. Preterm infants (e.g., 24 to 37 weeks' gestation and especially before 30 weeks' gestation) have **surfactant deficiency** because of lung immaturity that leads to decreased lung compliance, atelectasis, and respiratory failure.
2. **H/P** = **presentation within 2 days of birth**; cyanosis, nasal flaring, expiratory grunting, intercostal retractions, respiratory rate >60 breaths/min, crackles, decreased breath sounds
3. **Labs** = ABG shows increased CO_2 , decreased O_2 ; amniotic fluid analysis (see Figure 2-11) not usually helpful but may guide treatment between 34 and 37 weeks' gestation by determining fetal lung maturity with the amniotic lecithin:sphingomyelin ratio (always treat for <34 weeks, treatment typically unnecessary for >37 weeks)
4. **Radiology** = CXR shows bilateral atelectasis with **ground glass** appearance and decreased lung volumes
5. **Treatment** = maternal administration of corticosteroids before initiation of labor helps to speed fetal lung maturation; neonatal intensive care unit (NICU) admission appropriate for close observation; supplemental O_2 and **surfactant replacement** therapy mainstays of therapy; intubation should be performed for any neonate not responding to treatment or requiring high levels of O_2 to maintain adequate Sao_2
6. **Complications** = increased risk of developing **asthma** in childhood compared with other children

E. Meconium aspiration syndrome

1. Aspiration of meconium (i.e., fetal stool passed into amniotic sac) predelivery, causing obstruction of airways and pneumonia
2. **H/P** = **meconium-stained amniotic fluid** seen during delivery; cyanosis, intercostal retractions; distended chest, tachypnea

FIGURE 2-11

Amniotic fluid analysis protocol used to determine fetal lung maturity.




QUICK HIT

CF is the most common fatal autosomal recessive disorder in the United States.

3. **Labs** = consider blood culture to rule out sepsis
4. **Radiology** = CXR shows atelectasis, areas of hyperinflation, or pneumothorax
5. **Treatment** = suction nose, mouth, and upper airway at birth; supplemental O₂; intubate for worsening respiratory distress; surfactant therapy may be useful for improving respiratory function; consider empiric antibiotic therapy if concerned for development of pneumonia
6. **Complications** = pulmonary hypertension can develop if not promptly treated; increased risk of developing asthma during childhood

F. Cystic fibrosis (CF)

1. Autosomal recessive disorder caused by defect in chloride-pumping channel in exocrine glands; ducts of exocrine glands (e.g., lungs, pancreas, reproductive glands) become clogged with thick secretions
2. Presents in childhood and is universally fatal, but proper treatment may allow survival into late 20s or early 30s
3. Affects both pulmonary (recurrent infections, chronic sinusitis) and gastrointestinal systems (pancreatic enzyme deficiencies, malabsorption)
4. **Risk factors** = whites at higher risk than other races
5. **H/P** = **recurrent pulmonary infections** (e.g., *Pseudomonas*, *Staphylococcus aureus*), dyspnea, hemoptysis, chronic sinusitis, cough, meconium ileus at birth, steatorrhea, failure to thrive; cyanosis, digital clubbing, esophageal varices, rectal prolapse
6. **Labs** = decreased serum Na; **sweat test** shows increased Na and increased Cl (>60 mEq/L in children, >80 in adults); genetic testing can locate mutation in CF transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR) gene in suspected cases or in carriers of the gene considering pregnancy
7. **Treatment** = deoxyribonuclease (DNase) aids in decreasing the viscosity of secretions; chest physical therapy helps to clear secretions; bronchodilators, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), antibiotics for any suspected pulmonary exacerbation or infection; supplemental pancreatic enzymes and vitamins A, D, E, and K given for malabsorption

Gastrointestinal Disorders

I. GASTROINTESTINAL (GI) INFECTIONS

A. Viral gastroenteritis

1. Self-limited viral infection of GI tract
2. Common agents include **Norwalk virus**, Coxsackie virus A1, echovirus, and adenovirus; **rotavirus** is common in children.
3. **History and physical (H/P)** = nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, abdominal pain, myalgias; low-grade fever
4. **Labs** = no fecal white blood cells; viral culture indicates pathogen (usually unnecessary)
5. **Treatment** = self-limited (48 to 72 hours); maintain hydration status

B. Bacterial gastroenteritis (see Table 3-1)

C. Parasitic and protozoan GI infections (see Table 3-2, Figure 3-1)

D. Hepatitis

1. Inflammatory disease of the liver is most commonly caused by **viral infection**; it can also result from alcohol or toxins.
2. Acute hepatitis is initial disease; chronic form is disease lasting >6 months
3. **Risk factors** = intravenous drug abuse (IVDA), alcoholism, travel to developing nations, poor sanitation
4. Patterns of transmission vary with virus type (see Table 3-3).
5. **H/P** = possibly asymptomatic; malaise, arthralgias, fatigue, nausea, vomiting, right upper quadrant pain; jaundice, scleral icterus, tender hepatomegaly, splenomegaly, lymphadenopathy
6. **Labs** = bilirubinuria, **increased aspartate aminotransferase (AST)**, **increased alanine aminotransferase (ALT)**, increased bilirubin (total), increased alkaline phosphatase
 - a. Hepatitis A virus (HAV): anti-HAV IgM antibodies present during illness; anti-HAV IgG antibodies present after resolution
 - b. Hepatitis B virus (HBV): antigens and antibodies detected vary with disease state (see Figure 3-2, Table 3-4)
 - c. Hepatitis C virus (HCV): anti-HCV antibodies and positive HCV polymerase chain reaction indicate infection (see Figure 3-3)
7. **Treatment** = rest, frequently self-limited (**except HCV**); interferon- α (IFN- α) or antivirals for HBV; IFN- α \pm ribavirin for HCV; hospitalization for hepatic failure; immunoglobulin given to close contacts of patients with HAV; HAV vaccine given to travelers to developing nations; HBV vaccine routinely given to children and health care workers

**QUICK HIT**

Bacterial GI infections are most frequently related to contaminated food consumption.

**QUICK HIT**

Hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS) is a complication of *E. coli* O157:H7 infection and is characterized by thrombocytopenia, hemolytic anemia, and acute renal failure; it is usually self-limited.

TABLE 3-1 Common Pathogens in Bacterial Gastroenteritis

Pathogen	Source	Signs and Symptoms	Treatment
<i>Bacillus cereus</i>	Fried rice	Vomiting within several hours of eating, diarrhea later	Self-limited; hydration
<i>Campylobacter jejuni</i>	Poultry (second most common foodborne bacterial GI infection)	Bloody diarrhea, abdominal pain, fever; rare Guillain-Barré syndrome	Hydration, erythromycin; generally self-limited
<i>Clostridium botulinum</i>	Honey, home-canned foods	Nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, flaccid paralysis	Botulism antitoxin (not given to infants); self-limited
<i>Clostridium difficile</i>	Antibiotic-induced suppression of normal colonic flora	Watery or bloody diarrhea; gray pseudomembranes seen on colonic mucosa	Metronidazole, vancomycin
<i>Escherichia coli</i> (enterotoxigenic)	Food/water (travelers' diarrhea)	Watery diarrhea, vomiting, fever	Hydration; self-limited (often treated with FQ)
<i>E. coli</i> type O157:H7 (enterohemorrhagic)	Ground beef, indirect fecal contamination	Bloody diarrhea, vomiting, fever, abdominal pain (risk of HUS)	Hydration; self-limited; antibiotics may actually worsen symptoms because of toxin release
<i>Staphylococcus aureus</i>	Room-temperature food (caused by preformed toxin)	Vomiting within several hours of eating; diarrhea later	Self-limited; hydration
<i>Salmonella</i> species	Eggs, poultry, milk, fresh produce (most common foodborne bacterial GI infection)	Nausea, abdominal pain, bloody diarrhea, fever, vomiting	Hydration; self-limited; treat immunocompromised patients with FQ
<i>Shigella</i> species	Food/water; associated with overcrowding	Fever, nausea, vomiting, severe bloody diarrhea, abdominal pain (risk of HUS)	Hydration; self-limited; ciprofloxacin, TMP-SMX in severe cases
<i>Vibrio cholerae</i>	Water, seafood	Copious watery diarrhea, signs of dehydration	Hydration ; tetracycline or doxycycline decreases disease length
<i>Vibrio parahaemolyticus</i>	Seafood (oysters)	Abdominal pain, watery diarrhea within 24 hr of eating	Hydration; self-limited
<i>Yersinia enterocolitica</i>	Pork, fresh produce	Abdominal pain, bloody diarrhea, right lower quadrant pain, fever	Hydration; self-limited

FQ, fluoroquinolone; GI, gastrointestinal; HUS, hemolytic uremic syndrome; TMP-SMX, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole.

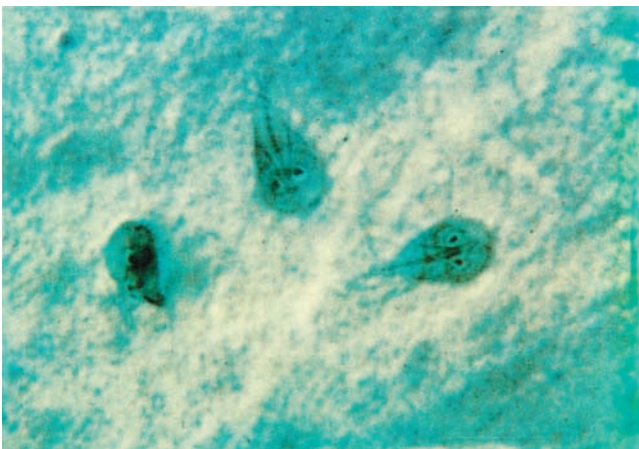
TABLE 3-2 Common Pathogens in Parasitic and Protozoan Gastrointestinal Infections

Pathogen	Source	Signs and Symptoms	Treatment
<i>Giardia lamblia</i> (Figure 3-1)	Surface water (usually limited to wilderness or other countries)	Greasy , foul-smelling diarrhea; abdominal pain, malaise; cysts and trophozoites seen in stool sample	Metronidazole; hydration
<i>Entamoeba histolytica</i>	Water, areas of poor sanitation	Mild to severe bloody diarrhea, abdominal pain; cysts and trophozoites seen in stool sample	Metronidazole, paromomycin
<i>Cryptosporidium parvum</i>	Food/water; immunocompromised patients	Watery diarrhea, abdominal pain, malaise; acid-fast stain of stool shows parasites	Control immune suppression; nitazoxanide
<i>Trichinella spiralis</i>	Undercooked pork	Fever, myalgias , periorbital edema; eosinophilia	Albendazole, mebendazole if CNS or cardiac symptoms
<i>Taenia solium</i>	Undercooked pork	Mild diarrhea, CNS symptoms (neurocysticercosis)	Praziquantel for intestinal infection; albendazole plus corticosteroids for neurocysticercosis

CNS, central nervous system.

FIGURE 3-1

Giardiasis; several trophozoites are seen with characteristic pear-shaped and paired nuclei resembling owls' eyes.



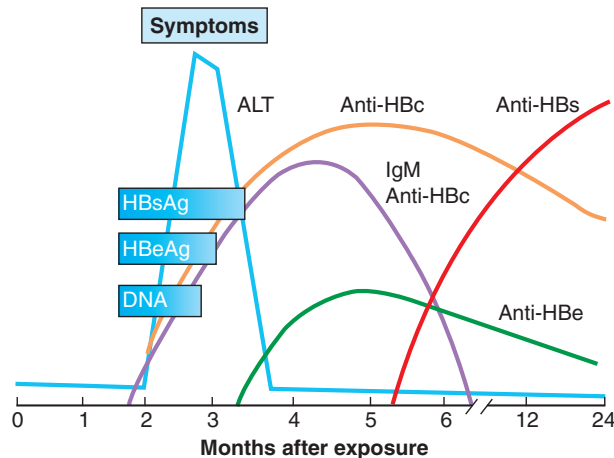
(Courtesy of Dickson Despommier, PhD. Department of Parasitology, Columbia Presbyterian Medical Center, New York, NY. From Fenoglio-Preiser, C. M., Noffsinger, A. E., Stemmermann, G. N., Lantz, P. E., Listrom, M. B., & Rilke, F. O. [1999]. *Gastrointestinal Pathology: An Atlas and Text* [2nd ed.]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins with permission.)

TABLE 3-3 Characteristics of Viral Hepatitis

Hepatitis Virus	Virus Type	Spread	Treatment	Prevention	Complications
A (HAV)	Picornavirus (single-stranded RNA)	Food (shellfish), fecal–oral	Self-limited; supportive care	Vaccine before travel	Can occur in epidemics
B (HBV)	Hepadnavirus (double-stranded DNA)	Blood, other body fluids (including sexual contact)	HBV immediately after exposure in unvaccinated patients; IFN- α or antivirals (lamivudine, adefovir, entecavir)	Vaccine	5% of adults (90% of children) develop chronic hepatitis, cirrhosis, 3%–5% develop hepatocellular carcinoma , persistent carrier state, 1% develop fulminant hepatic failure
C (HCV)	Flavivirus (single-stranded RNA)	Blood , possibly-sexual contact	IFN- α ; consider ribavirin	No vaccine	80% of patients develop chronic hepatitis , 50% with chronic HCV develop cirrhosis, slightly increased risk of hepatocellular carcinoma, persistent carrier state
D	Delta agent (incomplete single-stranded RNA)	Blood; requires coexistent hepatitis B infection	IFN- α	Hepatitis B vaccine	Severe hepatitis, cirrhosis, persistent carrier state
E	Calicivirus (single-stranded RNA)	Water, fecal–oral	Self-limited; supportive care	No vaccine	High maternal mortality when occurring in pregnant women

HAV, hepatitis A virus; HBV, hepatitis B virus; HCV, hepatitis C virus; IFN, interferon.

FIGURE 3-2 Trends in serology and symptoms seen in various courses in acute hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection with resolution of disease.



ALT, alanine aminotransferase. HBV surface antigen (HBsAg) and HBV e antigen (HBeAg) are detectable from approximately 1 to 4 months and coincide with appearance of symptoms. Antibodies are indicative of previous infection or vaccination.

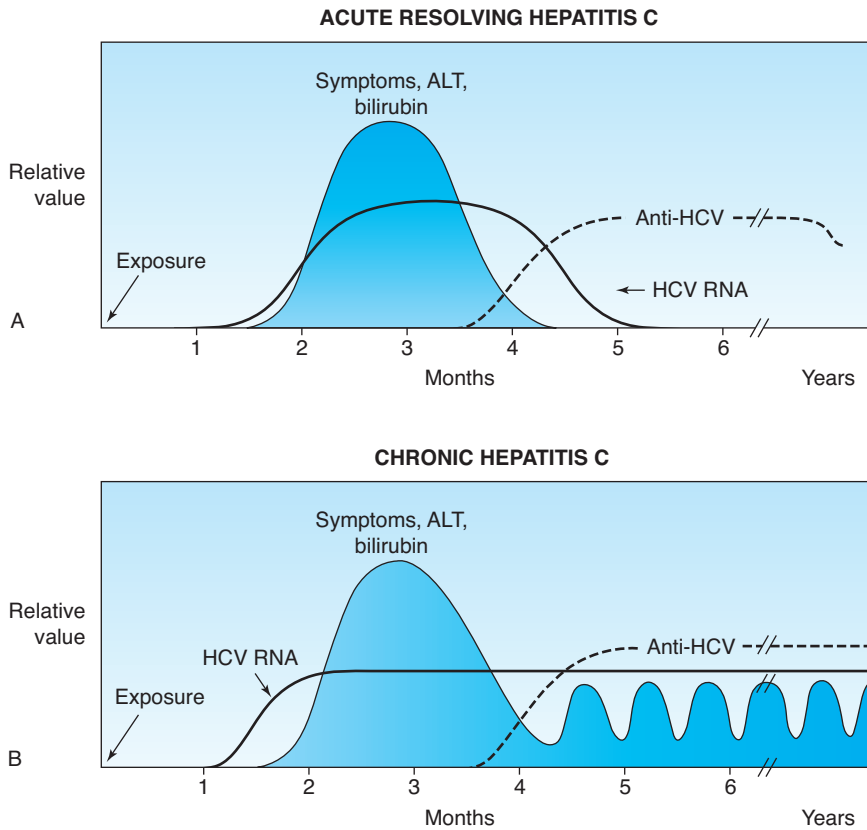
(From Nettina, S. M. [2000]. *The Lippincott Manual of Nursing Practice* [7th ed.]. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

TABLE 3-4 Serologies Seen in Various Disease States of HBV Infection

Course of Disease	HBV Surface Antigen(HBsAg)	HBV e Antigen (HBeAg)	HBV Surface Antibody (Anti-HBs)	HBV Core Antibody (Anti-HBc)
Acute infection (4–12 wk postexposure)	Positive	Positive	Negative	Positive (IgM)
Acute infection window period (12–20 wk postexposure)	Negative	Negative	Negative	Positive (IgM)
Chronic infection, active viral replication	Positive	Positive	Negative	Positive (IgG)
Chronic infection, lesser viral replication (good prognosis)	Positive	Negative	Negative	Positive (IgG)
Past infection (recovered)	Negative	Negative	Positive	Positive (IgG)
Vaccination	Negative	Negative	Positive	Negative

HBV, hepatitis B virus.

FIGURE 3-3 Trends in serology and symptoms seen in hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection.



ALT, alanine aminotransferase. (A) Acute resolving infection. (B) Chronic HCV infection with intermittent exacerbations of symptoms. (From Rubin E, & Farber, J. L. [1999]. *Pathology Image Collection* [3rd ed.]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)



II. ORAL AND ESOPHAGEAL CONDITIONS

A. Salivary gland disorders

1. Dysfunction in sublingual, submandibular, or parotid glands resulting from ductal obstruction or inflammation
2. May be caused by sialolithiasis (ductal stone) in any salivary gland; parotid disease can also be caused by sarcoidosis, infection, or neoplasm
3. H/P = enlarged and painful glands; pain worsens during eating; parotid glands may have painless swelling
4. **Treatment** = warm compresses, massage, or lemon drops may help remove ductal stones; antibiotics and hydration for infection; surgery may be required for relief in refractory cases

B. Dysphagia

1. Difficulty swallowing because of oropharyngeal or esophageal transport dysfunction or pain with swallowing (i.e., odynophagia)
2. May be caused by neuromuscular disorders (e.g., achalasia, motility disorders, scleroderma) or obstruction (e.g., peptic strictures, esophageal webs or rings, cancer, radiation fibrosis)
3. **Obstructive pathology** tends to limit swallowing of **solids**; **neuromuscular pathology** tends to limit swallowing of **solids and liquids**.
4. H/P = feeling of “**food stuck in throat**” when swallowing, cough, solids (mechanical pathology) or solids and liquids (dysmotility) may be difficult to swallow
5. **Labs** = manometry measures esophageal pressure and may detect neuromuscular abnormality
6. **Radiology** = barium swallow and esophagogastroduodenoscopy (EGD) may be helpful for diagnosis
7. **Treatment** = varies with etiology

C. Achalasia

1. Neuromuscular disorder of esophagus with **impaired peristalsis and decreased lower esophageal sphincter (LES) relaxation** because of intramural neuron dysfunction
2. Idiopathic; most commonly affects persons 25 to 60 years of age
3. H/P = gradually progressive dysphagia of **solids and liquids**, regurgitation, cough, aspiration, heartburn, weight loss from poor intake
4. **Labs** = manometry shows increased LES pressure, incomplete LES relaxation, and decreased peristalsis
5. **Radiology** = barium swallow shows “**bird’s beak**” sign with tapering at the LES (see Figure 3-4); EGD needed to rule out malignancy
6. **Treatment** = nitrates and calcium channel blockers relax LES but are rarely used because of simultaneous cardiac effects; pneumatic dilation, botulinum injections, or myotomy relieve obstruction
7. **Complications** = myotomy can cause gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD)

D. Diffuse esophageal spasm

1. Neuromuscular disorder in which nonperistaltic contractions of the esophagus occur
2. H/P = chest pain, dysphagia
3. **Labs** = manometry shows nonperistaltic, uncoordinated esophageal contractions
4. **Radiology** = barium swallow shows “**corkscrew**” pattern (see Figure 3-5)
5. **Treatment** = calcium channel blockers, nitrates, or tricyclic antidepressants help reduce chest pain and dysphagia

E. Zenker diverticulum

1. Outpouching in upper posterior esophagus caused by smooth muscle weakness
2. H/P = bad breath, difficulty initiating swallowing, **regurgitation of food several days after eating**, occasional dysphagia, feeling of aspiration, neck mass that increases in size while drinking liquids

NEXT STEP

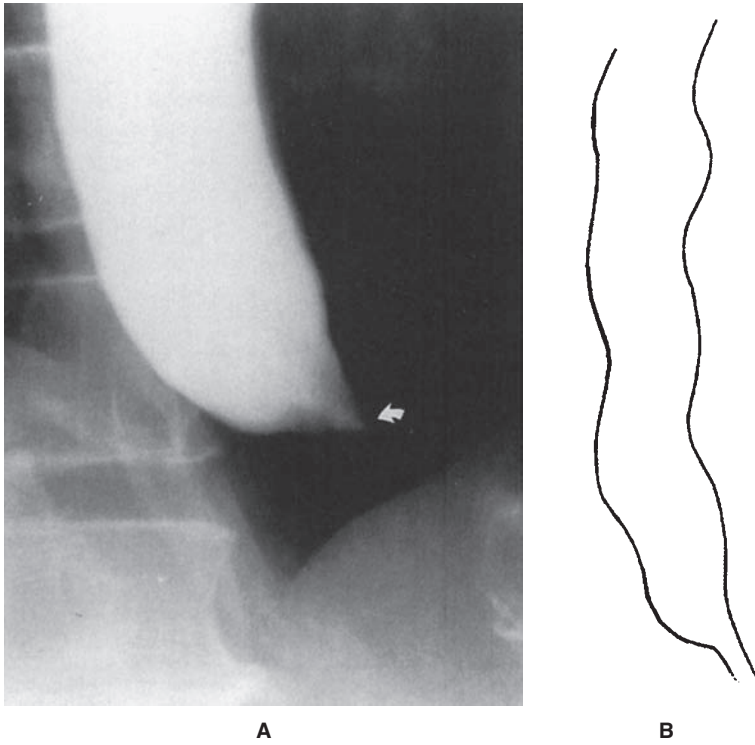
If a patient presents with dysphagia, perform a **barium swallow** before an EGD because of the lower associated risks of the former.

QUICK HIT

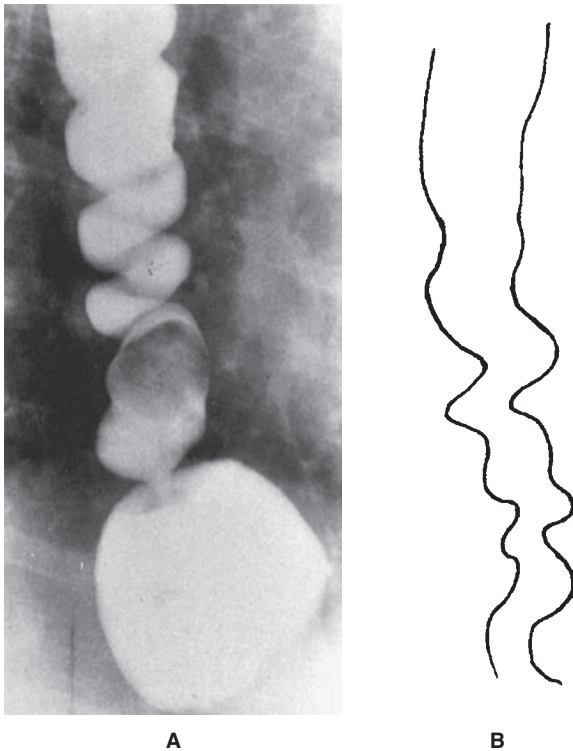
Secondary causes of achalasia include **Chagas disease**, neoplasm, and scleroderma.

QUICK HIT

Nitrates relieve pain from diffuse esophageal spasm but worsen symptoms of GERD.

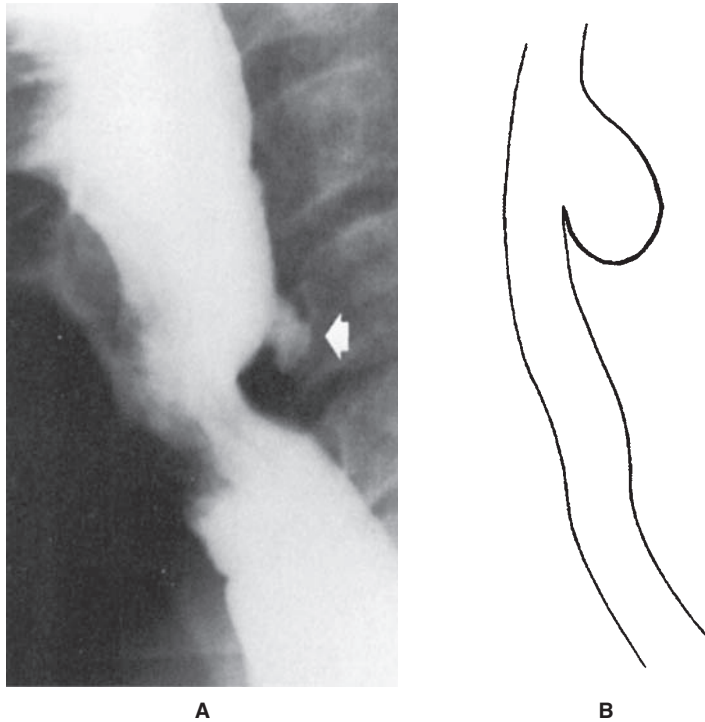
FIGURE 3-4 Achalasia

(A) Barium swallow in a patient with achalasia; note the distended proximal esophagus with distal tapering and “bird’s beak” sign (white arrow). (B) Illustration of achalasia demonstrating tapering of distal esophagus.
 (From Eisenberg, R. L. [1996]. *Gastrointestinal Radiology: A Pattern Approach* [3rd ed.]. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; Blackbourne, L. H. [2004]. *Advanced Surgical Recall* [2nd ed.]. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

FIGURE 3-5 Diffuse esophageal spasm

(A) Barium swallow in a patient with diffuse esophageal spasm; notice the “corkscrew” pattern throughout the visible esophagus. (B) Illustration of diffuse esophageal spasm demonstrating “corkscrew” pattern.
 (From Eisenberg, R. L. [1996]. *Gastrointestinal Radiology: A Pattern Approach* [3rd ed.]. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; Blackbourne, L. H. [2004]. *Advanced Surgical Recall* [2nd ed.]. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

FIGURE 3-6 Zenker diverticulum



(A) Barium swallow in a patient with a small Zenker diverticulum (white arrow). (B) Illustration of Zenker diverticulum demonstrating outpouching of esophagus.

(From Eisenberg, R. L. [1996]. *Gastrointestinal Radiology: A Pattern Approach* [3rd ed.]. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; Blackbourne, L. H. [2004]. *Advanced Surgical Recall* [2nd ed.]. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

3. **Radiology** = barium swallow shows outpouching (see Figure 3-6)
4. **Treatment** = cricopharyngeal myotomy or diverticulectomy
5. **Complications** = EGD can perforate weakness in esophageal wall; vocal cord paralysis, mediastinitis possible with surgery



QUICK HIT

Symptoms of GERD can resemble those of asthma or myocardial infarction.

F. Gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD)

1. Low pressure in LES leads to abnormal reflux of gastric contents into esophagus.
2. **Risk factors** = obesity, hiatal hernia, pregnancy, scleroderma
3. Symptoms can worsen with consumption of alcohol and fatty foods or with tobacco use.
4. **H/P** = **burning chest pain** (“heartburn”) 30 to 90 min after eating, sour taste in mouth, regurgitation, dysphagia, odynophagia, nausea, cough; pain may worsen when lying down and lessen with standing
5. **Labs** = esophageal pH monitoring can detect increased acidity from reflux
6. **Radiology** = usually unneeded for diagnosis; EGD, chest radiograph, or barium swallow can help rule out neoplasm, Barrett esophagus, and hiatal hernia
7. **Treatment**
 - a. Elevation of head of bed, weight loss, dietary modification
 - b. Initial medications are antacids followed by H₂ antagonists or proton pump inhibitors (PPI) (see Table 3-5).
 - c. Refractory disease may be treated with Nissen fundoplication or hiatal hernia repair.
8. **Complications** = esophageal ulceration, esophageal stricture, Barrett esophagus, adenocarcinoma

G. Esophageal cancer

1. **Squamous cell carcinoma** (more common worldwide) or adenocarcinoma (more common in the United States) of esophagus

TABLE 3-5 Medications Used in Treatment of GERD

Medication	Mechanism	Adverse Effects	Prescription Strategy
Antacids (calcium carbonate, aluminum hydroxide, etc.)	Neutralize gastric acid	Constipation (aluminum), nausea, diarrhea (magnesium)	Initial therapy, as needed
H ₂ antagonists (cimetidine, ranitidine, etc.)	Reversibly block histamine H ₂ receptors to inhibit gastric acid secretion	Headache, diarrhea, rare thrombocytopenia; cimetidine may cause gynecomastia and impotence	Patients not responding to antacids
PPIs (omeprazole, lansoprazole, etc.)	Irreversibly inhibit parietal cell proton pump (H ⁺ /K ⁺ ATPase) to block gastric acid secretion	Well tolerated; may increase effects of warfarin, benzodiazepines, or phenytoin in some patients	Patients not responding to antacids

GERD, gastroesophageal reflux disease; H⁺, hydrogen ion; K⁺, potassium ion; LES, lower esophageal sphincter; PPIs, proton pump inhibitors.

2. **Barrett esophagus** (intestinal metaplasia of distal esophagus secondary to chronic GERD) commonly precedes adenocarcinoma.
3. **Risk factors** = alcohol, tobacco, chronic GERD, obesity (only for adenocarcinoma)
4. **H/P** = progressive dysphagia (initially solids, later solids and liquids), weight loss, odynophagia, reflux, GI bleeding, vomiting, weakness, cough, hoarseness
5. **Labs** = biopsy used to make diagnosis
6. **Radiology** = barium swallow shows narrowing of esophagus and abnormal mass (see Figure 3-7); magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), computed tomography (CT) with contrast, or positron emission tomography (PET) scan can determine extension and metastases; EGD used to identify mass and perform biopsy

FIGURE 3-7

Barium swallow in a patient with squamous cell carcinoma of the esophagus; note the irregularity of the left esophageal wall due to neoplastic mass.



(From Eisenberg, R. L. [1996]. *Gastrointestinal Radiology: A Pattern Approach* [3rd ed.]. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; with permission.)

7. **Treatment** = surgical resection (including total esophagectomy) for early stage disease; radiation and chemotherapy used in nonoperative (advanced) cases or as neoadjuvant therapy to surgery
8. **Complications** = poor prognosis; local extension and metastases are frequently present by time of diagnosis

III. GASTRIC CONDITIONS

A. Hiatal hernia

1. Herniation of part of stomach above diaphragm
2. Types
 - a. **Sliding**: gastroesophageal junction and stomach displaced through diaphragm (95% of cases)
 - b. **Paraesophageal**: stomach protrudes through diaphragm, but gastroesophageal junction remains in normal location
3. **H/P** = possibly asymptomatic; symptoms associated with GERD
4. **Radiology** = barium swallow shows portion of stomach above diaphragm; chest radiograph may detect hernia without barium swallow if air in stomach is visible above diaphragm
5. **Treatment** = sliding hernias can be treated with reflux control; paraesophageal hernias may need surgical repair (e.g., gastropexy, Nissen fundoplication)
6. **Complications** = incarceration of stomach in herniation (seen in paraesophageal type)

B. Gastritis

1. Inflammation of gastric mucosa
2. Can be **acute (erosive)** or **chronic (nonerosive)**
3. Acute gastritis is characterized by rapidly developing, superficial lesions secondary to nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID) use, alcohol, ingestion of corrosive materials, or **stress from severe illness**; it can involve any region of the stomach.
4. Chronic gastritis can occur in either the antrum or fundus of the stomach (see Table 3-6).
5. **H/P** = possibly asymptomatic; epigastric pain, indigestion, nausea, vomiting, hematemesis, melena; symptoms more common for acute form
6. **Labs** = positive urea breath test (detects increase in pH from ammonia-producing bacteria) and positive IgG antibody to *Helicobacter pylori* with existing infection; ratio of pepsinogen isoenzymes useful to detect autoimmune cause; **antral biopsy** can detect *H. pylori* infection
7. **Radiology** = EGD allows visualization of gastric mucosa to detect lesions and perform biopsy.



QUICK HIT

In pernicious anemia, auto-antibodies destroy parietal cells, leading to low levels of intrinsic factor, vitamin B₁₂ malabsorption, and megaloblastic anemia.

TABLE 3-6 Characteristics of Type A and B Chronic Gastritis

Characteristic	Type A	Type B
Frequency	10% of cases	90% of cases
Site	Fundus	Antrum
Pathology	Autoantibodies for parietal cells	Associated with <i>Helicobacter pylori</i> infection
Labs	Decreased gastric acid level, decreased gastrin	Increased gastric acid level
Associated conditions	Pernicious anemia, achlorhydria, thyroiditis	Peptic ulcer disease, gastric cancer

8. Treatment

- a. Treat acute form as peptic ulcer disease (PUD) and stop alcohol and offending medications; give H₂ antagonists or PPI to patients with severe illnesses.
- b. Type A chronic gastritis requires vitamin B₁₂ replacement.
- c. Type B chronic gastritis requires eradication of *H. pylori* through multidrug treatment (typically, PPI, clarithromycin, and either amoxicillin or metronidazole for 7 to 14 days).

C. Peptic ulcer disease (PUD)

- 1. Erosion of gastric and duodenal mucosa secondary to impaired endothelial defenses and increased gastric acidity (see Table 3-7)
- 2. *H. pylori* is involved in pathology in most gastric ulcers and almost all duodenal ulcers.
- 3. Risk factors = *H. pylori* infection, NSAID use, tobacco, alcohol, corticosteroids; males > females
- 4. H/P = periodic burning epigastric pain that can change (better or worse) with eating, nausea, hematemesis, melena, hematochezia; epigastric tenderness; abdominal rigidity, rebound tenderness, and rigidity seen following acute perforation of ulcer
- 5. Labs = positive urea breath test, IgG antibodies, or biopsy detect *H. pylori*; complete blood count (CBC) can assess degree of GI bleeding
- 6. Radiology = abdominal X-ray (AXR) to detect perforation (free air under diaphragm seen following perforation); barium swallow AXR can demonstrate collections of barium in ulcerations; EGD used to perform biopsy and detect active bleeding
- 7. Treatment
 - a. Active bleeding must be ruled out with CBC and EGD in patients with concerning symptoms; symptoms lasting >2 months need EGD to rule out gastric adenocarcinoma.
 - b. Decrease gastric acid levels with PPI and H₂ antagonist; protect mucosa with sucralfate, bismuth subsalicylate, or misoprostol; eliminate *H. pylori* infection (as described previously for treatment of gastritis).
 - c. Surgery is required to repair acute perforations; persistent, non-neoplastic refractory cases may require parietal cell vagotomy or antrectomy.
- 8. Complications = hemorrhage (posterior ulcers may erode into gastroduodenal artery), perforation (most commonly anterior ulcers), lymphoproliferative disease

QUICK HIT

Ulcers can also develop secondary to stress from severe burns (**Curling ulcers**) or intracranial injuries (**Cushing ulcers**).

NEXT STEP

In refractory cases of PUD, gastrin level should be determined to detect Zollinger-Ellison syndrome (increased gastrin).

QUICK HIT

Barium swallow radiographic findings that suggest the presence of a malignant lesion associated with an ulcer include **abnormal-appearing mucosal folds** in the region of the ulcer, presence of a **mass** near the ulcer, and irregular **filling defects** in the base of the ulcer.

NEXT STEP

Workup for patients <40 years of age in whom concern exists for PUD can frequently be done with **noninvasive** testing; older patients or those with a previous ulcer should have an **EGD** performed.

NEXT STEP

Give cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2) selective NSAID to patients with PUD who require NSAID therapy.

QUICK HIT

PPI must be stopped before gastrin level testing to collect an accurate measurement.

TABLE 3-7 Distinguishing between Gastric and Duodenal Ulcers

Characteristic	Gastric Ulcer	Duodenal Ulcer
Patients	Age >50 yr old, <i>Helicobacter pylori</i> infection, NSAID users	Younger, <i>H. pylori</i> infection
Frequency	25% of cases	75% of cases
Timing of pain	Soon after eating	2–4 hr after eating
Gastric acid level	Normal/low	High
Gastrin level	High	Normal
Effect of eating	May worsen symptoms and cause nausea and vomiting	Initial improvement in symptoms, with later worsening

NSAID, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug.

D. Zollinger-Ellison syndrome

- 1. Syndrome secondary to gastrin-producing tumor most frequently located in duodenum (70% cases) or pancreas
- 2. Associated with malabsorption disorders

3. **H/P** = refractory PUD, abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting, indigestion, diarrhea, steatorrhea, possible history of other endocrine abnormalities
4. **Labs** = increased fasting gastrin; positive secretin-stimulation test (i.e., administration of secretin causes higher than expected serum gastrin levels); specific gastrin sampling in several pancreatic or abdominal veins can help localize tumor
5. **Radiology** = somatostatin receptor imaging using single-photon emission computed tomography (SPECT) can localize tumors; angiography may detect tumor if hypervascular
6. **Treatment** = surgical resection can be performed for nonmetastatic disease in which a tumor can be localized (best chance in extrapancreatic tumors); PPI and H₂ antagonists may ease symptoms; octreotide may help reduce symptoms in metastatic disease
7. **Complications** = occasionally associated with other endocrine tumors (e.g., multiple endocrine neoplasia I [MEN I]); 60% of lesions are malignant

E. Gastric cancer

1. **Adenocarcinoma** (common) or squamous cell carcinoma (rare; caused by invasion from esophagus) affecting stomach
2. **Types**
 - a. **Ulcerating**: resembles ulcers seen in PUD
 - b. **Polypoid**: large, intraluminal neoplasms
 - c. **Superficial spreading**: mucosal and submucosal involvement only; best prognosis
 - d. **Linitis plastica**: all layers of stomach involved; decreased stomach elasticity; poor prognosis
3. **Risk factors** = *H. pylori*, family history, Japanese person living in Japan, tobacco, alcohol, vitamin C deficiency, high consumption of preserved foods; males > females
4. **H/P** = weight loss, anorexia, early satiety, vomiting, dysphagia, epigastric pain; enlarged left supraclavicular lymph node (i.e., **Virchow node**) or periumbilical node (i.e., **Sister Mary Joseph node**)
5. **Labs** = increased carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA), increased 2-glucuronidase in gastric secretions, anemia if active bleeding; biopsy used for diagnosis
6. **Radiology** = barium swallow may show mass or thickened “leather bottle” stomach (linitis plastica); EGD used to perform biopsy and visualize ulcers
7. **Treatment** = subtotal gastrectomy for lesions in distal third of stomach, total gastrectomy for lesions in middle or upper stomach or invasive lesions; adjuvant chemotherapy and radiation therapy
8. **Complications** = early detection has high cure rate (>70%) but poor prognosis in later detection (<15% 5-year survival)



QUICK HIT

The general presentation of malabsorption includes weight loss, **bloating, diarrhea**, possible **steatorrhea**, glossitis, dermatitis, and edema.



QUICK HIT

Celiac and tropical sprue exhibit the same symptoms, but only celiac sprue responds to removal of gluten from the diet, and tropical sprue occurs in patients who have spent time in the tropics.

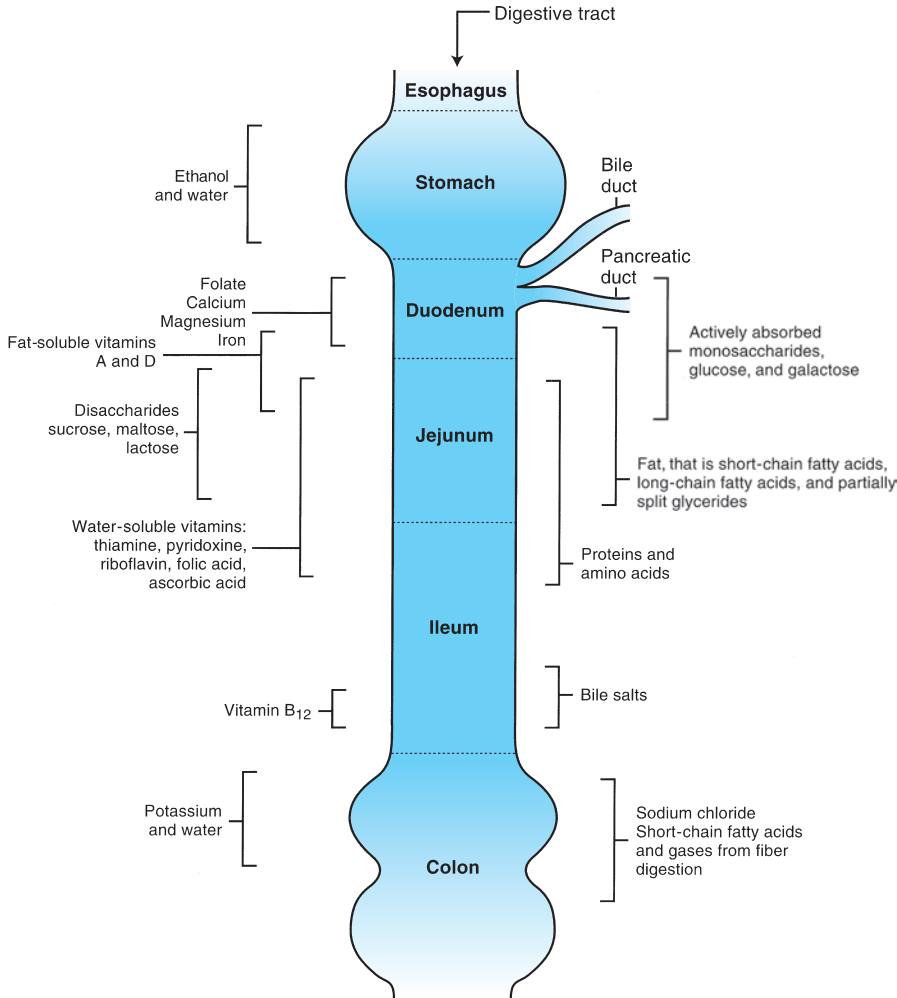


IV. INTESTINAL CONDITIONS

A. Malabsorption disorders (see Figure 3-8, Figure 3-9)

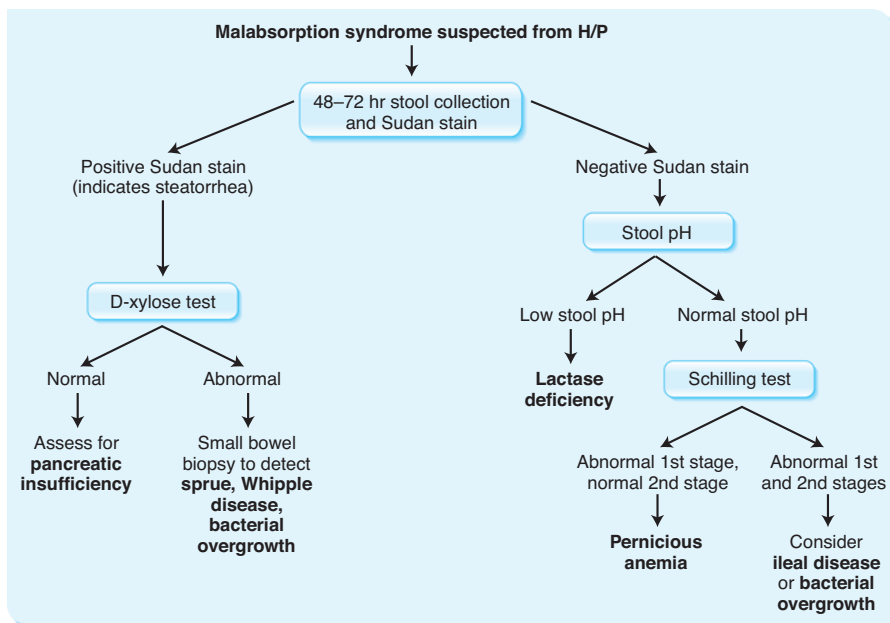
1. **Celiac sprue**
 - a. Genetic disorder characterized by gluten intolerance (e.g., wheat, barley, rye)
 - b. Immune-mediated process with antiendomysial and antigliadin antibodies that cause jejunal mucosal damage
 - c. **H/P** = failure to thrive, bloating, and abnormal stools in infants; diarrhea, steatorrhea, weight loss, and bloating in adults; some patients will exhibit depression, anxiety, or arthralgias; associated with Down syndrome; associated with dermatitis herpetiformis
 - d. **Labs** = positive antiendomysial and antigliadin antibodies in serum; biopsy shows blunting of duodenal and jejunal villi
 - e. **Treatment** = removal of gluten from diet (can still eat corn, rice); refractory disease may require corticosteroids
2. **Tropical sprue**
 - a. Malabsorption syndrome similar to celiac sprue, with possible infectious or toxic etiology
 - b. Acquired disorder in patients living in **tropical areas**; can present years after leaving tropics

FIGURE 3-8 Location of absorption of vitamins, minerals, and nutrients throughout the gastrointestinal (GI) tract.



(Modified from Ryan, J. P. [1997]. *Physiology*. New York: McGraw Hill. Also see Mehta, S., Milder, E. A., Mirachi, A. J., & Milder, E. [2003]. *Step-Up: A High-Yield, Systems-Based Review for the USMLE Step 1* [2nd ed.]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

FIGURE 3-9 Diagnostic pathway for suspected malabsorption syndrome.



- c. **H/P** = similar presentation to celiac sprue
 - d. **Labs** = no antiendomysial and anti gliadin antibodies; acute GI infection, celiac sprue, and autoimmune diseases should be ruled out with cultures and appropriate serology
 - e. **Treatment** = folic acid replacement, tetracycline; removal of gluten from diet has no effect
3. **Lactose intolerance**
- a. Malabsorption syndrome resulting from deficiency of lactase; can also be secondary to Crohn's disease or bacterial overgrowth
 - b. Lactose not metabolized in jejunum, leading to osmotic diarrhea
 - c. **H/P** = diarrhea, abdominal pain, flatulence, and bloating after dairy consumption
 - d. **Labs** = positive lactose tolerance test (i.e., minimal increase in serum glucose following ingestion of lactose), positive lactose breath hydrogen test after lactose meal
 - e. **Treatment** = lactose-restricted or lactose-free diet; adequate dietary protein, fat, calcium, and vitamins; lactase replacement may benefit some patients
4. **Whipple disease**
- a. Malabsorption disorder secondary to *Tropheryma whippelii* infection and likely immune deficiency (unknown if innate to host or caused by infection); multiple organs involved
 - b. **Risk factors** = white males with European ancestry
 - c. **H/P** = weight loss, joint pain, abdominal pain, diarrhea, dementia, cough, bloating, steatorrhea; fever, vision abnormalities, lymphadenopathy, new heart murmur; severe wasting late in disease course
 - d. **Labs** = jejunal biopsy shows foamy macrophages on periodic acid-Schiff (PAS) stain and villous atrophy
 - e. **Treatment** = trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (TMP-SMX) or ceftriaxone for 12 months
 - f. **Complications** = high mortality if untreated

B. Diarrhea

1. Increased frequency of bowel movements and increased stool liquidity; >200 g/day stool production
2. **Risk factors** = infection, recent travel
3. Acute diarrhea (<2-week duration) is usually caused by infection (see Figure 3-10).
4. Chronic diarrhea has longer duration of symptoms and may result from malabsorption or motility disorders (see Figure 3-11).
 - a. Secretory diarrheas are usually **hormone mediated** or caused by enterotoxigenic bacteria.



QUICK HIT

Lactase deficiency is the most common cause of **adult chronic diarrhea**.



QUICK HIT

Rotavirus is the most common cause of acute diarrhea in children.

FIGURE 3-10

Diagnostic and treatment pathways for acute diarrhea.

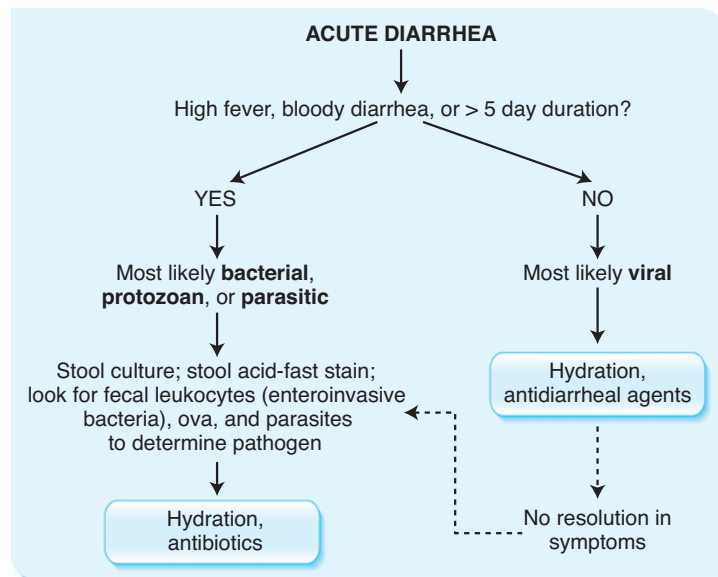
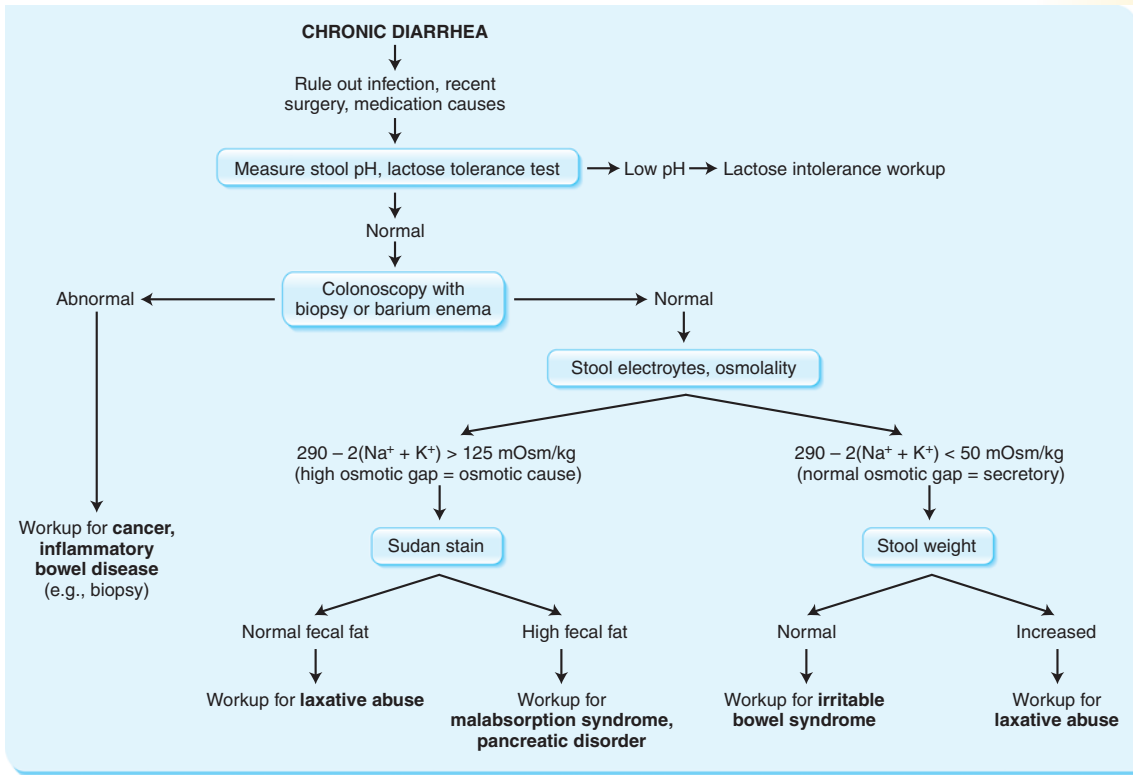


FIGURE 3-11 Diagnostic pathway for chronic diarrhea.



- b. Osmotic diarrheas are caused by solute collecting in bowel lumen, leading to increased water in bowel; occur after eating, lessen with fasting
- c. Inflammatory diarrhea results from an autoimmune inflammatory process or chronic infection.
- 5. Pediatric diarrhea is most commonly caused by infection, antibiotic use, or related to immunosuppression.
- 6. Treatment = hydration, treat underlying cause

C. Irritable bowel syndrome (IBS)

- 1. Idiopathic disorder with chronic abdominal pain and irregular bowel habits
- 2. Most commonly begins during teens or young adulthood; females > males (2:1)
- 3. H/P = abdominal pain, diarrhea, constipation, bloating, nausea, possible vomiting or weight loss; mild abdominal tenderness; likelihood of diagnosis increases proportionally to number of Manning diagnostic criteria present (see Table 3-8)

QUICK HIT

Half of patients with IBS have comorbid psychiatric disorders.

TABLE 3-8 Manning Criteria for Diagnosis of Irritable Bowel Disease^a

Pain relieved with defecation
Stool frequency increases following onset of pain
Stools become looser following onset of pain
Visible abdominal distention
Passage of mucus with stool
Feeling of incomplete defecation

^aLikelihood of diagnosis increases proportionally with number of criteria present in patient.

4. **Labs** = rule out other GI diseases with complete blood count (CBC), electrolytes, stool culture
5. **Radiology** = consider AXR, abdominal CT, or barium studies to rule out other GI causes; colonoscopy may be performed in older patients to rule out neoplasm
6. **Treatment** = assurance from physician, high-fiber diet, possible psychosocial therapy; antispasmodic, antidepressants, serotonin receptor antagonists have shown use in lessening symptoms

D. Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) (see Table 3-9)

1. Disease of small and large bowel, with a constellation of symptoms associated with inflammatory bowel processes, autoimmune reactions, extraintestinal manifestations, and multiple complications
2. Types = Crohn's disease, ulcerative colitis
3. **Risk factors** = Ashkenazi Jews; whites > blacks; presents in teens or early 20s

E. Bowel obstruction (see Figure 3-12, Figure 3-13, Table 3-10)

1. Mechanical obstruction of small or large bowel that can lead to vascular compromise
2. The most common causes of obstruction are **adhesions, hernias, and neoplasms.**

TABLE 3-9 Comparison of Crohn's Disease and Ulcerative Colitis

	Crohn's Disease	Ulcerative Colitis
Site of involvement	Entire GI tract may be involved with multiple " skipped " areas; distal ileum most commonly involved; entire bowel wall affected	Continuous disease beginning at rectum and extending possibly as far as distal ileum ; only mucosa and submucosa affected
Symptoms	Abdominal pain, weight loss, watery diarrhea	Abdominal pain, urgency, bloody diarrhea, tenesmus, nausea, vomiting, weight loss
Physical examination	Fever, right lower quadrant abdominal mass , abdominal tenderness, perianal fissures and fistulas , oral ulcers	Fever, abdominal tenderness, orthostatic hypotension, tachycardia, gross blood on rectal examination
Extraintestinal manifestations	Arthritis, ankylosing spondylitis, uveitis, primary sclerosing cholangitis, nephrolithiasis	Arthritis, uveitis, ankylosing spondylitis, primary sclerosing cholangitis, erythema nodosum, pyoderma gangrenosum
Labs	ASCA frequently positive, pANCA rarely positive; hemocult positive stool; biopsy diagnostic	ASCA rarely positive, pANCA frequently positive; biopsy diagnostic
Radiology	Colonoscopy shows colonic ulcers, strictures, " cobblestoning ," fissures, and " skipped " areas of bowel; barium enema shows fissures, ulcers, and bowel edema	Colonoscopy shows continuous involvement , pseudopolyps, friable mucosa; barium enema shows " lead pipe " colon without haustra and colon shortening
Treatment	Mesalamine, broad-spectrum antibiotics, corticosteroids, immunosuppressives; surgical resections of severely affected areas, fistulas, or strictures	Mesalamine, supplemental iron, corticosteroids, immunosuppressives; total colectomy is curative
Complications	Abscess formation, fistulas, fissures, malabsorption, toxic megacolon	Significantly increased risk of colon cancer , hemorrhage, toxic megacolon, bowel obstruction

ASCA, antiyeast *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* antibodies; GI, gastrointestinal; pANCA, perinuclear antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies.

FIGURE

3-12 Abdominal radiograph in patient with small bowel obstruction.



Note the multiple loops of dilated bowel with a ladderlike appearance.

(From Eisenberg, R. L. [1996]. *Gastrointestinal Radiology: A Pattern Approach*. [3rd ed.]. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven.)

FIGURE

3-13 Abdominal radiograph in patient with large bowel obstruction due to sigmoid volvulus; note significantly dilated bowel lumen.



Of note are the dense line markings where the walls of two dilated loops of bowel are pressed against each other (*open arrow*) and the dense markings where a dilated loop of bowel is compressed against the cecum (*solid arrow*)

(From Eisenberg, R. L. [2003]. *Gastrointestinal Radiology: A Pattern Approach* [4th ed.]. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven; with permission.)

**QUICK HIT**

Small bowel obstruction most commonly results from **adhesion** formation, whereas **large** bowel obstruction is most commonly caused by **neoplasm**.

**QUICK HIT**

The left side of the colon is most commonly involved in ischemic colitis; the rectum is frequently spared because of collateral circulation.

**QUICK HIT**

Abdominal pain for ischemic colitis is less severe than **small bowel ischemic**, which is significant and **out of proportion to examination**.

NEXT STEP

Always get a β -human chorionic gonadotropin (β -hCG) test in a woman of childbearing age with abdominal pain to **rule out pregnancy**.

NEXT STEP

With a high clinical suspicion of appendicitis, go right to surgery and do not wait for radiologic examinations.

TABLE 3-10 Comparison of Small and Large Bowel Obstruction

	Small Bowel Obstruction	Large Bowel Obstruction
Causes	Adhesions, incarcerated hernias , neoplasm, intussusception, volvulus, Crohn's disease, congenital stricture	Neoplasm , diverticulitis, volvulus, congenital stricture
Symptoms	Abdominal pain, vomiting , distention, obstipation	Abdominal pain, obstipation, distention, nausea, late feculent vomiting
Physical examination	Abdominal tenderness, visible peristaltic waves, high-pitched bowel sounds, absence of bowel sounds, fever	Abdominal tenderness, palpable mass, high-pitched bowel sounds, absence of bowel sounds
Radiology	AXR shows ladderlike dilated loops of bowel , air–fluid levels	AXR shows bowel distention proximal to obstruction ; barium enema may detect obstruction near rectum
Treatment	Make patient NPO, maintain hydration; nasogastric decompression may relieve obstruction, but if unsuccessful, surgery is required	Make patient NPO, maintain hydration; colonoscopy may relieve obstruction, but if unsuccessful, surgery is required

AXR, abdominal X-ray; NPO, nothing by mouth.

F. Ischemic colitis

1. Ischemia and necrosis of bowel secondary to vascular compromise
2. Caused by embolus, bowel obstruction, inadequate systemic perfusion, medication, or surgery-induced vascular compromise
3. **Risk factors** = diabetes mellitus (DM), atherosclerosis, congestive heart failure (CHF), peripheral vascular disease, lupus
4. **H/P** = acute abdominal pain, bloody diarrhea, vomiting; mild abdominal tenderness
5. **Labs** = increased white blood cell count (WBC), increased serum lactate
6. **Radiology** = barium enema shows diffuse submucosal changes from localized bleeding (i.e., “thumb printing”); sigmoidoscopy may show bloody and edematous mucosa; CT may show air within bowel wall and bowel wall thickening
7. **Treatment** = intravenous (IV) fluids, bowel rest, antibiotics for GI bacteria; surgical resection of necrotic bowel
8. **Complications** = high mortality in cases of irreversible damage

G. Appendicitis

1. Inflammation of appendix with possible infection or perforation
2. Caused by lymphoid hyperplasia (children), fibroid bands (adults), or fecaliths (adults)
3. **H/P** = dull periumbilical pain followed by nausea, vomiting, and anorexia; pain gradually moves to right lower quadrant and increases; **tenderness at McBurney point** (1/3 distance from right anterior superior iliac spine to umbilicus), rebound tenderness, **psoas sign** (psoas pain on passive hip extension), fever, **Rovsing sign** (right lower quadrant pain with left lower quadrant palpation); perforation produces severe pain and distention with rebound tenderness, rigidity, and guarding
4. **Labs** = increased WBC with left shift
5. **Radiology** = AXR or chest X-ray may show fecalith or free air under the diaphragm (due to perforation); **CT most sensitive test** and may show bowel wall thickening, appendicolith, abscess, phlegmon, free fluid, or right lower quadrant fat stranding
6. **Treatment** = **appendectomy**; antibiotics added (covering gram-negatives and anaerobes) for ruptured appendix
7. **Complications** = abscess formation, perforation

H. Ileus

1. Paralytic obstruction of bowel secondary to decreased peristalsis
2. Caused by infection, ischemia, recent surgery, DM, opioid use
3. H/P = vague abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting, bloating, no bowel movements, inability to tolerate meals; decreased bowel sounds, no rebound tenderness
4. Radiology = AXR shows distention of affected bowel, air–fluid levels; barium enema can help rule out obstruction
5. Treatment = stop opioids, make patient NPO (i.e., nothing by mouth); colonoscopic decompression if no resolution

I. Volvulus

1. Rotation of bowel creates obstruction and possible ischemia; most commonly occurs at cecum and sigmoid colon
2. Tends to occur in elderly and infants
3. H/P = distention, abdominal pain, vomiting, obstipation; possible palpable abdominal mass
4. Radiology = AXR may show “double bubble” proximal and distal to volvulus; barium enema shows “bird’s beak” for distal volvulus
5. Treatment = possibly self-limited; colonoscopic decompression of sigmoid volvulus; surgical repair or resection may be required in cecal volvulus or failed colonoscopic detorsion

J. Diverticulosis

1. Outpouchings of colonic mucosa and submucosa that herniate through muscular layer (i.e., diverticulosis); may erode into colonic blood vessel to cause bleeding
2. Risk factors = low-fiber diet, high-fat diet, >60 years of age
3. H/P = frequently asymptomatic during uncomplicated diverticulosis; occasional cramping, bloating, flatulence, irregular defecation; possible painless rectal bleeding if erosion into vessel occurs
4. Labs = positive stool guaiac test during bleeding
5. Radiology = diverticula seen on barium enema and colonoscopy (see Figure 3-14)
6. Treatment = high-fiber diet may help prevent development of additional diverticula or diverticular bleeding; no evidence to support avoidance of seeds, nuts, corn, etc.
7. Complications = diverticulitis, diverticular colitis (i.e., inflammation of section of colon)

**QUICK HIT**

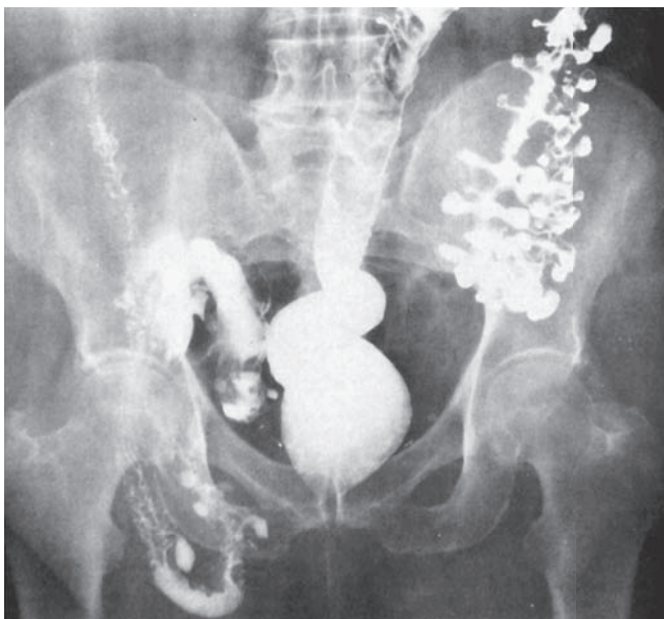
Postoperative ileus typically lasts <5 days. Small bowel recovers in 24 hr, stomach in 48–72 hr, and large bowel in 3–5 days.

**QUICK HIT**

Diverticular disease most frequently occurs in the sigmoid colon and is the most common cause of acute lower GI bleeding in patients over 40 years of age.

FIGURE 3-14

Barium enema in a patient with diverticular disease; numerous diverticula can be seen in the left colon.



(Modified from Daffner, R. H. [1999]. *Clinical Radiology: The Essentials* [2nd ed.]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)


**NEXT
STEP**

If a patient has significant rectal pain and the only finding on colonoscopy is internal hemorrhoids, a workup must be performed to locate another cause of symptoms (e.g., abscess or fissure).

K. Diverticulitis

1. Obstruction of a diverticulum leading to significant inflammation, focal bowel wall necrosis, and **perforation**; poor containment of colonic rupture leads to peritonitis
2. **H/P** = left lower quadrant pain, nausea, vomiting, melena, hematochezia; abdominal tenderness, possible palpable abdominal mass, fever, abdominal distention
3. **Labs** = increased WBC
4. **Radiology** = CXR or AXR may demonstrate free air under the diaphragm; CT shows increased soft tissue density caused by inflammation, colonic diverticula, bowel wall thickening, and possible abscess formation
5. **Treatment**
 - a. Mild early cases without perforation can be treated by bowel rest (liquids only for at least 3 days) and PO antibiotics (e.g., fluoroquinolone and metronidazole, TMP-SMX and metronidazole, or amoxicillin-clavulanate).
 - b. **Surgery** required in most severe cases to resect involved segment of colon and remove any obstruction or fistula; diverting colostomy performed in cases of peritonitis (reanastomosis in 3 months)
 - c. Broad-spectrum antibiotics required for any case of bowel rupture
6. **Complications** = colonic abscess, fistula formation, sepsis

L. Rectal conditions

1. **Hemorrhoids**
 - a. Internal and external engorged rectal veins causing bleeding (**bright red blood**)
 - b. **Internal** hemorrhoids arise from superior rectal veins above the pectinate line (columnar rectal epithelium); characteristically **painless**
 - c. **External** hemorrhoids arise from **inferior** rectal veins below the pectinate line (squamous rectal epithelium); frequently **painful** (especially if thrombosed)
 - d. **Radiology** = sigmoidoscopy used to rule out other causes of bleeding
 - e. **Treatment** = warm baths, increase fiber in diet, avoid prolonged straining; sclerotherapy, ligation, or excision can be performed for worsening symptoms
2. **Anal fissures**
 - a. Painful, bleeding tears in posterior wall of anus secondary to trauma during defecation or anal intercourse
 - b. **Treatment** = stool softeners, topical nitroglycerin; partial sphincterotomy may be performed for recurrent fissures
3. **Anorectal abscesses**
 - a. Infection of anal crypts, internal hemorrhoids, or hair follicle leading to abscess formation
 - b. **H/P** = throbbing rectal pain; fever, tenderness on digital examination
 - c. **Treatment** = antibiotics, surgical incision and drainage
4. **Rectal fistula**
 - a. Formation of tract between rectum and adjacent structures from unknown cause or secondary to **IBD** or abscess formation
 - b. **H/P** = mild pain during defecation; possible visible site draining pus
 - c. **Treatment** = fistulotomy; treat patients with Crohn's disease with antibiotics and immunosuppressants unless refractory disease
5. **Pilonidal disease**
 - a. Presence of one or more cutaneous sinus tracts in the superior midline gluteal cleft
 - b. Obstruction of sinus tract by hair or debris can lead to cyst and abscess formation
 - c. **H/P** = usually asymptomatic; obstruction of sinus leads to mildly painful cyst with drainage (possibly purulent); small cysts can progress to larger abscesses
 - d. **Treatment** = incision and drainage of abscesses; surgical closure of sinus tracts may prevent recurrence


M. Carcinoid tumor

1. Tumors arising from neuroectodermal cells that function as amine precursor uptake and decarboxylation (APUD) cells

2. Most commonly in bronchopulmonary tree, ileum, rectum, appendix
3. **H/P** = possibly asymptomatic; abdominal pain; possible **carcinoid syndrome** (i.e., flushing, diarrhea, bronchoconstriction, tricuspid/pulmonary valvular disease) caused by serotonin secretion by tumor (only seen with liver metastases or extragastrointestinal involvement)
4. **Labs** = increased 5-hydroxyindolacetic acid (5-HIAA) in urine, increased serum serotonin level
5. **Radiology** = CT or indium-labeled octreotide scintigraphy can localize tumor
6. **Treatment** = tumors <2 cm have very low incidence of metastases and should be resected; tumors >2 cm have high risk of metastases and require extensive resection; metastatic disease treated with IFN- α , octreotide, and embolization


N. Colorectal cancer

1. Neoplasm of large bowel or rectum; most commonly adenocarcinoma
2. **Risk factors** = family history, ulcerative colitis, **colonic polyps**, hereditary polyposis syndromes, low-fiber/high-fat diet, previous colon cancer, alcohol, smoking, DM
3. Spreads to regional lymph nodes; **metastasizes** most commonly to **lung** and **liver**
4. **H/P** = change in bowel habits (more common in left-sided disease), weakness, right-sided abdominal pain (in right-sided disease), constipation, hematochezia, melena, anemia due to blood loss, malaise, weight loss; abdominal or rectal mass may be palpated
5. **Labs** = **positive stool guaiac test**, decreased hemoglobin, decreased hematocrit; biopsy is diagnostic; CEA, which is increased in 70% of patients, is useful for monitoring treatment success and cancer recurrence
6. **Radiology** = barium enema may detect lesion; colonoscopy may detect lesion and obtain biopsy specimens; CT or PET used to determine local extent of disease and spread of metastases
7. **Treatment**
 - a. **Surgical resection** plus regional lymph node dissection; adjuvant chemotherapy in cases of positive lymph nodes; palliative resections are helpful in metastatic disease to reduce symptoms and remove obstruction
 - b. Preventative colectomy may be indicated for hereditary syndromes (see Table 3-11).
 - c. Duke classification can be used for prognosis (see Table 3-12); CEA and serial colonoscopy may be followed after treatment to monitor for recurrence.




QUICK HIT

Iron-deficiency anemia in elderly men and postmenopausal women is considered colon cancer until proven otherwise.



QUICK HIT

Hematochezia can result from a heavy upper GI bleed.



QUICK HIT

Familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP), Gardner syndrome, and Turcot syndrome are caused by a mutation in the adenomatous polyposis coli (**APC**) gene.

TABLE 3-11 Familial Polyposis Syndromes

Hereditary Disease	Characteristics
Familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP)	Hundreds of polyps in colon; near-certain development of malignant neoplasm; prophylactic subtotal colectomy recommended
Hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer (HNPCC)	Multiple genetic mutations; cancer arises from normal-appearing mucosa; neoplasms tend to form in proximal colon
Gardner syndrome	Similar to FAP with addition of common bone and soft tissue tumors
Peutz-Jeghers syndrome	Polyps are hamartomas with low risk of malignancy; mucocutaneous pigmentation of mouth, hands, and genitals
Turcot syndrome	Many colonic adenomas with high malignant potential; comorbid malignant CNS tumors
Juvenile polyposis	Polyps of colon, small bowel, and stomach that frequently are source of GI bleeding; slightly increased risk of malignancy later in life

CNS, central nervous system; GI, gastrointestinal.

TABLE 3-12 Duke Classification System for Staging and Corresponding Prognosis of Colorectal Cancer

Class	Equivalent TNM Stage	Description	Cure Rate
A	I	Tumor confined to bowel wall	90%
B	II	Penetration of tumor into colonic serosa or perirectal fat	80%
C	III	Lymph node involvement	<60%
D	IV	Distant metastases	<5%

TNM, tumor, node, metastasis.

8. Prevention

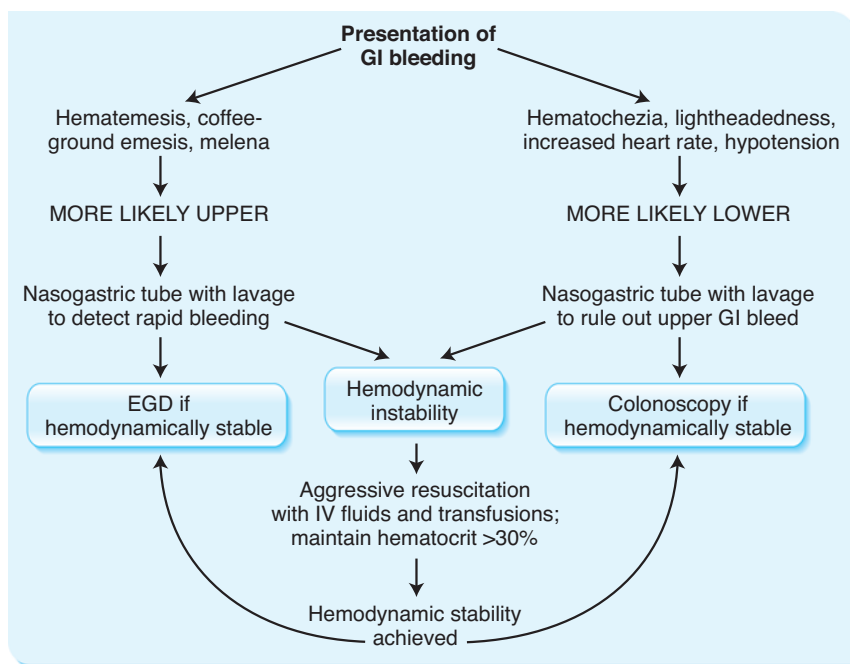
- Regular screening for colon cancer recommended in patients >50 years of age
- Annual fecal occult blood test (FOBT)
- Flexible sigmoidoscopy every 5 years (in addition to FOBT)
- Colonoscopy** is more sensitive than sigmoidoscopy but carries a 0.1% risk of perforation; it is now considered preferable over sigmoidoscopy by several expert groups and is recommended to be performed every 10 years; it should definitely be chosen over sigmoidoscopy for patients with a hereditary high risk of colon cancer.

Q. GI bleeding

- Caused by either upper (i.e., proximal to ligament of Treitz) or lower (i.e., distal to ligament of Treitz) sources
- Bright red blood (e.g., hematochezia) suggests a rapid or heavy bleed; dark blood (e.g., melena, coffee-ground emesis) suggests either blood that has passed through much of the GI tract or has been sitting in the stomach for some time (see Figure 3-15).

NEXT STEP
Hematocrit is **not** a good indicator of acute volume status; base the diagnosis on location of bleeding source.

FIGURE 3-15 Diagnostic pathway for gastrointestinal (GI) bleeding.



EGD, esophagogastroduodenoscopy; IV, intravenous.

3. Common causes of upper GI bleeds are **PUD**, Mallory-Weiss tears (longitudinal esophageal tears secondary to violent retching), esophagitis, **esophageal varices**, and gastritis.
4. Common causes of lower GI bleeds are **diverticulosis**, **neoplasm**, ulcerative colitis, mesenteric ischemia, arteriovenous malformations (AVMs), hemorrhoids, and Meckel diverticulum.
5. **Radiology** = EGD or colonoscopy shows most sources of bleeding; barium studies may detect defects; angiography can help locate AVMs; technetium scan can locate Meckel diverticulum
6. **Treatment** = **fluid replacement** is vital; transfusion for increased blood loss; some small bleeds stop automatically; **treat underlying cause**; PPI for upper GI bleeds until gastric cause ruled out; prophylactic antibiotics and β -blockers in patients with a known history of cirrhosis; sclerotherapy may help stop bleeding from varices; vasopressin may stop bleeding from AVMs and diverticula; surgical resection of tumors and diverticula may be needed

V. PANCREATIC DISORDERS

A. Pancreatitis (see Table 3-13, Table 3-14)

1. Acute or chronic inflammation of pancreas associated with anatomic defects, chronic alcohol use, acute ductal obstruction, drugs, **gallstones**
2. Initially, results from leak of pancreatic enzymes into pancreatic and surrounding tissues; later caused by pancreatic tissue necrosis; prognosis determined by Ranson criteria

TABLE 3-13 Comparison of Acute and Chronic Pancreatitis

	Acute Pancreatitis	Chronic Pancreatitis
Onset	Sudden , severe	Recurrent
Risk factors	Gallstones , alcoholism , trauma, hypercalcemia, hyperlipidemia, drugs	Alcoholism , congenital defect
History/physical	Acute epigastric pain radiating to back, nausea, vomiting, Grey Turner sign (bluish discoloration of flank), Cullen sign (periumbilical discoloration), fever, tachycardia; hypotension, shock if severe	Recurrent epigastric pain, steatorrhea, weight loss, nausea, constipation
Labs	Increased amylase and lipase	Mildly increased amylase and lipase, glycosuria; low fecal elastase
Radiology	AXR may show dilated loop of bowel near pancreas (sentinel loop) or right colon distended until near pancreas (colon cutoff sign); CXR may show pleural effusion, hemidiaphragm elevation; CT may show pseudocyst or enlarged pancreas; US may detect gallstones	Abdominal radiograph may show pancreatic calcifications ; CT may show calcifications, pancreatic enlargement, or pseudocyst; ERCP may be helpful for diagnosis
Treatment	Hydration, pain control with opioids, nasogastric suction, make patient NPO, stop offending agent, \pm prophylactic antibiotics for GI bacteria; debridement of necrotic tissue	Stop alcohol use, opioid analgesia, enzyme supplementation; surgery may be required to repair ductal damage
Complications	Pancreatic abscess, pseudocyst , necrosis, fistula formation, renal failure, chronic pancreatitis, hemorrhage, shock , DIC, sepsis, respiratory failure	Ductal obstruction, pseudocyst, malnutrition , glucose intolerance, pancreatic cancer

CT, computed tomography; CXR, chest X-ray; DIC, disseminated intravascular coagulation; ERCP, endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography; US, ultrasound.



MNEMONIC

Remember the causes of acute pancreatitis by the mnemonic **BAD HITS**:
Biliary obstruction, **A**lcohol, **D**rugs, **H**ypercalcemia/
Hypertriglyceridemia, **I**diopathic, **T**rauma, **S**corpion stings

**MNEMONIC**

Remember Ranson criteria for increased mortality from acute pancreatitis on **admission** by the mnemonic **GA LAW**: **G**lucose >200 mg/dL, **A**ST >250 IU/L, **L**DH >350 IU/L, **A**ge >55 years, **W**BC >16,000/mL.

**MNEMONIC**

Ranson criteria for increased mortality from acute pancreatitis **during initial 48 hrs after admission** may be remembered by the mnemonic **Calvin & HOBBS**: **C**alcium <8 mg/dL, **H**ct decrease >10%, **O**₂ (PaO₂) <60 mm Hg, **B**UN increase >5 mg/dL, **B**ase deficit >4 mEq/L, **S**equestration of fluid >6 L.

TABLE 3-14 Ranson Criteria for Determining Prognosis during Acute Pancreatitis

Increased Mortality Associated with Three or More of the Following:

On Admission	During Initial 48 hr After Admission
Serum glucose >200 mg/dL	Serum calcium <8 mg/dL
Serum AST >250 IU/L	Hematocrit decreases >10%
Serum LDH >350 IU/L	Pao ₂ <60 mm Hg
>55 yr of age	BUN increases >5 mg/dL
WBC >16,000/mL	Base deficit >4 mEq/L
	Fluid sequestration >6 L

BUN, blood urea nitrogen; LDH, lactate dehydrogenase; Pao₂, partial pressure of arterial oxygen; WBC, white blood cell count.

B. Pancreatic pseudocyst

1. Fluid collection arising from pancreas consisting of enzyme-rich fluids contained in sac of inflamed membranous tissue
2. **H/P** = possibly asymptomatic; **recent acute pancreatitis**, epigastric pain; fever
3. **Labs** = increased WBC, increased amylase; aspiration of pseudocyst demonstrates very high amylase content
4. **Radiology** = pseudocyst visible on ultrasound (US) or CT
5. **Treatment** = possibly self-resolving; drainage (surgical, endoscopic, or percutaneous) indicated if lasting >6 weeks, painful, or rapidly growing; debride necrotic pancreatic tissue
6. **Complications** = rupture, hemorrhage, abscess formation

C. Exocrine pancreatic cancer

1. Adenocarcinoma of pancreas most commonly in head of pancreas
2. **Risk factors** = chronic pancreatitis, DM, family history, tobacco, high-fat diet; male > female, obesity, sedentary lifestyle
3. **H/P** = **abdominal pain radiating to back**, anorexia, nausea, vomiting, weight loss, fatigue, steatorrhea; jaundice if bile duct obstructed (painless jaundice is possible); palpable, nontender gallbladder (i.e., **Courvoisier sign**); splenomegaly (if in tail), palpable deep abdominal mass, ascites
4. **Labs** = possible hyperglycemia; increased CEA and CA 19–9 tumor markers; increased bilirubin (total and direct) and increased alkaline phosphatase with bile duct obstruction; biopsy used to make diagnosis
5. **Radiology** = CT shows mass, dilated pancreas, local spread, and dilated bile ducts; US also useful for imaging mass, but not as sensitive as CT; endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP) locates tumors not seen with CT; endoscopic US often helpful for staging and to guide fine-needle aspiration biopsy
6. **Treatment**
 - a. Nonmetastatic disease limited to head of pancreas may be resected with **Whipple procedure** (i.e., removal of pancreatic head, duodenum, proximal jejunum, common bile duct, gallbladder, and distal stomach).
 - b. Lesions in body or tail rarely amenable to surgery but can be resected via subtotal pancreatectomy if found early
 - c. Adjuvant chemotherapy may be beneficial in resectable disease.
 - d. Enzyme deficiency treated with replacement therapy
 - e. Stenting of pancreatic ducts, biliary ducts, or duodenum can be performed as palliative therapy in advanced disease.

7. **Complications** = usually not detected until progressed; 5-year survival <2%; 20% to 30% 5-year survival following successful Whipple procedure; migratory thrombophlebitis (i.e., Trousseau syndrome)

D. Endocrine pancreatic cancers

1. Neoplasms involving glandular pancreatic tissue
2. Frequently difficult to locate; may be seen with CT or MRI
3. **Zollinger-Ellison syndrome** (see earlier discussion under “Gastric Conditions” section)
4. **Insulinoma**
 - a. Insulin-secreting β -islet cell tumor causing **hypoglycemia**
 - b. **H/P** = headache, visual changes, confusion, weakness, mood instability, palpitations, diaphoresis
 - c. **Labs** = **increased fasting insulin**, spontaneous hypoglycemia, high C-peptide
 - d. **Radiology** = CT, US, or indium-labeled octreotide scintigraphy may be useful for localizing tumor
 - e. **Treatment** = surgical resection; diazoxide or octreotide may relieve symptoms in nonresectable disease
5. **Glucagonoma**
 - a. Glucagon-secreting α -cell tumor causing hyperglycemia
 - b. May present as refractory DM
 - c. **H/P** = abdominal pain, diarrhea, weight loss, mental status changes; exfoliating rash (**migratory necrolytic erythema**); **symptoms of DM**
 - d. **Labs** = hyperglycemia, **increased glucagon**; biopsy confirms diagnosis
 - e. **Radiology** = CT or endoscopic US may localize tumor
 - f. **Treatment** = surgical resection if localized lesion; octreotide, IFN- α , chemotherapy, and embolization may be used in metastatic disease
 - g. **Complications** = frequently malignant; poor prognosis
6. **VIPoma**
 - a. Vasoactive intestinal peptide (VIP)-producing tumor of non- β -islet cells
 - b. **H/P** = **watery diarrhea**, weakness, nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain
 - c. **Labs** = increased serum VIP, stool osmolality suggests secretory cause
 - d. **Radiology** = CT may detect tumor
 - e. **Treatment** = surgical resection for localized tumors; corticosteroids, chemotherapy, octreotide, and embolization used in metastatic disease

NEXT STEP

If Whipple triad is seen (**symptoms of hypoglycemia while fasting, hypoglycemia, and improvement in symptoms with carbohydrate load**), perform a workup for insulinoma.



QUICK HIT

Insulinomas are almost always **solitary**; multiple insulinomas may be seen in **MEN 1**.

VI. BILIARY DISORDERS

A. Cholelithiasis

1. Gallstone formation in the gallbladder that can cause cystic duct obstruction
2. **Risk factors** = age >40 years, obesity, female, multiparity, oral contraceptive use, total parenteral nutrition (TPN), recent rapid weight loss, family history, DM,
3. Most stones are composed of **cholesterol**; others are calcium bilirubinate (i.e., **pigmented stones**) secondary to chronic hemolysis
4. **H/P** = possibly asymptomatic; postprandial abdominal pain (**worst in right upper quadrant [RUQ]**), nausea, vomiting, indigestion, flatulence; RUQ tenderness, palpable gallbladder
5. **Radiology** = US may show gallstones (see Figure 3-16); AXR will only show some pigmented stones (because of high iron content from bilirubin)
6. **Treatment** = dietary modification (decrease fatty food intake), bile salts (dissolve stones), shock wave lithotripsy (uses sound waves to break up stones); **cholecystectomy** is typically performed in symptomatic patients
7. **Complications** = recurrent stones, **acute cholecystitis**, **pancreatitis**

B. Acute cholecystitis

1. Inflammation of gallbladder commonly caused by **gallstone obstruction of cystic duct**; acalculous cholecystitis can occur in patients on TPN or in those who are critically ill



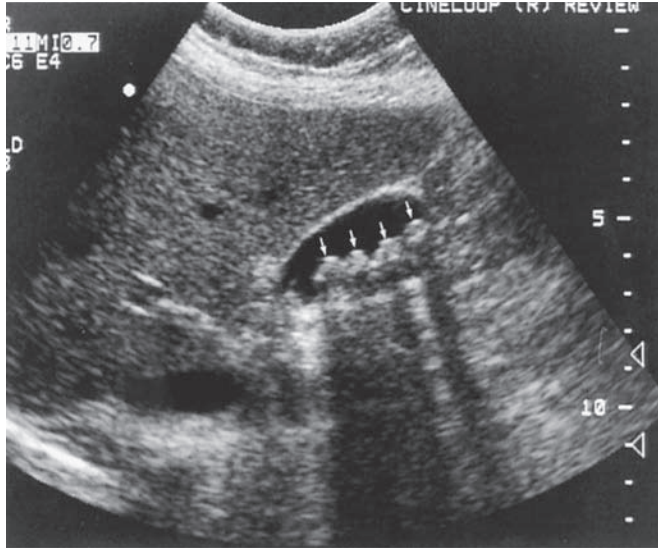
MNEMONIC

Remember the **5 Fs** for patients susceptible to gallstone formation: **Female, Fertile, Fat, Forty** (years of age), and **Family history**.

NEXT STEP

If a positive Murphy sign (**palpation of RUQ during inspiration stops inspiration secondary to pain**) is detected, suspect acute cholecystitis and perform an US.

FIGURE 3-16 Ultrasound demonstrating multiple gallstones (*white arrows*) in the gallbladder.



Note the shadow caused by gallstones, which may be more apparent than the gallstones themselves in several cases.
(From Daffner, R. H. [1999]. *Clinical Radiology: The Essentials* [2nd ed.]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

2. **H/P** = RUQ pain radiating to back, nausea, vomiting, anorexia; fever, palpable gallbladder, RUQ tenderness; symptoms more severe and longer in duration than typical cholelithiasis
3. **Labs** = increased WBC; increased bilirubin (total and direct) and increased alkaline phosphatase seen when condition is related to impacted stone or cholangitis
4. **Radiology** = US may show gallstones, sludge, thickened gallbladder wall, or sonographic Murphy sign; hepatic iminodiacetic acid (**HIDA**) scan will detect cystic duct obstruction (gallbladder fails to fill normally during scan)
5. **Treatment** = hydration, antibiotics, **cholecystectomy** (frequently delayed after 24 to 48 hours of supportive care); patients with more mild symptoms can be treated with lithotripsy and bile salts; patients who are not stable for surgery can be treated with ERCP delivery of stone solvents
6. **Complications** = perforation, gallstone ileus, abscess formation

NEXT STEP

If Charcot triad (**RUQ pain, jaundice, and fever**) is seen, suspect cholangitis and perform an US or HIDA scan.

NEXT STEP

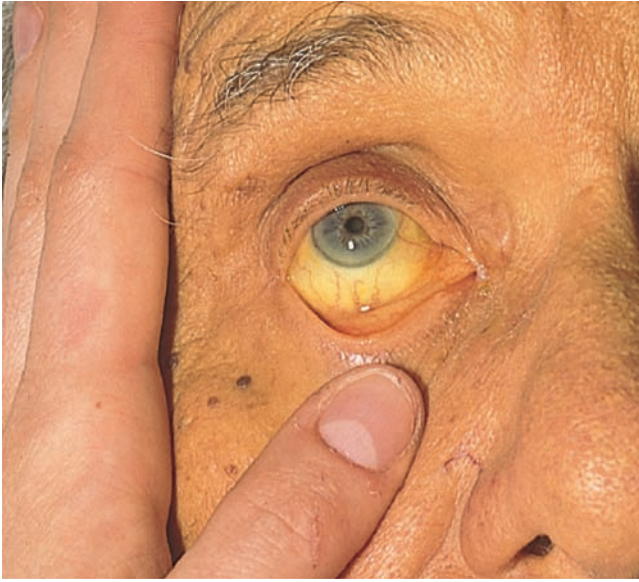
A **calcified gallbladder** is highly suggestive of chronic cholecystitis but may represent cancer in 10%–30%, and cholecystectomy should be performed promptly to confirm diagnosis.

C. Cholangitis

1. Infection of bile ducts secondary to ductal obstruction
2. **Risk factors** = cholelithiasis, anatomic duct defect, biliary cancer
3. **H/P** = RUQ pain, chills; **jaundice, fever, RUQ tenderness**; change in mental status or signs of shock seen in severe cases (see Figure 3-17)
4. **Labs** = increased WBC, increased bilirubin (total and direct), increased alkaline phosphatase, increased AST and ALT, increased amylase with associated pancreatic inflammation, **positive blood cultures**
5. **Radiology** = US may detect obstruction; HIDA scan is more sensitive
6. **Treatment** = hydration, IV antibiotics, endoscopic biliary drainage followed by delayed cholecystectomy; severe symptoms demand **emergency bile duct decompression** and relief of obstruction

D. Gallbladder cancer

1. Adenocarcinoma of gallbladder associated with cholelithiasis, chronic infection, and biliary tract disease; generally poor prognosis
2. **H/P** = similar symptoms to acute cholecystitis; anorexia, weight loss, abdominal pain radiating to back; palpable gallbladder, jaundice
3. **Labs** = increased bilirubin (total and direct), increased alkaline phosphatase, increased cholesterol; biopsy provides diagnosis

FIGURE 3-17**Jaundice in a patient with hyperbilirubinemia.**

Note the yellow sclera and skin compared with the normal hue of the examiner's hand.

(From Bickley, L. S., & Szilagy, P. [2003]. *Bates' Guide to Physical Examination and History Taking* [8th ed.]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

4. **Radiology** = abdominal radiograph may show **calcified gallbladder** (i.e., porcelain gallbladder); US or endoscopic US may detect invasive mass; ERCP can localize lesion and perform biopsy
5. **Treatment** = cholecystectomy, lymph node dissection, partial removal of adjacent hepatic tissue; adjuvant radiation therapy and chemotherapy may reduce recurrence rates and are used as primary therapies in unresectable disease

E. Primary biliary cirrhosis (PBC)

1. Autoimmune disease with intrahepatic bile duct destruction leading to accumulation of cholesterol, bile acids, and bilirubin
2. **Risk factors** = rheumatoid arthritis, Sjögren syndrome, scleroderma; **female > male**
3. **H/P** = possibly asymptomatic; fatigue, pruritus, arthralgias; jaundice, xanthomas, skin hyperpigmentation, hepatosplenomegaly
4. **Labs** = increased alkaline phosphatase, increased GGT, normal AST and ALT, increased cholesterol, increased bilirubin (total and direct) later in disease course; positive antinuclear antibody (ANA), **positive antimitochondrial antibodies**; workup may indicate comorbid autoimmune diseases; biopsy shows inflammation and necrosis in bile ducts
5. **Treatment** = ursodeoxycholic acid improves liver function and reduces symptoms; colchicines or methotrexate can be added in more severe cases; liver transplant needed in progressive disease

F. Primary sclerosing cholangitis (PSC)

1. Progressive destruction of intrahepatic and extrahepatic bile ducts leading to fibrosis and cirrhosis
2. **Risk factors** = ulcerative colitis; **male > female**
3. **H/P** = possibly asymptomatic; fatigue, pruritus, RUQ pain; fever, night sweats, jaundice, xanthomas
4. **Labs** = increased alkaline phosphatase, increased GGT, normal AST and ALT, increased cholesterol, increased bilirubin (total and direct), possible positive perinuclear antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies (pANCA); biopsy appears similar to that for PBC



QUICK HIT

Gender, presence or absence of antimitochondrial antibodies, and ERCP distinguish PBC from PSC.



QUICK HIT

Prehepatic conditions cause an increase in **indirect bilirubin**; **posthepatic** conditions cause an increase in **direct bilirubin**; **intrahepatic** conditions can cause an increase of **either or both** types of bilirubin.

5. **Radiology** = ERCP shows stricturing and irregularity of extrahepatic and intrahepatic bile ducts (i.e., “pearls on string”)
6. **Treatment** = ursodeoxycholic acid, methotrexate, corticosteroids; endoscopic stenting of strictures; surgical resection of affected ducts and liver transplant may be required in progressive cases

G. Disorders of hepatic bilirubin transport

1. **Normal bilirubin transport**
 - a. Unconjugated bilirubin from red blood cell count (RBC) hemolysis exists in venous circulation.
 - b. Unconjugated bilirubin enters hepatocytes and is conjugated by glucuronosyltransferase.
 - c. Conjugated bilirubin reenters venous circulation.
 - d. Abnormal levels of unconjugated bilirubin versus conjugated bilirubin versus both types can help indicate location of pathology and narrow differential diagnosis (see Table 3-15).
2. **Gilbert disease**
 - a. Autosomal recessive or dominant disease with **mild deficiency** of glucuronosyltransferase
 - b. **H/P** = mild jaundice following fasting, exercise, or stress
 - c. **Labs** = increased indirect bilirubin <5 mg/dL
 - d. **Treatment** = none necessary
3. **Crigler-Najjar syndrome type I**
 - a. Autosomal recessive disease with **severe deficiency** in glucuronosyltransferase
 - b. **H/P** = persistent jaundice and central nervous system (CNS) symptoms (due to kernicterus) in infants
 - c. **Labs** = increased indirect bilirubin >5 mg/dL
 - d. **Treatment** = phototherapy, plasmapheresis, calcium phosphate combined with orlistat; liver transplantation is an option
 - e. **Complications** = early kernicterus can cause permanent CNS damage

TABLE 3-15 Causes of Conjugated and Unconjugated Bilirubinemia

Increased Total Bilirubin		
Hyperbilirubinemia	Cause	Examples
Unconjugated (indirect)	Excess bilirubin production	Hemolytic anemia Disorders of erythropoiesis Internal hemorrhage resorption
	Impaired conjugation	Physiologic jaundice of newborn Deficiency of glucuronosyltransferase (Gilbert disease, Crigler-Najjar syndrome) Hepatocellular disease (cirrhosis, hepatitis)
Conjugated (direct)	Decreased hepatic bilirubin excretion	Impaired bilirubin transport (Dubin-Johnson syndrome, Rotor syndrome) Hepatocellular disease (cirrhosis, hepatitis) Drug impairment
	Extrahepatic biliary obstruction	Intrahepatic bile duct disease (PBC, PSC) Gallstone obstruction of bile ducts (choledocholithiasis) Pancreatic or biliary cancer Biliary atresia

PBC, primary biliary cirrhosis; PSC, primary sclerosing cholangitis.

4. **Crigler-Najjar syndrome type II**
 - a. Mild deficiency of glucuronosyltransferase; phenotypically similar to Gilbert syndrome
 - b. Can be treated with phenobarbital, which induces hepatic synthesis of glucuronyltransferase, and reduces jaundice

VII. HEPATIC DISORDERS

A. Alcohol-related liver disease

1. Progressive liver damage secondary to **alcoholism**
2. Initially characterized by fatty deposits in liver; reversible with alcohol cessation
3. Continued alcoholism causes hepatic inflammation and early necrosis
4. Progressive damage results in cirrhosis
5. **H/P** = asymptomatic for many years of alcoholism; anorexia, nausea, vomiting late in disease course; abdominal tenderness, ascites, splenomegaly, hepatomegaly, fever, jaundice, testicular atrophy, gynecomastia, digital clubbing
6. **Labs** = increased ALT, increased AST, increased γ -glutamyl transferase (GGT), increased alkaline phosphatase, increased bilirubin (total and direct), prolonged prothrombin time (PT), decreased lipids, increased WBC; biopsy provides diagnosis (**fatty liver**, many polymorphonuclear leukocytes (PMNs), areas of necrosis)
7. **Treatment** = **cessation of alcohol use**, thiamine, folate, high caloric intake (2,500 to 3,000 kcal/day); liver transplant is a consideration in patients who are able to maintain abstinence from alcohol
8. **Complications** = cirrhosis, hepatic encephalopathy, coagulation disorders

B. Cirrhosis

1. **Persistent liver damage** leading to **necrosis** and **fibrosis** of hepatic parenchyma
2. Caused by **alcoholism**, chronic **HBV** or **HCV** infection, chronic bile duct obstruction and chronic cholestasis (PBC/PSC), and hepatic parenchymal diseases (hemochromatosis, Wilson disease, α_1 -antitrypsin deficiency, NASH, autoimmune hepatitis)
3. **H/P** = symptoms follow continuum from early liver diseases; weakness, weight loss, GI bleeding; abdominal wall varicosities (e.g., **caput medusae**), **hepatomegaly**, splenomegaly, **ascites**, jaundice, peripheral edema, possible mental status changes (from encephalopathy), asterixis (i.e., asynchronous flapping of hands), testicular atrophy, gynecomastia, spider telangiectasias, palmar erythema, digital clubbing, Dupuytren contractures in hands
4. **Labs** = increased ALT, increased AST, increased GGT, increased alkaline phosphatase, decreased albumin, anemia, decreased platelets, prolonged PT; paracentesis of ascites shows fluid with <2.5 g/dL protein, WBC $<300/\mu\text{L}$, normal glucose level, and decreased amylase; biopsy shows fibrosis and hepatic necrosis
5. **Radiology** = US detects small, nodular liver
6. **Treatment** = **nonreversible**, but progression may be halted; stop offending agent (e.g., alcohol); treat varices with β -blockers or sclerotherapy to reduce bleeding risk; lactulose, rifaximin may improve encephalopathy; liver transplant may be needed in progressive cases
7. **Complications** = **portal hypertension**, varices (caused by venous hypertension), ascites, **hepatic encephalopathy** (because of poor filtering of blood), renal failure, spontaneous bacterial peritonitis

C. Portal hypertension

1. Increase in portal vein pressure giving it a **higher pressure than the inferior vena cava**; may result from prehepatic, intrahepatic, or posthepatic causes
2. Prehepatic causes include portal vein thrombosis.
3. Intrahepatic causes include **cirrhosis**, schistosomiasis, parenchymal disease, and granulomatous disease.
4. Posthepatic causes include **right-sided heart failure**, hepatic vein thrombosis, and Budd-Chiari syndrome (i.e., hepatic vein thrombosis secondary to hypercoagulability)
5. Shunting of blood into systemic veins causes varices in several locations (see Figure 3-18)



QUICK HIT

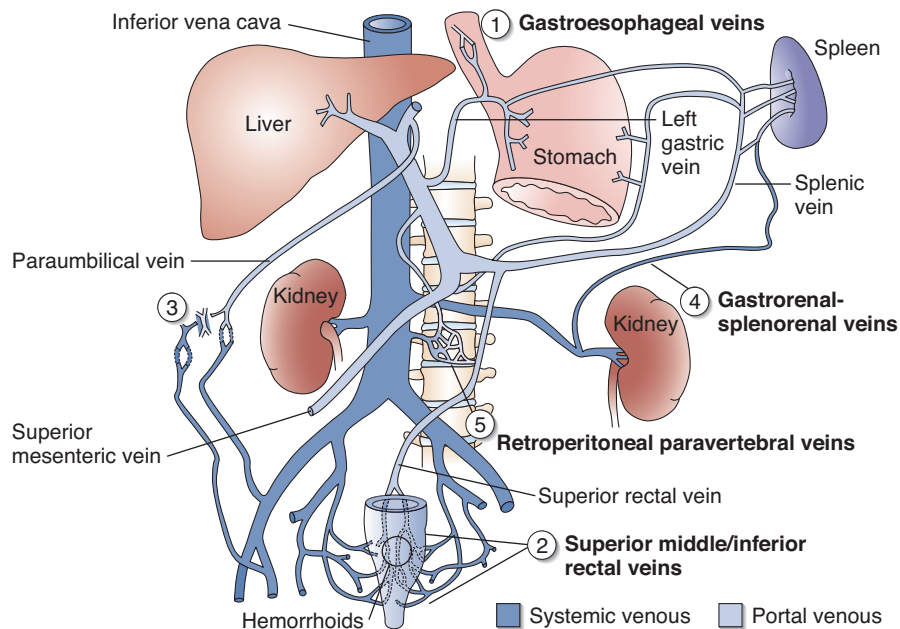
In viral hepatitis, AST and ALT are equally high; in alcohol-related liver disease, AST $>$ ALT by $>2:1$ ratio



QUICK HIT

Spontaneous bacterial peritonitis can result from systemic infection and comorbid portal hypertension; paracentesis will show >250 PMN/ μL total protein >1 g/dL, glucose <50 mg/dL, and lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) $>$ normal serum LDH.

FIGURE 3-18 Portal-systemic anastomoses and common sites of varices in portal hypertension.



Sites of varices

- | | | |
|-----------------------|------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Esophageal varices | 3. Caput medusae | 5. Paravertebral varices |
| 2. Hemorrhoids | 4. Renal varices | |

(Modified from Amin, C., Bhushan, V., & Le, T. (2003). *First Aid for the USMLE Step 2* (4th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill; with permission.)

NEXT STEP

If paracentesis detects very high albumin and LDH equal to 60% serum LDH, worry about a neoplastic etiology and do a full workup for cancer.

6. **H/P** = ascites, abdominal pain, change in mental status (from hepatic encephalopathy), hematemesis (caused by esophageal varices), symptoms of cirrhosis; hepatomegaly, splenomegaly, fever, abdominal wall varices, testicular atrophy, gynecomastia
7. **Labs** = paracentesis shows ascites with serum-ascites albumin gradient (SAAG) ≥ 1.1
8. **Radiology** = CT may show ascites and obstructing mass; EGD may show esophageal varices
9. **Treatment**
 - a. Salt restriction and diuretics (furosemide and spironolactone) for ascites
 - b. IV antibiotics for bacterial peritonitis (or with variceal hemorrhage)
 - c. Dialysis for renal failure
 - d. Lactulose and rifaximin for hepatic encephalopathy
 - e. Vasopressin or sclerotherapy for bleeding varices
 - f. **Hepatic shunting** via laparotomy or transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunting (TIPS) is short-term solution for severe disease; **liver transplant** often required as eventual treatment in progressive cases

D. Hemochromatosis

1. Autosomal recessive disease of iron absorption
2. **Excess iron absorption** causes iron deposition in liver, pancreas, heart, and pituitary, leading to eventual fibrosis.
3. Rarely is result of chronic blood transfusions or alcoholism
4. **H/P** = abdominal pain, polydipsia, polyuria, arthralgias, impotence, lethargy; **pigmented rash** (bronze hue), hepatomegaly, testicular atrophy; may see symptoms and signs that resemble DM and CHF
5. **Labs** = increased iron, increased percentage saturation of iron, increased ferritin, increased transferrin saturation, slightly increased AST and ALT; biopsy shows increased iron content in liver, but diagnosis is usually made by genetic testing

- Treatment = weekly or biweekly phlebotomy until normal iron, then monthly phlebotomy; avoid excess alcohol consumption; deferoxamine for iron chelation
- Complications = cirrhosis, hepatoma, CHF, DM, hypopituitarism

E. Wilson disease

- Autosomal recessive disorder of impaired copper secretion, primarily in young adults
- Excess copper deposits in liver, brain, cornea
- H/P = psychiatric disturbances (e.g., depression, neuroses, **personality changes**), **loss of coordination**, dysphagia; jaundice, tremor, possible green-brown rings in cornea (i.e., **Kayser-Fleischer rings**), hepatomegaly; signs may precede symptoms
- Labs = decreased serum ceruloplasmin, increased urinary copper, slightly increased AST and ALT; biopsy shows increased copper deposits in liver
- Treatment = trientine or penicillamine for copper chelation; lifelong zinc for maintenance therapy; dietary copper restriction (no organ meats, shellfish, chocolate, nuts, or mushrooms), supplementary vitamin B₆; liver transplantation may be needed in cases of liver failure
- Complications = fulminant hepatic failure, cirrhosis

F. α_1 -Antitrypsin deficiency

- Codominant disorder with decreased α_1 -antitrypsin production leading to cirrhosis and panlobular **emphysema**
- Most symptoms arise from emphysemic component of disease.
- Labs = increased AST, increased ALT; **pulmonary function tests (PFTs) demonstrate obstructive disease**
- Treatment = liver transplant or lung transplant may be needed in severe cases; enzyme replacement may be helpful in stopping disease progression

G. Hepatic neoplasms

- Benign tumors (e.g., hepatic adenoma, focal nodular hyperplasia, hemangiomas, hepatic cysts)
 - Benign hepatic tumors found more commonly in **women with history of oral contraceptive use**
 - H/P = frequently asymptomatic; possible RUQ fullness
 - Radiology = CT, MRI, or angiography detects hypervascular liver mass
 - Treatment = frequently untreated; larger tumors may be resected or embolized to prevent rupture
- Hepatocellular carcinoma (hepatoma)
 - Malignant tumor of hepatic parenchyma
 - Risk factors = **HBV or HCV infection**, cirrhosis, hemochromatosis, excessive consumption of aflatoxin from *Aspergillus*-infected food, schistosomiasis
 - H/P = RUQ pain, weight loss, malaise, anorexia, diarrhea, dyspnea; jaundice, hepatomegaly, bruit over liver, ascites
 - Labs = slightly increased AST and ALT, increased alkaline phosphatase, increased bilirubin (total and direct), **increased α -fetoprotein**; biopsy provides diagnosis but risks causing substantial hemorrhage
 - Radiology = CT, MRI, or US shows liver mass; angiography may show increased vascularity; PET can be used to determine extent of spread
 - Treatment = surgical resection of small tumors (lobectomy or partial hepatectomy) and chemotherapy; transplant may be an option for limited disease; radiofrequency ablation and chemoembolization are options for unresectable tumors
 - Complications = poor prognosis; portal vein obstruction, Budd-Chiari syndrome, liver failure



QUICK HIT

Biopsy of hepatic masses is usually contraindicated because of hypervascularity and risk of hemorrhage.



QUICK HIT

Liver metastases from breast, lung, or colon cancers are much more common than primary liver cancers.



QUICK HIT

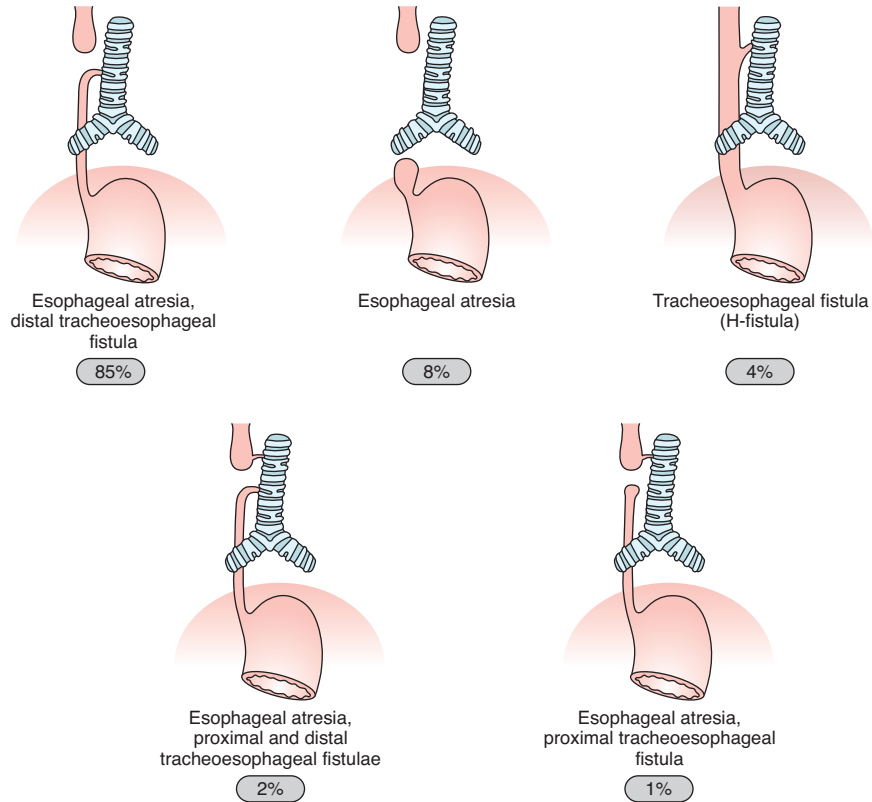
Paraneoplastic syndromes associated with hepatoma include hypoglycemia, excessive RBC production, refractory watery diarrhea, hypercalcemia, and variable skin lesions.

VIII. PEDIATRIC GI DISORDERS

A. Tracheoesophageal fistula

- Malformation of trachea and esophagus resulting in tract formation between structures (see Figure 3-19)

FIGURE 3-19 Variations of tracheoesophageal fistulas.



(Modified from Rudolph, A. M. [Ed.]. [1991]. *Rudolph's Pediatrics* [19th ed.]. Stamford, CN: Appleton and Lange; with permission.)

2. Frequently associated with esophageal atresia
3. H/P = coughing and cyanosis during feeding, food may fill blind pouch, abdominal distention, possible history of aspiration pneumonia
4. Radiology = chest radiograph following nasogastric tube insertion demonstrates malformation (tube in lung or blind pouch)
5. Treatment = surgical repair

B. Pyloric stenosis

1. Hypertrophy of pyloric sphincter causing obstruction of gastric outlet
2. H/P = symptoms begin a few weeks after birth; nonbilious emesis, **projectile emesis**; **palpable epigastric olive-sized mass**
3. Labs = hypochloremic, hypokalemic metabolic alkalosis
4. Radiology = barium swallow shows thin pyloric channel (i.e., **string sign**); US shows increased pyloric muscle thickness (see Figure 3-20)
5. Treatment = pyloromyotomy

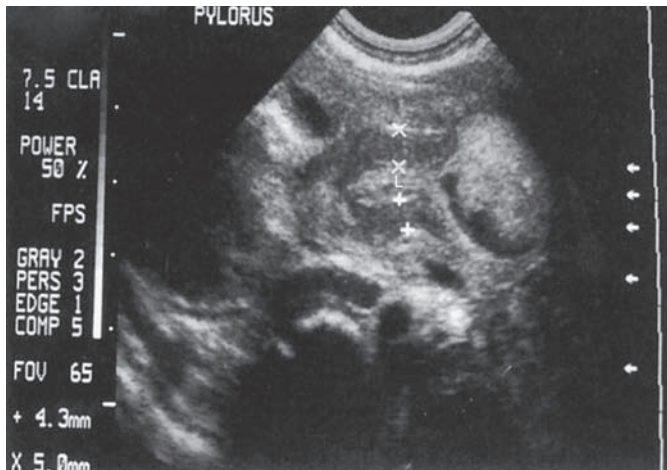
C. Necrotizing enterocolitis

1. Idiopathic mucosal necrosis and epithelial cell sloughing
2. Risk factors = preterm birth, low birth weight
3. H/P = bilious vomiting, lethargy, poor feeding, diarrhea, **hematochezia**; abdominal distention, abdominal tenderness; signs of shock in severe cases
4. Labs = metabolic acidosis, decreased Na^+
5. Radiology = abdominal radiograph shows bowel distention, **air in bowel wall**, portal vein gas, or free air under the diaphragm
6. Treatment = TPN, IV antibiotics, broad-spectrum antibiotics, nasogastric suction, surgical resection of affected bowel

D. Hirschsprung disease

1. Absence of bowel autonomic innervation causing bowel spasm and obstruction
2. H/P = vomiting, **obstipation**, failure to pass stool; abdominal distention

FIGURE

3-20 Abdominal ultrasound demonstrating pyloric stenosis.

Note the thin pyloric lumen (L) and the thickened pyloric musculature (defined by region between x's and +'s).

(From Daffner, R. H. [1999]. *Clinical Radiology: The Essentials* [2nd ed.]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

3. Labs = bowel biopsy shows **absence of ganglia**
4. Radiology = AXR demonstrates dilated bowel; barium enema shows proximal dilation (megacolon) with distal narrowing
5. Treatment = colostomy and resection of affected area

E. Intussusception

1. Telescoping of bowel into adjacent segment of bowel, leading to obstruction; most frequently proximal to ileocecal valve
2. Risk factors = Meckel diverticulum, Henoch-Schönlein purpura, adenovirus infection, cystic fibrosis
3. H/P = sudden abdominal pain that lasts <1 min and is episodic; pallor, sweating, vomiting, bloody mucus in stool (i.e., **currant jelly stool**); abdominal tenderness; palpable, **sausage-like abdominal mass**
4. Labs = increased WBC
5. Radiology = barium enema will show obstruction; US or CT may detect abnormal bowel
6. Treatment = barium enema may reduce defect; surgery required for refractory cases
7. Complications = bowel ischemia (appendix particularly susceptible)

F. Meckel diverticulum

1. Common remnant of vitelline duct that exists as **outpouching of ileum** and may contain **ectopic tissue**
2. H/P = asymptomatic; occasionally presents with painless rectal bleeding, **intussusception**, diverticulitis, or abscess formation
3. Radiology = gastric mucosa may be detected by technetium radionuclide scan (i.e., **Meckel scan**)
4. Treatment = surgical resection if symptomatic

G. Neonatal jaundice

1. Hyperbilirubinemia in the newborn may be due to **physiologic, hepatic, or hematologic** causes
 - a. Physiologic (**common**): **physiologic undersecretion**, breastfeeding failure
 - b. Increased hemolysis: maternal-fetal ABO incompatibility, hereditary RBC abnormalities, glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD) deficiency
 - c. Bilirubin overproduction without hemolysis: hemorrhage, maternal-fetal transfusion
 - d. Hepatic abnormalities: Gilbert syndrome, Crigler-Najjar syndrome, biliary atresia
2. Physiologic causes frequently resolve within 2 weeks.

**QUICK HIT**

Intussusception is the most common cause of bowel obstruction in the **first 2 years of life**.

**QUICK HIT**

Intussusception in an adult is considered cancer until proven otherwise and usually will require surgical reduction.

**QUICK HIT**

Meckel diverticulum rule of 2s—males **2 times** more common than females, occurs within **2 ft** of ileocecal valve, **2 types** of ectopic tissue (gastric, pancreatic), found in **2%** of the population, most complications occur before **2 years** of age.



**NEXT
STEP**

Always look for signs of abuse and neglect in a child with failure to thrive.

3. **Kernicterus** is deposition of bilirubin in the basal ganglia and hippocampus and may cause permanent damage; results from extremely high serum bilirubin and is typically only seen with hepatic abnormalities
4. **H/P** = jaundice, scleral icterus; lethargy, high-pitched cry, seizures, and apnea seen with kernicterus
5. **Labs** = frequently indirect hyperbilirubinemia (due to hemolysis); jaundice developing with initial 24 hrs after birth, total bilirubin >15 mg/dL, or direct bilirubin >2 mg/dL suggests nonphysiologic cause
6. **Treatment** = phototherapy used for physiologic jaundice lasting several days; suspected nonphysiologic causes should be worked up and may require exchange transfusion; intravenous immunoglobulin may reduce need for exchange transfusion in cases of maternal–fetal blood type incompatibility

H. Failure to thrive

1. Children below third percentile weight for age or failure to gain weight appropriate for age
2. May be due to underlying illness or neglect
3. **H/P** = look for leads to organic causes; screen for abuse
4. **Labs** = urinalysis, CBC, blood culture, urine culture, serum electrolytes, cystic fibrosis testing, and caloric intake records may be helpful in making diagnosis
5. **Treatment** = high-calorie diet, treat underlying disorder; educate parents in proper nutrition and feeding; contact social support services in cases of neglect or abuse

Genitourinary Disorders

I. NORMAL RENAL FUNCTION

A. Physiology (see Figure 4-1)

- Kidneys function to filter serum plasma, regulate fluid volume and electrolyte levels, maintain body fluid homeostasis, and secrete several hormones important in systemic hemodynamics.
- Proximal convoluted tubule (cortex)**
 - Almost all glucose, bicarbonate (HCO_3^-), amino acids, and metabolites are reabsorbed.
 - Two-thirds of sodium (Na^+) is reabsorbed; chloride (Cl^-) and water (H_2O) are reabsorbed passively along osmotic gradient.
 - Organic acids (e.g., uric acid, etc.) and bases are secreted into tubules.



QUICK HIT

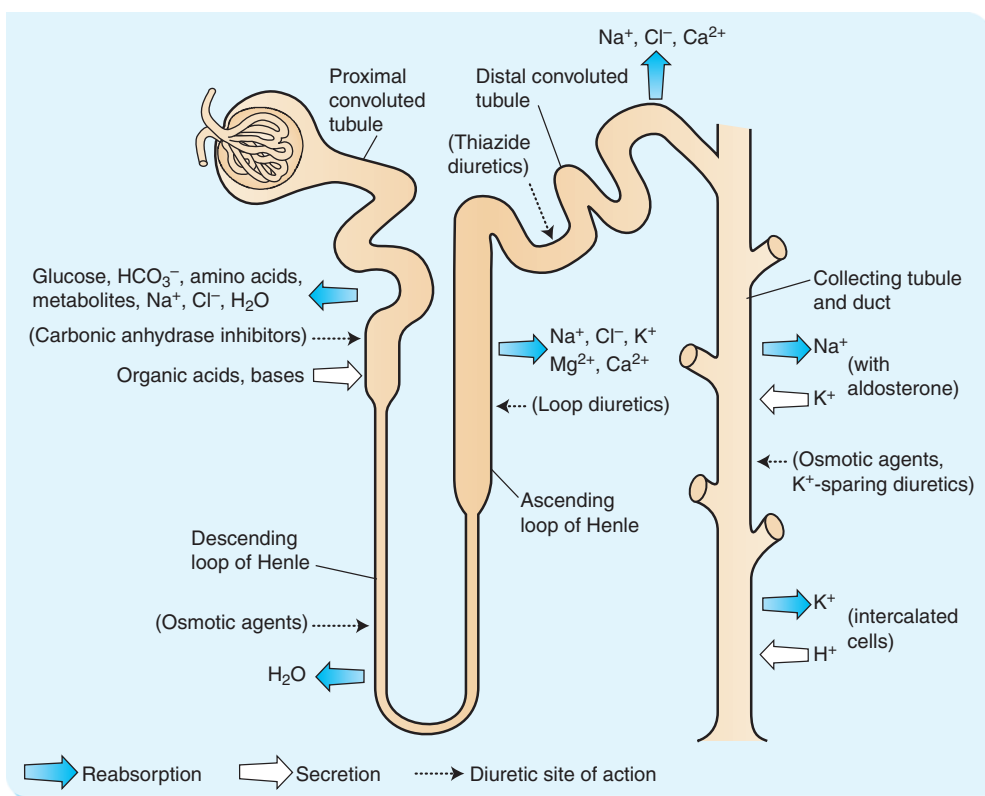
20% of all plasma flow entering the kidney enters Bowman capsule and is filtered.



QUICK HIT

Carbonic anhydrase is the catalyst for HCO_3^- reabsorption in the proximal convoluted tubule.

FIGURE 4-1 Anatomy of the nephron and major sites of ion, water, and molecule exchange.



**QUICK HIT**

Loop diuretics have direct pulmonary vasodilatory activity and are particularly useful in treating **pulmonary edema** caused by fluid overload.

3. **Descending loop of Henle** (medulla)
 - a. Increasing interstitial osmotic gradient causes water reabsorption and concentration of tubule fluid.
 - b. Descending limb is the only segment of the loop that is permeable to H₂O.
4. **Ascending loop of Henle** (medulla)
 - a. Active reabsorption of Na⁺, Cl⁻, and potassium (K⁺) by Na⁺/K⁺/Cl⁻ cotransporter
 - b. Reabsorption of magnesium (Mg²⁺), calcium (Ca²⁺), and K⁺ through paracellular diffusion
5. **Distal convoluted tubule** (cortex)
 - a. Cells impermeable to water
 - b. Na⁺ and Cl⁻ reabsorbed by Na⁺/Cl⁻ transporter
 - c. Ca²⁺ reabsorbed via parathyroid hormone activity
6. **Collecting tubule** (cortex) **and duct** (medulla)
 - a. Principal cells drive Na⁺ reabsorption and K⁺ secretion when stimulated by aldosterone.
 - b. Intercalated cells secrete H⁺ and reabsorb K⁺.
 - c. Antidiuretic hormone (ADH) drives H₂O reabsorption.

B. Diuretics (see Table 4-1)

1. Affect electrolyte and fluid resorption at distinct locations along the renal tubular system
2. Renal activity of diuretics affects body fluid composition and volume.

TABLE 4-1 Common Diuretics and Effects within the Nephron

Diuretic	Site of Action	Mechanism of Action	Indications	Adverse Effects
Carbonic anhydrase inhibitors (acetazolamide)	Proximal convoluted tubule	Inhibition of carbonic anhydrase causes mild diuresis and prevents HCO ₃ ⁻ reabsorption	Glaucoma, epilepsy, altitude sickness, metabolic alkalosis	Mild metabolic acidosis, hypokalemia, nephrolithiasis
Osmotic agents (mannitol, urea)	Proximal convoluted tubule, loop of Henle, collecting tubule	Increased tubular osmotic gradient increases H ₂ O excretion	Increased intracranial pressure, acute renal failure (from shock or drug toxicity), acute glaucoma	No effect on Na ⁺ excretion, hyponatremia initially, followed by relative hypernatremia
Loop diuretics (furosemide, bumetanide, torsemide)	Ascending loop of Henle	Inhibits Na ⁺ /Cl ⁻ /K ⁺ cotransporter to decrease reabsorption and indirectly inhibits Ca ²⁺ reabsorption	CHF, pulmonary edema, hypercalcemia; rapid onset useful in emergent situations	Ototoxicity, hyperuricemia, hypokalemia, hypocalcemia
Thiazides (hydrochlorothiazide, chlorthalidone)	Distal convoluted tubule	Inhibits Na ⁺ /Cl ⁻ cotransporter to decrease reabsorption and indirectly increases K ⁺ excretion and increases Ca ²⁺ reabsorption	HTN, CHF, hypercalciuria, diabetes insipidus	Hypokalemia, hyperuricemia, hypercalcemia
K ⁺ -sparing aldosterone antagonists (spironolactone, eplerenone)	Collecting tubules	Aldosterone receptor antagonists, inhibits Na ⁺ -K ⁺ exchange	Hyperaldosteronism, CHF, post-MI, cirrhosis; acne, PCOS (spironolactone only)	Hyperkalemia; gynecomastia, menstrual irregularity (spironolactone only)
Other K ⁺ -sparing (triamterene, amiloride)	Collecting tubules	Blocks Na ⁺ -K ⁺ exchanger in cortical collecting tubules	HTN, K ⁺ -preserving diuresis	Hyperkalemia

CHF, congestive heart failure; HTN, hypertension; MI, myocardial infarction.

II. DISORDERS OF THE KIDNEY

A. Pyelonephritis

1. Infection of renal parenchyma most commonly caused by *Escherichia coli*; *Staphylococcus saprophyticus*, *Klebsiella*, and *Proteus* are less common pathogens; *Candida* is a potential cause in immunocompromised patients
2. Most commonly occurs as sequelae of ascending urinary tract infection (UTI)
3. **Risk factors** = urinary obstruction, immunocompromise, history of previous pyelonephritis, diabetes mellitus (DM), sexual intercourse >3 times/week, new sexual partner, spermicide use
4. **History and Physical (H/P)** = flank pain, chills, nausea, vomiting, urinary frequency, dysuria, urgency; fever (>101.5°F/38°C), costovertebral tenderness
5. **Labs** = increased white blood cell count (WBC), erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR), and C-reactive protein (CRP); **white blood cell casts in urine**; positive urine cultures with >10⁵ bacteria/mL urine (possibly negative when due to hematogenous spread)
6. **Treatment** = intravenous (IV) fluoroquinolones, aminoglycosides, or cephalosporins (third generation) for 1 to 2 days, followed by outpatient oral antibiotics; severe or complicated cases may require 14 to 21 days of IV antibiotics; early mild cases in reliable patients may be amenable to oral antibiotics alone
7. **Complications** = increased risk of preterm labor and low birth weight in pregnant women

B. Nephrolithiasis (see Table 4-2)

1. Formation of “kidney” stones; stone formation can also occur elsewhere in the urinary tract; symptoms arise when stones become stuck in the urinary tract and cause obstruction.
2. **Risk factors** = family history, prior nephrolithiasis, low fluid intake, frequent UTIs, hypertension (HTN), DM, gout, renal tubular acidosis, hypercalcemia, hyperparathyroidism, certain drugs (e.g., acetazolamide, loop diuretics); males > females
3. **H/P** = acute severe colicky flank pain that may extend to inner thigh or genitals, nausea, vomiting, dysuria; possible gross hematuria
4. **Labs** = urinalysis shows hematuria (see Table 4-3)
5. **Radiology** = abdominal X-ray shows stones in most cases (except uric acid stones); computed tomography (CT) or ultrasound (US) may locate stones; intravenous pyelogram (IVP) shows filling defect but is used less frequently

QUICK HIT

Fluoroquinolones have comparable bioavailability for the oral and IV formulations.

QUICK HIT

The uretero-vesical junction is the most common site of renal stone impaction.

QUICK HIT

Patients with impacted stones will be in pain and will shift position frequently in unsuccessful attempts to find a comfortable position; patients with peritonitis will remain rigid.

QUICK HIT

In an IVP, water-soluble contrast dyes are injected IV and excreted by the kidneys; an appropriately timed X-ray will demonstrate excretion of the dye through the urinary tract and may show urinary defects and obstructions.

TABLE 4-2 Types of Nephrolithiasis (Renal Stones)

Type	Frequency	Cause	Radiology	Notes
Calcium oxalate	72%	Idiopathic hypercalciuria, small bowel diseases	Radiopaque	Most patients have no identifiable cause
Struvite (Mg-NH ₄ -PO ₄)	12%	Urinary tract infection (with urease-positive bacteria: <i>Proteus</i> , <i>Klebsiella</i>)	Radiopaque	More common in women; may form staghorn calculi
Calcium phosphate	8%	Hyperparathyroidism, renal tubular acidosis	Radiopaque	
Uric acid	7%	Chronic acidic/concentrated urine, chemotherapeutic drugs, gout	Radiolucent	Treat by alkalinizing urine
Cystine	1%	Cystinuria, amino acid transport defects	Radiopaque	May form staghorn calculi

TABLE 4-3 Common Causes of Hematuria

Age	Temporary Hematuria	Persistent Hematuria
<20 yr	Idiopathic UTI Exercise Trauma Endometriosis (women)	Glomerular disease
20–50 yr	Idiopathic UTI Nephrolithiasis Exercise Trauma Endometriosis (women)	Adult polycystic kidney disease Neoplasm (bladder, kidney, prostate) Glomerular disease
>50 yr	Idiopathic UTI Nephrolithiasis Trauma	Adult polycystic kidney disease BPH (men) Neoplasm (bladder, kidney, prostate) Glomerular disease

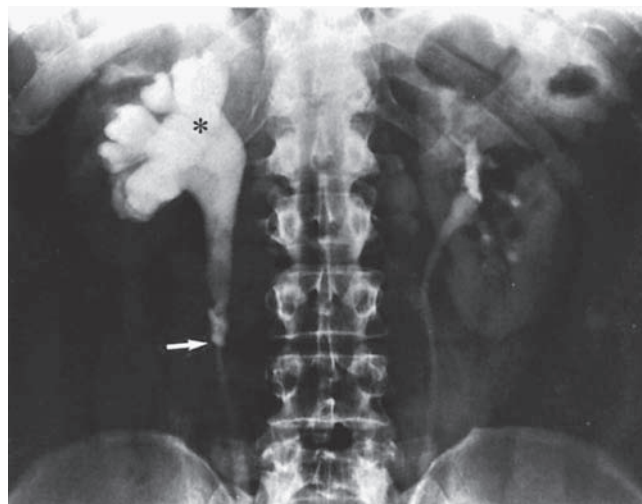
BPH, benign prostatic hyperplasia; UTI, urinary tract infection.

6. **Treatment** = hydration and pain control (possibly narcotics and/or ketorolac); shockwave lithotripsy can break up stones <3 cm diameter so that they pass through the ureters; surgery may be required for larger stones
7. **Complications** = hydronephrosis, recurrent stones

C. Hydronephrosis

1. Dilation of renal calyces as a result of increased pressure in the distal urinary tract
2. Caused by increased intrarenal pressure from urinary tract obstruction (e.g., stones, anatomic defects, extraurinary/intraurinary mass)
3. Can lead to permanent damage of renal parenchyma
4. **H/P** = possibly asymptomatic; dull or intermittent flank pain with history of UTI; anuria suggests significant bilateral ureteral obstruction
5. **Radiology** = US or IVP detects dilation (see Figure 4-2)

FIGURE 4-2 Intravenous pyelogram demonstrating hydronephrosis in the right kidney (*asterisk*); renal pelvis dilation is evident as is a radiopaque stone in the right ureter (*arrow*); the left kidney appears normal.



(From Daffner, R. H. [1998]. *Clinical Radiology: The Essentials* [2nd ed.]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.)

NEXT STEP
Rule out bladder or urethral obstruction in an anuric patient by attempting bladder catheterization.

FIGURE

4-3

Autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease.



Note enlargement of the kidney with many cysts of various sizes.

(From Rubin, E., & Farber, J. L. [1999]. *Pathology* [3rd ed., Figure 16-10]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

6. **Treatment** = drainage via nephrostomy tube; treat underlying obstruction (balloon dilation of ureter and placement of double-J stent in ureter may allow urine flow)
7. **Complications** = renal failure

D. Polycystic kidney disease

1. Hereditary syndrome characterized by the formation of cysts in one or both kidneys leading to eventual kidney functional impairment and failure (see Figure 4-3)
2. Types
 - a. **Autosomal dominant: most common form**; affects adults; large multicystic kidneys that function poorly
 - b. **Autosomal recessive: rare form**; presents in children; fatal in initial years of life (without transplant)
3. **H/P** = asymptomatic until adulthood (dominant form); flank pain, chronic UTI, gross hematuria; large, palpable kidneys; possible hypertension; symptoms exacerbated by cyst rupture
4. **Labs** = increased blood urea nitrogen (BUN), increased creatinine (Cr), anemia; urinalysis shows hematuria and proteinuria
5. **Radiology** = US or CT will show **large multicystic kidneys**; stones may be a comorbid finding
6. **Treatment** = vasopressin receptor antagonists and amiloride can help prevent collection of fluid in cysts; preserve kidney function by treating UTI and HTN; drainage of large cysts helps with pain control; dialysis or transplant may be required if function deteriorates into renal failure
7. **Complications** = end-stage renal disease, hepatic cysts, intracranial aneurysms, subarachnoid hemorrhage, mitral valve prolapse; more severe symptoms and quicker deterioration occur in the recessive form

E. Renal cell carcinoma

1. Most common primary malignant neoplasm of renal parenchyma
2. **Risk factor** = tobacco smoking, exposure to cadmium and asbestos
3. **H/P** = flank pain, weight loss; abdominal mass, HTN, fever, hematuria
4. **Labs** = polycythemia (secondary to increased erythropoietin activity); urinalysis shows hematuria; biopsy can be performed but is usually foregone in favor of immediate surgical resection
5. **Radiology** = US, magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), or CT with contrast may show renal mass



QUICK HIT

15% of patients with polycystic kidney disease develop a **subarachnoid hemorrhage**.



QUICK HIT

Malignancies that cause increased erythropoietin: renal cell carcinoma, hepatocellular carcinoma, pheochromocytoma, and hemangioblastoma

**QUICK HIT**

Both nephritic and nephrotic syndromes involve diseases of the glomeruli; they are differentiated by the absence (nephritic) or presence (nephrotic) of proteinuria >3.5 g/day.

6. **Treatment** = nephrectomy or renal-sparing resection with lymph node dissection (typically performed without biopsy for solid mass with adequate radiographic imaging); immunotherapy, radiation therapy, and chemotherapy used for metastatic or unresectable disease but infrequently improve survival
7. **Complications** = poor prognosis if not caught in early stages; early recognition significantly improves prognosis

F. Interstitial nephropathy (acute interstitial nephritis)

1. Damage of renal tubules or parenchyma caused by **drugs, toxins**, infection, or autoimmune processes
2. Medication causes include β -lactam antibiotics, sulfonamides, **aminoglycosides**, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), allopurinol, proton pump inhibitors (PPIs), and diuretics (in addition to several other drugs).
3. Toxic causes include **cadmium, lead**, copper, mercury, and some poisonous mushrooms.
4. Other causes include infection, sarcoidosis, amyloidosis, myoglobinuria (from muscle injury or excessive exercise), and high uric acid levels.
5. **H/P** = symptoms of acute renal failure, nausea, vomiting, malaise, rash; fever
6. **Labs** = increased Cr, eosinophilia; urinalysis may show granular or epithelial casts; toxin screens may detect offending agents; renal biopsy shows infiltration of inflammatory cells and renal tubular necrosis
7. **Treatment** = stop offending agent; supportive care until renal recovery; corticosteroids may be beneficial in refractory cases
8. **Complications** = **acute tubular necrosis (ATN)** (i.e., progressive damage of renal tubules), acute or chronic renal failure, renal papillary necrosis (ischemic necrosis of renal parenchyma), end-stage renal disease

**III. GLOMERULAR DISEASES****A. Nephritic syndromes** (see Table 4-4)

1. Acute **hematuria** and proteinuria that result secondary to **glomerular inflammation**
2. **H/P** = varies with pathology; oliguria and gross hematuria (evidenced by brown urine) are common
3. **Labs** = vary with pathology; generally increased BUN, increased Cr; hematuria and proteinuria seen on urinalysis; 24-hr urine collection measures protein as <3.5 g/day
4. **Treatment** = varies with pathology; dialysis or renal transplantation may be required in cases of renal failure

B. Nephrotic syndromes (see Table 4-5)

1. Significant proteinuria (>3.5 g/day) associated with hypoalbuminemia and hyperlipidemia
2. Frequently subsequent to glomerulonephritis
3. **H/P** = varies with pathology; generally **edema**, foamy urine, dyspnea, hypertension, ascites
4. **Labs** = vary with pathology; generally decreased albumin and hyperlipidemia; proteinuria >3.5 g/day seen on 24-hr urine collection
5. **Treatment** = varies with pathology; frequently includes diuretics and dietary salt and protein restriction

TABLE 4-4 Nephritic Syndromes

Type	Pathology	H/P	Labs	Treatment
Postinfectious glomerulonephritis	Sequelae of systemic infection (most commonly streptococcus)	Recent infection, oliguria, edema, brown urine, hypertension; more common in children	Hematuria and proteinuria in urinalysis, high antistreptolysin O titer, bumpy deposits of IgG and C3 on renal basement membrane on electron microscopy	Self-limited, supportive treatment (decrease edema and hypertension)
IgA nephropathy (Berger disease)	Uncertain but may be related to infection; deposition of IgA antibodies in mesangial cells	Hematuria, flank pain, low-grade fever	Increased serum IgA , mesangial cell proliferation on electron microscopy; histology indistinguishable from Henoch-Schönlein purpura renal disease	Occasionally self-limited; give ACE-I and statins for persistent proteinuria; give corticosteroids if nephrotic syndrome develops
Goodpasture syndrome	Deposition of antiglomerular and antialveolar basement membrane antibodies (renal disease is a subtype of RPGN)	Dyspnea, hemoptysis, myalgias, hematuria	Serum IgG antiglomerular basement membrane antibodies , anemia, pulmonary infiltrates on CXR, linear pattern of IgG antibody deposition on fluorescence microscopy of glomeruli	Plasmapheresis, corticosteroids, immunosuppressive agents; can progress to renal failure
Alport syndrome	Hereditary defect in collagen IV in basement membrane	Hematuria, symptoms of renal failure, high-frequency hearing loss , cataracts	Red cell casts, hematuria, proteinuria, and pyuria on urinalysis; "split basement membrane" on electron microscopy	Variable prognosis with no therapy identified to halt cases of renal failure; ACE-I may reduce proteinuria; renal transplant may be complicated by Alport-related development of Goodpasture syndrome
Rapidly progressive (crescentic) glomerulonephritis (RPGN)	Rapidly progressive renal failure from idiopathic causes or associated with other glomerular diseases or systemic infection	Sudden renal failure, weakness, nausea, weight loss, dyspnea, hemoptysis, myalgias, fever, oliguria	Deposition of inflammatory cells and eventually fibrous material in Bowman capsule, and crescent formation (basement membrane wrinkling) on electron microscopy; pauci-immune RPGN is ANCA+	Poor prognosis with rapid progression to renal failure; corticosteroids, plasmapheresis, and immunosuppressive agents may be helpful; renal transplant frequently required
Lupus nephritis (mesangial, membranous, focal proliferative, and diffuse proliferative types)	Complication of systemic lupus erythematosus involving proliferation of endothelial and mesangial cells	Possibly asymptomatic, possible hypertension or renal failure; may develop nephrotic syndrome	ANA, anti-DNA antibodies; hematuria and possible proteinuria on urinalysis	Corticosteroids or immunosuppressive agents can delay renal failure; ACE-I and statins help reduce proteinuria
Granulomatosis with polyangiitis (Wegener)—also see Pulmonary chapter	Similar to crescentic disease with addition of pulmonary involvement granulomatous inflammation of airways and renal vasculature	Weight loss, respiratory symptoms, hematuria, fever	c-ANCA; deposition of immune complexes in renal vessels seen on electron microscopy; pulmonary biopsy helpful in diagnosis	Corticosteroids, cytotoxic agents (cyclophosphamide); variable prognosis

ACE-I, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor; ANA, antinuclear antibody; ANCA, antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibody; c-ANCA, cytoplasmic antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibody; CXR, chest X-ray; H/P, history and physical.

TABLE 4-5 Nephrotic Syndromes

Type	Pathology	H/P	Labs	Treatment
Minimal change disease	Idiopathic; may involve effacement (flattening) of foot processes on basement membrane	Possible hypertension, increased frequency of infections; most common cause of nephrotic syndrome in children	Hyperlipidemia, hypoalbuminemia; proteinuria on urinalysis; flattening of basement membrane foot processes seen on electron microscopy	Corticosteroids, cytotoxic agents
Focal segmental glomerular sclerosis	Frequently idiopathic or associated with drug use or HIV; segmental sclerosis of glomeruli	Possible hypertension; most common cause of nephrotic syndrome in adults in the United States	Hyperlipidemia, hypoalbuminemia; hematuria and high proteinuria on urinalysis; sclerotic changes seen in some glomeruli on electron microscopy	Corticosteroids, cytotoxic agents, ACE-I, statins; progressive cases that require renal transplant (uncommon) frequently have recurrence
Membranous glomerulonephritis	Idiopathic or associated with infection, systemic lupus erythematosus, neoplasm, or drugs; thickening of basement membrane	Edema, dyspnea; history of infection or medication use may lead to diagnosis	Hyperlipidemia, hypoalbuminemia; proteinuria on urinalysis; "spike and dome" basement membrane thickening on electron microscopy	Corticosteroids, cytotoxic agents, ACE-I, statins; variable rates of renal failure and renal vein thrombosis (requires anticoagulation)
Membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis	Idiopathic or associated with infection or autoimmune disease; thickening of basement membrane; associated hepatitis B and C, SLE, and subacute bacterial endocarditis	Edema, HTN; history of systemic infection or autoimmune condition; gradual progression to renal failure	Hyperlipidemia, hypoalbuminemia, possible hypocomplementemia; proteinuria and possible hematuria on urinalysis; IgG deposits may be seen on basement membrane on fluorescence microscopy; basement membrane thickening with double-layer "train track" appearance on electron microscopy	Corticosteroids combined with either aspirin or dipyridamole may delay progression to renal failure
Diabetic nephropathy (diffuse, nodular)	Basement membrane and mesangial thickening related to diabetic vascular changes	History of DM, hypertension, progressive renal failure	Hyperlipidemia, hypoalbuminemia; proteinuria on urinalysis; basement membrane thickening on electron microscopy seen in both types; round nodules (Kimmelstiel-Wilson nodules) seen within glomeruli in nodular type	Treat underlying DM; dietary protein restriction; ACE-I; tight blood pressure control

ACE-I, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor; DM, diabetes mellitus; H/P, history and physical; HTN, hypertension.


QUICK HIT

Drugs (via ATN) are the most common cause of ARF.



IV. RENAL FAILURE

A. Acute renal failure (ARF)

1. Sudden decrease in renal function (e.g., glomerular filtering, urine production, or chemical excretion abnormalities with BUN and Cr retention) resulting from prerenal, intrarenal, or postrenal causes
 - a. Prerenal causes include **hypovolemia**, sepsis, renal artery stenosis, and drug toxicity.
 - b. Intrarenal causes include ATN (drugs, toxins), glomerular disease, and renal vascular disease.

- c. Postrenal disease is caused by **obstruction** of renal calyces, ureters, or the bladder (e.g., stones, tumor, adhesions).
- 2. **H/P** = may initially be asymptomatic; possible fatigue, anorexia, nausea, oliguria, gross hematuria, flank pain, or mental status changes; possible pericardial friction rub, hypertension, fever, diffuse rash, edema
- 3. **Labs**
 - a. **Increased BUN, increased Cr** (azotemia)
 - b. Urinalysis may show hematuria and red cell casts (glomerular or vasculitic disease), epithelial casts (ATN), pyuria with waxy casts (interstitial disease or obstruction), or pyuria alone (infection).
 - c. Fractional excretion of Na^+ (FENa) $<1\%$ suggests a prerenal cause, $>2\%$ suggests ATN.

$$\text{FENa} = \frac{[(\text{urine Na})/(\text{serum Na})]}{[(\text{urine Cr})/(\text{serum Cr})]}$$

- d. Findings consistent with nephritic or nephrotic syndromes should prompt renal biopsy.
- 4. **Radiology** = US, CT, IVP, or renal angiography may be useful to detect masses, hydronephrosis, abnormal blood flow, obstruction, or vasculitis
- 5. **Treatment** = prevent fluid overload, stop drugs causing ATN; dietary protein restriction, corticosteroids, dialysis

B. Chronic kidney disease (CKD)

- 1. Progressive damage of renal parenchyma that can take several years to develop
- 2. HTN and DM are the most common causes.
- 3. **H/P** = gradual development of uremic syndrome (i.e., changes in mental status, decreased consciousness, HTN, pericarditis, anorexia, nausea, vomiting, gastrointestinal (GI) bleeding, peripheral neuropathy, brownish coloration of skin)
- 4. **Labs** = increased K^+ , decreased Na^+ , increased phosphate, decreased Ca^{2+} , anemia, metabolic acidosis, increased BUN, increased Cr; urine osmolality is similar to serum osmolality
- 5. **Radiology** = US may show hydronephrosis or shrunken kidneys
- 6. **Treatment** = restrict dietary salt and protein, correct electrolyte abnormalities, treat underlying condition; dialysis or renal transplant may be needed in progressive cases
- 7. **Complications** = end-stage renal disease (i.e., chronic kidney disease with severe symptoms and electrolyte abnormalities requiring dialysis for survival), renal osteodystrophy (i.e., bone degeneration secondary to low serum Ca^{2+}), encephalopathy, severe anemia (caused by decreased erythropoietin)

C. Dialysis

- 1. Induced filtering of blood required when kidney function is inadequate or serum composition increases risk of mortality.
- 2. Types
 - a. **Hemodialysis**: machine filters blood and returns filtered plasma to vasculature; synthetic grafts or surgical arteriovenous fistulas in the forearm are utilized for access
 - b. **Peritoneal dialysis**
 - (1) Dialysate fluid temporarily pumped into peritoneum via a permanent catheter
 - (2) Substances in the blood diffuse across the peritoneum from the surrounding vasculature to the dialysate fluid according to osmotic drive (peritoneum serves as a filter)
 - (3) Dialysate fluid containing solutes is pumped out of peritoneal cavity.
- 3. **Indications** = severe hyperkalemia, severe metabolic acidosis, fluid overload, uremic syndrome, CKD with Cr >12 mg/dL and BUN >100 mg/dL
- 4. **Complications** = infection at access sites, fluid overload with dyspnea, hypotension (hemodialysis)
- 5. Frequently precedes renal transplant

NEXT STEP

The BUN:creatinine ratio is a quick way to help determine the cause of ARF (**ratio >20 if prerenal cause**).



QUICK HIT

CKD does not occur until $>90\%$ of the renal parenchyma is sclerosed or necrotic.



V. ACID-BASE DISORDERS

A. Renal tubular acidosis (see Table 4-6)

1. Abnormalities in renal tubular H^+ secretion or HCO_3^- reabsorption
2. Leads to nonanion gap metabolic acidosis

TABLE 4-6 Characteristics of Types of Renal Tubular Acidosis

	Distal (Type 1)	Proximal (Type 2)	Low Renin/ Aldosterone (Type 4)
Defect	Impaired H^+ secretion leading to secondary hyperaldosteronism	HCO_3^- reabsorption	Primary or secondary hypoaldosteronism
Cause	Idiopathic, autoimmune diseases, drugs, chronic infection, nephrocalcinosis, cirrhosis, SLE, obstructive nephropathy	Idiopathic, multiple myeloma, Fanconi syndrome, Wilson disease, amyloidosis, vitamin D deficiency, autoimmune diseases	Primary renin or aldosterone deficiency, DM , Addison disease, sickle cell disease, interstitial disease
Urine pH	>5.3	<5.3	<5.3
Serum electrolytes	Low K^+ , variable HCO_3^-	Low K^+ , low HCO_3^-	High K^+ , high Cl^-
Radiology	Possible stones	Bone lesions	
Treatment	Oral HCO_3^- , K^+ , thiazide diuretic	Oral HCO_3^- , K^+ ; thiazide or loop diuretic	Fludrocortisone, K^+ restriction

DM, diabetes mellitus; SLE, systemic lupus erythematosus.

B. Acid-base physiology

1. In a healthy person, serum pH is regulated by HCO_3^- reabsorption (proximal tubule of kidneys) and blood P_{CO_2} (respiratory activity).
2. In a healthy person:
 - a. $pH = 7.40$
 - b. $P_{CO_2} = 40$ mm Hg
 - c. $P_{O_2} = 100$ mm Hg
 - d. $HCO_3^- = 24$ mEq/L
3. P_{CO_2} and pH can be measured with arterial blood gas; HCO_3^- is calculated by the Henderson-Hasselbach equation:

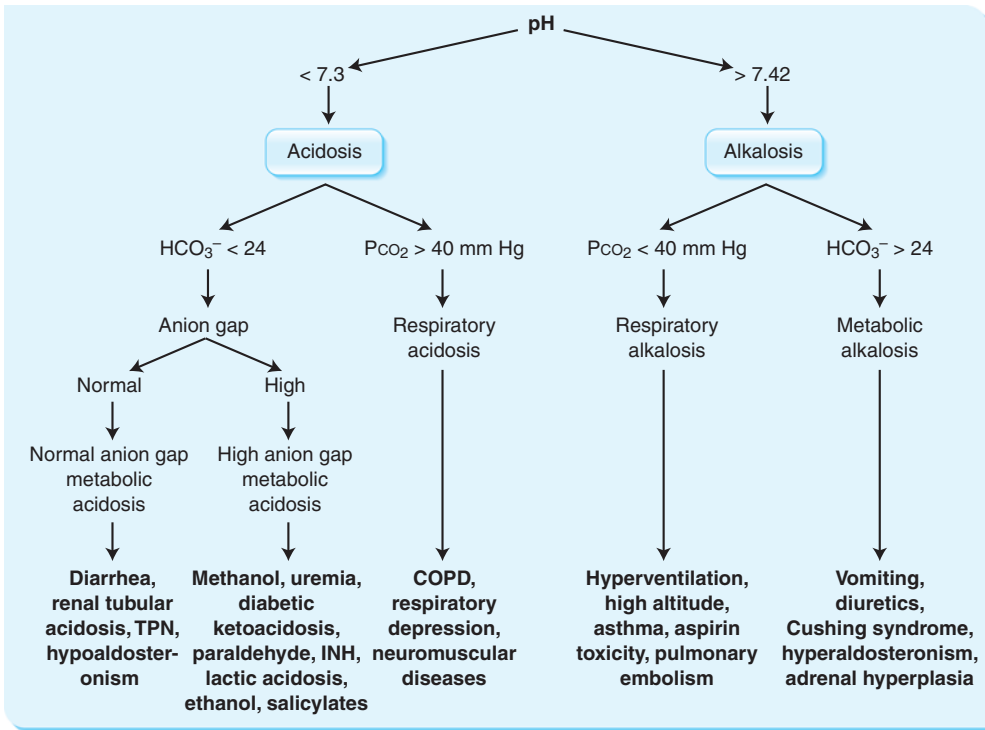
$$pH = pK_a + \log \left(\frac{[HCO_3^-]}{0.03 \times P_{CO_2}} \right)$$

4. $pH > 7.42 \rightarrow$ alkalosis; $pH < 7.3 \rightarrow$ acidosis
5. Disturbances because of HCO_3^- abnormalities are metabolic; disturbances caused by P_{CO_2} levels are respiratory.
6. For any disturbance, the body tries to compensate and normalize serum pH.

C. Acid-base disturbances (see Figure 4-4, Table 4-7, Table 4-8)

1. Anion gap
 - a. Difference between serum Na^+ and Cl^- and HCO_3^- ion concentrations
 - b. **Anion gap** = $[Na^+] - [Cl^-] - [HCO_3^-]$ (normal = 8 to 12)
 - c. Normal anion gap acidosis suggests HCO_3^- loss
 - d. Increased anion gap acidosis suggests H^+ excess

FIGURE 4.4 Differentiation of acid-base disturbances and related causes.



Note: Compensatory mechanisms should be checked to differentiate solitary from mixed disturbances. COPD, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease; TPN, total parenteral nutrition.



MNEMONIC

Remember the causes of high anion gap metabolic acidosis by the mnemonic **MUD PILES**: **M**ethanol, **U**remia, **D**iabetic ketoacidosis, **P**araldehyde, **I**soniazid (INH)/Iron, **L**actic acidosis, **E**thanol/Ethylene glycol, **S**alicylates.

2. Mixed disorder

- a. Combination of multiple acid-base disturbances
- b. Detected when corrected, HCO_3^- is different from measured value.
- c. Corrected $\text{HCO}_3^- = \text{measured anion gap} - \text{normal anion gap} + \text{measured } \text{HCO}_3^-$ (for which 12 = value of normal anion gap)
- d. If corrected, HCO_3^- is
 - (1) Normal, disturbance is solitary high anion gap acidosis
 - (2) Increased, disturbance is metabolic alkalosis with high anion gap acidosis
 - (3) Decreased, disturbance is nonanion gap acidosis with high anion gap acidosis

TABLE 4-7 Acid-Base Disturbances and Compensatory Mechanisms

Disorder	pH	(H ⁺)	(HCO ₃ ⁻)	Pco ₂	Compensation	Common Causes
Metabolic acidosis	↓	↑	↓↓	↓	Hyperventilation	Diarrhea, diabetic ketoacidosis, lactic acidosis, renal tubular acidosis
Metabolic alkalosis	↑	↓	↑↑	↑	Hypoventilation	Vomiting, diuretics, Cushing syndrome, hyperaldosteronism, adrenal hyperplasia
Respiratory acidosis	↓	↑	↑	↑↑	Increased HCO ₃ ⁻ reabsorption	COPD, respiratory depression, neuromuscular diseases
Respiratory alkalosis	↑	↓	↓	↓↓	Decreased HCO ₃ ⁻ reabsorption	Hyperventilation, high altitude, asthma, aspirin toxicity, pulmonary embolism

COPD, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease; ↑, high; ↓, low; ↑↑, very high; ↓↓, very low.


MNEMONIC

Remember the causes of hypernatremia by the 6 **Ds**: **D**iuretics, **D**ehydration, **D**iabetes insipidus, **D**ocs (iatrogenic), **D**iarrhea (and vomiting), **D**isease of kidney (hyperaldosteronism).

TABLE 4-8 Compensation Formulas in Acid-Base Disturbances

Apparent Disturbance	Compensation
Metabolic acidosis	Expected $P_{CO_2} = 1.5 (HCO_3^-) + (8 \pm 2)$ If $P_{CO_2} < \text{expected}$, then additional respiratory alkalosis If $P_{CO_2} > \text{expected}$, then additional respiratory acidosis
Metabolic alkalosis	If $P_{CO_2} > 50$, then additional respiratory acidosis If $P_{CO_2} < 40$, then additional respiratory alkalosis
Acute respiratory acidosis	Expected pH increase = $\frac{1}{10} \times 0.08 \times (P_{CO_2} - 40)$
Chronic respiratory acidosis	Expected pH increase = $\frac{1}{10} \times 0.03 \times (P_{CO_2} - 40)$
Acute respiratory alkalosis	Expected pH increase = $\frac{1}{10} \times 0.08 \times (P_{CO_2} - 40)$
Chronic respiratory alkalosis	Expected pH increase = $\frac{1}{10} \times 0.03 \times (P_{CO_2} - 40)$


VI. ELECTROLYTE DISORDERS
A. Hyponatremia

1. Serum $Na^+ > 155$ mEq/L
2. Caused by **dehydration**, loss of fluid from skin (e.g., burns, sweating), loss of fluid from GI tract (e.g., vomiting, diarrhea), diabetes insipidus, iatrogenic (see Figure 4-5)
3. **H/P** = oliguria, thirst, weakness, lethargy, decreased consciousness, mental status changes, seizures
4. **Treatment**
 - a. Gradual hydration with normal saline for inadequate fluid intake or excess fluid loss (maximal Na^+ reduction = 12 mEq/day)
 - b. Approximate required correction in a patient with purely fluid losses as a cause of hyponatremia can be determined through calculation of the **water deficit**:

$$\text{Water Deficit} = \text{Total body water} \times \left(\frac{[Na]}{140} - 1 \right)$$

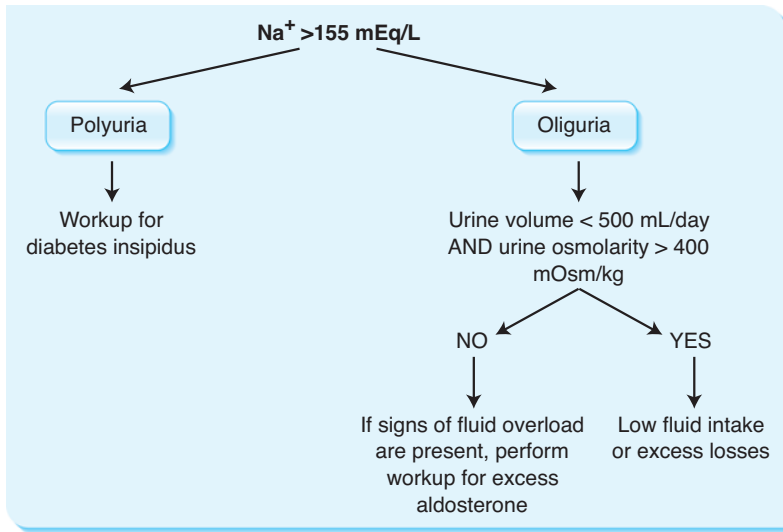
$$\text{Water Deficit} = (0.60 \times [\text{mass in kg}]) \times \left(\frac{[Na]}{140} - 1 \right)$$

- c. Half of deficit is given in 24 hrs in addition to maintenance fluids, remainder is given over following 24 to 48 hrs; close monitoring of Na^+ is required to avoid excessive correction.
 - d. Because total body water will be slightly greater than patient's body water content at time of hyponatremia (because of fluid loss), calculated water deficit may be artificially high.
5. **Complications** = seizures, CNS damage; too rapid hydration can cause **cerebral edema**

B. Diabetes insipidus (DI)

1. Disorders of ADH-directed water reabsorption leading to dehydration and hyponatremia
2. Types
 - a. **Central**: failure of posterior pituitary to secrete ADH; can result from idiopathic causes, cerebral trauma, pituitary tumors, hypoxic encephalopathy, or anorexia nervosa
 - b. **Nephrogenic**: kidneys do not respond to ADH; can result from hereditary renal disease, lithium toxicity, hypercalcemia, or hypokalemia

FIGURE 4.5 Evaluation of hypernatremia.



3. H/P = polydipsia, polyuria, signs of dehydration

4. Labs

- Increased Na^+
- Low urine osmolality with large urine volume
- Water deprivation test
 - 2 to 3-hr water deprivation followed by ADH administration
 - Normal response is no change in urine osmolality.
 - Shows normal result in nephrogenic type
 - Increased urine osmolality after ADH administration in central type

5. Radiology = CT with contrast or MRI may show pituitary tumor

6. Treatment

- Treat underlying condition
- Central DI: desmopressin (DDAVP) given as ADH analogues
- Nephrogenic DI: salt restriction, increased H_2O intake; thiazide diuretics may reduce fluid loss (cause mild hypovolemia through activity at distal convoluted tubule to induce increased water absorption at proximal tubule); treat underlying condition (stop medications, treat tumor or renal disease)

C. Hyponatremia

- Serum $\text{Na}^+ < 135$ mEq/L
- Caused by renal H_2O retention (e.g., congestive heart failure, syndrome of inappropriate ADH secretion [SIADH]), thiazide diuretics (i.e., salt wasting), hyperglycemia (i.e., osmotic hyponatremia), or high fluid intake (see Figure 4-6)
- H/P = confusion, nausea, weakness, decreased consciousness
- Treatment = treat underlying condition (stop offending agent, correct hyperglycemia or hyperlipidemia, etc.); salt administration and H_2O restriction unless hypovolemic and serum osmolality < 280 mOsm/kg (rehydrate with saline no faster than 12 mEq/day); give loop diuretics or hypertonic saline for severe cases ($\text{Na}^+ < 120$ mEq/L)
- Complications = CNS damage; overly rapid correction with hypertonic saline can cause central pontine myelinolysis

D. Syndrome of inappropriate ADH secretion (SIADH)

- Nonphysiologic release of ADH, resulting in hyponatremia
- Caused by CNS pathology, sarcoidosis, paraneoplastic syndromes, psychiatric drugs, major surgery, pneumonia, or human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)
- H/P = chronic hyponatremia

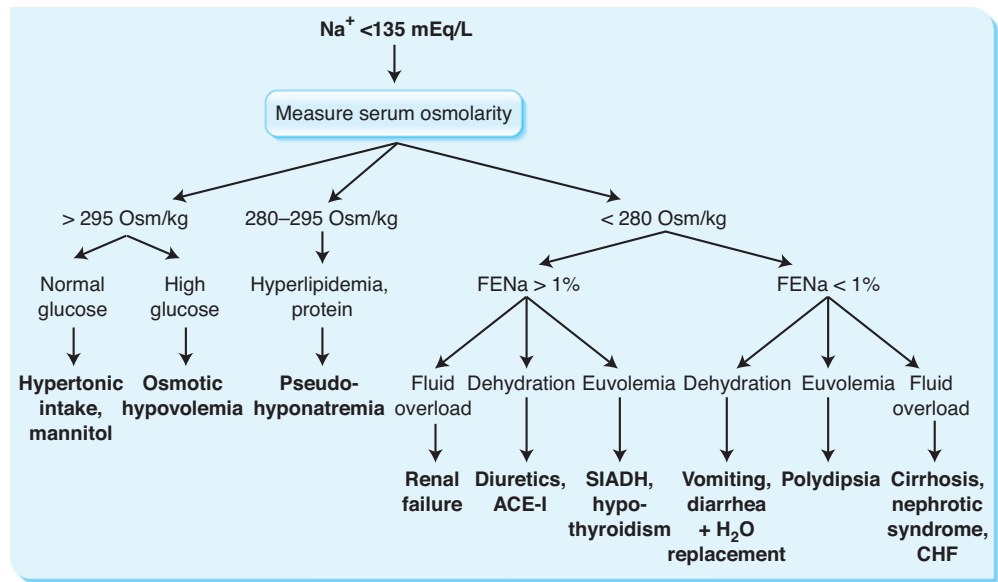


QUICK HIT

Pseudohyponatremia is an artifact of hyperlipidemia in which serum Na^+ falsely appears to be low.

NEXT STEP

To calculate (Na^+) that will result from correction of hyperglycemia, add 1.6 mEq/L Na^+ for every 100 mg/dL glucose > 100 mg/dL.

FIGURE 4-6 Evaluation of hyponatremia.

ACE-I, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor; CHF, congestive heart failure; FENa, fractional excretion of Na – (Urine $[Na^+] \times \text{serum Cr} / (\text{serum } [Na^+] \times \text{Urine Cr})$; SIADH, syndrome of inappropriate ADH secretion.

4. **Labs** = serum hypo-osmolarity (< 280 mOsm/kg) with urine osmolarity > 100 mOsm/kg; urine $Na^+ > 20$ mEq/L
5. **Treatment** = fluid restriction; loop diuretics and hypertonic saline if symptomatic; demeclocycline may help maintain normal Na^+ levels

E. Hyperkalemia

1. Serum $K^+ > 5.0$ mEq/L
2. Caused by metabolic acidosis, aldosterone deficiency, tissue breakdown, insulin deficiency, adrenal insufficiency, renal failure, K^+ -sparing diuretics
3. **H/P** = weakness, nausea, vomiting; **arrhythmias**; paralysis or paresthesia in severe cases
4. Electrocardiogram (ECG) = **tall, peaked T waves**
5. **Treatment** = calcium gluconate (treats cardiac effects but does not change K^+ level), $NaHCO_3$, or glucose with insulin to encourage K^+ uptake by cells; sodium polystyrene sulfonate binds K^+ and removes it through the GI tract; dialysis may be required in severe cases

F. Hypokalemia

1. Serum $K^+ < 3.5$ mEq/L
2. Due to poor dietary intake, metabolic/respiratory alkalosis, hypothermia, vomiting, diarrhea, hyperaldosteronism, insulin excess (e.g., treatment of diabetic ketoacidosis), K^+ -wasting diuretics (loop, thiazide), or renal tubular acidosis types I and II (see Figure 4-7)
3. **H/P** = fatigue, weakness, possible paralysis; **arrhythmias**, hyporeflexia; paralysis, or paresthesia in severe cases
4. ECG = **T-wave flattening**, ST depression, U waves
5. **Treatment** = treat underlying disorder; give oral or IV KCl (10 to 20 mEq/hr)
6. **Complications** = overly rapid replacement can lead to **arrhythmias**

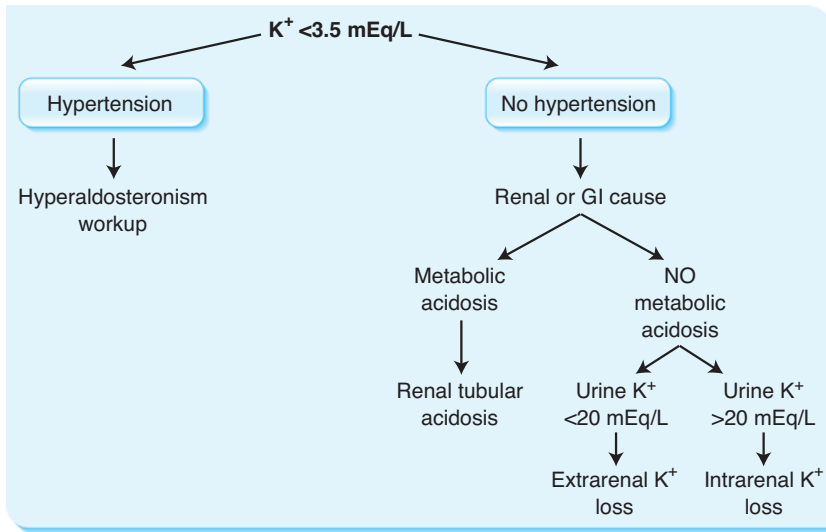
G. Hypercalcemia

1. Serum $Ca^{2+} > 10.5$ mg/dL
2. Caused by **hyperparathyroidism**, **neoplasm**, immobilization, thiazide diuretics, high ingestion of calcium carbonate and milk (milk-alkali syndrome; more often seen in children), sarcoidosis, or hypervitaminosis A or D

NEXT STEP

Pseudohyperkalemia occurs from red blood cell hemolysis following blood collection, so K^+ should be measured **immediately** in drawn blood and increased serum K^+ should be confirmed with a **repeat blood sample** using a large-gauge needle.

FIGURE 4.7 Evaluation of hypokalemia.



GI, gastrointestinal.

3. H/P = deep pain, easy fractures, possible nephrolithiasis, nausea, vomiting, constipation, weakness, mental status changes, polyuria
4. Labs = increased parathyroid hormone in hyperparathyroidism; very high Ca²⁺ and normal or low parathyroid hormone frequently seen with neoplasm; increased vitamins A or D seen in hypervitaminoses
5. EKG = shortened QT interval
6. Treatment = treat underlying disorder; hydration; calcitonin and bisphosphonates in cases of excess bone reabsorption; glucocorticoids decrease intestinal absorption in severe cases; surgery indicated for hyperparathyroidism and resectable neoplasms

H. Hypocalcemia

1. Serum Ca²⁺ < 8.5 mg/dL
2. Caused by hypoparathyroidism, hyperphosphatemia, chronic renal failure, vitamin D deficiency, loop diuretics, pancreatitis, or alcoholism
3. H/P = abdominal pain, dyspnea; tetany, Chvostek sign (i.e., tapping facial nerve causes spasm), carpedal spasm when blood pressure cuff inflated (i.e., Trousseau sign)
4. Labs = decreased serum Ca²⁺ (total serum Ca²⁺ should be adjusted for hypoalbuminemia, lower limit of normal Ca²⁺ decreases 0.8 mg/dL for each 1 g/dL albumin < 4; ionized calcium will not be affected by albumin levels); increased phosphate seen with hypoparathyroidism and renal failure
5. EKG = prolonged QT interval
6. Treatment = treat underlying disorder; oral Ca²⁺ or IV Ca²⁺ for severe symptoms; vitamin D supplementation, if necessary

VII. BLADDER AND URETERAL DISORDERS

A. Urinary tract infection (UTI)

1. Ascending infection of urethra, bladder, and ureters resulting from inoculation of lower urinary tract (rarely hematogenous spread)
2. Most commonly due to *E. coli*, *S. saprophyticus*, *Proteus*, *Klebsiella*, *Enterobacter*, *Pseudomonas*, and enterococcus
3. Risk factors = obstruction, Foley catheter, vesicoureteral reflux, pregnancy, DM, sexual intercourse, immunocompromise; female > male

QUICK HIT

Hypercalcemia is characterized by “bones” (fractures), “stones” (nephrolithiasis), “groans” (GI symptoms), and “psychiatric overtones” (changes in mental status).

NEXT STEP

Differentiate between **familial hypocalciuric hypercalcemia** (genetic disorder of Ca²⁺-sensing receptors) and other causes of hypercalcemia by noting a family history of hypercalcemia, low urine Ca²⁺, and absence of osteopenia, nephrolithiasis, and mental status changes in the former.

QUICK HIT

Loop diuretics are “Ca²⁺-wasting” and can cause hypocalcemia.

QUICK HIT

Thiazide diuretics are “Ca²⁺-sparing” and can cause hypercalcemia.

QUICK HIT

Cultured urine should be from a midstream sample (clean catch) to avoid contamination from skin flora.

NEXT STEP

Perform a workup for sexually transmitted urethritis in any man with a suspected UTI because the symptoms may appear similar.

Genitourinary Disorders

4. **H/P** = urinary frequency, dysuria (i.e., painful urination), suprapubic pain, urgency
5. **Labs** = urinalysis shows increased nitrates, increased leukocyte esterase, and white blood cells in urine; urine culture will show $>10^5$ pathogen colonies/mL; blood tests usually not helpful unless due to hematogenous spread
6. **Treatment** = amoxicillin, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (TMP-SMX), or fluoroquinolones for 3 days; relapsing infection should be treated for 14 days
7. **Complications** = abscess formation, pyelonephritis, renal failure, prostatitis

B. Urinary incontinence

1. Involuntary leakage of urine; more common in the elderly
2. First step in evaluation is to evaluate for causes of secondary incontinence (UTI, impaired mobility, fecal impaction, atrophic vaginitis, or delirium)
3. Urge incontinence (detrusor overactivity)
 - a. Leakage of urine due to uninhibited bladder contractions
 - b. **H/P** = diagnosis usually made by history of urgency, frequent voiding of small amounts of urine, and possibly incontinence
 - c. **Treatment** = bladder training, antimuscarinics (oxybutynin, tolterodine, solifenacin, etc.)
4. Stress incontinence
 - a. Leakage of urine during any maneuver that increases abdominal pressure due to decreased anatomic support of and function of the urinary sphincter
 - b. **Risk factors** = female sex, multiparity, obesity
 - c. **H/P** = incontinence accompanies coughing, sneezing, laughing, exercise, lifting heavy objects; diagnosis usually made by history and bladder diary; urodynamic testing by a urologist may be helpful but is usually not necessary
 - d. **Treatment** = conservative therapy (weight loss, Kegel exercises) surgical therapy (midurethral sling)
5. Overflow incontinence
 - a. Continuous leakage of urine due to incomplete bladder emptying
 - b. More common in men
 - c. **Causes** = bladder outlet obstruction (benign prostatic hyperplasia, urethral strictures), impaired detrusor contractility, neurogenic bladder
 - d. **H/P** = weak urinary stream, dribbling, frequency, hesitancy, and nocturia; bladder diary is very helpful; palpable distended bladder
 - e. **Testing** = automated bladder scanner or catheterized postvoid residual detects full bladder after voiding
 - f. **Treatment** = decompress bladder with Foley catheter initially; treat underlying obstruction with surgery as needed; treat detrusor underactivity with sacral nerve stimulation; intermittent self-catheterization is sometimes required

C. Bladder cancer

1. **Transitional cell carcinoma** (common), squamous cell cancer (uncommon), or adenocarcinoma of the bladder (uncommon)
2. **Risk factors** = tobacco, schistosomiasis, cyclophosphamide, aniline dyes, petroleum byproducts, recurrent UTI; male $3\times$ > female
3. **H/P** = **painless gross hematuria**; suprapubic pain, frequency, dysuria, and urgency occur later in disease; palpable suprapubic mass
4. **Labs** = urinalysis shows hematuria; urine cytology shows malignant cells; biopsy confirms diagnosis
5. **Radiology** = cystoscopy is important for visualization of lesions, urine specimen collection, and lesion biopsy; pelvic CT, MRI, or IVP may detect mass
6. **Treatment** = transurethral cystoscopic resection for superficial tumors; partial or total cystectomy for more invasive tumors; adjuvant intravesical chemotherapy and radiation therapy commonly utilized; regional radiation therapy and systemic chemotherapy for large tumors and metastatic disease
7. **Complications** = frequent recurrence



VIII. MALE REPRODUCTION

A. Urethritis

1. Infection of urethra caused by sexually transmitted *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* or *Chlamydia trachomatis*
2. H/P = dysuria, frequency, urgency, **burning urination**; **purulent urethral discharge** seen with *N. gonorrhoeae*
3. Labs = Gram stain shows gram-negative diplococci for *N. gonorrhoeae*; Thayer-Martin culture will detect *N. gonorrhoeae*; negative Gram stain suggests *C. trachomatis*; diagnosis of *Chlamydia* may be confirmed with nucleic acid amplification testing
4. **Treatment** = single-dose ceftriaxone with doxycycline or azithromycin used to treat both possible infections simultaneously; **treat sexual partners**; report of cases to public health office may be required
5. **Complications** = urethral strictures, frequent reinfection when sexual partners not treated

B. Prostatitis

1. Inflammation of prostate from unknown cause or as complication of UTI
2. H/P = perineal pain, dysuria, frequency, urgency; fever, tender prostate on digital rectal examination
3. Labs = may be suggestive of UTI; possible hematuria; white blood cells seen in prostatic secretions
4. **Treatment** = TMP-SMX (frequently for 4 to 6 weeks); treat for sexually transmitted diseases (STDs) in sexually active males

C. Benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH)

1. **Benign enlargement of prostate** seen with increasing frequency as men age beyond 40 years
2. H/P = urinary **hesitancy**, straining, **weak or intermittent stream**, dribbling; frequency, urgency, **nocturia**, and urge incontinence develop secondary to incomplete emptying or UTI; digital examination detects uniformly enlarged, rubbery prostate
3. Labs = possible mild increase in prostate-specific antigen (PSA); rule out infection (urinalysis), cancer (biopsy), and renal failure (serum electrolytes, BUN, Cr)
4. Radiology = transrectal US shows enlarged prostate
5. **Treatment** = α_1 -receptor blockers (e.g., terazosin, etc.) and 5 α -reductase inhibitors (e.g., finasteride, etc.) improve symptoms; surgery needed for refractory cases (i.e., transurethral resection of prostate [TURP]); transurethral needle ablation may be performed in men who are poor surgical candidates

D. Prostate cancer

1. Adenocarcinoma occurring in peripheral zone of prostate
2. **Risk factors** = increased age, family history, high-fat diet, prostatitis
3. H/P = frequently asymptomatic; weakened urinary stream, urinary retention, weight loss, back pain in later disease; **nodular or irregular prostate on digital examination**, lymphedema
4. Labs = urinalysis may show hematuria and pyuria; **increased PSA**, increased alkaline phosphatase; biopsy provides diagnosis
5. Radiology = transrectal US shows irregular prostate; bone scan, chest X-ray (CXR), and CT may detect metastases
6. **Treatment**
 - a. Good prognosis with early treatment
 - b. Radical retropubic, perineal, laparoscopic, or robotic prostatectomy; retropubic approach used for more extensive tumors
 - c. Radiation therapy via external beam radiation or brachytherapy (i.e., implantation of radioactive seeds in prostate) may be used in early tumors in place of surgery.
 - d. Follow up with PSA posttreatment to monitor for metastases and recurrence.
 - e. Antiandrogen therapy (i.e., hormone therapy or orchiectomy) with chemotherapy can be used to improve symptoms in high-grade or metastatic disease.
 - f. Older men may not be treated because tumors are frequently slow growing.



QUICK HIT

Nonbacterial prostatitis is more common than bacterial prostatitis.



QUICK HIT

BPH develops in the **central zone** of the prostate adjacent to the urethra and does not predispose patients to prostate cancer.



QUICK HIT

Prostate cancer is the most common nondermatologic cancer in men; however, **lung cancer is the greatest cause of cancer-related death** in males, whereas **prostate cancer is the second highest**.

**QUICK HIT**

Supporting the scrotum does **not** relieve pain in testicular torsion but does relieve pain in epididymitis.

NEXT STEP

If testicular torsion is suspected and US is suggestive of the diagnosis, proceed to surgery without waiting for other tests.

**QUICK HIT**

95% of testicular malignancies are of a germ cell origin.

**QUICK HIT**

Testicular cancer is the most common cancer in men between 15 and 35 years of age.

**QUICK HIT**

Frequent infections in the presence of infertility may necessitate a workup for **cystic fibrosis**.

7. **Complications** = incontinence and impotence are common with radical prostatectomy

E. Epididymitis

1. Inflammation of epididymis associated with testicular inflammation
2. Caused by prostatitis, STDs (especially *Chlamydia*), urinary reflux
3. H/P = epididymal **pain relieved by supporting scrotum**, dysuria; scrotal tenderness, and induration
4. **Labs** = urinalysis shows white blood cells; urine culture with specialized culture media may help diagnose STDs
5. **Treatment** = ceftriaxone and doxycycline or fluoroquinolone; NSAIDs and scrotal support for noninfectious causes

F. Testicular torsion

1. Twisting of spermatic cord leading to **vascular insufficiency** of testes
2. H/P = very painful and swollen testes, nausea, vomiting; fever, **testes displaced superiorly**, mass in spermatic cord may be felt, absent cremasteric reflex
3. **Radiology** = US may show torsion
4. **Treatment** = **emergent surgical reduction** of torsion within several hours of onset; manual detorsion can be attempted before surgery (may be difficult to determine correct direction to rotate); testes attached to scrotal wall (i.e., orchiopexy) to prevent recurrence
5. **Complications** = testicular ischemia or infarction without prompt treatment

G. Testicular cancer

1. Germ cell (seminomatous, nonseminomatous) or stromal cell (Leydig, Sertoli, or granulosa cell) tumors of testes
2. **Risk factors** = prior history of testicular cancer, undescended testes, family history
3. H/P = **painless testicular mass**, possible gynecomastia or lower abdominal pain; GI or pulmonary symptoms can result from metastases
4. **Labs** = increased β -human chorionic gonadotropin (β -hCG) and increased α -fetoprotein in germ cell tumors; increased estrogen in stromal cell tumors
5. **Radiology** = US may detect dense testicular mass; CXR or CT can detect extent of tumor and metastases
6. **Treatment** = radical orchiectomy with/without chemotherapy and radiation therapy for early stage seminomas; radical orchiectomy with/without retroperitoneal lymph node dissection or chemotherapy for early stage nonseminomas; chemotherapy and possible postchemotherapy debulking performed for more extensive disease
7. **Complications** = **prognosis is very good**, but nonseminomas have lower cure rates and increased risk of recurrence

H. Infertility (male)

1. Inability of couple to achieve pregnancy following **1 year of normal sexual activity without use of contraception**
2. H/P = history of testicular trauma, surgery, chemotherapy, or infection can be contributory; varicocele (collection of veins in scrotum), undescended testes, or penile defects may be seen on examination
3. **Labs** = hormone analysis, complete blood count (CBC), and urinalysis may be useful for diagnosis; semen analysis for sperm motility, morphology, volume, and concentration may be useful
4. **Treatment** = treat underlying condition; surgical correction of anatomic defects, hormone therapy, education in sexual technique, or in vitro fertilization may help in achieving pregnancy

I. Impotence

1. Inability to obtain or maintain erection during sexual activity
2. Caused by denervation, **vascular insufficiency**, endocrine abnormalities, psychological concerns, drugs, or alcoholism

3. **H/P** = history of trauma, surgery, or infection can be contributory; examination should consider vascular (decreased pulses and perfusion), hormonal (testicular atrophy or gynecomastia), and neurologic (decrease anal wink reflex and paresthesias) etiologies
4. **Labs** = possible decreased testosterone, decreased luteinizing hormone (LH), or increased prolactin
5. **Treatment** = treat underlying condition; stop offending agents; psychological counseling and sexual education; papaverine injection or oral phosphodiesterase-5 inhibitors may help maintain penile vascular engorgement



IX. PEDIATRIC GENITOURINARY CONCERNS

A. Wilms tumor

1. Malignant tumor of renal origin presenting in **children <4 years of age**
2. **Risk factors** = family history, neurofibromatosis, other genitourinary abnormalities
3. **H/P** = weight loss, nausea, vomiting, dysuria, polyuria; palpable abdominal or flank mass, hypertension, fever
4. **Labs** = measure BUN, Cr, and CBC to assess kidney function
5. **Radiology** = CT or US shows renal mass; CXR and CT can show metastases
6. **Treatment** = surgical resection or nephrectomy, chemotherapy, and possible radiation; good prognosis without extensive involvement

B. Urethral displacement

1. Urethral opening on top (i.e., epispadias) or underside (i.e., hypospadias) of penis associated with other penile anatomic abnormalities
2. **H/P** = defect apparent on examination and during urination
3. **Treatment** = surgical correction (ideally during infancy); do not circumcise before surgical correction
4. **Complications** = may contribute to infertility

C. Enuresis

1. Nocturnal bedwetting seen in young children
2. Seen in all children; **most cases resolve by age 4 years**; rare cases associated with disease
3. **H/P** = **almost always nonpathologic**; unusual findings in history and examination should prompt further workup
4. **Treatment** = education, enuresis alarms, dietary modifications (no fluids near bedtime); desmopressin or imipramine used in refractory cases

D. Undescended testes (cryptorchidism)

1. Testes lying in abdominal cavity and not consistently located within scrotum
2. **H/P** = empty scrotal sac, testes inconsistently found in scrotum
3. **Treatment** = exogenous hCG administration or orchiopexy before age 5 years to reduce risk of cancer and allow testicular development
4. **Complications** = testicular cancer (risk reduced but not eliminated by surgical correction), infertility

E. Posterior urethral valves

1. Abnormal folds of tissue in the distal prostatic urethra, causing bladder outlet obstruction and weak urinary stream
2. **H/P** = Often diagnosed on prenatal US; weak urinary stream, UTI; abdominal distention
3. **Imaging** = ultrasound reveals thick-walled bladder, bilateral hydronephrosis, and/or megaureter; voiding cystourethrogram (VCUG) shows elongation and dilation of the posterior urethra during voiding
4. **Treatment** = cystoscopic transurethral ablation of abnormal tissue or urinary diversion (vesicostomy)

5

Endocrine Disorders



I. DISORDERS OF GLUCOSE METABOLISM

A. Normal glucose metabolism

1. Regulated by pancreatic enzymes insulin and glucagon
2. **Insulin**
 - a. Secreted by pancreatic β -islet cells in response to glucose intake and feeding (strongest stimuli, but also influenced by other protein and neural input)
 - b. Secretion decreases with fasting and exercise (i.e., feedback relationship with nutrient supply)
 - c. Induces glucose and amino acid uptake by muscle, adipose cells, and liver
 - d. Drives conversion of glucose to glycogen, fatty acids, and pyruvate
 - e. Induces storage of glucose metabolites in tissue (e.g., glycogen in liver, fatty acids in adipose cells, protein anabolism)
 - f. Inhibits lipolysis in adipose tissue
3. **Glucagon**
 - a. Secreted by α -islet cells primarily in response to decreased glucose and protein intake
 - b. Promotes mobilization of glycogen and fatty acids
4. Insulin:glucagon ratio determines state of glucose metabolism.

B. Diabetes mellitus (DM) type I (juvenile onset diabetes, insulin-dependent diabetes)

1. Loss of ability to produce insulin most likely caused by autoimmune destruction of β -islet cells
2. Association with human leukocyte antigens HLA-DR3, HLA-DR4, and HLA-DQ genotypes
3. Age of presentation has a bimodal age distribution (first peak at 4 to 6 years, second peak at 10 to 14 years).
4. **History and Physical (H/P)** = polyuria, polydipsia, polyphagia, weight loss; more rapid onset than type II DM
5. **Labs** = hyperglycemia, glycosuria (i.e., glucose in urine), serum and urine ketones, increased hemoglobin A_{1c} (indicates hyperglycemia over prior 3 months and used to monitor adequacy of control) (see Table 5-1)
6. **Treatment** = scheduled insulin injections (see Figure 5-1, Table 5-2) or continuous insulin infusion via insulin pump; monitoring of serum glucose at home to guide insulin and dietary adjustments; close multidiscipline follow-up to monitor development of complications
7. **Complications** = **diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA)**, hypoglycemia (secondary to excess insulin administration), retinopathy, neuropathy, nephropathy, atherosclerosis



QUICK HIT

Rubella, Coxsackie virus, and mumps have been associated with onset of β -islet cell destruction leading to DM type I.



QUICK HIT

Hemoglobin A_{1c} is a good measure for how well therapy has controlled serum glucose over a 3-month period or for how compliant a patient has been with prescribed therapy.

TABLE 5-1 Plasma Glucose Diagnostic Criteria for Diabetes Mellitus^a

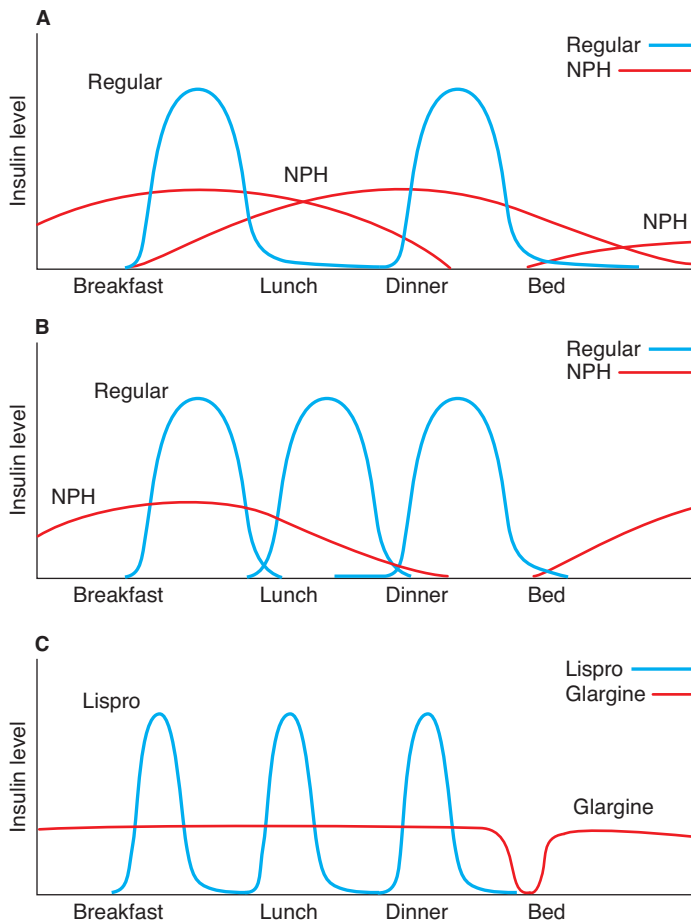
Plasma Glucose Test	Level (mg/dL)	And . . .
Random plasma glucose	≥200	With symptoms of DM
Fasting plasma glucose	≥126	On 2 separate occasions
Plasma glucose	≥200	2 hr after 75 g oral glucose load ^b
Hemoglobin A _{1c}	≥6.5%	

^aDiagnosis is based on the occurrence of at least one of the above findings.

^bThis is a positive oral glucose tolerance test.

DM, diabetes mellitus.

FIGURE 5-1 Examples of insulin regimens in diabetes mellitus.



(A) Injection of regular and NPH insulin (in 2:1 ratio) together at breakfast followed by a second regular insulin dose at dinner and a second NPH dose at bedtime. In some cases, the second dose of NPH can be given concomitantly with the second regular insulin dose at dinner. (B) Adjustment in regimen A to achieve tighter, shorter time control by adding an additional dose of regular insulin at lunch and only administering NPH at bedtime. In patients with overnight hypoglycemia, insulin detemir can be substituted for NPH. (C) Tight control regimen using very rapid acting insulin at meals and a bedtime dose of insulin glargine. NPH, neutral protamine Hagedorn insulin.

TABLE 5-2 Formulations of Injected Insulin

Type of Insulin	Time of Onset of Action	Peak Effect	Duration of Action
Very rapid acting ^a (e.g., lispro, aspart, glulisine)	10 min	1 hr	2–4 hr
Regular ^a	30 min	2–4 hr	5–8 hr
NPH	2 hr	6–10 hr	18–24 hr
Insulin glargine	2 hr	No peak	24+ hr
Insulin detemir	2 hr	No peak	6–24 hr

^aAppropriate for use in continuous infusion pump.
NPH, neutral protamine Hagedorn insulin.



QUICK HIT

An increasing number of obese patients with DM type II are being diagnosed at ages <40 yr because of the increasing prevalence of obesity.

C. Diabetes mellitus type II (adult onset diabetes, non–insulin-dependent diabetes)

1. Development of **tissue resistance to insulin**, leading to hyperglycemia and gradual decrease in the ability of β -islet cells to produce insulin (see Table 5-3)
2. **Risk factors** = family history, obesity, metabolic syndrome, lack of exercise, gestational diabetes
3. Historically diagnosed **after age 40 years**, but mean age of diagnosis is decreasing
4. **H/P** = asymptomatic in early stages with **gradual onset** of symptoms; polyuria, polydipsia, polyphagia, acanthosis nigricans; symptoms related to complications can present before actual diagnosis
5. **Labs** = similar to those for DM type I (see Table 5-1); serum insulin can be increased, normal, or decreased
6. **Treatment**
 - a. Initial therapy focuses on nutrition (reduced calorie intake, carbohydrate control, and consistency), exercise, and weight loss.
 - b. Metformin is frequently the first oral agent prescribed (see Table 5-4).
 - c. If hemoglobin A_{1c} remains >7 after 2 to 3 months of monotherapy, add sulfonylurea, thiazolidinedione, or insulin.

TABLE 5-3 Comparisons of Diabetes Mellitus Types I and II

	DM Type I	DM Type II
Cause	Likely autoimmune destruction of β -islet cells	Development of insulin resistance in tissues
Inheritance/genetics	HLA linked	Strong family history
Age of onset	Usually <15 yr of age	Frequently >40 yr of age
Onset of symptoms	Rapid	Gradual
Pancreatic effects	β -Islet cell depletion	Gradual decrease in β -islet cells
Serum insulin	Low	Increased or normal; low in later disease
Body type	Thin	Obese
Acute complications	DKA	HHNS
Treatment	Insulin	Oral hypoglycemic agents, possibly insulin

DKA, diabetic ketoacidosis; DM, diabetes mellitus; HHNS, hyperosmolar hyperglycemic nonketotic syndrome; HLA, human leukocyte antigen.

TABLE 5-4 Oral Hypoglycemic Drugs Used in Treatment of Diabetes Mellitus Type II

Drug	Mechanism	Role	Adverse Effects
Biguanides (metformin)	Decrease hepatic gluconeogenesis, increase insulin activity , reduce LDL, raise HDL	Frequently first-line drug	GI disturbance, rare lactic acidosis, possible decreased vitamin B ₁₂ absorption; contraindicated in patients with hepatic and renal insufficiency
Sulfonylureas (glyburide, glimepiride, glipizide)	Stimulate insulin release from β-islet cells, reduce serum glucagon, increase binding of insulin to tissue receptors	Frequently used after metformin	Hypoglycemia ; contraindicated in patients with hepatic or renal insufficiency (greater risk of hypoglycemia)
Thiazolidinediones (pioglitazone, rosiglitazone)	Decreases hepatic gluconeogenesis, increases tissue uptake of glucose	Adjunct to other drugs or monotherapy	Weight gain and fluid retention (contraindicated in CHF), increase serum LDL, rare liver toxicity in some drugs; rosiglitazone increases risk of MI
DPP-IV inhibitors (sitagliptin, saxagliptin, linagliptin)	Inhibits degradation of incretin hormones → decreased glucagon, increased insulin, delays gastric emptying	Adjunct to other drugs	Diarrhea, constipation, edema
Incretin mimetics (exenatide, liraglutide)	Agonizes GLP-1 receptors → decreases glucagon, increases insulin, delays gastric emptying	SC injection; adjunct to other drugs	Mild weight loss, nausea, hypoglycemia, GI upset, slight risk of pancreatitis
α-Glucosidase inhibitors (acarbose)	Decreases GI absorption of starch and disaccharides	Adjunct to other drugs; may be used in patients with DM type I	Diarrhea, flatulence, GI disturbance
Meglitinides (repaglinide, nateglinide)	Stimulate insulin release from β-islet cells	Used as secondary drug with metformin or rarely as initial drug	Hypoglycemia ; significantly more expensive than sulfonylureas with no therapeutic advantage

DM, diabetes mellitus; DPP-IV, dipeptidyl peptidase-IV; GI, gastrointestinal; GLP-1, glucagon-like peptide-1; LDL, low-density lipoprotein; MI, myocardial infarction.

- d. If patient begins to exhibit signs of decreased insulin production or if hemoglobin A_{1c} is consistently >8.5, add insulin regimen.
- e. Close monitoring of blood glucose levels is important to directing therapy.
- 7. **Complications = hyperosmolar hyperglycemic nonketotic syndrome (HHNS), retinopathy, nephropathy, neuropathy, atherosclerosis**

D. Complications of diabetes

1. **Diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA)**
 - a. Extremely low insulin and glucagon excess cause degradation of triglycerides into fatty acids and eventual conversion into **ketoacids**.
 - b. Occurs in patients with DM type I who do not take prescribed insulin or those who have infections, high stress, myocardial infarction (MI), or high alcohol use
 - c. **H/P** = weakness, polyuria, polydipsia, abdominal pain, vomiting; dry mucous membranes, decreased skin turgor, fruity odor on breath, hyperventilation (Kussmaul respirations = deep, labored, regular breathing); mental status changes develop with worsening dehydration
 - d. **Labs** = glucose 300 to 800 mg/dL (rarely >1,000), decreased Na⁺, normal or increased serum K⁺ (total body K⁺ is decreased), decreased phosphate, high anion gap metabolic acidosis, **serum and urine ketones**
 - e. **Treatment** = intravenous (IV) fluids, insulin, KCl; treat underlying disorder (success of treatment may be confirmed by closure of anion gap)
2. **Hyperosmolar hyperglycemic nonketotic syndrome (HHNS)**
 - a. Extremely high glucose with profound dehydration
 - b. Occurs in patients with DM type II with lengthy infections, stress, or illness; insulin production is sufficient to prevent DKA
 - c. **H/P** = polyuria, polydipsia, dehydration, mental status changes; seizures and stroke can occur in severe cases

QUICK HIT

DKA occurs most frequently in patients with **DM type I** and is **uncommonly seen** in **DM type II**.

QUICK HIT

HHNS is seen in patients with **DM type II** and is **not seen** in patients with **DM type I** because sufficient insulin production is required to prevent DKA from occurring first.

NEXT STEP

Differentiate DKA from HHNS using serum glucose, presence of acidosis, and history of type of DM.

**QUICK HIT**

Patients with sensory neuropathy are at **increased risk** for developing **foot infections** and need to be taught to check their feet regularly to avoid ulcer formation.

**QUICK HIT**

Repetitive foot trauma in cases of impaired pain sensation can lead to severe foot deformity and joint destruction (**Charcot joints**).

**QUICK HIT**

Diabetic patients are at an increased risk of **silent MI** because of impaired pain sensation.

**QUICK HIT**

Cardiac complications are the **greatest cause of death** in diabetic patients.

- d. Labs = glucose >800 mg/dL (frequently >1,000), no acidosis
 - e. Treatment = IV fluids, insulin, correction of electrolyte abnormalities; treat underlying disorder
3. Diabetic retinopathy
 - a. Vascular occlusion and ischemia, with or without neovascularization in retina, leading to visual changes
 - b. Associated with microaneurysms, hemorrhages, infarcts, and macular edema
 - c. Background retinopathy (no neovascularization) makes up most cases; proliferative retinopathy (with neovascularization) has increased risk of hemorrhages.
 - d. H/P = progressive vision loss; retinal changes seen on funduscopic examination (e.g., arteriovenous nicking, hemorrhages, edema, infarcts)
 - e. Treatment = control diabetes, antihypertension (HTN) therapy, annual follow-up with ophthalmology, laser photocoagulation for neovascularization, injection of intravitreal corticosteroids to reduce macular edema
 - f. Complications = vision loss, early cataracts and glaucoma, retinal detachment
 4. Diabetic nephropathy
 - a. Intercapillary glomerulosclerosis, mesangial expansion, and basement membrane degeneration that develops after long-term DM
 - b. Slightly greater risk in DM type I than in DM type II
 - c. Initially presents with proteinuria; renal insufficiency later develops with nephrotic syndrome
 - d. H/P = develops after several years with DM (20+); lab abnormalities may appear well before symptoms; symptoms and signs of renal insufficiency (e.g., HTN, uremia) develop as renal function deteriorates
 - e. Labs = hypoalbuminemia, increased creatinine (Cr), increased blood urea nitrogen (BUN); urinalysis shows proteinuria and microalbuminuria; electron microscopy shows basement membrane thickening and Kimmelstiel-Wilson nodules in glomeruli
 - f. Treatment = control diabetes; angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor (ACE-I) or angiotensin receptor blocker (ARB) to decrease blood pressure, low-protein diet, infection prevention; dialysis may eventually be required
 - g. Complications = end-stage renal disease
 5. Diabetic neuropathy
 - a. Neural damage and conduction defects leading to sensory, motor, and autonomic nerve dysfunction
 - b. Sensory neuropathy begins in feet and progresses in stocking-glove pattern; symptoms include paresthesias, neural pain, and decreased vibratory and pain sensation.
 - c. Motor neuropathy may be distally or proximally distributed and may be characterized by weakness or loss of coordination.
 - d. Autonomic neuropathy can cause postural hypotension, impotence, incontinence, and diabetic gastroparesis (i.e., delayed gastric emptying).
 - e. Treatment = control diabetes; neural pain can be treated with tricyclic antidepressants, phenytoin, carbamazepine, or gabapentin; narcotics or tramadol can be considered for persistent neural pain; patients should be taught how to perform regular foot examinations
 - f. Complications = Charcot joints, diabetic foot ulcers; amputation may be needed to treat progressive infections and deformity
 6. Atherosclerosis
 - a. Incidence greatly increased in diabetic patients secondary to macrovascular disease
 - b. Increased risk of coronary artery disease and peripheral vascular disease (PVD), leading to increased risk of MI, distal ischemia, and ulcer formation secondary to poor healing and infection
 - c. Treatment = control HTN and hyperlipidemia; daily aspirin (ASA) therapy
 - d. Complications = MI (frequently silent), PVD, poor healing of trauma and infections

E. Hypoglycemia (see Table 5-5)

1. Inadequate blood glucose that can result in an inadequate supply of glucose to tissues and brain damage

TABLE 5-5 Causes of Hypoglycemia

Cause	Pathology	Diagnosis	Treatment
Reactive	Decrease in serum glucose after eating (postsurgical or idiopathic)	Hypoglycemia and symptoms improve with carbohydrate meal	Frequent small meals
Iatrogenic (excess insulin)	Excess insulin administration or adverse effect of sulfonylurea or meglitinide use	Increased insulin in presence of hypoglycemia , adjustment of drug regimen reduces symptoms	Adjust insulin regimen, consider different oral hypoglycemic drug
Insulinoma ^a	β-Islet cell tumor producing excess insulin	Increased insulin in presence of hypoglycemia, may be detected on CT or MRI	Surgical resection if able to locate
Fasting	Underproduction of glucose because of hormone deficiencies, malnutrition, or liver disease	Lab abnormalities and history associated with particular etiology	Proper nutrition, enzyme replacement
Alcohol induced	Glycogen depletion and gluconeogenesis inhibition by high concentrations of alcohol	History of alcohol use, serum ethanol >45 mg/dL	Proper nutrition, stopping high quantity alcohol use
Pituitary/adrenal insufficiency	Decreased cortisol production leads to insufficient hepatic gluconeogenesis in response to hypoglycemia	Low serum cortisol; site of defect determined by ACTH activity tests; possible other comorbid endocrine abnormalities	Cortisol replacement

^aA similar presentation would be expected for tumors with paraneoplastic production of insulin or insulin-like substance. ACTH, adrenocorticotropic hormone; CT, computed tomography; MRI, magnetic resonance imaging.

- H/P = faintness, weakness, diaphoresis, and palpitations because of responsive excess secretion of epinephrine (attempt to mobilize glycogen); headache, confusion, mental status changes, and decreased consciousness because of inadequate supply of glucose to the brain

II. THYROID DISORDERS

A. Thyroid function

- Thyroid hormones induce central nervous system (CNS) maturation during growth, increase basal metabolic rate, increase cardiac output, and promote bone growth.
- Thyrotropin-releasing hormone (TRH) secretion from hypothalamus is stimulated by cold and inhibited by stress (see Figure 5-2).
- TRH induces secretion of thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) in the anterior pituitary.
- TSH secretion is also controlled by feedback inhibition from thyroxine (T₄) thyroid hormone.
- Metabolic effects are determined by free T₄ and triiodothyronine (T₃); remaining thyroid hormones bound to thyroid-binding globulin (TBG).

B. Hyperthyroidism

- Excess production of thyroid hormones
- Multiple causes, but **Graves disease** is most common (see Table 5-6)
- H/P = weight loss, increased appetite, **heat intolerance**, **anxiety**, diaphoresis, palpitations, increased bowel frequency; staring or lid lag, tremor, tachycardia, increased pulse pressure, warm skin, hyperreflexia, possible atrial fibrillation
- Labs = decreased TSH, increased total T₄, free T₄, total T₃, and T₃ resin uptake
- Complications = thyroid storm

C. Thyroid storm

- Severe hyperthyroidism induced by infection, surgery, or stress in patients with preexisting hyperthyroidism
- H/P = existing symptoms of hyperthyroidism, severe diaphoresis, vomiting, diarrhea; tachycardia, fever, **mental status changes**

QUICK HIT

T₄ is converted to T₃ in serum; T₃ is more potent than T₄ but has a shorter half-life.

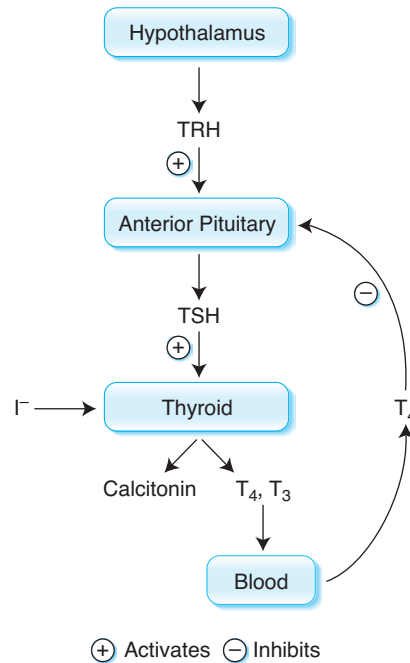
QUICK HIT

If TBG levels increase (e.g., pregnancy, oral contraceptive use), total T₄ increases but free T₄ remains normal.

QUICK HIT

Nephrotic syndrome and androgen use decrease TBG levels, leading to decreased total T₄ but normal free T₄.

FIGURE 5-2 Hypothalampituitary regulation of thyroid hormone production.



I⁻, iodine; T₃, triiodothyronine; T₄, thyroxine; TRH, thyroid-releasing hormone; TSH, thyroid-stimulating hormone.

TABLE 5-6 Causes of Hyperthyroidism

Etiology	Pathology	Aids in Diagnosis	Treatment
Graves disease	Autoimmune TSI antibodies bind to TSH receptors in thyroid and stimulate thyroid hormone production	Exophthalmos, pretibial myxedema, painless goiter ; TSI found in serum; high uptake on thyroid scan	Thionamides (methimazole, PTU) achieve euthyroidism in many cases; radioablation with radioactive iodine or subtotal thyroidectomy for definitive cure; atenolol can be used for symptomatic relief
Toxic adenoma (Plummer disease)/toxic multinodular goiter	Single or multiple hyperactive nodules produce excess thyroid hormones	Thyroid scan shows increased uptake at site(s) of nodule(s)	Thionamides, radioactive iodine, or surgical resection
Subacute thyroiditis (de Quervain thyroiditis)	Enlarged thyroid due to possible viral stimulus	Painful goiter , mild symptoms of hyperthyroidism, neck pain, fever ; increased ESR; decreased uptake on thyroid scan	Self-limited; NSAIDs and β-blockers to treat symptoms; thyroid replacement may be needed if hypothyroidism occurs during gland recovery
Silent thyroiditis	Temporary thyroiditis that may follow pregnancy	Painless goiter; low uptake on thyroid scan ; biopsy shows inflammation	Self-limited; β-blockers to treat symptoms
Factitious hyperthyroidism	Excess thyroid hormone ingestion	No goiter in cases of hyperthyroidism; normal thyroid scan	Stop excess ingestion

ESA, erythrocyte sedimentation rate; NSAIDs, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs; PTU, propylthiouracil; TSH, thyroid-stimulating hormone; TSI, thyroid-stimulating immunoglobulin.

3. **Labs** = increased T₄ and T₃, decreased TSH
4. **Treatment** = similar to treatment of hyperthyroidism but higher doses of medications given in greater frequency; β-blockers, thionamides, IV sodium iodine (helps block thyroid hormone release), hydrocortisone (inhibits conversion of T₄ to T₃); surgery or radioablation when patient is stable
5. **Complications** = 25% to 50% mortality

D. Hashimoto thyroiditis

1. Most common cause of hypothyroidism
2. Autoimmune condition characterized by chronic thyroiditis; most commonly in middle-aged women
3. **H/P** = weakness, fatigue, decreased exercise capacity, **cold intolerance**, **weight gain**, constipation, irregular menstruation, **depression**, hoarseness; hyporeflexia, bradycardia, dry skin, edema, **painless goiter**
4. **Labs** = **increased TSH**, decreased total T₄, decreased free T₄, **antithyroid peroxidase (anti-TPO)** and **antithyroglobulin antibodies**; lymphocytic infiltrates and fibrosis seen on biopsy
5. **Radiology** = **decreased uptake** on thyroid scan (i.e., “cold scan”)
6. **Treatment** = lifelong levothyroxine replacement

E. Thyroid carcinoma

1. Workup of thyroid nodules
 - a. Thyroid nodules are usually benign and increase in frequency with age.
 - b. Nodules should be evaluated with TSH levels, thyroid function tests, ultrasound (US), and fine needle aspiration (FNA) with biopsy.
 - c. “Cold” nodules exhibit decreased radioactive iodide (I⁻) uptake (from decreased metabolic activity); “hot” nodules exhibit increased iodide uptake (from increased metabolic activity).
 - d. Increased risk of malignancy = male, 20 to 60 years of age, history of neck irradiation, poor iodide uptake on thyroid scan (cold nodule), solid nodule on US
 - e. Malignant nodules can arise from a variety of thyroid cell types (see Table 5-7).
2. **H/P** = nontender nodule in anterior neck, dysphagia, hoarseness; possible cervical lymphadenopathy
3. **Labs** = biopsy provides diagnosis; thyroid hormones normal or decreased
4. **Radiology** = US used to determine size and local extension; thyroid scan may differentiate hot from cold nodule (malignant nodules more likely to be cold)
5. **Treatment**
 - a. Benign small cystic nodules may be observed.
 - b. Benign solid nodules are treated with surgery, radioablation, and postoperative levothyroxine to stop thyroid hormone overproduction and decrease risk of malignant conversion.
 - c. Malignant tumors require surgical resection (lobectomy for nonanaplastic tumors <1 cm diameter, total thyroidectomy for larger tumors) and radioiodine ablation.
 - d. Radiation therapy for tumors with local extension; chemotherapy for metastatic tumors
 - e. Thyroid replacement (levothyroxine) needed after surgery

NEXT STEP

To determine if an enlarged thyroid or thyroid mass is caused by excess thyroid activity or a malignancy, perform a thyroid scan (measures uptake of radioactive iodine to indicate normal, excessive, or absent thyroid function).

QUICK HIT

Hypothyroidism can result from autoimmune processes, **thyroid surgery**, thyroid radioablation, pituitary dysfunction, chronic lithium use, and chronic iodide use.

NEXT STEP

If decreased TSH and hypothyroidism are seen, suspect a pituitary or hypothalamic etiology.

QUICK HIT

Two frequent complications of thyroid surgery are **hoarseness** (secondary to damage of the recurrent laryngeal nerve) and **hypocalcemia** (secondary to surgical hypoparathyroidism).

Endocrine Disorders

TABLE 5-7 Types of Thyroid Carcinoma

Type	Cells Affected	Frequency	Characteristics	Prognosis
Papillary	Columnar cells of gland	Most common form (78% cases); most common in younger patients; follicular variant (17% cases) is most common variant	Begins as slow-growing nodule; eventually metastasizes to local cervical lymph nodes	Good ; few recurrences; follicular type has slightly worse prognosis (50% 10-yr survival)
Medullary	Parafollicular C cells	4% of thyroid cancers	Produces calcitonin ; may present with other endocrine tumors (MEN IIa and IIb)	Worse in older patients; metastases common at diagnosis
Anaplastic	Poorly differentiated neoplasm	1% of thyroid cancers	Very aggressive ; local extension causes hoarseness, dysphagia	Poor

MEN IIa, multiple endocrine neoplasia type IIa.

III. PARATHYROID DISORDERS

A. Parathyroid function

1. Plasma calcium (Ca^{2+}) regulation (see Figure 5-3)
 - a. **Parathyroid hormone (PTH):** secreted in response to low serum Ca^{2+} ; induces osteoclasts to reabsorb bone and increases plasma Ca^{2+} ; induces kidneys to increase conversion of 25-(OH) vitamin D to 1,25-(OH)₂ vitamin D, decreases phosphate reabsorption, and increases distal tubule Ca^{2+} reabsorption for net increase in plasma Ca^{2+}
 - b. **1,25-(OH)₂ vitamin D:** metabolite of dietary vitamin D; production in kidneys increases with PTH secretion; increases intestinal Ca^{2+} absorption; increases renal proximal tubule phosphate reabsorption (in opposition to PTH-induced phosphate wasting)
 - c. **Calcitonin:** secreted by thyroid parafollicular cells; inhibits bone reabsorption



MNEMONIC

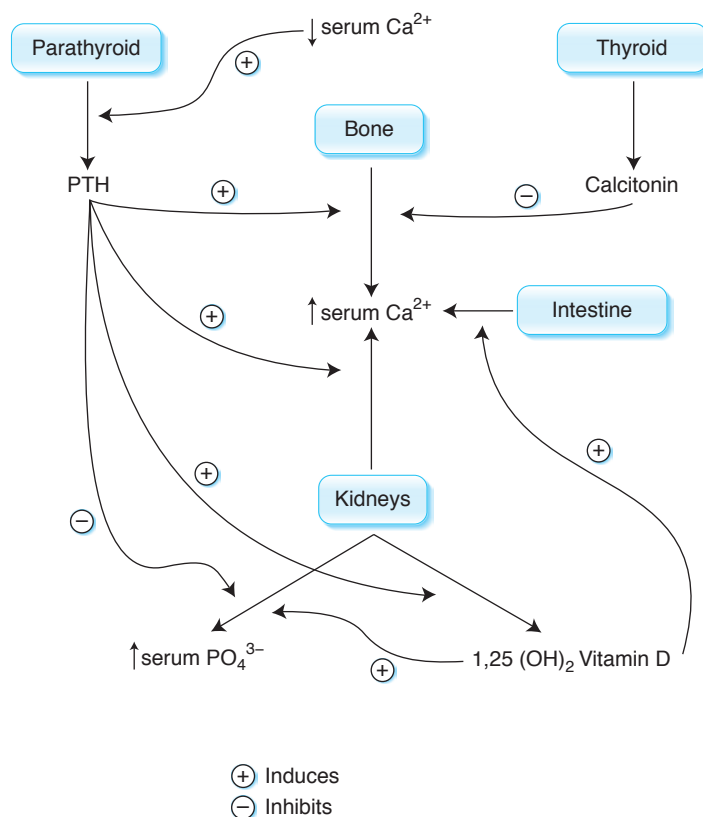
Remember the “bones,” “stones,” “groans,” and “psychiatric overtones” of hypercalcemia in cases of hyperparathyroidism.



QUICK HIT

Decreased Ca^{2+} with increased PTH suggests a hyperparathyroidism secondary to **malnutrition**, malabsorption, **renal disease**, or calcium-wasting drugs.

FIGURE 5-3 Serum Ca^{2+} regulation.



PTH, parathyroid hormone.

B. Primary hyperparathyroidism

1. Excess PTH secretion, leading to hypercalcemia and osteopenia
2. Most cases result from **single adenoma**; remaining cases mostly occur with hyperplasia of all four glands; parathyroid cancer is rare
3. **H/P** = frequently asymptomatic; symptoms of hypercalcemia may be present (e.g., bone pain, nausea and vomiting, mental status changes, renal stones, constipation, weakness, increased risk of fracture) (see Chapter 4, **Genitourinary Disorders**, for further discussion of hypercalcemia)
4. **Labs** = increased Ca^{2+} , decreased phosphate, increased urine Ca^{2+} , increased PTH
5. **Radiology** = decreased bone density on dual X-ray absorptiometry (DXA) scan
6. **Treatment** = surgical resection (i.e., parathyroidectomy) of single adenoma; for four-gland hyperplasia, all glands are removed, and a portion of one gland

is implanted in the muscle of forearm to maintain some PTH production; treat hypercalcemia with IV fluids and bisphosphonates

C. Hypoparathyroidism

1. PTH deficiency caused by **surgical removal** of parathyroids (most common) or autoimmune degeneration of glands (uncommon), leading to hypocalcemia
2. H/P = tingling in lips and fingers, dry skin, weakness, abdominal pain, tetany, dyspnea; possible tachycardia, seizures, movement disorders, cataracts, dental hypoplasia, positive Trousseau (i.e., carpal spasm when blood pressure cuff inflated) and Chvostek signs (i.e., tapping of facial nerve causes spasm) (see Chapter 4, **Genitourinary Disorders**)
3. Labs = decreased Ca^{2+} , increased phosphate, decreased PTH
4. Radiology = X-rays may demonstrate osteosclerosis or increased bone density
5. Treatment = Ca^{2+} and vitamin D supplementation

D. Pseudohypoparathyroidism

1. Hypocalcemia resulting from tissue **nonresponsiveness to PTH**
2. Associated with developmental and skeletal abnormalities (e.g., **Albright hereditary osteodystrophy**)
3. H/P = symptoms of hypocalcemia, short stature, seizures, poor mental development in children
4. Labs = decreased Ca^{2+} , increased phosphate, **increased PTH**; administration of PTH causes no change in serum or urine Ca^{2+}
5. Treatment = Ca^{2+} and vitamin D supplementation



IV. PITUITARY AND HYPOTHALAMIC DISORDERS

A. Hypothalamic-pituitary function

1. Hypothalamus responds to stimuli by modulating pituitary activity (see Figure 5-4).
 - a. Hormones are released into the hypophyseal portal system to regulate subsequent hormone release from the anterior pituitary.
 - b. Anterior pituitary hormone secretion is regulated by feedback mechanisms in addition to the hypothalamus.
 - c. Impulses sent through the hypothalamo-hypophyseal tract regulate hormone release from the posterior pituitary.
2. Anterior pituitary lacks nerve terminals and is responsible for secretion of prolactin, adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), TSH, growth hormone (GH), follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH), and luteinizing hormone (LH).
3. Posterior pituitary is a neural extension of the hypothalamus and is responsible for antidiuretic hormone (ADH) and oxytocin secretion.

B. Hyperprolactinemia

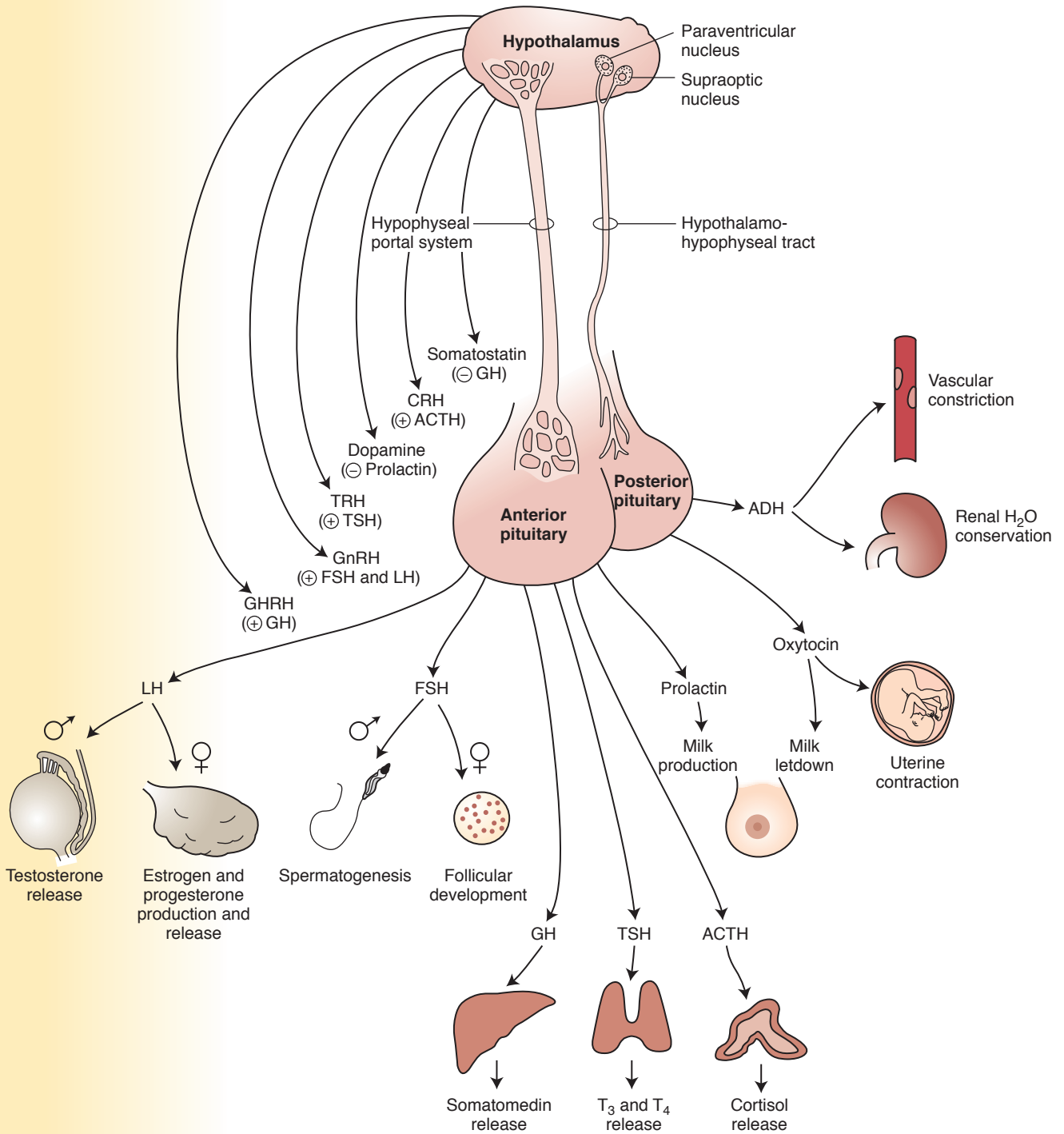
1. Excess prolactin secretion by anterior pituitary
 - a. Causes decreased LH and FSH secretion, galactorrhea (i.e., milk secretion), and amenorrhea in women
 - b. Causes gynecomastia in men
2. Can result from **pregnancy**, **prolactinoma**, drugs that block dopamine synthesis (e.g., phenothiazines, risperidone, haloperidol, methyl dopa, verapamil), dopamine-depleting drugs, or hypothalamic damage
3. H/P = **amenorrhea and galactorrhea (women)**; decreased libido, erectile dysfunction, and **gynecomastia (men)**; bitemporal hemianopsia can result from mass effect of tumor in sella turcica
4. Labs = increased prolactin; if adenoma, prolactin >300 ng/mL and TRH administration causes no additional prolactin secretion
5. Radiology = magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) may detect pituitary tumor
6. Treatment = dopamine agonists (e.g., cabergoline, bromocriptine, pergolide), stopping offending agents; transsphenoidal surgery and radiation therapy should be performed in refractory cases



QUICK HIT

Prolactinoma is the most common pituitary tumor.

FIGURE 5-4 Hypothalamopituitary axis.



ACTH, adrenocorticotropic hormone; ADH, antidiuretic hormone; CRH, corticotrophin-releasing hormone; GH, growth hormone; GHRH, growth hormone-releasing hormone; GnRH, gonadotropin-releasing hormone; FSH, follicle-stimulating hormone; LH, luteinizing hormone; PRH, prolactin-releasing hormone; T₃, triiodothyronine; T₄, thyroxine; TRH, thyrotropin-releasing hormone; TSH, thyroid-stimulating hormone. (From Mehta, S., Milder, E. A., Mirachi, A. J., & Milder, E. [2003]. *Step-Up: A High-Yield, Systems-Based Review for the USMLE Step 1* [2nd ed.]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

C. Acromegaly

1. Excess secretion of GH by anterior pituitary caused by adenoma
2. H/P = **enlargement** of hands and feet, coarsening of facial features (e.g., enlargement of nose, jaw, and skin folds), thickened skin, increased body hair growth, joint pain (caused by osteoarthritis), neural pain (because of nerve entrapment); changes may be gradual
3. Heart, lungs, spleen, liver, and kidneys become enlarged and can cause symptoms secondary to dysfunction.
4. **Labs** = increased GH, increased GH 1 to 2 hr following 100 g glucose load (GH decreases in normal cases)
5. **Radiology** = computed tomography (CT) or MRI may detect tumor; X-rays may demonstrate increased bone density
6. **Treatment** = surgical resection of adenoma; dopamine agonists or octreotide to lessen effects of GH; radiation therapy may be useful in cases unresponsive to surgical or medical treatment
7. **Complications** = **cardiac failure**, DM, spinal cord compression, vision loss secondary to pressure of tumor on optic nerve

D. Hypopituitarism

1. **Deficiency of all anterior pituitary hormones** caused by tumor, hemorrhagic infarction (i.e., pituitary apoplexy), surgical resection, trauma, sarcoidosis, tuberculosis, postpartum necrosis (i.e., Sheehan syndrome), or dysfunction of the hypothalamus
2. Some pituitary hormones are kept in storage, and target organs may maintain some autonomous function, so symptoms specific to deficiency of each type of hormone appear at various times (see Table 5-8).
3. **Labs**
 - a. LH/FSH: decreased LH, FSH, estrogen (women), and testosterone (men); menstruation does not occur following administration of medroxyprogesterone
 - b. GH: decreased GH; no increase in GH after administration of insulin
 - c. TSH: decreased TSH, T₄, and T₃ uptake
 - d. Prolactin: decreased prolactin (most noticeable postpartum)
 - e. ACTH: decreased ACTH; cortisol does not increase following administration of insulin (normally should increase at least 10 μg/dL); ACTH and 11-deoxycortisol do not increase following administration of metyrapone
4. **Treatment** = treat underlying cause, if possible; treatment depends on which hormones are deficient
 - a. GH: **recombinant hormone replacement therapy**
 - b. LH/FSH: testosterone replacement in men; estrogen-progesterone pill for women; gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH) can be used in men or women desiring fertility

NEXT STEP

Compare current appearance of adult patients to multiple pictures at younger ages to aid in the detection of a gradual enlargement in features seen in acromegaly.

NEXT STEP

For a child with extremely **advanced growth for the given age** (gigantism), perform a workup for increased GH.

QUICK HIT

Patients with acromegaly have **insulin resistance** (similar to DM type II) and develop diabetes in 10% of cases.

TABLE 5-8 Progression of Hormone Deficiency in Hypopituitarism

Order of Loss	Hormone(s)	Symptoms
1	GH	Growth failure and short stature in children
2	LH, FSH	Infertility, decreased libido, and decreased pubic hair; amenorrhea and genital atrophy in women; impotence and testicular atrophy in men
3	TSH	Hypothyroidism leading to fatigue and cold intolerance; no goiter
4	Prolactin	No postpartum lactation
5	ACTH, MSH	Adrenal insufficiency leading to fatigue, weight loss, decreased appetite, and poor response to stress; decreased skin pigment because of low MSH

ACTH, adrenocorticotropic hormone; FSH, follicle-stimulating hormone; GH, growth hormone; LH, luteinizing hormone; MSH, melanocyte-stimulating hormone; TSH, thyroid-stimulating hormone.

**QUICK HIT**

ACTH and melanocyte-stimulating hormone (**MSH**) arise from the same precursors and follow the same trend in their serum concentrations.

**QUICK HIT**

Excess corticosteroid administration is the most common cause of Cushing syndrome; excess ACTH production by a **pituitary adenoma** is the **second most common** cause.

NEXT STEP

To determine the cause of cortisol excess, screen patients with symptoms of Cushing syndrome with:

- **Low dexamethasone suppression test:** 1–2 mg dexamethasone given at night; low cortisol normally found next morning; no decrease in cortisol seen in Cushing syndrome;
- **High-dose dexamethasone suppression test:** 8 mg/day for 2 days; used to determine cause of cortisol excess.

**QUICK HIT**

Symptoms of Cushing syndrome can take up to a year to resolve following therapy.

- TSH: levothyroxine
- Prolactin: no need to treat (women will be unable to lactate)
- ACTH: hydrocortisone, dexamethasone, or prednisone

E. Disorders of posterior pituitary

- Syndrome of inappropriate ADH secretion (SAIDH) (see Chapter 4, **Genitourinary Disorders**)
- Diabetes insipidus (see Chapter 4, **Genitourinary Disorders**)

**V. ADRENAL DISORDERS****A. Adrenal function** (see Table 5-9)**TABLE 5-9 Function of Zones in Adrenal Cortex and Medulla**

Region	Stimulation	Secretory Products	Action of Secretory Products
Zona glomerulosa (cortex)	Renin-angiotensin system	Aldosterone	Conserve body sodium, maintains body fluid volume
Zona fasciculata (cortex)	ACTH	Cortisol	Maintains glucose production from proteins, aids in fat metabolism, aids in vascular regulation, influences immune response, aids in nervous regulation
Zona reticularis (cortex)	ACTH	Androgens	Development of secondary sexual characteristics, increased bone and muscle mass, promotes male sexual differentiation and sperm production
Medulla	Preganglionic sympathetic neurons	Epinephrine, norepinephrine	Postsynaptic neurotransmitter in sympathetic autonomic system, induces sympathetic effects (glucose mobilization, increase heart contractility and rate, etc.)

ACTH, adrenocorticotropic hormone.

B. Cushing syndrome

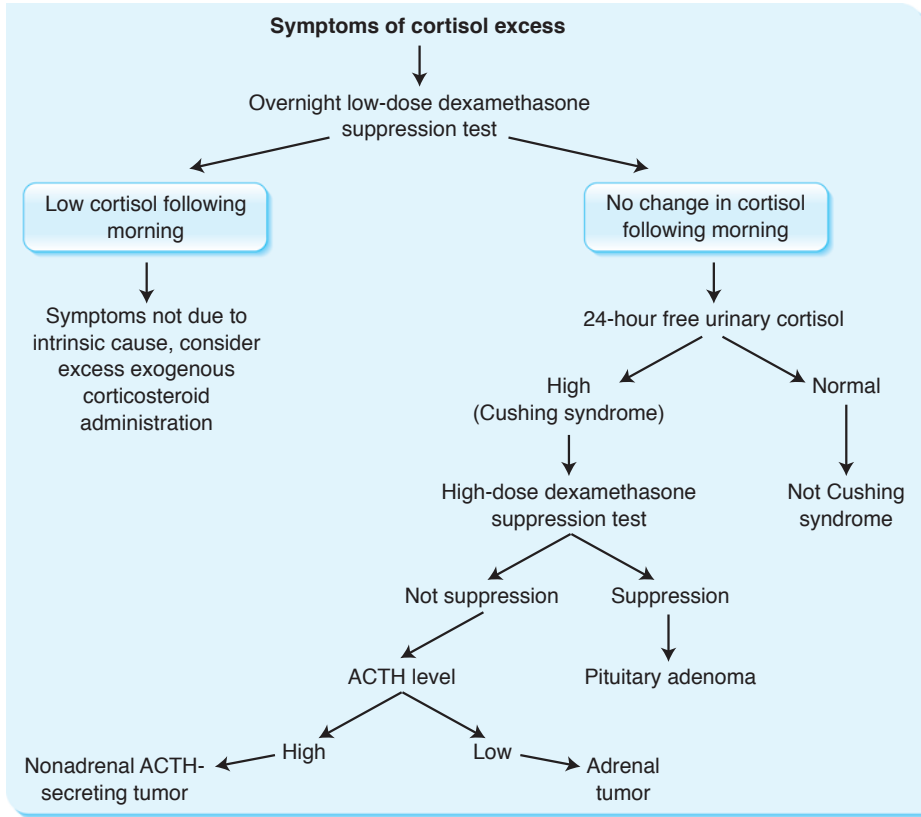
- Syndrome of **excess cortisol** is caused by **excess corticosteroid administration**, **pituitary adenoma** (i.e., Cushing disease), **paraneoplastic ACTH production**, or **adrenal tumor**.
- H/P** = weakness, depression, menstrual irregularities, polydipsia, polyuria, increased libido, impotence; **HTN**, **acne**, **increased hair growth**, central obesity, “**buffalo hump**” (i.e., hunchback-like hump on back), “**moon facies**” (i.e., rounded face caused by increased fat deposition), **purple striae** on abdomen, cataracts
- Labs** = (in addition to those depicted in Figure 5-5) hyperglycemia, glycosuria, decreased K^+
- Treatment** = adjust corticosteroid dosing in cases of excess administration; surgical resection or pituitary irradiation for pituitary tumors; surgical resection for nonpituitary or adrenal tumors; octreotide may improve symptoms in paraneoplastic syndromes; cortisol replacement may be needed after surgery
- Complications** = increased risk of mortality from cardiovascular or thromboembolic complications; increased infection risk, **avascular necrosis of hip**, hypopituitarism, or adrenal insufficiency after surgery

C. Hyperaldosteronism

- Excess aldosterone secretion caused by **unilateral adrenal adenoma** (i.e., Conn syndrome) or **increased renin-angiotensin system activity** secondary to perceived low blood pressure in kidney

FIGURE 5-5

Example of diagnostic algorithm for a patient with suspected Cushing syndrome caused by cortisol excess.



ACTH, adrenocorticotropic hormone.

2. H/P = polyuria, headache, weakness, paresthesias; recalcitrant HTN, tetany
3. Labs = decreased K^+ , mildly increased Na^+ , metabolic alkalosis, decreased renin (Conn syndrome only), increased 24-hr urine aldosterone; high ratio of plasma aldosterone concentration (PAC) to plasma renin activity (PRA) indicates primary hyperaldosteronism
4. Radiology = CT or MRI may detect adrenal mass
5. Treatment = surgical resection of tumor; treat underlying disorder causing renin-angiotensin system hyperactivity; aldosterone antagonists (e.g., spironolactone) improve hypokalemia until definitive therapy administered

D. Adrenal insufficiency

1. Mineralocorticoid (i.e., aldosterone) or glucocorticoid (i.e., cortisol) deficiency caused by adrenal disease or ACTH insufficiency
2. Type
 - a. Addison disease (primary insufficiency): autoimmune destruction of adrenal cortices caused by autoimmune disease, infection, or hemorrhage; can occur with other endocrine autoimmune processes
 - b. Secondary corticoadrenal insufficiency: due to insufficient ACTH production by pituitary
 - c. Tertiary corticoadrenal insufficiency: because of insufficient corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH) secretion by hypothalamus, most commonly due to chronic corticosteroid use
3. H/P = weakness, fatigue, anorexia, weight loss, nausea and vomiting (more common in primary disease), myalgias, arthralgias, decreased libido (women), memory impairment, depression, mild psychosis; hypotension, possible increased skin pigmentation (because of feedback influence of melanocyte-stimulating hormone [MSH])

NEXT STEP

Examine patients with adrenal insufficiency for **increased skin pigmentation**; this finding is **seen in Addison disease** (secondary to increased MSH production accompanying increased ACTH production) but **not in secondary or tertiary insufficiency**.

4. Labs

- Decreased Na^+ and increased K^+ secondary to low aldosterone, eosinophilia, decreased cortisol
 - Increased ACTH with Addison disease, decreased ACTH with secondary or tertiary insufficiency
 - Decreased cortisol that increases following ACTH analogue (cosyntropin) administration in secondary or tertiary insufficiency but not in Addison disease
5. **Treatment** = treat underlying disease; **glucocorticoid replacement** (e.g., hydrocortisone, dexamethasone, prednisone), **mineralocorticoid replacement** (may not be needed in secondary or tertiary disease), dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA), and hydration to achieve adequate volume status; titrate cortisol levels for periods of stress (increased need) and to avoid exacerbating secondary adrenal insufficiency
6. **Complications** = **Addisonian crisis** (i.e., severe weakness, fever, mental status changes, and vascular collapse caused by stress and increased cortisol need; treat with IV glucose and hydrocortisone or vasopressors), secondary insufficiency caused by excess cortisol replacement



QUICK HIT

Cortisol deficiency is usually not symptomatic in CAH because hyperplasia can maintain cortisol in the low-normal range despite enzyme deficiency.



QUICK HIT

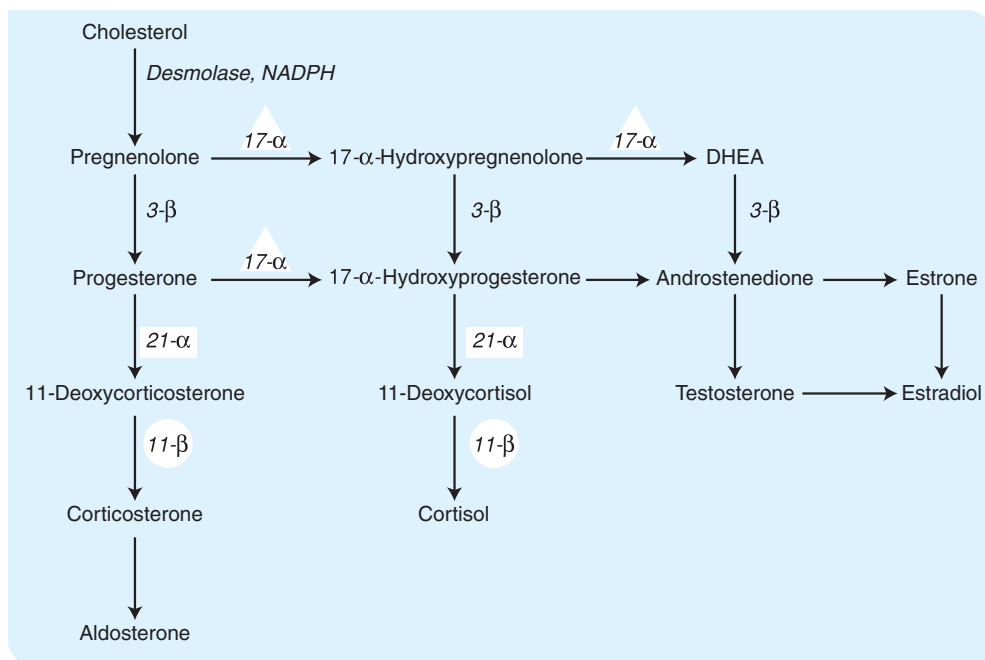
21- α -Hydroxylase deficiency is the **most common** form of CAH.

E. Congenital adrenal hyperplasia (CAH)

- Enzymatic defect in synthesis of cortisol, resulting in decreased cortisol, reactive increase in ACTH production, adrenal hyperplasia, and androgen excess (see Figure 5-6)
- 17- α -Hydroxylase** deficiency
 - Deoxycorticosterone overproduction; cortisol, androgen, and estrogen deficiencies
 - H/P = amenorrhea (women), ambiguous genitalia (men); HTN
 - Labs = decreased K^+ , increased Na^+ , decreased androgens, decreased 17- α -hydroxyprogesterone
- 21- α -Hydroxylase** deficiency
 - (Usually) partial deficiency of enzyme resulting in excess androstenedione and insufficient cortisol and aldosterone

FIGURE

5-6 Steroid hormone synthesis and causes of congenital adrenal hyperplasia.



Note the blocks in the pathway from 17- α -hydroxylase deficiency (triangles), 21- α -hydroxylase deficiency (rectangles), and 11- β -hydroxylase deficiency (circles). 3 β , 3 β -hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase; 11 β , 11 β -hydroxylase; 17 α , 17 α -hydroxylase; 21 α , 21 α -hydroxylase; DHEA, dehydroepiandrosterone; NADPH, nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate (reduced form).

- b. H/P = ambiguous genitalia (female infants), virilization (women), macrogenitosomia and precocious puberty (men); dehydration and hypotension in more severe cases
 - c. Labs = decreased Na⁺, increased K⁺, increased androgens
4. 11-β-Hydroxylase deficiency
- a. Enzyme deficiency resulting in excess deoxycorticosterone, deoxycortisol, and androgens and insufficient cortisol and aldosterone
 - b. H/P = ambiguous genitalia (female infants), virilization (women), macrogenitosomia and precocious puberty (men); HTN (secondary to deoxycorticosterone)
 - c. Labs = increased deoxycorticosterone, increased deoxycortisol, increased androgens
5. Treatment
- a. 17-α-Hydroxylase deficiency: cortisol replacement to achieve ACTH suppression; most children raised as females; estrogen-progesterone replacement given to genotypic females at puberty; genotypic males may have reconstructive surgery of genitals
 - b. 21-α-Hydroxylase deficiency: cortisol replacement therapy for ACTH suppression; fludrocortisone for mineralocorticoid replacement; reconstructive genital surgery
 - c. 11-β-Hydroxylase deficiency: cortisol replacement (hydrocortisone or dexamethasone) for ACTH suppression; anti-HTN may be required for persistent HTN

F. Pheochromocytoma

- 1. Adrenal medulla tumor that secretes epinephrine and norepinephrine, leading to stimulation of sympathetic nervous system; rarely extra-adrenal in location
- 2. H/P = sudden palpitations, chest pain, diaphoresis, headache, anxiety; intermittent tachycardia, HTN
- 3. Labs = increased 24-hr urinary catecholamines and metanephrines; increased plasma-free metanephrines; increased 24-hr urinary vanillylmandelic acid (VMA) (test performed infrequently because of limited sensitivity/specificity)
- 4. Treatment = surgical resection; α- and β-blockers used before and during surgery to control blood pressure

VI. MULTIPLE ENDOCRINE NEOPLASIA (MEN)

- A. Autosomal dominant syndromes involving dysfunction of multiple endocrine glands (see Table 5-10)
- B. Gland dysfunction may be secondary to hyperplasia or neoplasm

QUICK HIT

Pheochromocytoma rule of 10s: 10% malignant, 10% multiple, 10% bilateral, 10% extra-adrenal, 10% children, 10% familial, 10% calcify.

NEXT STEP

Patients with intermittent tachycardia and HTN with sympathetic symptoms should have a pheochromocytoma workup included in their evaluation.

QUICK HIT

Mutation of the RET proto-oncogene is found in most cases of multiple endocrine neoplasia (MEN) IIa and IIb.

MNEMONIC

Remember MEN type I as **3 Ps: Parathyroid hyperplasia, Pituitary, Pancreas**. MEN type IIa can be remembered as **1 M and 2 Ps: Medullary thyroid carcinoma, Parathyroid hyperplasia, and Pheochromocytoma**. MEN type IIb can be remembered by the **2 Ms and 1 P: Mucosal neuromas, Medullary thyroid carcinoma, and Pheochromocytoma**.

TABLE 5-10 Types of Multiple Endocrine Neoplasia (MEN)

Type	Endocrine Involvement	Characteristics	Treatment
I	Parathyroid hyperplasia Pancreas (islet cell) or GI endocrine tumors Pituitary	Hyperparathyroidism, hypercalcemia, possible Zollinger-Ellison syndrome , various pituitary disorders (e.g., acromegaly, Cushing syndrome, galactorrhea)	Subtotal parathyroidectomy, surgical resection of pancreatic tumor or octreotide, surgical resection of pituitary tumor
IIa	Medullary thyroid cancer Parathyroid hyperplasia Pheochromocytoma	Medullary carcinoma , increased calcitonin, hyperparathyroidism , hypercalcemia, increased serum and urine catecholamines	Total thyroidectomy, surgical resection of pheochromocytoma, subtotal parathyroidectomy
IIb	Mucosal neuromas Medullary thyroid cancer Pheochromocytoma	Medullary carcinoma , increased calcitonin, hypercalcemia, Marfanoid body habitus , mucosal nodules	Total thyroidectomy, surgical resection of pheochromocytoma

**QUICK HIT**

Prolonged jaundice is frequently the first sign of cretinism.

**VII. PEDIATRIC ENDOCRINE CONCERNS****A. Cretinism**

1. Congenital hypothyroidism caused by severe iodide deficiency or hereditary disorder of thyroid hormone synthesis that leads to abnormal mental development and growth retardation
2. **H/P** = frequently asymptomatic if mother has normal thyroid function; poor feeding, lethargy, large fontanelles that remain open, thick tongue, constipation; umbilical hernia, poor growth, hypotonicity, dry skin, hypothermia, jaundice
3. **Labs** = decreased T_4 , increased TSH
4. **Radiology** = X-ray shows poor bone development; thyroid scan shows decreased uptake with malformed thyroids and increased uptake with iodide deficiency
5. **Treatment** = levothyroxine started soon after birth to avoid permanent developmental delays

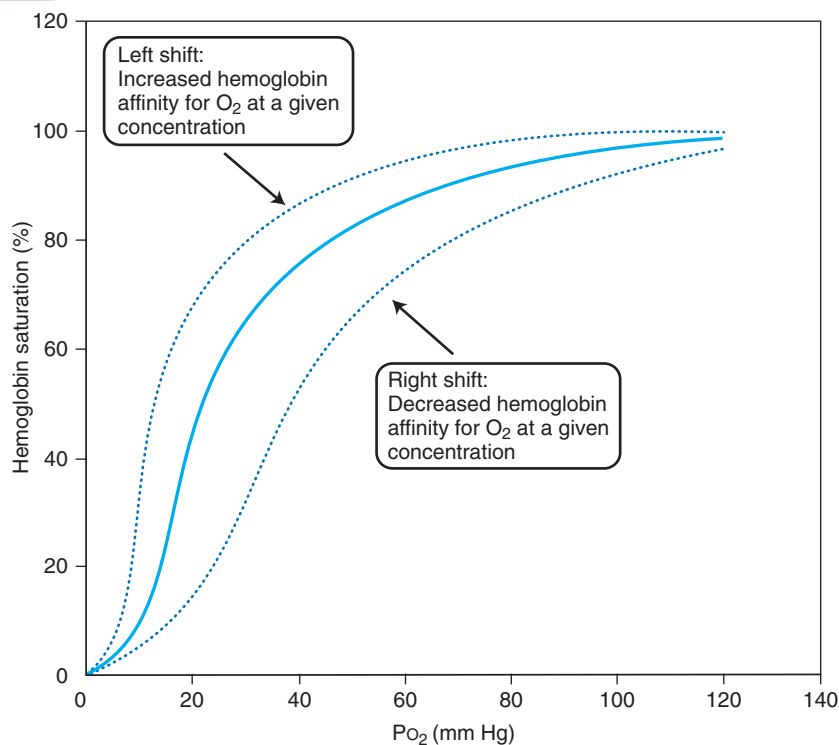
Hematology and Oncology

I. ANEMIAS

A. Red blood cell (RBC) physiology

1. RBCs serve to transport O_2 from the alveoli to tissues via the bloodstream and to transport CO_2 from tissue to lungs.
2. Normal hemoglobin (Hgb) A serves as a binding protein for O_2 and CO_2 , and its affinity for O_2 follows the Hgb- O_2 dissociation curve (see Figure 6-1).
 - a. **Metabolic alkalosis**, decreased body temperature, and increased Hgb F (fetal) shift curve to the **left**.
 - b. **Metabolic acidosis**, increased body temperature, **high altitude**, and exercise shift curve to the **right**.

FIGURE 6-1 Hemoglobin–oxygen dissociation curve.



Left shift: alkalosis, decreased body temperature, increased Hgb F concentration, ↓ CO_2 , ↓ 2,3-DPG
 Right shift: acidosis, increased body temperature, high altitude, exercise, ↑ CO_2 , ↑ 2,3-DPG

NEXT STEP

If a patient presents with carbon monoxide poisoning (carbon monoxide displaces O_2 on Hgb, leading to insufficient delivery of O_2 to tissues), administer **100% O_2** via face mask to increase the alveolar concentration of O_2 and decrease the opportunities for carbon monoxide to bind to Hgb.

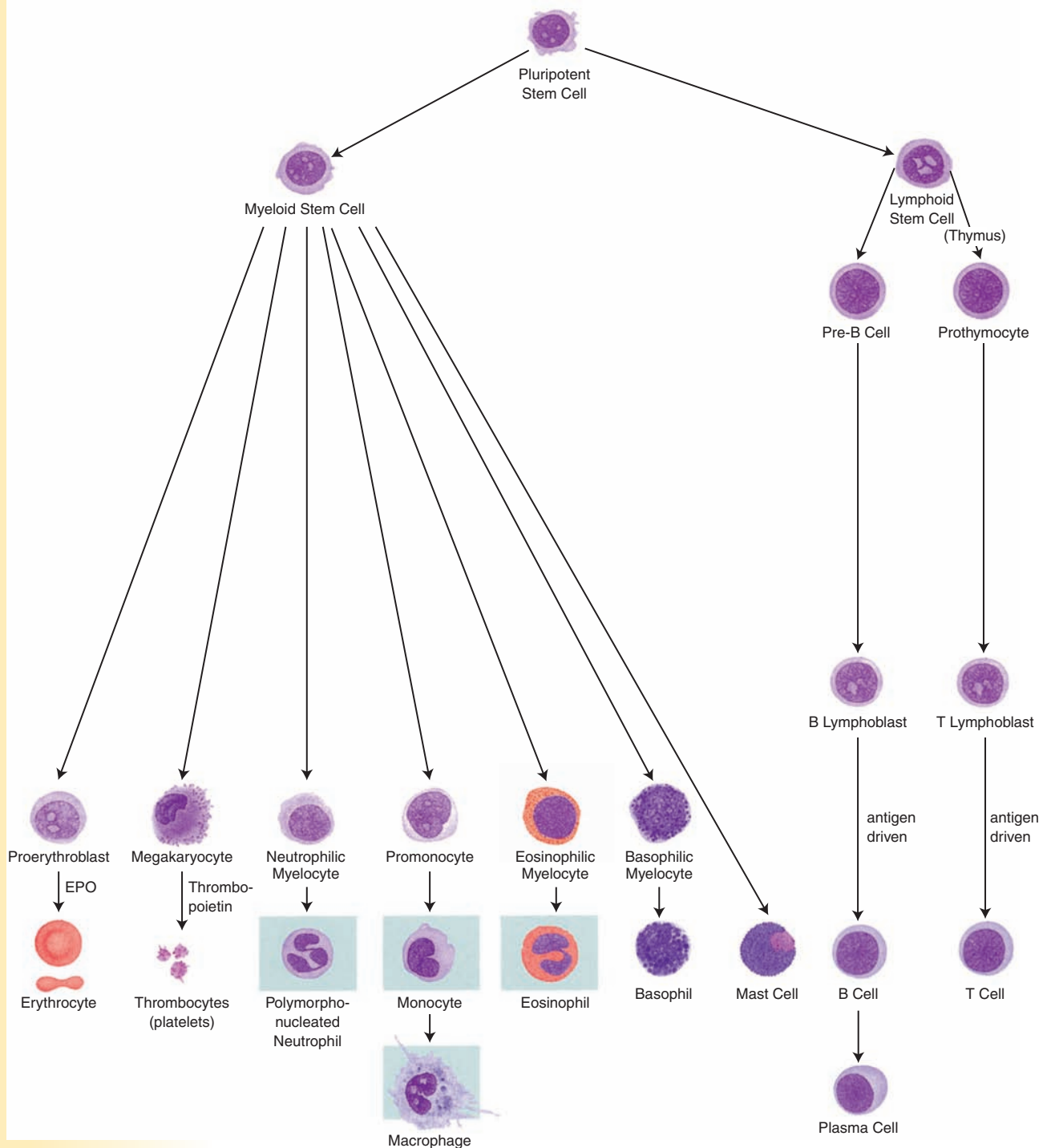
QUICK HIT

Carbon monoxide poisoning includes signs of mental status changes, cherry red lips, and hypoxia despite normal pulse oximetry readings.

3. Circulating RBCs, myeloid cells, and lymphoid cells all originate from the same pluripotent stem cells in bone marrow (see Figure 6-2).
4. RBCs become enucleated during maturation in bone marrow and depend on glycolysis for survival.
5. Normal Hgb concentration and hematocrit (Hct):
 - a. 14 to 18 g/dL and 42% to 52% in men
 - b. 12 to 16 g/dL and 37% to 47% in women
 - c. Low Hgb and Hct (i.e., anemia) result in insufficient supply of O₂ to tissues and cause ischemia.

FIGURE 6-2

Development of myeloid and lymphoid cell lines from pluripotent stem cells in bone marrow.



(Modified from Turgeon, M. [1993]. *Clinical Hematology: Theory and Procedures*. [2nd ed.] Boston: Little, Brown.)

TABLE 6-1 Classification of Anemias by Mean Corpuscular Volume (MCV) and Common Etiologies

Microcytic (MCV <80 μL)	Normocytic (MCV 80–100 μL)	Macrocytic (MCV >100 μL)
Iron deficiency	Hemolytic	Folate deficiency
Lead poisoning	Chronic disease	Vitamin B ₁₂ deficiency
Chronic disease	Hypovolemia	Liver disease
Sideroblastic		
Thalassemias		

6. Types of anemia are characterized by mechanism of pathology and mean corpuscular volume (MCV) (see Table 6-1).

B. Hemolytic anemia

1. Anemia that results when RBC lifespan is shortened and marrow production of RBCs is not capable of meeting demand for new cells (see Table 6-2)
2. Can be caused by defects in RBC membrane, RBC enzyme defects, hemoglobinopathies, or extracellular effects
3. **History and physical (H/P)** = possibly asymptomatic; weakness, fatigue, dyspnea on exertion; **pallor**, tachycardia, tachypnea, increased pulse pressure, possible systolic murmur, **jaundice**; severe cases may have palpitations, syncope, mental status changes, angina, chills, abdominal pain, **hepatosplenomegaly**, and **brownish discoloration of urine**
4. **Labs** = decreased Hgb, decreased Hct, **increased reticulocyte count**, **increased bilirubin (indirect)**, increased lactate dehydrogenase (LDH), **normal MCV**, decreased serum haptoglobin; Coombs test is helpful for making diagnosis
5. **Coombs test**
 - a. Coombs reagent (rabbit IgM directed against human IgG and complement) is mixed with RBCs to aid in diagnosis of hemolytic anemia.
 - b. Direct test: Coombs reagent mixed with RBCs; agglutination indicates presence of IgG and complement on RBC membranes (e.g., warm and cold agglutinin disease)
 - c. Indirect test: patient serum mixed with type O RBCs which, in turn, are mixed with Coombs reagent; agglutination indicates presence of anti-RBC antibodies in serum (e.g., Rh alloimmunization)
6. **Blood smear** = **schistocytes** (RBC fragments), spherocytes, and/or burr cells (see Figures 6-3, 6-4)

C. Iron-deficiency anemia

1. Anemia resulting from insufficient heme production secondary to **insufficient iron supplies**
2. Iron deficiency results from **blood loss**, poor dietary intake or absorption from the gastrointestinal (GI) tract, pregnancy, or menstruation.
3. **H/P** = fatigue, weakness, dyspnea on exertion, **pica** (i.e., craving to eat ice, dirt, etc.); pallor, tachycardia, tachypnea, increased pulse pressure, possible systolic murmur; **angular cheilitis** (i.e., irritation of lips and corners of mouth), **spooning of nails** in severe cases
4. **Labs** = decreased Hgb, decreased Hct, decreased MCV, decreased or normal reticulocyte count, **decreased ferritin**, decreased iron, increased transferrin (i.e., total iron-binding capacity), positive stool guaiac possible if secondary to GI losses (see Table 6-3)



QUICK HIT

Mean RBC lifespan is 120 days.



QUICK HIT

Iron deficiency anemia is the **most common** form of anemia.



QUICK HIT

Consider iron deficiency anemia in **elderly** patients **caused by colon cancer** until such is ruled out.



MNEMONIC

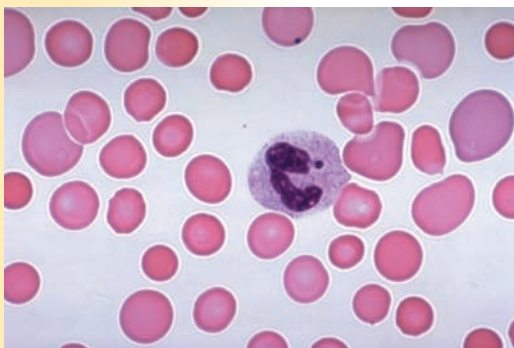
Remember the list of common microcytic anemias by the mnemonic **Look For Those Small Cells**: Lead poisoning, Fe (iron) deficiency, Thalassemia, Sideroblastic, Chronic disease.

TABLE 6-2 Types of Hemolytic Anemias

Type	Pathology	Blood Smear	Coombs Test	Other Diagnostic Aids	Treatment
Drug induced	Bind to RBC membrane and cause oxidative destruction, induce production of antidrug antibodies , form immune complexes that fix complement, or induce anti-Rh antibodies	Burr cells, schistocytes	Direct Coombs+ (unless due to oxidative destruction)	Recent penicillin, methyldopa, quinidine, other drug use	Stop offending agent
Immune	Anti-RBC antibodies , autoimmune disease, possibly drug induced	Spherocytes (warm agglutinins), RBC agglutination (cold agglutinins)	Direct Coombs+	Warm-reacting antibodies (IgG) or cold-reacting antibodies (IgM)	Corticosteroids, avoid cold exposure (with cold-reacting antibodies), stop offending agent; splenectomy may be needed in persistent cases
Mechanical	RBCs broken by force or turbulent flow	Schistocytes	Negative	Prosthetic heart valve , HTN, coagulation disorder	Treat underlying cause
Hereditary spherocytosis (see also Figure 6-3)	Genetic defect of RBC membranes resulting in spherical RBCs	Spherocytes	Negative	Hepatosplenomegaly	Splenectomy
G6PD deficiency	Deficiency of G6PD (enzyme required to repair oxidative damage to RBCs); ingestion of oxidant (fava beans, high-dose ASA, sulfa drugs, dapsone, quinine, quinidine, primaquine, nitrofurantoin) causes excessive hemolysis	RBCs with "bites" taken out of them, Heinz bodies (small densities of Hgb in RBC)	Negative	Low G6PD (by indirect measurement); dizziness, fatigue begins within days of ingesting oxidant; mild form in blacks, more severe form in people of Mediterranean descent	Avoid oxidants; transfusion may be needed in severe cases

ASA, aspirin; G6PD, glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase; HTN, hypertension; RBC, red blood cell.

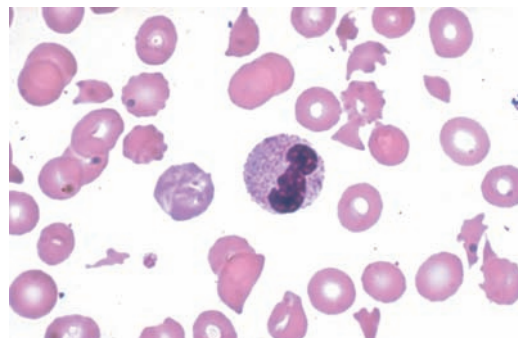
FIGURE 6-3 Hereditary spherocytosis.



Blood smear shows numerous spherocytes with decreased diameter, increasing staining, and absence of central pallor.

(From Rubin, E., & Farber, J. L. [1999]. *Pathology* [3rd ed., Figure 20-27]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

FIGURE 6-4 Microangiopathic hemolytic anemia demonstrating multiple schistocytes (fragmented red blood cells [RBCs]).



(From Rubin, E., & Farber, J. L. [1999]. *Pathology* [3rd ed., Figure 20-31]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

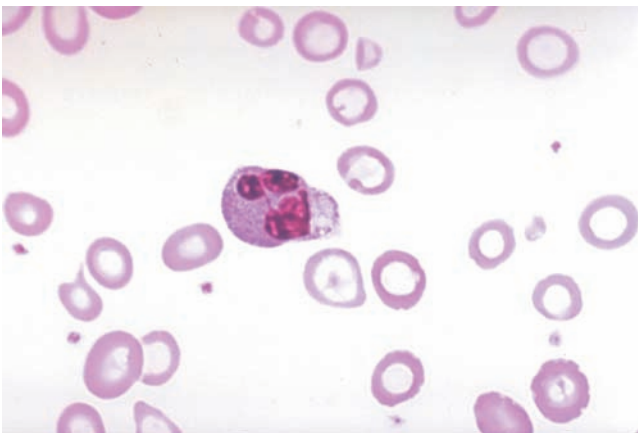
TABLE 6-3 Laboratory Distinction of Microcytic Anemias

Type	Serum Iron	Ferritin	TIBC (transferrin)	Iron: TIBC ratio	Blood Smear
Iron deficiency	↓	↓	↑	Low (<12)	Hypochromic, microcytic RBCs
Lead poisoning	Normal or ↑	Normal	Normal		Stippled, microcytic RBCs
Chronic disease	↓	Normal or ↑	↓	Normal (>18)	Hypochromic, normocytic, or microcytic RBCs
Sideroblastic	↑	↑	↓		Ringed sideroblasts
Thalassemia	Normal or ↑	Normal	Normal		Microcytic RBCs, target cells (α), basophilic stippling (β)

MCV, mean corpuscular volume; RBC, red blood cell; TIBC, total iron-binding capacity; ↑, increased; ↓, decreased.

FIGURE

6-5 Microcytic hypochromic red blood cells (RBCs) characteristic of iron deficiency anemia.



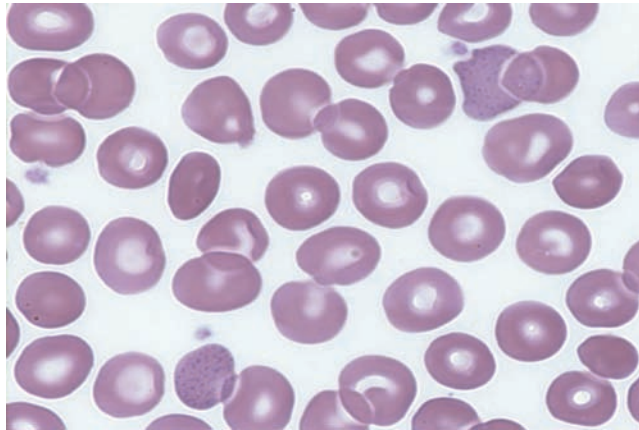
(From Rubin, E., & Farber, J. L. [1999]. *Pathology* [3rd ed., Figure 20-22]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

5. **Blood smear** = microcytic hypochromic RBCs (see Figure 6-5)
6. **Treatment** = iron supplementation (several months of treatment required to replete stores), determine cause of iron loss

D. Lead poisoning anemia (acquired sideroblastic anemia)

1. Anemia resulting from heme synthesis inhibition by lead ingestion (more common in children, especially those in urban environments)
2. Similar presentation may be seen in anemia caused by alcoholism or isoniazid use.
3. **H/P** = fatigue, weakness, abdominal pain, arthralgias, headache, impaired short-term memory; pallor, mental developmental delays, **gingival lead lines**, **peripheral neuropathy** (e.g., decreased motor control of extremities)
4. **Labs** = decreased Hgb, decreased Hct, decreased MCV, increased serum lead (see Table 6-3)
5. **Blood smear** = microcytic RBCs, **basophilic stippling of RBCs**, ringed sideroblasts in the bone marrow (see Figure 6-6)
6. **Treatment** = remove source of lead; EDTA or dimercaptosuccinic acid (DMSA) if needed for lead chelation (add dimercaprol in children with severe lead intoxication)

FIGURE

6-6 Lead poisoning anemia.

Note the hypochromic red blood cells (RBCs) and basophilic stippling seen in some cells.

(From Anderson, S. C., & Poulsen, K. B. [2003]. *Anderson's Atlas of Hematology* [Figure IIA2-18]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

**QUICK HIT**

Folate deficiency is the most common cause of **megaloblastic** anemia.

**QUICK HIT**

Inadequate folate intake is seen with **alcoholism** and in the elderly because of poor nutrition.

**QUICK HIT**

Inadequate vitamin B₁₂ intake is usually only seen in **strict vegetarians** (vegans).

**QUICK HIT**

Folate deficiency caused by inadequate dietary intake develops significantly more quickly than vitamin B₁₂ deficiency from a similar mechanism.

E. Folate-deficiency anemia

1. Anemia resulting from inadequate folate intake, increased folate need (e.g., poor nutrition, chemotherapy), or drug-induced folate metabolism defects (e.g., methotrexate, trimethoprim, phenytoin)
2. **H/P** = poor nutrition, fatigue, weakness, dyspnea on exertion, diarrhea, **sore tongue**; pallor, tachycardia, tachypnea, increased pulse pressure, possible systolic murmur; **no neurologic symptoms**
3. **Labs** = decreased Hgb, decreased Hct, **increased MCV**, decreased serum folate, decreased red cell folate level, decreased reticulocyte count
4. **Blood smear** = macrocytic RBCs, hypersegmented neutrophils
5. **Treatment** = oral folate supplementation

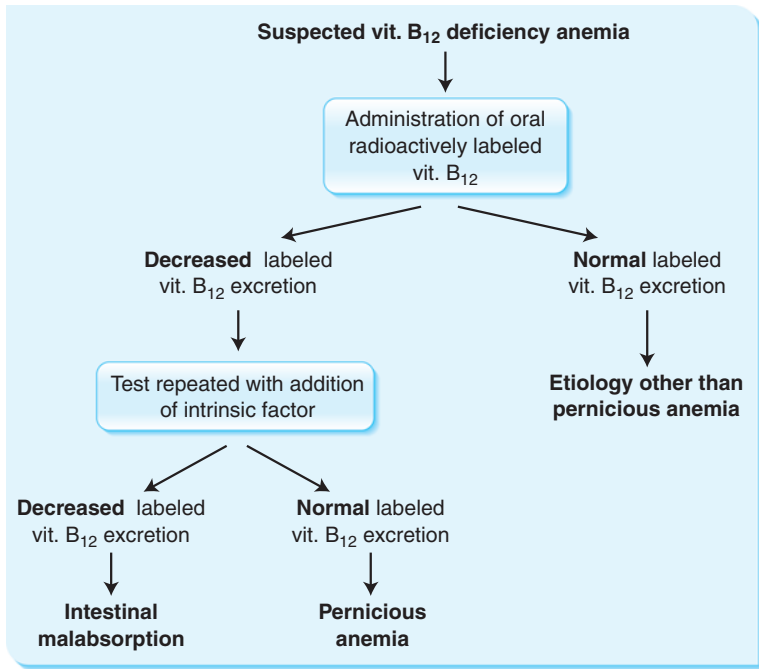
F. Vitamin B₁₂ deficiency anemia

1. **Pernicious anemia** (i.e., autoimmune anemia owing to lack of intrinsic factor) or anemia resulting from inadequate vitamin B₁₂ intake, ileal resection, bacterial overgrowth in GI tract, or *Diphyllobothrium latum* infection (a worm)
2. **H/P** = fatigue, weakness, dyspnea on exertion, memory loss; pallor, tachycardia, tachypnea, increased pulse pressure, possible systolic murmur, **symmetric paresthesias**, ataxia, possible psychosis
3. **Labs** = decreased Hgb, decreased Hct, **increased MCV**, decreased vitamin B₁₂; Schilling test useful to diagnose pernicious anemia (see Figure 6-7)
4. **Blood smear** = macrocytic RBCs, hypersegmented neutrophils (see Figure 6-8)
5. **Treatment** = monthly intramuscular vitamin B₁₂ injections, dietary supplementation of vitamin B₁₂, intranasal vitamin B₁₂

G. Anemia of chronic disease

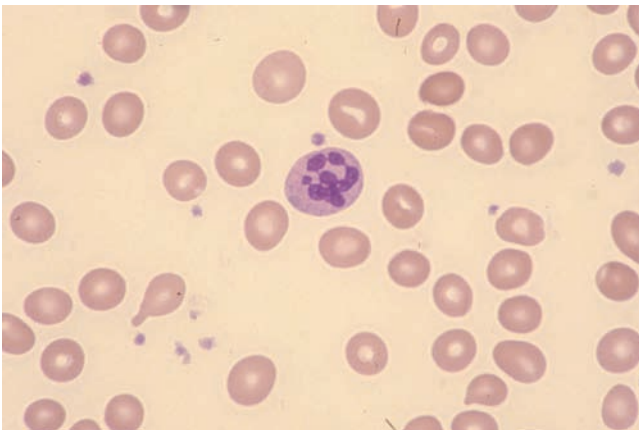
1. Anemia occurring in patients with neoplasia, diabetes mellitus, autoimmune disorders, or long-standing infections
2. Frequently associated with trapping of iron in macrophages, decreased erythropoietin production, and increased hepcidin levels (inhibitor of iron absorption and mobilization)
3. **H/P** = history of appropriate disease state, fatigue, weakness, dyspnea on exertion; tachycardia, pallor
4. **Labs** = **mildly decreased Hgb and Hct**, normal or decreased MCV, decreased iron, decreased transferrin, normal or increased ferritin (see Table 6-3)
5. **Blood smear** = normocytic RBCs
6. **Treatment** = **treat underlying disorder**; supplemental erythropoietin

FIGURE 6-7 Schilling test protocol.



vit., vitamin.

FIGURE 6-8 Anemia caused by vitamin B₁₂ deficiency.



Note the macrocytic red blood cells (RBCs) and presence of a hypersegmented neutrophil.
(From Anderson, S. C., Poulsen, K. B. (2003). *Anderson's Atlas of Hematology*. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Figure IIA3-3; with permission.)

H. Aplastic anemia

1. Pancytopenia resulting from bone marrow failure
2. Due to drugs (e.g., chloramphenicol, sulfonamides, phenytoin, chemotherapeutics), toxins, radiation, viral infection, or idiopathic and congenital causes
3. H/P = fatigue, weakness, **persistent infections**, **poor clotting** with possible uncontrolled bleeding, easy bruising, persistent menstruation; pallor, petechiae, tachycardia, tachypnea, systolic murmur, increased pulse pressure
4. Labs = decreased Hgb, decreased Hct, decreased white blood cells (WBCs), decreased platelets; bone marrow biopsy shows **hypocellularity** and fatty infiltrate



QUICK HIT

Aplastic anemia in a sickle cell patient is classically caused by **parvovirus B19**.

5. **Treatment** = stop offending agent; transfusions for acute anemia and thrombocytopenia; immunosuppressive agents and bone marrow transplant indicated to improve long-term survival
6. **Complications** = prognosis worsens with increasing age and severity with 5-year survival of 85% in young patients with moderate disease and 20% in elderly patients with severe disease

QUICK HIT

Patients with α -thalassemia minima usually have a normal MCV.

NEXT STEP

Differentiate between causes of microcytic anemia using the ratio of MCV:RBC count (Mentzer index):

- MCV:RBC count >13 suggests iron deficiency.
- MCV:RBC count <13 suggests thalassemia.

NEXT STEP

If microcytic anemia is found on blood smear, rule out thalassemia before administering supplemental iron to prevent iron overload.

II. GENETIC DISORDERS OF HEMOGLOBIN

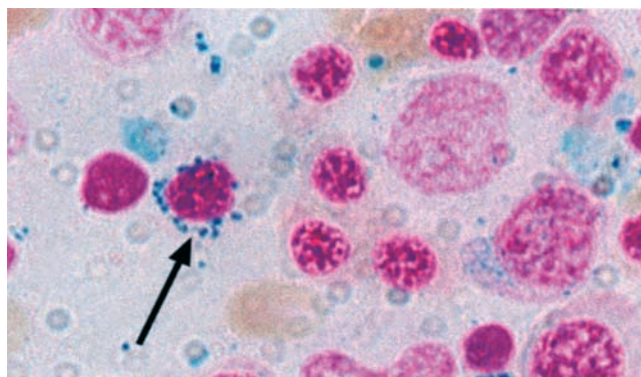
A. Sideroblastic anemia

1. Anemia caused by defective heme synthesis resulting in decreased Hgb levels in cells
2. Can be a genetic disorder or caused by alcohol, isoniazid, or lead poisoning (patient history is useful for differentiating cause)
3. **H/P** = fatigue, weakness, dyspnea on exertion, angina; pallor, tachycardia, tachypnea, increased pulse pressure, hepatosplenomegaly, possible systolic murmur
4. **Labs** = decreased Hgb, decreased Hct, increased ferritin, increased iron, decreased transferrin, possible decreased MCV (see Table 6-3)
5. **Blood smear** = multiple sizes of RBCs with normocytic, microcytic, and macrocytic cells possible; **ringed sideroblasts** (RBC precursors) in the bone marrow (see Figure 6-9)
6. **Treatment**
 - a. Hereditary cases: vitamin B₆ may normalize Hgb concentrations
 - b. Acquired cases: supplemental erythropoietin
 - c. Both types: significant iron overload requires therapeutic phlebotomy (mild cases) or chelation with deferoxamine (more severe cases); transfusion may be required in severe cases
7. **Complications** = 10% patients progress to acute leukemia

B. Thalassemia

1. Hgb defects resulting from abnormal production of heme α -globin or β -globin subunits
2. Disease state arises from unbalanced production ratio of α and β chains (see Table 6-4).
3. **Normal Hgb**
 - a. Composed of two α chains and two β chains
 - b. Four genes determine α -chain synthesis; two genes determine β -chain synthesis.

FIGURE 6-9 Blood smear in a patient with sideroblastic anemia.



Note several red blood cells (RBCs) surrounded by rings of iron granules (ring sideroblasts) (arrow).

(From Handin, R. I., Lux, S. E., & Stossel, T. P. [2003]. *Blood: Principles and Practice of Hematology* [2nd ed., Color Figure 3-6D]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

TABLE 6-4 Variants of α - and β -Thalassemias

Thalassemia Type	Variant	Number of Abnormal Genes	Characteristics
α	α -Thalassemia minima	1	Generally asymptomatic ; children of carriers at increased risk for thalassemia, pending genotype of other parent
	α -Thalassemia minor	2	Reduced α -globin production; mild anemia ; microcytic RBCs and target cells on blood smear
	Hemoglobin H disease	3	Minimal α -globin production; chronic hemolytic anemia , pallor, splenomegaly; microcytic RBCs on blood smear; Hemoglobin H in blood; decreased lifespan
	Hydrops fetalis	4	Hemoglobin Bart (no α -globin production); fetal death occurs
β	β -Thalassemia minor	1	Reduced β -globin production; mild anemia; increase in hemoglobin A ₂ ; patients can lead normal lives; transfusions may be needed during periods of stress
	β -Thalassemia major	2	No β -globin production; asymptomatic until decline of fetal hemoglobin; growth retardation, developmental delays, bony abnormalities, hepatosplenomegaly, anemia; increase in hemoglobin A ₂ and F; microcytic RBCs on blood smear; patients die in childhood without transfusions

RBCs, red blood cells.

4. α -Thalassemia

- a. More prevalent in people of Asian or African descent
- b. Variants have between one and four defective genes.

5. β -Thalassemia

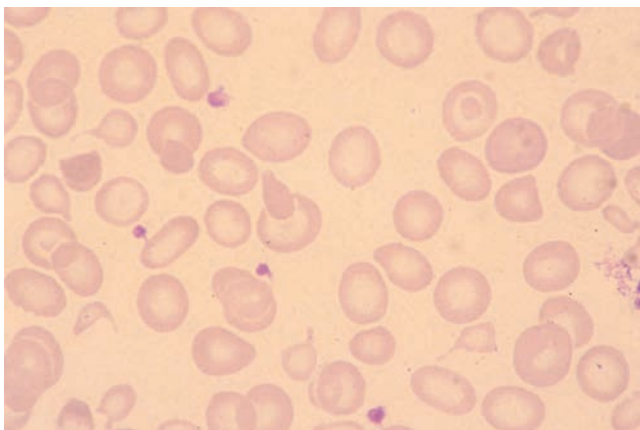
- a. More prevalent in patients of Mediterranean descent
- b. Variants have either one or two defective genes.

6. Labs = decreased MCV, increased reticulocyte count, increased hemoglobin Bart (i.e., Hgb that binds O₂ but is unable to release it to tissues in hydrops fetalis), increased hemoglobin A₂ or F in β -Thalassemia; Hgb electrophoresis can detect genetic abnormalities and severity of defects (see Table 6-3)

7. Blood smear

- a. α -Thalassemia: abnormally shaped microcytic RBCs, target cells (see Figure 6-10)
- b. β -Thalassemia: RBCs in variable size and shape (including microcytic cells) with target cells

FIGURE 6-10 α -Thalassemia, hemoglobin H type.



Note hypochromic red blood cells (RBCs) and occasional target cells.

(From Anderson, S. C., & Poulosen, K. B. [2003]. *Anderson's Atlas of Hematology* [Figure 11A2-2]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

8. Treatment

- α -Thalassemia minor or minima and β -Thalassemia minor frequently are asymptomatic and only require symptomatic treatment during periods of stress.
 - Folate supplementation may be helpful in all symptomatic forms and in mild forms during stress.
 - Transfusions are required for more severe variants and may be needed for mild forms during periods of stress.
 - Iron chelation may be required in patients receiving chronic transfusions.
 - Bone marrow transplant may be helpful in children with minimal hepatomegaly, no portal fibrosis, and adequate iron chelation therapy.
9. Complications = chronic iron overload from repeat transfusions causes damage to heart and liver; patients with Hgb H disease and β -Thalassemia major have high childhood mortality without transfusion therapy; children of asymptomatic parents with defective genes are still at risk for developing disease, depending on inherited alleles

QUICK HIT

β -Globin defects:

- In sickle cell disease, causes production of **defective β chains**.
- In β -thalassemia, causes **decreased production of normal β chains**.

QUICK HIT

Heterozygous carriers of sickle cell defect (sickle cell trait) are **asymptomatic** and carry **improved resistance to malaria**.

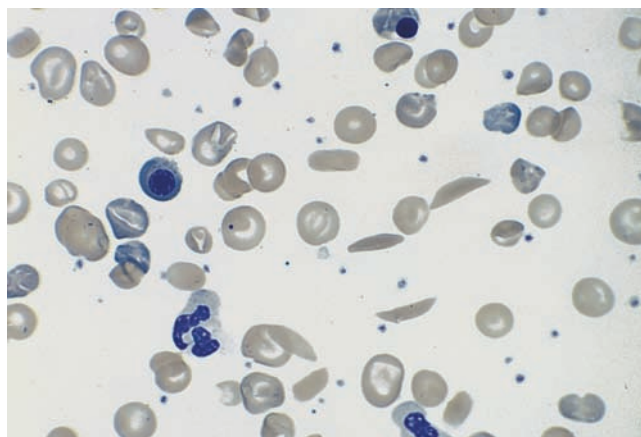
QUICK HIT

Presence of fetal Hgb in newborns delays presentation of sickle cell symptoms until after 6 months of age, when fetal Hgb levels have decreased.

C. Sickle cell disease

- Autosomal recessive defect in β -globin chain of Hgb, leading to production of **abnormal Hgb S** that is poorly soluble when deoxygenated
- Acidosis, hypoxia, and dehydration cause Hgb S molecules to polymerize and distort RBCs into a **sickle shape** that is **more susceptible to hemolysis and vascular clumping** than normal cells.
- More common in people of African heritage
- H/P = frequently asymptomatic between crises; stressful events (e.g., infection, illness, trauma, hypoxia) induce **sickle cell crisis** characterized by **deep bone pain**, chest pain, new stroke onset, painful swelling of hands and feet, dyspnea, priapism (i.e., painful, prolonged erection); growth retardation, splenomegaly, jaundice, fever, tachypnea, leg ulcers seen on examination
- Labs
 - Decreased Hct, increased reticulocyte count, increased polymorphonuclear (PMN) cells, decreased serum haptoglobin, increased bilirubin (indirect)
 - Hemoglobin electrophoresis detects Hgb S without normal Hgb A; Hgb F may be increased.
 - Sickledex solubility test can detect Hgb abnormalities but cannot differentiate between carrier trait and homozygous disease state.
- Radiology = “fish-mouth” vertebrae; lung infiltrates in acute chest syndrome (radiologic findings in setting of chest pain and dyspnea)
- Blood smear = target cells, nucleated RBCs; **deoxygenation of blood produces sickle cells** (see Figure 6-11)

FIGURE 6-11 Sickle cell anemia.



Note multiple sickle cells and occasional target cells.

(From Rubin, E., & Farber, J. L. [1999]. *Pathology* [3rd ed., Figure 20-26]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

8. Treatment

- a. Hydration, supplemental O₂, and analgesics (frequently narcotics required) during sickle cell crises
- b. Hydroxyurea (increases Hgb F production) and avoidance of crisis stimuli decrease frequency of crises.
- c. Pneumococcal vaccine reduces risk of infection in asplenic patients; prophylactic penicillin should be given until 5 years of age to help prevent pneumococcal infection in asplenic children.
- d. Chronic transfusions may help keep the level of Hgb S as low as possible.
- e. Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation and gene therapy show future promise as potential cures.

9. Complications

- a. Chronic anemia, pulmonary hypertension, heart failure, **aplastic crisis** (usually secondary to parvovirus B19 infection), **acute chest syndrome** (i.e., acute pneumonia, pulmonary infarction, and embolus)
- b. Autosplenectomy, stroke, osteonecrosis, and multiple organ ischemia (particularly kidney, heart, retina) can result secondary to **vascular occlusion**.
- c. Increased risk of infection by **encapsulated organisms**

**QUICK HIT**

Patients with sickle cell disease are particularly susceptible to *Salmonella* **osteomyelitis** and **sepsis** by **encapsulated organisms** (*Streptococcus pneumoniae*, *Haemophilus influenzae*, *Neisseria meningitidis*, *Klebsiella*).

**III. LEUKOCYTE DISORDERS AND HYPERSENSITIVITY****A. Lymphopenia without immune deficiency**

1. Decreased lymphocyte count seen in diseases with **increased cortisol** levels or after **chemotherapy**, radiation, or lymphoma; antibody production not affected
2. **H/P** = repeated infections with possible recent history of chemotherapy or radiation
3. **Labs** = decreased WBCs, especially B and T lymphocytes
4. **Treatment** = if possible, stop offending agents; bone marrow transplant may be needed

B. Eosinophilia

1. Abnormally high levels of eosinophils seen in Addison disease, neoplasm, asthma, allergic drug reactions, collagen vascular diseases, transplant rejection, and parasitic infections
2. **H/P** = **asymptomatic**; history of predisposing condition
3. **Labs** = increased eosinophil count
4. **Treatment** = treat underlying disorder; stop offending agent

C. Neutropenia without immune deficiency (agranulocytosis)

1. Decreased neutrophil count seen with some viral infections (e.g., hepatitis, human immunodeficiency virus [HIV], Epstein-Barr virus), drugs (e.g., clozapine, antithyroid medications, sulfasalazine, methimazole, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole), chemotherapy, and aplastic anemia
2. **H/P** = weakness, chills, fatigue, **recurrent infections**; fever
3. **Labs** = decreased neutrophil count
4. **Treatment** = treat underlying disorder, stop offending agents, granulocyte colony-stimulating factor, corticosteroids; antibiotics whenever infection suspected

D. Hypersensitivity reactions

1. Allergen-induced immunologic response by body involving cellular or humoral mechanisms (see Table 6-5)
2. **Labs** = skin allergen testing or radioallergosorbent test (RAST) may be useful in determining specific allergies
3. **Treatment**
 - a. **Contact prevention** and avoidance of offending agents is important.
 - b. Type I: antihistamines, leukotriene inhibitors, bronchodilators, and corticosteroids may improve symptoms after reaction; desensitization may be considered to avoid recurrent reactions; if anaphylaxis is a concern, epinephrine injections should be kept readily available

**MNEMONIC**

Remember the types of hypersensitivity reactions by the mnemonic **ACID**: **A**naphylactic, **C**omplement mediated, **I**mmune complex mediated, and **D**elayed.

TABLE 6-5 Types of Hypersensitivity Reactions

Type	Mediated By	Mechanism	Examples
I	IgE antibodies attached to mast cells	Antigens react with antibody to cause mast cell degranulation and histamine release	Allergic rhinitis, asthma, anaphylaxis
II	IgM and IgG antibodies	Cellular antigens react with antibodies to initiate complement cascade and cell death	Drug-induced or immune hemolytic anemia , hemolytic disease of the newborn
III	IgM and IgG immune complexes	Antibodies bind to soluble antigens to form immune complexes , which are then deposited in tissue and initiate complement cascade	Arthus reaction, serum sickness, glomerulonephritis
IV	T cells and macrophages	T cells present antigens to macrophages and secrete lymphokines that induce macrophages to destroy surrounding tissue	Transplant rejection, allergic contact dermatitis , PPD testing

PPD, purified protein derivative.

- c. Type II: anti-inflammatories or immunosuppressive agents
- d. Type III: anti-inflammatories
- e. Type IV: corticosteroids or immunosuppressive agents

E. Anaphylaxis

- Severe type I hypersensitivity reaction after re-exposure to allergen (penicillins, insect stings, latex, eggs, nuts, and seafood are common causes)
- H/P** = symptoms and signs typically occur 5 to 60 minutes after exposure; tingling in skin, itching, cough, chest tightness, **difficulty swallowing and breathing** (secondary to angioedema), syncope; tachycardia, wheezing, urticaria, **hypotension**, arrhythmias
- Labs** = skin testing or RAST can confirm allergic response; increased histamine and tryptase
- Treatment** = **subcutaneous epinephrine**, **intubation** (if closed airway), antihistamines, bronchodilators, recumbent positioning, intravenous (IV) hydration; vasopressors may be needed for severe hypotension; avoidance of stimuli is key to prevention; elective desensitization therapy may be appropriate following an episode, depending on allergen, to avoid future incidents



IV. CLOTTING DISORDERS

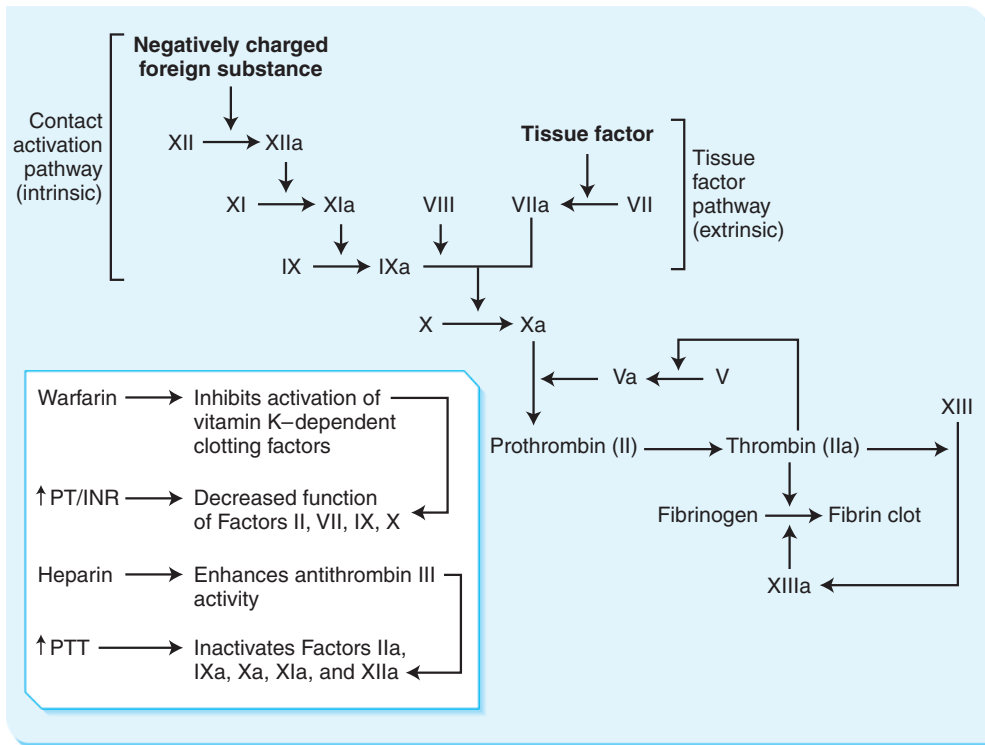
A. Normal clotting function

- Platelets**
 - Circulate in plasma
 - Important in **primary control** of bleeding
 - Cause local vasoconstriction and form platelet plug at site of vascular injury in response to adenosine diphosphate (ADP) secreted by injured cells
 - Bleeding time can be used to assess platelet function but is poorly reproducible and time consuming.
- Coagulation cascade**
 - Responsible for formation of **fibrin clot** at site of injury (see Figure 6-12)
 - Intrinsic pathway** induced by exposure to negatively charged foreign substances; measured by partial thromboplastin time (PTT)
 - Extrinsic pathway** induced by tissue factor exposed at site of injury; measured by prothrombin time (PT)

NEXT STEP

Epinephrine should be given **immediately** to a person having an anaphylactic reaction without waiting for additional tests.

FIGURE 6-12 Coagulation cascade.



INR, international normalized ratio; PT, prothrombin time; PTT, partial thromboplastin time.

3. Antithrombotic drugs

- Used to prevent or treat pathologic clot (thrombus) formation (e.g., deep vein thrombosis [DVT], thromboembolic stroke, mural thrombus, pulmonary embolism [PE], postsurgical or traumatic thrombus, etc.)
- Can affect platelet function, intrinsic pathway, or extrinsic pathway (see Table 6-6)

B. Thrombocytopenia

- Decreased number of platelets (<150,000) leading to increased risk of hemorrhage
- May be idiopathic, autoimmune, or result from external causes (e.g., drugs, infection, nutrition) (see Table 6-7)
- H/P = possibly asymptomatic; mucosal bleeding, petechiae, purpura, multiple ecchymoses
- Labs = platelets <150,000/ μ L, increased bleeding time
- Blood smear = may show low platelet numbers, small platelets, abnormal platelet granules, or neutrophilic granules depending on etiology

C. von Willebrand disease

- Autosomal dominant disease with deficiencies of **von Willebrand factor (vWF)** and sometimes **factor VIII**, leading to abnormal clotting and platelet function
- H/P = easy bruising, mucosal bleeding (nose, gums), menorrhagia; multiple sites of bruising and mucosal bleeding on examination; antiplatelet drug administration can induce bleeding
- Labs = **increased PTT, increased bleeding time**, decreased factor VIII antigen, decreased vWF antigen, decreased ristocetin cofactor activity
- Treatment** = desmopressin during minor bleeding, vWF concentrate and factor VIII concentrate before surgery or during major bleeding, avoidance of aspirin (ASA)

NEXT STEP

Monitor **heparin** anticoagulation with **PTT**.



QUICK HIT

Low molecular weight heparins (LMWH) do **not** require monitoring by PTT.

NEXT STEP

Monitor **warfarin** anticoagulation with a normalized PT (i.e., **international normalized ratio [INR]**) to track relative effect on the extrinsic pathway.



QUICK HIT

Do not start warfarin therapy for a thrombus until after starting LMWH or until PTT is therapeutic on unfractionated heparin because warfarin inhibits proteins C and S to cause a short period of **hypercoagulability** immediately after therapy is initiated.



QUICK HIT

vWF and factor VIII are the only clotting factors not synthesized by the liver and remain at normal levels, whereas other factor levels decrease in liver failure.



QUICK HIT

Green vegetables are a good supply of vitamin K.

**QUICK HIT**

Patients using **warfarin** can present with a clinical picture similar to that of vitamin K deficiency.

**QUICK HIT**

Hemophiliacs tend not to develop significant bleeds unless they have <5% clotting activity.

D. Vitamin K deficiency

1. Inadequate vitamin K supply because of poor intake, malabsorption, or eradication of vitamin K-producing GI flora (secondary to prolonged antibiotic use)
2. Vitamin K is required in synthesis of factors II, VII, IX, and X.
3. **H/P** = easy bruising, mucosal bleeding, melena, hematuria, delayed clot formation
4. **Labs** = increased PT, increased INR
5. **Treatment** = oral or intramuscular vitamin K, fresh frozen plasma (FFP)

E. Hemophilia

1. X-linked recessive disease with deficiency of either factor VIII (hemophilia A) or factor IX (hemophilia B)
2. **H/P** = **uncontrolled bleeding** occurring spontaneously or after minimal trauma, excessive bleeding following surgical or dental procedures; **hemarthroses** (i.e., bleeding in joints), intramuscular bleeding, and GI or genitourinary bleeding may be evident on examination

TABLE 6-6 Common Anticoagulant Drugs

Drug	Mechanism	Role	Adverse Effects
ASA	Inhibits platelet aggregation by inhibiting cyclooxygenase activity to suppress thromboxane A ₂ synthesis	Decreases thrombus risk in CAD and post-MI; decreases postoperative thrombus risk	Increased risk of hemorrhagic stroke, GI bleeding
Thienopyridines (e.g., clopidogrel, ticlopidine)	Block ADP receptors to suppress fibrinogen binding to injury and platelet adhesion	Decreases risk of repeat MI or stroke in patients with prior MI, stroke, or PVD; decreases thrombus risk in postvascular intervention patients	Increased risk of hemorrhage, GI bleeding
GP IIb/IIIa inhibitors (e.g., abciximab, tirofiban, eptifibatide)	Inhibit platelet aggregation by binding to platelet GP IIb/IIIa receptors	Reduce risk of thrombus in unstable angina or following coronary vessel intervention	Increased risk of hemorrhage, nausea, back pain, hypotension
Adenosine reuptake inhibitors (e.g., dipyridamole)	Inhibit activity of adenosine deaminase and phosphodiesterase to inhibit platelet aggregation	Used in combination with ASA in patients with recent stroke or with warfarin following artificial heart valve replacement	Dizziness, headache, nausea
Heparin	Binds to antithrombin to increase activity and prevent clot formation	Postoperative prophylaxis for DVT and PE, dialysis, decreases post-MI thrombus risk, safer than warfarin during pregnancy	Hemorrhage, hypersensitivity, thrombocytopenia , narrow therapeutic window
Low molecular weight heparin (e.g., enoxaparin, dalteparin)	Binds to factor Xa to prevent clot formation	Postoperative prophylaxis for DVT and PE, safest option during pregnancy	Hemorrhage, fever, rare thrombocytopenia
Direct thrombin inhibitors (e.g., lepirudin, argatroban)	Highly selective inhibitors of thrombin to suppress activity of factors V, IX, and XIII and platelet aggregation	Alternative anticoagulation in patients with history of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (HIT)	Hemorrhage, hypotension
Direct factor Xa inhibitors (e.g., fondaparinux)	Highly selective inhibition of factor Xa without activity against thrombin	DVT prophylaxis, anticoagulation following acute DVT or PE	Hemorrhage, fever, anemia, edema, rash, constipation
Warfarin	Antagonizes vitamin K-dependent carboxylation of factors II, VII, IX, and X	Long-term anticoagulation post-thrombotic event or in cases of increased thrombus risk (postsurgery, Afib, artificial valves)	Hemorrhage, numerous drug interactions , teratogenicity

ADP, adenosine diphosphate; ASA, aspirin; Afib, atrial fibrillation; CAD, coronary artery disease; DVT, deep vein thrombosis; GI, gastrointestinal; MI, myocardial infarction; PE, pulmonary embolism; PVD, peripheral vascular disease.

TABLE 6-7 Causes of Thrombocytopenia

Cause	Pathology	Diagnosis	Treatment
Impaired production (drugs, infection, aplastic anemia, folate/vitamin B ₁₂ deficiency, alcohol, cirrhosis)	Absent or reduced megakaryocytes caused by offending agent or abnormal megakaryocytes because of metabolic deficiency	Findings consistent with precipitating condition; bone marrow biopsy helpful for diagnosis	Stop offending agent, treat underlying disorder, bone marrow transplantation
Abnormal pooling	Splenic platelet sequestration	Splenomegaly, normal bone marrow biopsy, 90% platelets may be sequestered	May not be required; splenectomy if symptomatic
Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (HIT)	Development of antiplatelet antibodies that cause widespread platelet destruction in response to heparin therapy	Diffuse thrombus formation, sudden decrease (>50%) in platelet level, positive serotonin release assay, positive heparin-induced platelet aggregation assay	Stop all heparin use; direct thrombin inhibitors for thrombi
Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP)	Autoimmune B-cell directed production of antiplatelet antibodies	Other explanations for thrombocytopenia ruled out, platelets commonly <50,000	Self-limited in children; adults require corticosteroids, delayed splenectomy, intravenous (IV) immunoglobulin, plasmapheresis, or recombinant factor VIIa
Thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura-hemolytic uremic syndrome (TTP-HUS)	Diffuse platelet aggregation due to autoantibodies against a preventative enzyme; associated with endothelial injury and <i>Escherichia coli</i> O157:H7 infection	Hemolytic anemia, acute renal failure, thrombocytopenia without severe bleeding, neurologic sequelae, ± fever	Corticosteroids, plasmapheresis, FFP
Antiphospholipid syndrome	Development of antiphospholipid antibodies during pregnancy leading to arterial and venous thrombosis	During pregnancy, presence of antiphospholipid or lupus anticoagulant antibodies	Anticoagulation with heparin and warfarin, hydroxychloroquine
HELLP syndrome	Sequela of eclampsia associated with elevated liver enzymes and hemolytic anemia	During pregnancy, HTN, increased LFTs, decreased Hgb, schistocytes on blood smear	Induce delivery if fetus >34 wk gestation; anti-HTN drugs and corticosteroids to speed fetal lung maturity if preterm

FFP, fresh frozen plasma; HELLP, hemolysis, elevated liver enzymes, and low platelet counts; HTN, hypertension; LFTs, liver function tests.

3. **Labs** = increased PTT, normal PT, normal bleeding time, decreased factor VIII or IX antigen
4. **Treatment** = factor VIII or IX replacement, desmopressin (may increase factor VIII production in hemophilia A), transfusions frequently needed in cases of large blood loss; hemarthroses and intracranial bleeds require aggressive factor replacement
5. **Complications** = death from severe, uncontrolled bleeding; **HIV infection** common in patients receiving frequent transfusions before mid-1980s; arthropathy from recurrent hemarthroses frequently requires eventual joint replacement

F. Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC)

1. Widespread abnormal coagulation caused by sepsis, severe trauma, neoplasm, or obstetric complications
 - a. Initial coagulopathy with widespread clot formation occurs because of extensive activation of the clotting cascade by endothelial tissue factor released during bacteremia.



MNEMONIC

Remember the signs of thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura-hemolytic uremic syndrome (TTP-HUS) by the mnemonic **Nasty Fever Torched His Kidneys: Neurologic deficits, Fever, Thrombocytopenia, Hemolytic anemia, Kidney failure.**

**QUICK HIT**

Bleeding in **DIC** occurs because **pathologic clotting uses up supplies** of platelets and coagulation factors; bleeding in other clotting disorders occurs because of insufficient production, abnormal production, or early destruction of platelets or coagulation factors.

**QUICK HIT**

Encapsulated organisms are a more common cause of sepsis in **asplenic** patients (e.g., sickle cell disease) than in other patients.

**QUICK HIT**

Staphylococcus aureus is a common cause of sepsis in **intravenous drug abusers**.

NEXT STEP

Do not start antibiotics until **after** first blood culture has been collected to avoid false-negative cultures.

**QUICK HIT**

Although rare in the United States, malaria is extremely common in other countries, especially in **sub-Saharan Africa**.

**QUICK HIT**

Travelers to sub-Saharan Africa, tropical South America, or southwest Asia should take **prophylactic** chloroquine or mefloquine during their stay.

- b. Deficiency in clotting factors results from extensive clotting.
- c. Abnormal bleeding results from clotting factor deficiencies.
2. **H/P** = appropriate history of precipitating condition; uncontrolled bleeding from wounds and surgical sites, hematemesis, dyspnea; jaundice, digital cyanosis, hypotension, tachycardia, possible neurologic or renal insufficiency signs, possible shock
3. **Labs** = decreased platelets, increased PT, increased PTT, decreased fibrinogen, **increased fibrin split products, increased D-dimer, decreased Hct**
4. **Blood smear** = schistocytes, few platelets
5. **Treatment** = **treat underlying disorder**; platelets, FFP, cryoprecipitate; heparin may be needed for chronic thrombi
6. **Complications** = poor prognosis without early treatment; thrombi cause numerous infarcts

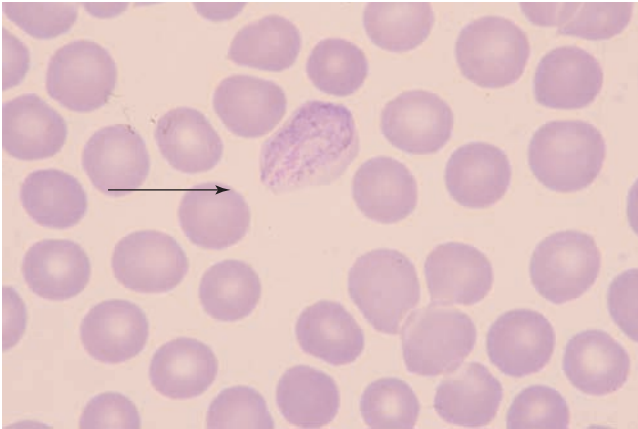
**V. HEMATOLOGIC INFECTIONS****A. Sepsis**

1. Bacteremia with an associated **excessive systemic inflammatory response** leading to global tissue hypoxia
2. Common community-acquired pathogens include *Streptococcus*, *Staphylococcus*, *Escherichia coli*, *Klebsiella*, *Pseudomonas*, and *Neisseria meningitidis*.
3. Common nosocomial pathogens include *Staphylococcus*, gram-negative bacilli, anaerobes, *Pseudomonas*, and *Candida* species.
4. Diagnostic criteria for systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS) are two of the following:
 - a. Temperature $>38^{\circ}\text{C}$ or $<35^{\circ}\text{C}$
 - b. Heart rate >90 beats/min
 - c. Respiratory rate >20 breaths/min or $\text{PaCO}_2 <32$ mm Hg
 - d. WBC $>12,000$ cells/ mm^3 or $<4,000$ cells/ mm^3 , or $>10\%$ immature (band) forms
5. **H/P** = malaise, chills, nausea, vomiting; fever or hypothermia, mental status changes, tachycardia, tachypnea; may progress to **septic shock** with hypotension, cool extremities (initially warm), and petechiae
6. **Labs** = increased ($>12,000/\text{mL}$) or decreased ($<4,000/\text{mL}$) WBCs; positive urine, blood, or sputum cultures needed to diagnose infection; labs may detect signs of DIC
7. **Radiology** = chest X-ray may show infiltrates and pneumonia
8. **Treatment**
 - a. Secure airway, supply adequate oxygenation (may require intubation and ventilation)
 - b. Hydration, vasopressors, inotropes, and transfusions to maintain tissue perfusion
 - c. Glucocorticoids may be beneficial in select patients.
 - d. Broad-spectrum antibiotics **initially**, then pathogen-specific antibiotics when agent identified by culture; remove (or change) possible routes of infection (Foley catheter, IV, etc.)
 - e. Maintain glycemic control (glucose 140 to 180 mg/dL)
9. **Complications** = septic shock, DIC

B. Malaria

1. Parasitic infection by *Plasmodium* spp. (*P. vivax*, *P. falciparum*, *P. ovale*, *P. malariae*) transmitted by *Anopheles* mosquito
2. **H/P** = **chills**, diaphoresis, headache, myalgias, fatigue, nausea, abdominal pain, vomiting, diarrhea; **periodic fever** at approximately 1- to 3-day intervals, splenomegaly; *P. falciparum* infection can include decreased consciousness, pulmonary edema, and renal insufficiency
3. **Labs** = polymerase chain reaction (PCR) for *Plasmodium* is highly sensitive
4. **Blood smear** = Giemsa stain shows *Plasmodium* spp. (see Figure 6-13)
5. **Treatment** = **antimalarials** (e.g., chloroquine, primaquine, quinine); atovaquone-proguanil or mefloquine used in chloroquine-resistant *P. falciparum*

FIGURE 6-13 Red blood cell (RBC) (arrow) demonstrating signs of *Plasmodium* infection (malaria); note enlarged size, intracellular ring signifying *Plasmodium* infiltration, and eosinophilic Schüffner's granules.



(From Anderson, S. C., & Poulsen, K. B. [2003]. *Anderson's Atlas of Hematology* [Figure IAI-49]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

C. Mononucleosis

1. Infection by Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) affecting B cells and oropharyngeal epithelium
2. Transmitted by intimate contact (e.g., kissing, intercourse)
3. H/P = fatigue, sore throat, malaise; lymphadenopathy, splenomegaly, fever, tonsillar exudates
4. Labs = positive heterophile antibodies, positive EBV serology (i.e., Monospot test), elevated LFTs, increased WBCs, hemolytic anemia, thrombocytopenia
5. Blood smear = increased number of lymphocytes (some with abnormal appearance)
6. Treatment = self-limited; supportive care
7. Complications = splenic rupture is rare, but patients should refrain from contact sports for 1 month after symptom onset

D. Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)

1. RNA retrovirus (HIV-1 and HIV-2 are most common strains) that infects CD4 lymphocytes (helper T cells) and destroys them, eventually leading to acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)
 - a. Both strains transmitted in same manner; they share same risks for opportunistic infections and are treated in same manner.
 - b. Compared with HIV-1, HIV-2 progresses more slowly, is less infectious in early disease, is more infectious in late disease, and is less common in the United States.
 - c. Serologic tests for the two strains are slightly different and do not cross-react consistently.
2. Virus uses reverse transcriptase to incorporate genetic material into host cell genome and produce copies of DNA.
3. Transmitted via **bodily fluids** (e.g., blood, semen, vaginal secretions, breast milk)
4. **Risk factors** (United States) = homosexual or bisexual males, intravenous drug abuse (IVDA), blood transfusions before the mid-1980s (e.g., hemophiliacs), multiple sexual partners, heterosexual partners of other high-risk individuals, infants born to infected mothers, accidental exposure to bodily fluids (e.g., needle sticks, fluid splashes) among health care workers (low probability but possible); higher prevalence among black and Latino populations
5. **Acute H/P = flulike symptoms** (e.g., myalgias, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, fatigue), sore throat, weight loss; **mucosal ulcers**, fever, lymphadenopathy, viral rash; symptoms typically develop 2 to 4 weeks after exposure and last 2 weeks
6. Following acute infection, patient enters **latent phase** with few or no symptoms and low viral load that lasts months to years (time increases with treatment).
7. **Late H/P** (i.e., AIDS) = **opportunistic infections** and **AIDS-defining illnesses** begin to present; weight loss, night sweats, dementia (see Table 6-8)



QUICK HIT

Symptoms of mononucleosis do not appear until 2–5 weeks after infection with EBV.



QUICK HIT

HIV infection has greatest prevalence in sub-Saharan Africa, where transmission is typically through heterosexual contact.



NEXT STEP

Although the rate of HIV transmission through needle sticks (i.e., health care workers) is very low (0.3%), prophylactic zidovudine and lamivudine should be started immediately if there is an appreciable risk of transmission; HIV antibody tests should be performed immediately, 6 weeks, 3 months, and 6 months after exposure to determine if transmission occurred; treatment should be continued for 4 weeks.

TABLE 6-8 Common Opportunistic Infections, Neoplasms, and Complications Seen in Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome (AIDS)

Condition/Infection	When Seen	History/Physical	Diagnosis	Treatment
Herpes zoster/simplex	CD4 <500	Shingles, oral or genital lesions	Tzanck smear, viral culture	Acyclovir, valacyclovir foscarnet
Kaposi sarcoma	CD4 <500	Purple subcutaneous nodules on face, chest, or extremities	Biopsy of lesions	Topical alitretinoin, chemotherapy, laser therapy, radiation
Parasitic diarrhea (<i>Isoospora</i> , <i>Strongyloides</i> , <i>Cryptosporidium</i>)	CD4 <500	Prolonged diarrhea, malaise, weight loss, abdominal pain	Stool culture, parasite evaluation	Antiretroviral therapy, metronidazole, TMP-SMX, paromomycin
Wasting syndrome	CD4 <350	Weight loss >10% baseline weight, chronic diarrhea, chronic weakness, fever	Clinical diagnosis, EMG suggests peripheral nerve dysfunction	Exercise, corticosteroids
Coccidioidomycosis	CD4 <250	Cough, fever, dyspnea	Bilateral reticulonodular infiltrates on CXR, positive antibody screen	Fluconazole, itraconazole, or amphotericin B
AIDS dementia	CD4 <200	Confusion, mental status changes, generalized neurologic symptoms , including tremor	History of declining mental function, generalized neurologic symptoms, elevated β_2 -microglobulin in CSF, cerebral atrophy on CT or MRI	May improve with antiretroviral therapy
Bacterial pneumonia (<i>Streptococcus pneumoniae</i> , <i>Haemophilus influenzae</i> , <i>Nocardia</i>)	CD4 <200	Rapid onset , productive cough, high fevers	Gram stain, lobar consolidation on CXR	Cephalosporins, β -lactams, or macrolides
<i>Candida</i> esophagitis	CD4 <200	Dysphagia, odynophagia	Endoscopy with biopsy, Gram stain on lesion scrapings	Topical or oral fluconazole or ketoconazole
Cervical cancer	CD4 <200	History of human papilloma virus	Detected by screening Papanicolaou (Pap) smear, biopsy confirms diagnosis	Resection, topical 5-fluorouracil, radiation therapy, chemotherapy
<i>Pneumocystis jirovecii</i> pneumonia (PCP)	CD4 <200	Gradual onset , nonproductive cough , dyspnea on exertion, fever	Bilateral infiltrates on CXR, increased LDH, sputum Gram stain	TMP-SMX, corticosteroids
Tuberculosis	CD4 <200, high-risk groups/ prisons	Cough, night sweats, weight loss, fever	Acid-fast bacilli , cavitary defects and hilar adenopathy on CXR, positive PPD (must be checked with anergy test)	Isoniazid, rifampin, pyrazinamide, ethambutol
Histoplasmosis	CD4 <150	Abdominal pain, GI bleeding, skin lesions, dyspnea, meningitis	Bilateral infiltrates on CXR, positive antigen test	Long-term amphotericin B or itraconazole
Cerebral toxoplasmosis	CD4 <100	Headache, confusion, possible focal neurologic symptoms	Positive <i>Toxoplasma</i> IgG antibody , ring-enhancing lesions on CT or MRI	Pyrimethamine, sulfadiazine, clindamycin (chronic treat- ment may be needed)
Lymphoma (CNS or non-Hodgkin)	CD4 <100	Headache, confusion, possible focal neurologic symptoms	CT or MRI shows lesion, biopsy confirms diagnosis	Chemotherapy, radiation
Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy (JC virus)	CD4 <100	Ataxia, motor deficits, mental status changes	Positive PCR for JC virus DNA	May improve with antiretroviral therapy

(continued)

TABLE 6-8 Common Opportunistic Infections, Neoplasms, and Complications Seen in Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome (AIDS) (Continued)

Condition/Infection	When Seen	History/Physical	Diagnosis	Treatment
Cryptococcal meningitis	CD4 <50	Headache, neck stiffness, fever, mental status changes	Elevated pressure on lumbar puncture, yeast seen with India ink stain of CSF, positive cryptococcal antigen in CSF or serum	Amphotericin B, fluconazole
Cytomegalovirus (CMV)	CD4 <50	Vision loss , esophagitis, diarrhea	Viral titer, yellow infiltrates with hemorrhage on fundoscopic exam	Ganciclovir, foscarnet, valganciclovir
<i>Mycobacterium avium</i> complex (MAC)	CD4 <50	Fatigue, weight loss, fever, diarrhea, abdominal pain, lymphadenopathy, hepatosplenomegaly	Blood cultures	Clarithromycin, azithromycin, ethambutol, rifabutin, rifampin

CNS, central nervous system; CSF, cerebrospinal fluid; CT, computed tomography; CXR, chest X-ray; EMG, electromyogram; GI, gastrointestinal; LDH, lactate dehydrogenase; MRI, magnetic resonance imaging; PPD, purified protein derivative; TMP-SMX, trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole.

8. Labs

- Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) detects HIV antibodies and is 99% sensitive; if positive, repeat ELISA performed (see Figure 6-14).
- Following two positive ELISAs, **Western blot** (lower sensitivity but high specificity) is performed to rule out false-positive findings.
- Rapid serologic tests are being used as initial screening test with increasing frequency, but positive results require standard serologic testing for confirmation.
- CD4 count** is used to track extent of disease progression (AIDS is defined by CD4 count <200).
- Viral load** indicates the rate of disease progression (low during latent phase and high once AIDS is diagnosed) and may be useful in detection of acute infection during presentation with symptoms of seroconversion.
- Other nonspecific lab findings include decreased WBCs (during acute infection and again after development of AIDS), increased liver function test (LFT) findings, and mildly decreased Hgb and platelets.

9. Treatment

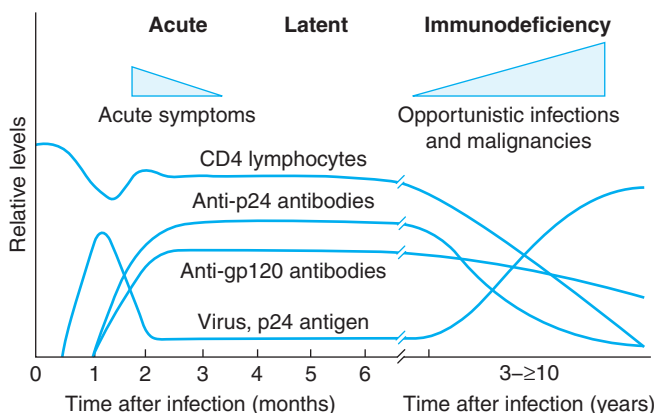
- Antiretroviral therapy** should be initiated for all HIV-infected patients, regardless of CD4 count or viral load.



QUICK HIT

It may take up to **6 months** for HIV antibodies to appear in the serum.

FIGURE 6-14 Serologic profile of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection.



Note: p24 and gp120 are viral proteins that serve as markers for HIV infection.

(From Mehta, S., Milder, E. A., Mirachi, A. J., & Milder, E. [2003]. *Step-Up: A High-Yield, Systems-Based Review for the USMLE Step 1* [2nd ed.]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.)

- b. Utility of starting antiretroviral therapy in acute infection is controversial and currently not universally recommended (performed in health care workers).
- c. Common initial **highly active antiretroviral treatment (HAART)** regimens
 - (1) Start with two nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors and either a protease inhibitor or non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor (three antiretroviral drug minimum) (see Table 6-9).
 - (2) Low-dose ritonavir can be added to the initial regimen to increase protease inhibitor activity.
 - (3) Combination therapy (i.e., multiple drugs combined in one pill) will decrease number of pills taken at one time and help avoid dosing schedule mishaps.
- d. Compliance with therapy is vital to delaying disease progression; significant side effects associated with antiretroviral drugs is a major deterrent to good compliance.
- e. Indications for changing antiretroviral regimen include failure to keep viral load <50/mL, drug toxicity, poor compliance, and suboptimal regimen.
 - (1) Patients with virologic failure should be tested for viral drug resistance, reviewed for drug interactions, and considered for drug substitution or addition of another drug.
 - (2) Drug toxicity may be amenable to changing drugs.
 - (3) Poor compliance can be approached by decreasing complexity of regimen (i.e., using combination pills) or enlisting family or friends to assist patient.
 - (4) Suboptimal regimens can be improved with drug substitution.
- f. Antibiotic prophylaxis for opportunistic infections is started when CD4 count <200; opportunistic infections are treated as they occur.
 - (1) Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (TMP-SMX) for *Pneumocystis jirovecii* pneumonia (PCP) and toxoplasmosis
 - (2) Clarithromycin or azithromycin for *Mycobacterium avium* complex (MAC)
 - (3) Isoniazid when close contacts have tuberculosis
- g. Close following of serology is important for dictating the direction of care.

TABLE 6-9 Antiviral Medications Used in Treatment of Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV)

Drug Class	Examples of Drug	Mechanism	Adverse Effects
Nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors	abacavir (ABC) didanosine (ddI) lamivudine (3TC) zidovudine (AZT)	Inhibit production of viral genome, prevent incorporation of viral DNA into host genome through reverse transcriptase inhibition	Some have risk of bone marrow toxicity, neuropathy, pancreatitis, or hypersensitivity
Non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors	delavirdine (DLV) efavirenz (EFV) nevirapine (NVP)	Inhibit reverse transcriptase activity to prevent viral replication	Possible hepatic toxicity, neurologic effects, rash
Protease inhibitors	indinavir (IDV) nelfinavir (NFV) ritonavir (RTV)	Interfere with viral replication to cause production of nonfunctional viruses	Hyperglycemia, hypertriglyceridemia, drug interactions, lipodystrophy
Integrase inhibitor	raltegravir	Inhibits the final step in integration of viral DNA into host DNA	Neutropenia, pancreatitis, hepatotoxicity, hyperglycemia
Fusion inhibitor	enfuvirtide	Inhibits viral ability to fuse with CD4 membrane and enter cell	Hypersensitivity reactions, reaction at injection site, bacterial pneumonia
CCR5 antagonist	maraviroc	Inhibits viral CCR5 coreceptor → blocks viral entry to host cell	Fever, cough, upper respiratory infections, peripheral neuropathy, dizziness
Combination agents	Combivir Trizivir Epzicom	Combine multiple medications into same pill; ideal to reduce confusion of dosing schedules or to improve compliance	Consistent with component drugs

- h. Pregnant mothers with HIV should be treated to keep viral load low and should be given zidovudine during labor; newborns to HIV-positive mothers should be given zidovudine for 6 weeks after birth and should be tested for presence of virus (anti-HIV antibodies will always be present in these children) in the initial 6 months of life.
10. **Complications** = opportunistic infections, neoplasms, cardiomyopathy, neuropathy, AIDS dementia complex, arthritis, polymyositis, anemia; although several advancements in treatment have been made, no cure or effective vaccine has been developed

**QUICK HIT**

Mother-to-infant transmission of HIV is **rare** when viral load is $<1,000$.

**QUICK HIT**

HIV-positive mothers should **not** breastfeed their infants to reduce risk of transmission.

**QUICK HIT**

The most common cause of increased RBC production is **chronic hypoxia**.

VI. HEMATOLOGIC NEOPLASTIC CONDITIONS

A. Polycythemia vera

1. Myeloproliferative disorder of bone marrow stem cells leading to **increased production** of RBCs, WBCs, and platelets
2. Tends to occur after age 60 years; many progress to leukemia
3. **H/P** = fatigue, headache, **burning pain in hands or feet**, **pruritus** (especially after contact with warm water), tinnitus, blurred vision, epistaxis, abdominal pain; **splenomegaly**, hepatomegaly, large retinal veins on fundoscopic examination
4. **Labs** = **increased Hgb**, **increased Hct**, increased RBC mass, increased or normal WBCs and platelets, decreased erythropoietin; biopsy shows hypercellular marrow
5. **Treatment** = serial phlebotomy, antihistamines (for pruritus), ASA (thrombus prophylaxis), hydroxyurea (bone marrow suppression)
6. **Complications** = thrombus formation, **leukemia** (acute and chronic myelogenous), stroke

B. Multiple myeloma

1. Malignant proliferation of **plasma cells**; increased incidence with prior monoclonal gammopathy of undetermined significance (MGUS)
2. Abnormal monoclonal protein (**M protein**) produced from IgG and IgA heavy chains and κ and λ light chains (these light chains are known as **Bence Jones proteins**)
3. **H/P** = **back pain**, radicular pain, weakness, fatigue, weight loss, constipation, **pathologic fractures**, frequent infections; pallor, bone tenderness
4. **Labs** = decreased Hgb, decreased Hct, decreased WBCs, increased blood urea nitrogen (BUN) and creatinine (secondary to renal insufficiency), increased Ca^{2+} ; serum protein electrophoresis (SPEP) and urine protein electrophoresis (UPEP) detect high M protein and Bence Jones proteins; bone marrow biopsy shows increased plasma cells
5. **Radiology** = “**punched-out**” lesions in long bones and skull
6. **Treatment** = radiation, chemotherapy, bone marrow transplant, repair of fractures, treat infections
7. **Complications** = renal failure, recurrent infections, hypercalcemia, spinal cord compression; poor prognosis with survival for 2 to 3 years after diagnosis

C. Lymphoma

1. Malignant transformation of lymphocytes primarily in **lymph nodes** that can also involve bloodstream or nonlymphatic organs
2. Categorized as Hodgkin and non-Hodgkin variants (see Table 6-10, Figure 6-15)

D. Leukemia

1. Malignant transformation of myeloid or lymphoid cells involving bloodstream and bone marrow
2. **Acute** leukemia tends to involve immature cells, whereas **chronic** leukemia involves more mature cells.
3. Bone marrow involvement can cause pancytopenia.
4. **Acute lymphocytic leukemia (ALL)**
 - a. **Most common in children** (2 to 5 years of age); whites $>$ blacks
 - b. Proliferation of cells of **lymphoid** origin (lymphocytes)

**QUICK HIT**

ALL is the **most common cancer** in **children**.

TABLE 6-10 Characteristics of Hodgkin and Non-Hodgkin Lymphomas

Characteristic	Hodgkin Lymphoma	Non-Hodgkin Lymphoma
Cells of origin	B cells	Lymphocytes (most commonly B cells) or natural killer cells
Classification (low to higher grade)	Nodular sclerosis (most common , women = men, fibrosis of lymph nodes), mixed cellularity, lymphocyte rich (rare, best prognosis), lymphocyte depleted (very rare, worst prognosis)	Many types, common variants include diffuse large B cell (most common), follicular small cell (B cells, t[14;18]), small lymphocytic (same disease as CLL), Burkitt (EBV related , t[8;14], " starry sky " pattern), peripheral (T cells)
Risk factors, patient population	Bimodal age distribution (peaks at 20 and 65 yr of age), men > women (except for nodular sclerosis subtype)	EBV, HIV, congenital immunodeficiencies, rheumatic disease, <65 yr of age
History and physical	Painless lymphadenopathy (neck), weight loss, pruritus, night sweats, fever, hepatosplenomegaly	Painless lymphadenopathy (generalized), weight loss, fever, night sweats
Labs	Lymph node biopsy shows Reed-Sternberg cells (see also Figure 6-15)	Lymph node or bone marrow biopsy shows lymphocyte proliferation (cleaved cells seen in follicular small cell variant)
Treatment	Radiation, chemotherapy	Palliative radiation, chemotherapy
Prognosis	Good , 80% cure rate unless far progressed	Poor (months for aggressive types, years for less aggressive variants), worsens with increasing age

CLL, chronic lymphocytic leukemia; EBV, Epstein-Barr virus; HIV, human immunodeficiency virus.

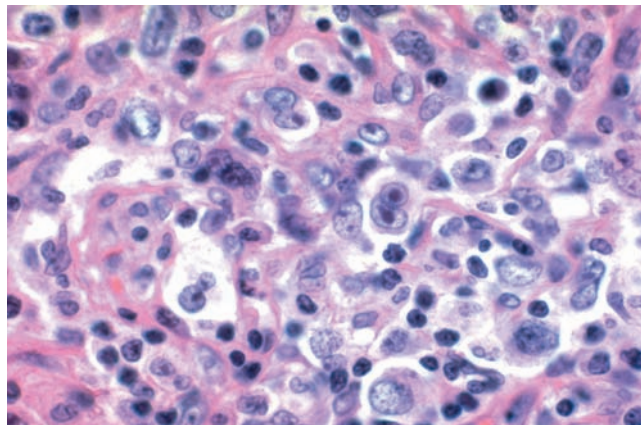


QUICK HIT

Most ALL originates in **B-cell precursors**.

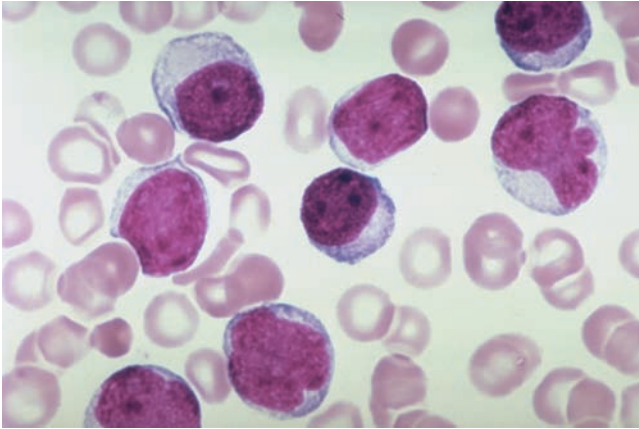
- c. **H/P** = bone pain, frequent infections, fatigue, dyspnea on exertion, easy bruising; fever, pallor, purpura, hepatosplenomegaly, lymphadenopathy
- d. **Labs** = decreased Hgb, decreased Hct, decreased platelets, decreased WBCs, increased uric acid, increased LDH; bone marrow biopsy shows **abundant blasts**; Philadelphia chromosome (i.e., translocation of chromosomes 9 and 22 in *BCR-ABL* genes) found in 15% **adult** cases
- e. **Blood smear** = numerous blasts (see Figure 6-16)
- f. **Treatment** = chemotherapy (induction followed by maintenance dosing), bone marrow transplant

FIGURE 6-15 Hodgkin disease; histologic section of lymph node demonstrates pathognomonic binucleated Reed-Sternberg cells that resemble owls' eyes.



(From Rubin, E., & Farber, J. L. [1999]. *Pathology* [3rd ed., Figure 20-72]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

FIGURE

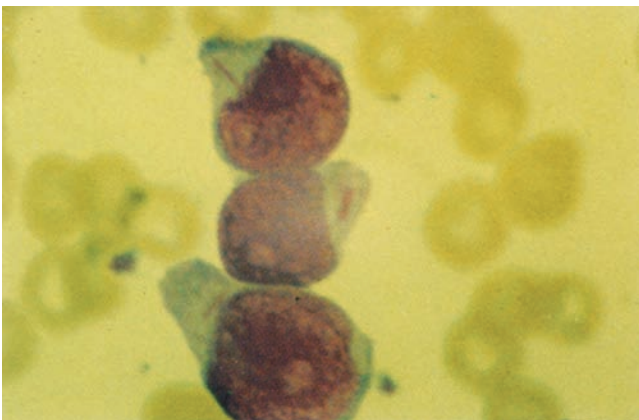
6-16 Acute lymphocytic leukemia.

Note lymphoblasts with irregular nuclei and prominent nucleoli.

(From Rubin, E., & Farber, J. L. [1999]. *Pathology* [3rd ed., Figure 20-59]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins with permission.)

- g. **Complications** = although 5-year survival rates are good (85%) in children, adults have worse prognosis; presence of Philadelphia chromosome carries poor prognosis
- 5. **Acute myelogenous leukemia (AML)**
 - a. Proliferation of myeloid cells; both children and adults affected
 - b. **H/P** = fatigue, easy bruising, dyspnea on exertion, frequent infections, arthralgias; fever, pallor, hepatosplenomegaly, mucosal bleeding, ocular hemorrhages
 - c. **Labs** = decreased Hgb, decreased Hct, decreased platelets, decreased WBCs; bone marrow biopsy shows **blasts** of myeloid origin and staining with **myeloperoxidase**
 - d. **Blood smear** = large myeloblasts with **notched nuclei** and **Auer rods** (see Figure 6-17)
 - e. **Treatment** = chemotherapy (regimen guided by cytogenetic analysis), bone marrow transplant
 - f. **Complications** = relapse common, DIC; long-term survival is poor despite frequently successful remissions

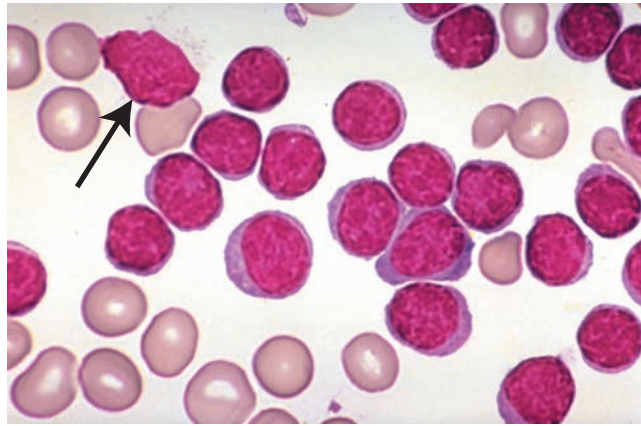
FIGURE

6-17 Acute myelogenous leukemia (AML) with monocytic differentiation.

Note the prominent waxy nucleoli, large size of blasts, and presence of Auer rods.

(From Handin, R. I., Lux, S. E., & Stosel, T. P. [2003]. *Blood: Principles and Practice of Hematology* [2nd ed., Color Figure 15-1A]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

FIGURE 6-18 Chronic lymphocytic leukemia.



Note small lymphocytes of comparable size to nearby red blood cells (RBCs) and presence of smudge cells (fragile lymphocytes disrupted during smear preparation) in upper portion of image.

(From Rubin, E., & Farber, J. L. [1999]. *Pathology* [3rd ed., Figure 20-57]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

QUICK HIT

CLL and small lymphocytic lymphoma are considered to be the same disease process in different stages of evolution.

QUICK HIT

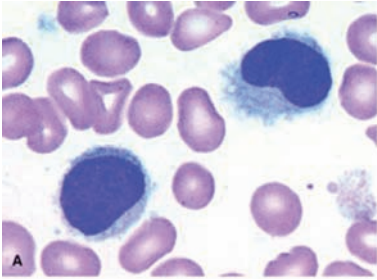
Patients with CLL are asymptomatic 25% of the time and may be diagnosed following a workup for an abnormal CBC performed for an unrelated reason.

QUICK HIT

Presence of the **Philadelphia chromosome** (t[9;22]) or **BCR-ABL** gene is almost always seen in CML but may also be seen in about 5% of ALL cases and rarely in AML.

6. **Chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL)**
 - a. Proliferation of **mature B cells** in patients >65 years of age
 - b. **H/P** = fatigue, frequent infection (secondary to no plasma cells), night sweats; fevers, lymphadenopathy, hepatosplenomegaly
 - c. **Labs** = **increased WBCs** (may be >100,000/ μ L); bone marrow shows lymphocyte infiltration
 - d. **Blood smear** = numerous small lymphocytes, **smudge cells** (see Figure 6-18)
 - e. **Treatment** = supportive therapy, chemotherapy, radiation for bulky lymphoid masses, splenectomy for splenomegaly
 - f. **Complications** = malignant B cells may form autoantibodies, leading to severe hemolytic anemia; course of disease tends to be either indolent (>10-year survival) or aggressive with high mortality within 4 years
7. **Chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML)**
 - a. Proliferation of **mature myeloid cells** seen in middle-aged adults; can be associated with **radiation exposure**
 - b. Follows stable course for several years before progressing into **blast crisis** (i.e., rapid worsening of neoplasm) that is usually fatal
 - c. **H/P** = possibly asymptomatic before progression; fatigue, weight loss, night sweats; fever, splenomegaly; blast crisis presents with worsening symptoms and bone pain
 - d. **Labs** = **increased WBCs** (>100,000/ μ L) with high proportion of neutrophils, decreased leukocyte alkaline phosphatase; bone marrow shows granulocyte hyperplasia; cytogenetic analysis demonstrates **Philadelphia chromosome** (t[9;22]) or **BCR-ABL** fusion gene
 - e. **Treatment** = chemotherapy (imatinib is promising agent), bone marrow transplant in younger patients
 - f. **Complications** = blast crisis signals rapid progression and is usually fatal
8. **Hairy cell leukemia**
 - a. Proliferation of B cells most frequently in middle-aged men
 - b. Similar in appearance to CLL (but better prognosis); may be considered an indolent type of lymphoma
 - c. **H/P** = fatigue, frequent infections, abdominal fullness, no night sweats; no fever, **massive splenomegaly**, **no lymphadenopathy**
 - d. **Labs** = decreased Hgb, Hct, platelets, and WBCs (rarely, WBCs increased); bone marrow biopsy shows lymphocyte infiltration

FIGURE

6-19 Hairy cells typical of hairy cell leukemia.

Note the numerous cytoplasmic projections giving the cell its name.

(From Rubin, R., Strayer, D., & Rubin, E. R. (2012). *Rubin's Pathology: Clinicopathologic Foundations of Medicine* [6th Ed]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, F. 20-62A, p. 1017.)

- e. **Blood smear** = numerous lymphocytes with “hairy” projections (irregular cytoplasmic projections) (see Figure 6-19)
- f. **Treatment** = chemotherapy once patients develop symptomatic cytopenia



VII. ONCOLOGIC THERAPY

A. Treatment strategy

1. Eradication of neoplastic cells is the ultimate goal.
2. When eradication is not possible, therapy seeks to **delay disease progression** or to serve a **palliative** role.
3. Mass effect of tumors and paraneoplastic syndromes can cause effects that are treated with surgery, radiation, or chemotherapy to relieve symptoms even when overall prognosis is bleak.

B. Cancer surgery

1. Performed to **reduce mass** of solid tumors or **remove** well-contained tumors
2. Resection of surrounding tissue frequently performed to increase chances of removing microscopic extensions of tumor
3. Many procedures carry significant morbidities and prolonged recoveries because of size of surgery or organ removal (e.g., Whipple procedure for pancreatic cancer, gastrectomy for gastric cancer).

C. Radiation therapy

1. Performed to **necrose** tumor cells and **decrease tumor size**
2. May be curative in some cancers (some head and neck tumors); serves palliative role in several cases (e.g., Pancoast tumor)
3. Adverse effects include impaired surgical wound healing, fibrosis of tissue, skin irritation, esophagitis, gastritis, pneumonitis, neurologic deficits, bone marrow suppression, and **radiation-induced malignancies** (e.g., thyroid, CML, sarcomas).

D. Chemotherapy

1. Aims to eradicate smaller populations of neoplastic cells and destroy cells not removed through surgery or radiation (see Table 6-11)
2. Can sensitize neoplastic cells to radiation therapy (i.e., radiosensitizers)
3. Can be primary treatment modality in certain cancers particularly receptive to pharmacologic therapy
4. **Multiple drugs** with different cell cycle-specific targets are frequently combined to increase neoplastic cell death while minimizing toxicity to normal tissues, to have an effect against a broader range of cells, and to slow development of resistance.
5. Adverse effects include bone marrow suppression, alopecia, GI upset, infertility, neurotoxicity, hepatotoxicity, skin changes, pulmonary fibrosis, cardiomyopathy, and renal toxicity.

TABLE 6-11 Mechanisms and Classes of Chemotherapeutic Drugs

Mechanism	Drug Class	Examples
Free radical production causing cytotoxic alkylation of DNA and RNA	Nitrogen mustard alkylating agents Nitrosourea alkylating agents Alkyl sulfonate alkylating agents Ethyleneimine or methylmelamine alkylating agents Triazene alkylating agents	Cyclophosphamide, chlorambucil, ifosfamide, mechlorethamine Carmustine, streptozocin Busulfan Thiotepa, hexamethylmelamine Dacarbazine
Inhibition of spindle proteins to stop mitosis or cause cytotoxic polymerization	Vinca alkaloids Taxanes	Etoposide, vinblastine, vincristine Paclitaxel, docetaxel
Inhibition of DNA and RNA synthesis	Antibiotics Monoamine oxidase inhibitors	Bleomycin, dactinomycin, daunorubicin, doxorubicin, mitomycin Procarbazine
Interference with enzyme regulation or DNA and RNA activity	Antimetabolites Platinum analogues	Cytarabine, 5-fluorouracil, methotrexate, mercaptopurine Carboplatin, cisplatin
Modulation of hormones to cause tumor remission	Steroid hormones and antagonists	Prednisone, tamoxifen, estrogens, leuprolide



VIII. OTHER PEDIATRIC HEMATOLOGIC AND ONCOLOGIC CONCERNS (NOT ADDRESSED IN OTHER SECTIONS)

A. Hemolytic disease of the newborn

1. If Rh⁺ fetal cells enter circulation of Rh⁻ mother, **anti-Rh antibodies** may develop.
2. Antibodies do not affect pregnancy with initial Rh interaction but cause severe fetal RBC hemolysis in subsequent pregnancies with Rh⁺ fetuses (i.e., fetal hydrops).
3. **Risk factors** = Rh⁻ mother with any history of fetal–maternal hemorrhage (e.g., abortion, amniocentesis, third-trimester bleeding)
4. Hemolysis will likely cause death of fetus.
5. **Treatment** = administration of Rho(D) immune globulin (**RhoGAM**) within 72 hr of delivery of initial Rh⁺ fetus or at any time maternal and fetal blood may have mixed will prevent development of anti-Rh antibodies and protect future pregnancies by suppressing maternal formation of anti-Rh antibodies; intrauterine fetal transfusion may be required if condition develops in utero.

B. Fanconi anemia

1. Autosomal recessive disorder associated with **bone marrow failure**, pancytopenia, and increased risk of leukemia
2. **H/P** = fatigue, dyspnea on exertion, frequent infections; frequently associated with **short stature, abnormal skin pigmentation** (café-au-lait spots or hypopigmented areas), horseshoe kidney, and thumb abnormalities
3. **Labs** = decreased Hgb, Hct, platelets, and WBCs; increased serum α -fetoprotein; bone marrow biopsy shows hypocellularity; chromosome analysis detects multiple strand breakage
4. **Treatment** = antibiotics, transfusions, bone marrow or hematopoietic stem cell transplantation, hematopoietic growth factors; androgens and corticosteroids can increase bone marrow activity
5. **Complications** = death in childhood is common from bone marrow failure or leukemia

C. Diamond-Blackfan anemia

1. Congenital **pure RBC anemia** likely caused by a defect in erythroid progenitor cells
2. **H/P** = fatigue, dyspnea, cyanosis, and pallor detected early in life; craniofacial abnormalities, thumb abnormalities, heart murmurs, mental retardation, hypogonadism

3. **Labs** = decreased Hgb, decreased Hct, decreased reticulocyte count, increased MCV; bone marrow biopsy shows decreased activity but increased presence of erythropoietin
4. **Treatment** = transfusions, corticosteroids, bone marrow transplant

D. Neuroblastoma

1. Tumors of neural crest cell origin that may arise in adrenal glands or sympathetic ganglia
2. **Risk factors** = neurofibromatosis, tuberous sclerosis, pheochromocytoma, Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome, Turner syndrome, low maternal folate consumption
3. **H/P** = abdominal distention and pain, weight loss, malaise, bone pain, diarrhea; abdominal mass, HTN, possible Horner syndrome, proptosis, movement disorders, hepatomegaly, fever, periorbital bruising
4. **Labs** = possible increased vanillylmandelic and homovanillic acids in 24-hr urine collection
5. **Radiology** = computed tomography (CT) may locate adrenal or ganglion tumor
6. **Treatment** = surgical resection, chemotherapy, radiation
7. **Complications** = poor prognosis if presenting after 1 year of age; metastasizes to bone and brain



QUICK HIT

Prognosis for neuroblastoma is good if diagnosed before 1 year of age.

E. Rhabdomyosarcoma

1. Tumor of striated muscle in children
2. **H/P** = painful soft tissue mass with swelling; large tumors frequently cause mass effect on nearby structures
3. **Labs** = biopsy is diagnostic
4. **Radiology** = CT or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) shows extent of tumor
5. **Treatment** = surgical debulking, radiation, chemotherapy



QUICK HIT

Rhabdomyosarcoma is the **most common soft tissue sarcoma** in children.

7

Selected Topics in Emergency Medicine, Critical Care, and Surgery

Emergency Medicine

I. ACCIDENTS AND INJURY

A. Burns

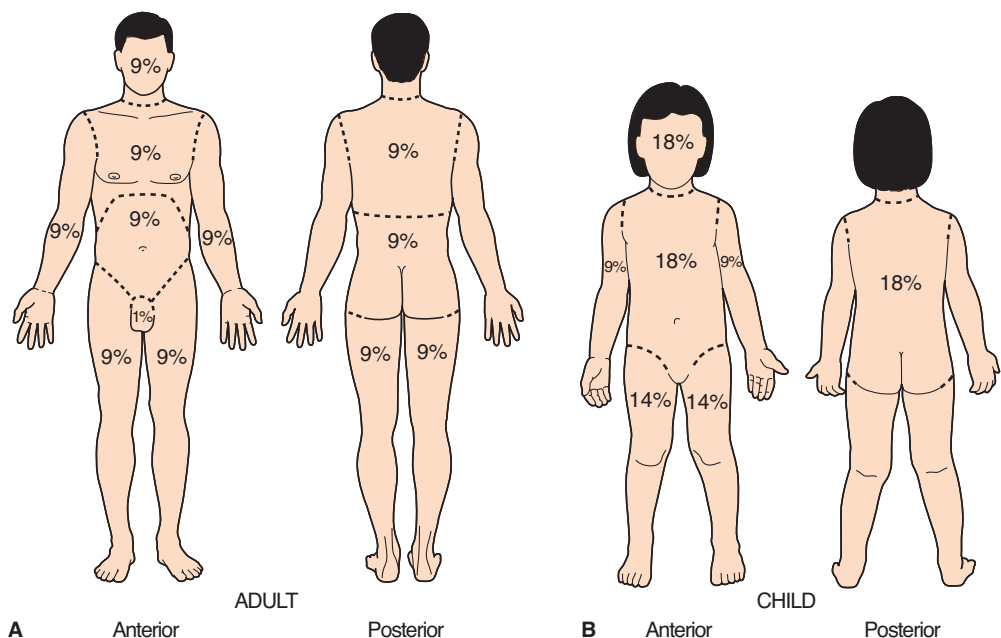
1. Injury to epithelial surface and deeper tissues caused by exposure to significant heat, radiation, caustic chemicals, or electrical shock
2. Classified by depth of involvement
 - a. 1st degree: epidermis only involved
 - b. 2nd degree: partial-thickness dermal involvement
 - c. 3rd degree: full-thickness dermal and some fatty tissue involvement
3. Extent of burns is estimated by “rule of 9s” (see Figure 7-1).
4. History and physical (H/P) = dependent on degree:
 - a. First- and 2nd-degree burns are erythematous and painful; blisters are also seen in 2nd-degree burns.
 - b. Third-degree burns are painless and skin appears charred, leathery, or gray.



QUICK HIT

Burns secondary to **electrical shock** are sometimes called 4th-degree burns because they may involve muscles, bones, and other internal structures.

FIGURE 7-1 “Rule of 9s” for calculating extent of burns.



(A) The surface anatomy of the adult is divided into sections of 9% body surface area (genitals are considered 1% surface area). Note that the distribution considers both the front and back of the head and arms as one contribution. (B) Because of its greater relative size, the contribution of the head is increased in the child. Note that the front and back for the head, arms, and legs are considered as one contribution.

- c. Electrical burns may appear similar to 3rd-degree burns, show severe damage at entrance and exit sites of electrical current, and have cardiac and neurologic symptoms (e.g., ventricular fibrillation, seizures, loss of vision).

5. Treatment

- Remove any burning agents to prevent further injury (e.g., burning or soaked clothing); caustic chemicals should be diluted or neutralized.
 - Outpatient** treatment is sufficient for **1st-degree** and minor **2nd-degree** burns (e.g., cooling and cleansing, bandaging, topical antimicrobials).
 - Inpatient** treatment (e.g., intravenous [IV] hydration, wound care, possible escharotomy) is required for **2nd-degree** burns >10% body surface area, **3rd-degree** burns >2% body surface area, or 2nd- and 3rd-degree burns affecting face, hands, genitalia, or major skin flexion creases.
 - Second- and 3rd-degree burns >25% body surface area or involving the face require **airway management** (frequently intubation), IV fluids, and careful control of body temperature (increased risk of hypothermia).
 - Patients with significant **smoke inhalation** (diagnosed by increased carboxyhemoglobin levels) should receive high-flow O₂ and close monitoring for respiratory compromise requiring intubation.
 - Cardiac and neurologic issues in **electrical** burns should be managed to decrease mortality.
 - Nasogastric tube should be placed when there is gastrointestinal (GI) involvement (ileus will frequently develop).
 - Generous use of analgesics and/or regional anesthesia for **pain control**
 - Antimicrobial agents** (e.g., topical silver sulfadiazine or bacitracin) should be used in dressings to decrease risk of infection, and tetanus toxin should be administered if immunization status is unknown or not up to date.
 - Nonadherent bandaging or biologic dressings should be applied directly to severe burns; dressings should not be wrapped around affected areas because of potential swelling and constriction.
 - Surgical debridement and exploration should be performed to remove necrotic tissue and to determine extent of deeper tissue involvement; plastic reconstructive surgery with skin grafting may be needed.
- #### 6. Complications
- Infection** (especially *Pseudomonas*, sepsis), stress ulcers (Curling type), aspiration, dehydration, ileus, renal insufficiency (caused by rhabdomyolysis), compartment syndrome, epithelial contractions (may limit range of motion)
 - Electrical burns are associated with myocardial infarction (MI), cataracts, and seizures.
 - Risk factors for **mortality** include age >60 years, >40% body surface area involvement, and inhalation injury; patients carry a 0.3%, 3%, 33%, or 90% chance of death if they have zero, one, two, or three of these risk factors, respectively.

B. Drowning

- Hypoxemia resulting from **submersion** in some type of fluid, usually water
- Aspiration of **any type** of water causes **pulmonary damage** (i.e., decreased lung compliance, ventilation-perfusion mismatch, shunting) and **cerebral hypoxia**, but pathophysiology of late-stage drowning varies by fluid type.
 - Fresh water:** hypotonic fluid is absorbed from alveoli into vasculature, resulting in decreased electrolyte concentrations and red blood cell (RBC) lysis.
 - Salt water:** hypertonic fluid creates an osmotic gradient that draws fluid from pulmonary capillaries into alveoli and causes **pulmonary edema** and increased serum electrolyte concentrations.
- H/P** = prolonged submersion in liquid (pools, bathtubs, and buckets are frequent sites); cyanosis, decreased consciousness; patient may not be breathing or may have cardiac arrest
- Treatment** = secure airway and perform resuscitation; **supplemental O₂**, nasogastric tube placement, maintenance of adequate body temperature; any symptoms of hypoxia following aspiration require inpatient admission for neurovascular monitoring and possible diuresis and bronchodilator therapy

NEXT STEP

Determine IV fluid resuscitation need with **Parkland formula**: lactated Ringer's solution given in total volume of $[(4 \text{ mL}) \times (\text{kg body weight}) \times (\% \text{ body surface area burned})]$. Half of volume is given during the initial 8 hr, and the remaining half is given over the following 16 hr.



QUICK HIT

Drowning is most common in **children <5 years of age** and in **males** between 15 and 25 years of age.

**QUICK HIT**

The right mainstem bronchus is the most common location of aspirated items that pass beyond the trachea because of its greater vertical orientation compared with the left main bronchus.

5. **Complications** = correlate with degree and length of hypoxemia and include brain damage and hypothermia

C. Choking

1. **Aspiration of foreign body** into trachea or bronchi preventing normal gas exchange
2. Food is a common cause in all ages; toys, coins, and other small objects are common in children.
3. **H/P** = patient eating or child playing with small objects; gagging, coughing, or wheezing that progresses to stridor with increased severity of obstruction
4. **Radiology** = chest X-ray (CXR) may be useful in identifying item and determining location; bronchoscopy may visualize item
5. **Treatment**
 - a. Actively coughing patients should be encouraged to remain calm and to keep coughing to dislodge object.
 - b. Patients unable to breathe should be given the **Heimlich maneuver**.
 - c. Emergent tracheotomy may be required in a patient with continued obstruction.
 - d. Bronchoscopy may be required to remove objects.
 - e. Administration of IV corticosteroids before extraction attempt may ease removal by decreasing bronchial inflammation.
6. **Complications** = atelectasis, pneumonia, lung abscess; hypoxemia can cause complications similar to those seen with drowning

D. Heat emergencies

1. **Hyperthermia** (can be associated with **physical exertion** or comorbid medical condition) that occurs because of failure of thermoregulation
2. Categorized as heat stroke or heat exhaustion (see Table 7-1)

E. Hypothermia

1. Body temperature $<95^{\circ}\text{F}/35^{\circ}\text{C}$ from cold exposure
2. **Risk factors** = alcohol intoxication, elderly
3. **H/P** = lethargy, weakness, severe shivering, confusion; decreased body temperature, possible arrhythmias, hypotension
4. **Electrocardiogram (ECG)** = J waves, possible ventricular tachycardia (Vtach) or ventricular fibrillation (Vfib) (see Figure 7-2)
5. **Treatment** = warm patient externally (e.g., warm bed, bath, blankets) or internally (e.g., warm IV fluids or ingested fluids); treat arrhythmias and hypotension as appropriate (see Chapter 1, **Cardiovascular Disorders**)

**QUICK HIT**

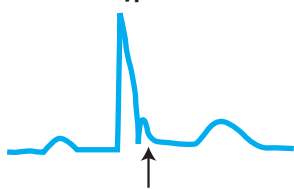
In the final stage of hypothermia, the patient will stop shivering, be unable to maintain body temperature, and will undergo a fatal increase of blood viscosity.

TABLE 7-1 **Heat Emergencies**

Disorder	Heat Exhaustion	Heat Stroke
Symptoms	Weakness, headache, substantial sweating	Confusion, blurred vision, nausea, no or little sweating
Body temperature	Slightly increased	Substantially elevated
Labs	Usually normal	Increased WBC, increased BUN, increased creatinine
Treatment	Hydration (oral unless progressive symptoms), electrolyte replacement	Cool environment, spray patient with water and then fan; benzodiazepines to relax muscles
Complications	Progression to heat stroke	Rhabdomyolysis, seizures, brain damage, death

BUN, blood urea nitrogen; WBC, white blood cell count.

FIGURE 7-2 Diagram of electrocardiogram demonstrating a J wave (arrow), a characteristic finding in hypothermia.



F. Venomous bites and stings (see Table 7-2)

1. Injection of venom from bite or sting of snakes (e.g., in United States: rattlesnake, copperhead, water moccasin, coral snake), spiders (e.g., black widow, brown recluse), or other animals (e.g., scorpion)
2. Venom contains neurotoxins, cardiotoxins, or proteolytic enzymes that can potentially be fatal.

TABLE 7-2 Common Types of Venomous Bites and Stings

Type of Bite	Symptoms	Treatment	Complications
Snake (rattlesnake, copperhead, water moccasin, coral snake)	Pain and swelling at bite, progressive dyspnea, toxin-induced DIC	Immobilize extremity and cleanse wound; antivenin likely required	Effects more severe in children; increased mortality without prompt treatment
Scorpion	Severe pain and swelling at bite, increased sweating, vomiting, diarrhea	Antivenin, atropine, phenobarbital	Acute pancreatitis, myocardial toxicity, respiratory paralysis
Spider			
Black widow	Muscle pain and spasms, localized diaphoresis, abdominal pain, autonomic stimulation	Local wound care, benzodiazepines, antivenin	Ileus, cardiovascular collapse Hemolytic anemia, DIC, rhabdomyolysis
Brown recluse	Increasing pain at site, possible ulceration and necrosis	Local wound care, dapsone to prevent tissue necrosis	
Mammals	Pain and swelling at bite, penetrating trauma, depending on size of bite	Saline irrigation, debridement, tetanus and rabies prophylaxis, antibiotics for infection	Infection (staphylococci, <i>Pasteurella multocida</i> , rabies virus)
Human	Pain and swelling at bite, tender local lymphadenopathy	Saline irrigation, broad coverage antibiotics, debridement, thorough documentation	High incidence of infection with primary closure or delayed presentation

DIC, disseminated intravascular coagulation.

II. TOXICOLOGY

A. General principles

1. Initial evaluation must focus on **determining type of poison ingested**; patient history, witness input, and clues found near patient (e.g., empty bottles of medications, other medications, etc.) help in making diagnosis.
2. The sooner treatment is begun after toxic exposure, the better the outcome.
3. Types of poisoning therapy (see Table 7-3)
 - a. Induced vomiting: only useful in initial 1 to 2 hr after ingestion and only for noncaustic agents; rarely performed
 - b. **Charcoal**: blocks absorption of poisons; repeat doses every few hours; not useful for alcohols or metals

NEXT STEP

Beware of alcohol abusers who come into the emergency department **fictitiously** saying that they have ingested ethylene glycol and need ethanol for treatment; check for sweet breath and a toxin screen before giving ethanol.

TABLE 7-3 Common Poisons and Antidotes

Substance	Symptoms	Treatment
Drugs		
Acetaminophen	Nausea, hepatic insufficiency	<i>N</i> -acetylcysteine
Anticholinergics	Dry mouth, urinary retention, QRS widening on ECG	Physostigmine
Benzodiazepines	Sedation, respiratory depression	Flumazenil
β -Blockers	Bradycardia, hypotension, hypoglycemia, pulmonary edema	Glucagon, calcium, insulin, and dextrose
Calcium channel blockers	Bradycardia, hypotension	Glucagon, calcium, insulin, and dextrose
Cocaine	Tachycardia, agitation	Supportive care
Cyanide	Headache, nausea, vomiting, altered mental status	Nitrates, hydroxocobalamin
Digoxin	Nausea, vomiting, visual changes, arrhythmias	Digoxin antibodies
Heparin	Excessive bleeding, easy bruising	Protamine sulfate
Isoniazid	Neuropathy, hepatotoxicity	Vitamin B ₆
Isopropyl alcohol	Decreased consciousness, nausea, abdominal pain	Supportive care
Methanol	Headache, visual changes, dizziness	Ethanol, fomepizole, dialysis
Opioids	Pinpoint pupils, respiratory depression	Naloxone
Salicylates	Nausea, vomiting, tinnitus, hyperventilation, anion gap, metabolic acidosis	Charcoal, dialysis, sodium bicarbonate
Sulfonylureas	Hypoglycemia	Octreotide and dextrose
Tricyclic antidepressants	Tachycardia, dry mouth, urinary retention, QRS widening on ECG	Sodium bicarbonate, diazepam
Warfarin	Excessive bleeding, easy bruising	Vitamin K, FFP
Industrial chemicals		
Caustics (acids, alkali)	Severe oropharyngeal and gastric irritation or burns, drooling, odynophagia, abdominal pain, gastric perforation symptoms	Copious irrigation (do not induce emesis or attempt neutralization), activated charcoal
Ethylene glycol	Ataxia, hallucinations, seizures, sweet breath	Ethanol, dialysis
Organophosphates (insecticides, fertilizers)	Diarrhea, urination, miosis, bronchospasm, bradycardia, excitation of skeletal muscle, lacrimation, sweating, and salivation	Atropine, pralidoxime, supportive care
Metals		
Iron	Nausea, constipation, hepatotoxicity	Deferoxamine
Lead	Peripheral neuropathy, anemia	EDTA, dimercaprol
Mercury	Renal insufficiency, tremor, mental status changes	Dimercaprol

ECG, electrocardiogram; EDTA, ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid; FFP, fresh frozen plasma.

NEXT STEP

Organophosphates can also be absorbed through the **skin**, so all contaminated clothing must be removed from patients with this type of poisoning.

- c. Gastric lavage: usually reserved for intubated patients within initial hour after ingestion
- d. **Antidotes**: reverse or inhibit poison activity; use depends on identification of agent
- e. Diuretics: may help in cases where increased urination helps remove toxin (e.g., salicylates, phenobarbital)
- f. Dialysis or exchange transfusion: used in cases of severe symptoms or when other treatments are unsuccessful
4. Supportive care includes airway protection, IV hydration, cardiac support (e.g., treatment for hypertension, hypotension, arrhythmias); control of seizures is an important adjunct to management of the poison itself.

B. Ingested poisons

1. Poisoning through oral ingestion of a particular toxin
2. Can occur in children from accidental ingestion of cleaning products, medications, or personal care products

3. Can occur in elderly patients from accidental repeat dosing of usual medications
4. Can be intentional (i.e., suicide attempt)

C. Carbon monoxide poisoning

1. Hypoxemia that results from inhalation of carbon monoxide from car fumes, smoke, or paint thinner
2. Carbon monoxide displaces O₂ on hemoglobin (Hgb) and prevents O₂ delivery to tissues.
3. H/P = sufficient exposure, headache, dizziness, nausea, myalgias; cherry red lips, mental status changes, possible hypotension
4. Labs = increased carboxyhemoglobin on blood gas analysis
5. Treatment = 100% O₂ (displaces carbon monoxide from Hgb) or hyperbaric O₂ therapy; patients with smoke inhalation may require intubation secondary to upper airway edema

III. CARDIOVASCULAR EMERGENCIES

This section discusses only emergent cardiovascular conditions that require resuscitation and immediate treatment—refer to Chapters 1 and 8 on Cardiovascular and Neurologic Disorders for additional information regarding MI, arrhythmias, and stroke.

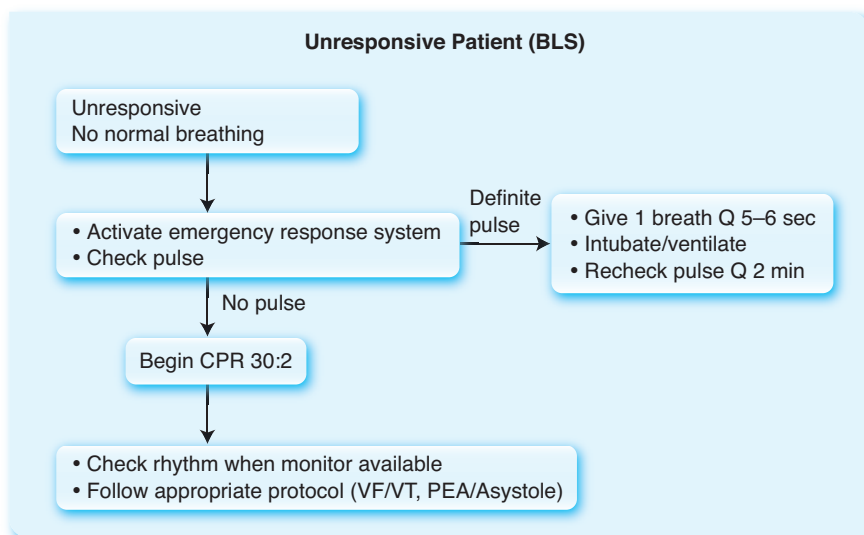
A. Cardiac arrest

1. Cessation of cardiac function resulting in acutely insufficient cardiac output
2. Requires immediate treatment to prevent systemic ischemic morbidity and death (see Figure 7-3)
3. Treatment of Vfib and Vtach requires alternating attempts at electrical and pharmacologic cardioversion (see Figure 7-4).
4. Pulseless electrical activity (PEA) consists of detectable cardiac electrical conduction with the absence of cardiac output (see Figure 7-5).
5. Asystole is the absence of cardiac activity (see Figure 7-5).

B. Acute stroke (see Figure 7-6)

1. Initial workup differentiates between embolic and hemorrhagic types.
2. Appropriateness for anticoagulation and thrombolysis should be considered.

FIGURE 7-3 Initial treatment protocol for the unresponsive patient.



CPR, cardiopulmonary resuscitation; PEA, pulseless electrical activity; VF, ventricular fibrillation; VT, ventricular tachycardia.



MNEMONIC

Remember the symptoms of organophosphate poisoning by the mnemonic **DUMBBELSS**: **D**iarrhea, **U**rination, **M**iosis, **B**ronchospasm, **B**radycardia, **E**xcitation of skeletal muscle, **L**acrimation, **S**weating, and **S**alivation.



QUICK HIT

Body packing involves ingesting a large number of drug-filled latex and/or wax packets for the purpose of smuggling them; rupture of a packet can cause a massive overdose effect from a large quantity of the drug.

NEXT STEP

Any patient with significant **thermal burns**, burns of the **face**, or exposure to large quantities of **smoke** (e.g., house fires) requires a workup for **carbon monoxide poisoning** and **thermal airway injury**.



QUICK HIT

Pulse oximetry may appear **normal** in carbon monoxide poisoning.



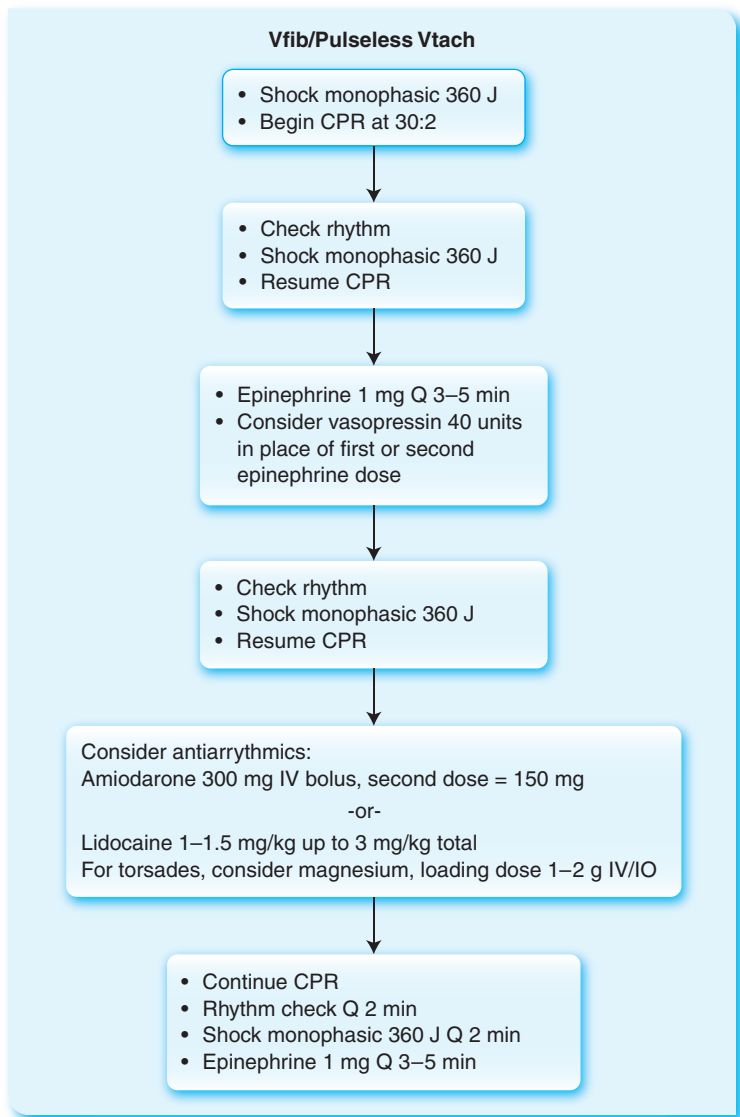
QUICK HIT

Cardiac arrest lasting >10 min without cardiac output is generally considered consistent with severe brain injury or brain death.

QUICK HIT

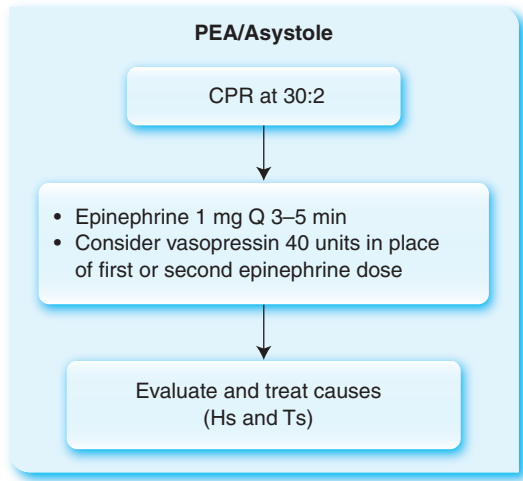
Do not resuscitate (DNR) status should be documented for any inpatient; documentation can be provided by a close relative or primary care provider to guide potential resuscitation attempts.

FIGURE 7-4 Treatment protocol for ventricular fibrillation or pulseless ventricular tachycardia.



CPR, cardiopulmonary resuscitation; IO, intraoral; IV, intravenous.

FIGURE 7-5 Treatment protocol for pulseless electrical activity and asystole.

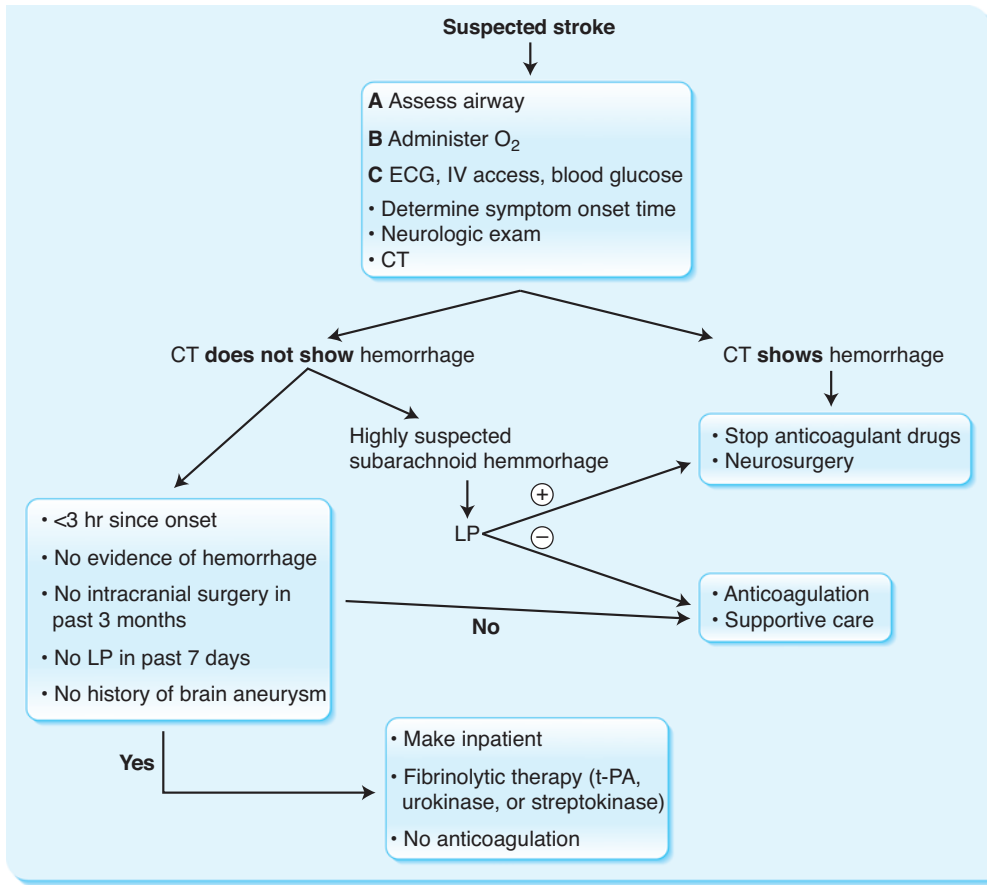


CPR, cardiopulmonary resuscitation.

MNEMONIC

Remember the common causes of PEA by the **Hs** and **Ts**: **H**ypovolemia, **H**ypoxia, **H**yperkalemia, **H**ypokalemia, **H**ypothermia, **H**ydrogen ions (acidosis), **T**amponade, **T**ension pneumothorax, **T**hrombosis (myocardial infarction or pulmonary embolism), **T**ablets/toxins (drugs).

FIGURE 7-6 Treatment algorithm for suspected acute stroke.



CT, computed tomography; ECG, electrocardiogram; IV, intravenous; LP, lumbar puncture; t-PA, tissue plasminogen activator.

IV. TRAUMATOLOGY

A. Mechanisms of injury

1. Acceleration-deceleration injuries
 - a. Seen in falls, blunt trauma, and motor vehicle accidents
 - b. Injury secondary to shearing forces in tissues and organs caused by sudden changes in momentum and sudden forces applied to tethered portions of organs (e.g., aortic arch, mesentery)
2. Penetrating injuries
 - a. Include gunshot wounds, stab wounds
 - b. Missile damages tissue in path of trajectory and causes indirect damage from fragmented bone and external objects.
 - c. Shock wave from projectile impact and thermal effects can cause additional tissue damage (particularly high-velocity projectiles).

B. Trauma assessment

1. Patient assessment is performed in an organized manner to detect all injuries and judge their severity.
2. Initial assessment focuses on patient ABCs.
3. Secure airway is established (may require intubation), oxygenation is stabilized (breathing), adequate circulation is confirmed, venous access is secured, and bleeding is controlled.
4. Secondary assessment consists of a highly detailed examination to detect all wounds, fractures, signs of internal injury, and neurologic insult.

NEXT STEP

Count and pair all entrance and exit gunshot wounds to suggest a number of insulting bullets and to deduce a path for each bullet.

NEXT STEP

Address the ABCs and secondary survey **in order**. Do not proceed to the next step of the examination until the current segment has been addressed.

ER, ICU, and Surgery

TABLE 7-4 Glasgow Coma Scale^a

Category	Condition	Points
Eye opening	Spontaneous	4
	To voice	3
	To pain	2
	None	1
Verbal response	Oriented	5
	Confused	4
	Inappropriate words	3
	Incomprehensible	2
	None	1
Motor response	Obeys commands	6
	Localizes pain	5
	Withdraws from pain	4
	Flexion with pain	3
	Extension with pain	2
	None	1

^aTotal score is calculated by adding component score for each category.

12+ : minor brain injury with probable recovery

9–11: moderate severity requiring close observation for changes

8 or less: coma; ≤ 8 after 6 hr associated with 50% mortality

5. The Glasgow Coma Scale (GCS) and revised trauma score (RTS) are used to objectify injury severity (see Table 7-4, Table 7-5).

C. Head trauma

1. Head trauma can result in cerebral or subarachnoid hemorrhage (see Chapter 8, **Neurologic Disorders**).
2. Cerebral damage can be at the point of insult (i.e., **coup**) or on the opposite side of the head (i.e., **contrecoup**).
3. **H/P** = evaluation should assess **level of consciousness**, sensation, motor activity, bowel and bladder continence, **pupil responsiveness to light** (nonresponsiveness



QUICK HIT

Loss of consciousness is considered caused by **head trauma** until ruled out.



QUICK HIT

Hypertension with bradycardia is suggestive of increased intracranial pressure (Cushing phenomenon).



MNEMONIC

Remember the key points of the neurologic examination for suspected head trauma by the **12 Ps**: **P**aired ocular movement, **P**apilledema, **P**aralysis, **P**aresthesias, **P**atellar and other reflexes, **P**ee (incontinence), **P**ressure (blood and intracranial), **P**sychological (mental) status, **P**tosis, **P**ulse rate, **P**upils (size, symmetry, reflexes), **P**yramidal signs.

TABLE 7-5 Revised Trauma Score (RTS)^a

Coded Value ^b	Glasgow Coma	Systolic Blood	
	Scale Score	Pressure	Respiratory Rate
4	13–15	>89	10–29
3	9–12	76–89	>29
2	6–8	50–75	6–9
1	4–5	1–49	1–5
0	3	0	0

^aRTS of ≥ 4 is associated with 60% survival.

^bCoded value is assigned to each measurement individually.

RTS = 0.9368 (GCS coded value) + 0.7326 (SBP coded value) + 0.2908 (RR coded value)

or unequal response suggests cerebral injury), **oculocephalic reflex** (i.e., while head of unconscious patient is turned, patient's eyes normally remained fixed at a point in space [doll's eyes]; absence of this reflex in a comatose patient suggests vestibular, cranial nerve, pontine, or medullary injury), presence of skull fracture (e.g., discoloration over mastoid, blood draining from ears or nose), and intracranial pressure

4. **Radiology** = head computed tomography (CT) should be performed for any unconscious patient to detect intracranial hemorrhage; X-rays (anteroposterior, lateral, open-mouth odontoid) or cervical CT should be performed to detect skull or cervical fractures
5. **Treatment** = maintain cerebral perfusion; decrease high intracranial pressure with mannitol, hypertonic saline, or hyperventilation; refer any intracranial injury to neurosurgery for possible decompression

D. Spinal cord trauma (see Chapter 8, *Neurologic Disorders*)

1. Neurologic injury in any segment of the spinal cord from trauma resulting from direct injury, compression, or inflammation
2. **H/P** = thorough **neurologic examination** must be performed to detect any deficits in sensation, motor activity, or autonomic function
3. **Radiology** = X-ray should examine all cervical vertebrae and other vertebral sections of spine considered at risk for injury; CT is replacing X-ray as the standard tool for assessing bony injury of the spine; magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) should be performed in any patient with a normal CT scan and abnormal neurologic examination or central spine pain to rule out ligamentous injury or cord edema
4. **Treatment** = spine must be stabilized until injury ruled out; give IV corticosteroids for 24 hr if presenting within initial 8 hr following injury (unless pregnant, isolated cauda equina injury, or child); injuries should be referred to orthopedic surgery or neurosurgery for definitive treatment

E. Neck trauma

1. Neck is divided into **zones** based on anatomic site of injury; injury can involve trachea, esophagus, vascular structures, cervical spine, or spinal cord (see Figure 7-7)
2. **H/P** = examination should focus on cervical neurologic deficits and signs of vascular damage in neck (e.g., hematoma, worsening mental status)
3. **Radiology** = potential studies include cervical X-ray, CT of cervical spine, carotid Doppler ultrasound, esophagogastroduodenoscopy (EGD), angiography, or bronchoscopy (particularly zones I and III)

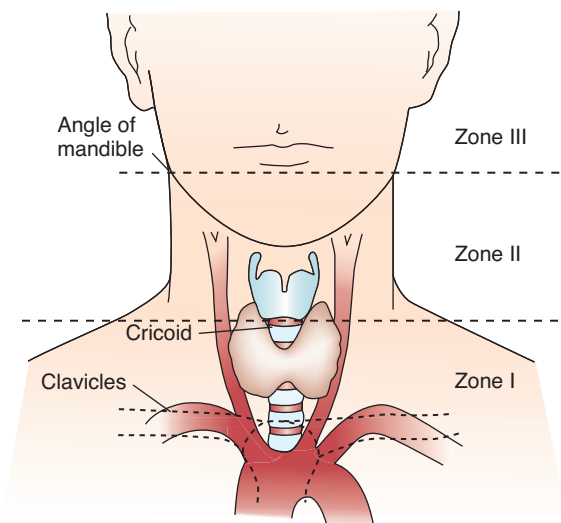
**NEXT
STEP**

Rule out **cervical fracture** and **spinal cord injury** before performing any examination requiring head movement.

QUICK HIT

The spine is considered **unstable** in any **unconscious** patient and should not be moved until neurologic injury has been ruled out with examination and radiology.

FIGURE 7-7 Zones of the neck used to determine treatment for traumatic injury.



4. Treatment

- Penetrating trauma with stable vital signs may be treated **conservatively**.
- Exploration of zones I and III is difficult and should be carried out only if vascular injury is suspected.
- Intubation is frequently required because of airway occlusion.
- Prophylactic antibiotics may be indicated because of increased risk of contamination by oropharyngeal flora.

F. Chest trauma

- Can result in injury to lungs, heart, or GI system
- Aortic rupture (caused by sudden acceleration and deceleration), tension pneumothorax, hemothorax, and cardiac tamponade are potentially fatal injuries.
- H/P = examination should look for signs of pneumothorax (e.g., hyperresonance, decreased breath sounds), flail chest (e.g., multiple rib fractures), **tamponade** (e.g., decreased breath sounds, jugular venous distention, and pulsus paradoxus), and aortic rupture (e.g., unstable vital signs); ECG and central venous pressure are useful in assessing cardiac function
- Radiology
 - CXR and neck X-rays may show pneumothorax, hemothorax, cardiac hemorrhage, aortic injury, or rib fractures.
 - Chest CT is important to assess for air leaks, hematoma formation, and pulmonary collapse.
 - EGD and bronchoscopy are used to assess injury to esophagus and bronchi.
 - Angiography can detect vascular injury.
- Treatment = urgent **thoracotomy** for thoracic cavity **hemorrhage**; **pericardiocentesis** for suspected cardiac **tamponade**; chest tube for pneumothorax or hemothorax; ventilatory support may be required for multiple rib fractures (flail chest)

G. Abdominal trauma

- Can cause injury to any abdominal organ or severe bleeding from the aorta, aortic branches, mesentery, spleen, or liver
- Penetrating trauma requires exploratory laparotomy; blunt trauma may be treated conservatively in the absence of signs of an acute abdomen.
- H/P
 - In cases where exploratory laparotomy is not automatically performed, examination must look for signs of **abdominal bleeding** (e.g., decreased blood pressure, cyanosis, anxiety, flank discoloration, severe abdominal tenderness, abdominal rigidity, shock).
 - Peritoneal lavage** (i.e., saline infused by catheter into abdominal cavity and then removed and examined) is useful for detecting presence of blood or fecal matter in uncertain cases.
- Radiology
 - CT is sensitive for detecting abdominal fluid.
 - Focused abdominal sonography for trauma (FAST) is a quick and sensitive means of determining the presence of free abdominal fluid and solid organ injury and has become the primary test performed for evaluation of blunt abdominal trauma at most trauma centers.
 - Abdominal X-ray may detect free air or large collections of blood but is of less utility than CT or FAST.
- Treatment
 - All **penetrating abdominal trauma** needs **exploratory laparotomy**.
 - Diagnosed **intra-abdominal bleeding** or visceral damage from blunt trauma requires **laparotomy** for repair if the patient is hemodynamically unstable.
 - Retroperitoneal hematomas** in the **upper abdomen** (pancreas, kidneys) require laparotomy for repair.
 - Low retroperitoneal bleeding** should be treated with **angiography** and **embolization** if caused by blunt trauma and **laparotomy** if from penetrating trauma.



QUICK HIT

Sites of significant (>1,500 mL) blood loss frequently not found by physical examination include blood left at the **injury scene**, **pleural cavity** bleeding (seen with OCR), **intra-abdominal** bleeding (seen with CT or ultrasound [US]), **pelvic** bleeding (seen with CT), and bleeding into the **thighs** (seen on X-ray).

NEXT STEP

The **hemodynamically unstable** patient with blunt trauma should be taken to the **operating room** and not to radiology, if FAST sonogram is not available in the emergency department.

H. Genitourinary and pelvic trauma

- Injury can result from initial insult or indirectly from fracture of the pelvis.
- H/P
 - Examination should look for blood at the **urethral meatus** or hematuria (indicative of urologic injury), “high-riding” prostate on rectal examination (urethral injury in men), or scrotal or penile hematoma.
 - Pelvic examination should be performed in women.
 - Patients with a **pelvis fracture** should be given a thorough **neurovascular examination**.
- Radiology
 - Intravenous pyelogram (IVP) can detect renal pelvis injury.
 - Retrograde urethrogram** or cystogram can detect urethral or bladder injury.
 - X-ray can detect pelvis fracture.
 - CT can detect renal damage and pelvic blood collections.
- Treatment
 - Penetrating injuries need surgical exploration.**
 - Urethral, intraperitoneal bladder, and renal pelvis injuries require cystoscopy and surgical repair; **extraperitoneal bladder** and **renal parenchymal injuries** may be treated **nonoperatively**.
 - Pelvic fractures may be treated nonoperatively if stable and with open reduction and internal fixation when unstable.



QUICK HIT

A Foley catheter should **never** be placed in a patient with a **suspected urethral rupture** (e.g., blood seen at the urethral meatus, high-riding prostate on rectal examination) to avoid further urologic injury unless performed under cystoscopic guidance.

I. Extremity trauma

- Injury can involve **bones, vasculature, soft tissues, or nerves** in extremities.
- H/P = a thorough **neurovascular examination** must be performed; gross deformities are indicative of fracture.
- Radiology** = X-ray or CT detects fractures; angiography can detect vascular injury; MRI may be required to detect soft tissue injuries
- Treatment
 - Superficial or soft tissue wounds require irrigation and approximation (e.g., sutures, Steri-Strips, dermatologic adhesive).
 - Bone injury alone is treated with immobilization, if stable and internal, or external fixation, if unstable.
 - Combined bone, vessel, and nerve injuries are treated by fracture repair followed by vascular and neurologic repair.
 - Large wounds frequently require debridement or amputation.

NEXT STEP

Perform a **fasciotomy** in any patient with a combined bone and neurovascular extremity injury because of the high risk of **compartment syndrome**.

NEXT STEP

Serial neurovascular examinations should be performed following any type of treatment for an extremity to detect an evolving or iatrogenic neurologic injury.

J. Trauma during pregnancy

- Leading cause of **nonobstetric maternal death**
- Anatomic differences
 - Inferior vena cava (IVC) compression by the uterus makes pregnant women more susceptible to **poor cardiac output** following injury.
 - Decreased risk of GI injury from lower abdominal trauma because of **superior displacement of bowel** by the uterus (but greater risk of GI injury from upper abdominal or chest trauma)
- Low risk of fetal death with minor injuries (high risk in life-threatening injuries)
- Trauma increases the risk of **placental abruption**.
- H/P = immediate assessment of cardiovascular stability, mother should be evaluated for injury **before** the fetus, examination should be performed with mother in **left lateral decubitus position** to minimize IVC compression, obstetric assessment performed following maternal stabilization
- Treatment = needs of **mother** are **prioritized**; caesarian section should be performed for fetuses >24 weeks of gestation that are in **distress** or in any mother with **cardiovascular compromise** not responsive to early cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR); mother should be monitored for 4 to 48 hr (based on severity of trauma) to detect fetal distress; **RhoGAM** should be given to any Rh⁻ mother with bleeding



QUICK HIT

Criteria that should be met in post-traumatic pregnant women before discharge are **contractions no more frequent than every 10 minutes, no vaginal bleeding, no abdominal pain, and a normal fetal heart tracing**.

**QUICK HIT**

Pathognomonic injuries for child abuse include multiple simultaneous facial injuries, bruises in patterns of objects, bruises over trunk and abdomen, multiple burns (especially in shape of object), rib or skull fractures, long bone fractures in non-ambulatory children.

**QUICK HIT**

A physician who has reason to suspect child abuse but does not report it or act to protect the child **may be held liable** for subsequent injury or mortality.

**QUICK HIT**

Most women in an abusive relationship are killed **when trying to leave their abuser**.

**QUICK HIT**

Another health care worker (chaperone) must be present when a sexual examination is performed, and the patient should be made to feel as comfortable as possible with the history and physical examination.

**V. ABUSE AND SEXUAL ASSAULT****A. Abuse**

1. Most frequently seen in children, spouses or partners (especially women), and the elderly
2. Abuse can be physical, emotional, sexual, or exploitative; neglect
3. **Child abuse**
 - a. Neglect, the most prevalent form of child abuse, constitutes the **failure to provide** the physical, emotional, educational, and medical needs of a child.
 - b. **H/P** = several red flags should raise suspicion in **history** (e.g., inconsistent with injury, vague details, changes in story, blame placed on others, implausibility), **parental actions** (e.g., aggressive nature, delay in seeking treatment, lack of emotional attachment or concern), and **physical examination** (e.g., injuries inconsistent with history, multiple injuries at various stages of healing, pathognomonic injuries, signs of neglect, abnormal behavioral responses to being examined)
 - c. **Treatment** = physician has **obligation** to report any suspected cases of abuse to child protective services
 - d. Suspected cases should be **well documented**.
4. **Spousal or partner abuse**
 - a. **H/P** = similar red flags as for child abuse; presentation to physician frequently for a vague symptom (e.g., chronic abdominal pain, headaches, depression, recurrent sexually transmitted diseases); **history** may be **inconsistent with injury**; partner may be very attentive or vigilant during visit
 - b. Patient should be interviewed **without** partner present.
 - c. **Treatment** = initial approach should focus on safety of patient; provide victim with information on safety plans, escape strategies, legal rights, and shelters; care should be taken not to force victim into any action; reporting of abuse is typically nonmandatory (unless it involves child abuse)
5. **Elder abuse**
 - a. Abuse in a patient >60 years of age occurring at the hands of a caregiver (e.g., family, friends, institution)
 - b. **H/P** = red flags as seen with child and domestic abuse; multiple bruises or fractures, malnutrition, depression, or **signs of neglect**
 - c. **Treatment** = placement in a safe facility; facilitate contact with social services that can help facilitate safe care; physician has **obligation** to report suspected cases to an official state agency

B. Sexual assault

1. **Nonconsensual** sexual activity with physical contact; forced intercourse is **rape**
2. Victims can be children or adults.
3. **H/P**
 - a. **Detailed history** must be collected and thoroughly documented in cases where patient reports assault.
 - b. Examination should focus on the entire body, with particular attention to genitals, anus, and mouth to look for signs of assault.
 - c. Patients who have not admitted to being assaulted may appear depressed or very uncomfortable with examination.
4. **Labs**
 - a. Collect oral, vaginal, and penile cultures to test for sexually transmitted diseases.
 - b. In cases of rape, all injuries must be well documented and vaginal fluid and pubic hair should be collected for evidence (i.e., rape kit).
 - c. Pregnancy testing should be performed to look for incidental conception occurring during assault.
5. **Treatment** = careful and well-documented collection of all details and evidence important to future follow-up and legal action; referral to **social support systems** and **counseling** is very important; appropriate treatment should be given for infections

Basic Critical Care

I. ISSUES IN THE INTENSIVE CARE UNIT (ICU)

A. Role of the ICU

1. Provides intensive nursing care for critically ill patients
2. Patients may require intubation, ventilation, **invasive monitoring**, vasoactive and antiarrhythmic medications, and close nursing supervision.

B. Pulmonary concerns

1. **Intubation and ventilation** required when a patient is at risk for airway obstruction or needs support in breathing
2. Ventilator support is required in patients to maintain respiratory effort or in poor-oxygenation states (see Chapter 2, **Pulmonary Disorders**).

C. Invasive monitoring

1. **Arterial line (A-line)**
 - a. Placed in either radial, femoral, axillary, brachial, or dorsalis pedis artery
 - b. Used to record more accurate blood pressure than blood pressure cuff
2. **Pulmonary artery catheter (Swan-Ganz catheter)**
 - a. Catheter inserted through subclavian or jugular vein; runs through heart to pulmonary artery
 - b. Measures pressures in **right atrium** and **pulmonary artery**; balloon can be inflated at catheter tip to fill pulmonary artery lumen and measure wedge pressure (equivalent to **left atrium pressure**)
 - c. Also may measure **cardiac output**, mixed venous O₂ saturation, systemic vascular resistance



QUICK HIT

The **left subclavian** and **right internal jugular** veins provide the easiest access for Swan-Ganz catheter insertion.

II. HEMODYNAMIC STABILITY

A. Transfusions

1. Infusion of blood products to treat insufficient supply of a given blood component (see Table 7-6)
2. ABO blood groups
 - a. Blood is defined by A and B antigens and antibodies to absent antigens.
 - b. Blood with **both** antigens **will not have antibodies** to either antigen in plasma (i.e., AB blood type).
 - c. Blood with **neither** antigen will have **antibodies to both** antigens in plasma (i.e., O blood type).
 - d. Transfusions must be matched for each patient's particular ABO blood type.
3. **Rh blood groups**
 - a. Patient are either Rh antigen positive (Rh⁺) or negative (Rh⁻).
 - b. Rh⁻ patients have **antibodies to Rh factor** in plasma.
 - c. Transfusions must be matched for each patient's Rh factor.
4. **Transfusion reactions**
 - a. Reaction that occurs when incompatible blood is infused into a patient
 - b. Types
 - (1) **Nonhemolytic febrile**: most common reaction (3% of transfusions); caused by antibodies to human leukocyte antigens (HLAs); onset 1 to 6 hours after transfusion; fevers, chills, rigors, malaise; treated with acetaminophen; recurrence is uncommon
 - (2) **Acute hemolytic**: 1 in 250,000 transfusions; caused by ABO incompatibility; onset during transfusion; fever, chills, nausea, flushing, tachycardia, tachypnea, hypotension; severe destruction of donor RBCs; requires aggressive supportive care



QUICK HIT

AB⁺ patients are "**universal recipients**;" they can **receive any** donor blood type because they have no antibodies to blood antigens in their plasma, but they can **donate only** to other AB⁺ patients.



QUICK HIT

O⁻ patients are "**universal donors**." RBCs from these patients will not induce antibody reactions in other patients, but they can **receive only** blood from other O⁻ donors.



QUICK HIT

Clerical errors are the most common cause of transfusion reactions.

TABLE 7-6 Types of Blood Products Used in Transfusions

Blood Product	Definition	Indications
Whole blood	Donor blood not separated into components (full volume blood)	Rarely used except for massive transfusions for severe blood loss
Packed RBCs	RBCs separated from other donor blood components (2/3 volume of transfusion unit is RBCs)	Product of choice for treatment of low Hct due to blood loss or anemia
Autologous blood	Blood donated by patient before elective surgery or other treatment Blood is frozen until needed by patient	Elective surgery or chemotherapy
FFP	Plasma from which RBCs have been separated	Warfarin overdose, clotting factor deficiency, DIC, TTP
Cryoprecipitate	Clotting factor and vWF-rich precipitate collected during thawing of FFP Same indications as FFP	Smaller volume than FFP Preferable to FFP in cases where large transfusion volume is unwanted
Platelets	Platelets separated from other plasma components	Thrombocytopenia not due to rapid platelet destruction
Clotting factors	Concentrations of a specific clotting factor pooled from multiple donors	Specific clotting factor deficiencies (e.g., hemophiliac)

DIC, disseminated intravascular coagulation; FFP, fresh frozen plasma; Hct, hematocrit; RBCs, red blood cells; TTP, thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura; vWF, von Willebrand factor.

- (3) **Delayed hemolytic:** caused by antibodies to Kidd or D (Rh) antigens; onset 2 to 10 days after transfusion; slight fever, falling H/H, mild increase in unconjugated bilirubin; no acute therapy needed but determine responsible antibody type to help prevent future reactions
 - (4) **Anaphylactic:** 1 in 50,000 transfusions; rapid onset of shock and hypotension; may be caused by anti-IgA IgG antibodies (in patient with IgA deficiency) that bind IgA on the surface of donor RBCs and trigger mast cell degranulation; requires epinephrine, volume maintenance, and airway maintenance
 - (5) **Minor allergic reactions:** 3% of transfusions; caused by plasma present in donor blood; urticaria; treated with diphenhydramine
 - (6) **Post-transfusion purpura:** thrombocytopenia developing 5 to 10 days after transfusion; occurs primarily in women sensitized by pregnancy; treated with IVIG or plasmapheresis
- c. **H/P** = occurs in patient receiving transfusion; pain in vein receiving transfusion, chills; flushing, pruritus; fever, jaundice
 - d. **Labs** = both patient's and donor's blood should be rechecked and retyped
 - e. **Treatment** = acetaminophen, diphenhydramine, stop transfusion; mannitol or bicarbonate may be required in severe reactions to prevent hemolytic debris from clogging vessels; vasopressors may be required if significant hypotension develops

B. Vasoactive medications

1. Drugs used to **maintain hemodynamic stability** by increasing blood pressure (i.e., vasopressors) and cardiac output (i.e., inotropes) or decreasing blood pressure and cardiac output (i.e., vasodilators and negative inotropic agents)
2. Vasopressors frequently used in cases of shock and insufficient cardiac output (see Table 7-7)
3. Vasodilators reduce vascular tone; negative inotropic drugs decrease cardiac contractility (see Chapter 1, **Cardiovascular Disorders**).

TABLE 7-7 Vasopressors and Inotropes Commonly Used in the Intensive Care Unit

Drug	Mechanism	Effects	Indication
Phenylephrine	Agonist for α -adrenergic receptors ($\alpha_1 > \alpha_2$)	Vasoconstriction, reflex bradycardia	Sepsis, shock
Norepinephrine	Agonist for α_1 - and β_1 -adrenergic receptors	Vasoconstriction, mildly increased contractility	Shock
Epinephrine	Agonist for primarily β_1 and, to a lesser extent, α_1 - and β_2 -adrenergic receptors; α effects (vasoconstriction) predominate at high doses	Increased contractility (increased CO), vasodilation at low doses; increased contractility and vasoconstriction at higher doses	Anaphylactic shock, septic shock, post-bypass hypotension
Dopamine	Agonist for β_1 -adrenergic receptors (low dose) and α -adrenergic receptors (high dose)	Increased heart rate and contractility (increased CO), vasoconstriction (high dose only)	Shock (renal sparing)
Dobutamine	Agonist for β_1 -adrenergic receptors	Increased heart rate and contractility (increased CO), mild reflex vasodilation	CHF , cardiogenic shock
Isoproterenol	Agonist for β_1 - and β_2 -adrenergic receptors	Increased heart rate and contractility (increased CO), vasodilation	Contractility stimulant in cardiac arrest
Vasopressin	ADH analogue with weak pressor effect	Vasoconstriction	Resistant septic shock, second vasopressor

ADH, antidiuretic hormone; CHF, congestive heart failure; CO, cardiac output.

Basic Surgical Concerns

Most surgical issues are discussed in the chapters concerning the appropriate systems. The following sections reflect concerns not addressed elsewhere.

I. PREOPERATIVE AND POSTOPERATIVE ISSUES

A. Preoperative risk assessment

1. In elective surgery, a patient must be assessed before operation to determine if he or she will tolerate a procedure and what the likelihood is of an adverse cardiopulmonary event.
2. **Cardiac risk**
 - a. Cardiac function (i.e., ejection fraction, rate, rhythm), exercise capacity, cardiac disease (e.g., congestive heart failure, CAD, recent MI), and age assessed before surgery
 - b. Young, healthy patients may be cleared with a normal ECG by a primary care physician.
 - c. Other patients should be cleared by a cardiologist and/or following appropriate cardiac functional testing.
 - d. Findings consistent with high surgical risk for a cardiac event
 - (1) **Age:** >70 years
 - (2) **Pulmonary:** forced expiratory volume in 1 second (FEV_1)/forced vital capacity (FVC) <70% expected, P_{CO_2} >45 mm Hg, pulmonary edema
 - (3) **Cardiac:** MI within past 30 days, poorly controlled nonsinus arrhythmia, pathologic Q waves on preoperative ECG, severe valvular disease, decompensated congestive heart failure with poor ejection fraction
 - (4) **Renal:** creatinine (Cr) >2 or 50% increase from baseline
 - (5) **Surgery type:** vascular, anticipated high blood loss
 - e. Patients determined to be at **high risk** for cardiac complications should **not be operated on** until cardiac function is stabilized unless surgical need is emergent.
 - f. Minimally invasive techniques may be appropriate in high-risk patients.

**QUICK HIT**

The greatest risk for postoperative MI is **within the initial 48 hr** after surgery.

- g. Postoperative noninvasive cardiac monitoring is frequently recommended for patients determined to have increased cardiac risk.
3. **Pulmonary concerns**
- Smoking** increases risk of infection and postoperative ventilation.
 - Smoking should be stopped before surgery; nicotine replacement may help patients stop smoking 8 weeks before surgery.
 - Patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) should be given preoperative antibiotics if showing signs of infection.
 - A preoperative **CXR** is an important screening tool in any patient age >50 years, a history of pulmonary disease, or anticipated surgical time >3 hr.
 - Patients with respiratory concerns (e.g., smokers, COPD, myasthenia gravis) should have pulmonary function tests performed to assess their respiratory capacity and to anticipate the need for lengthy ventilation and tracheostomy placement.
 - Incentive spirometry**, deep breathing exercises, pain control, and **physical therapy** are all very important postoperatively to help prevent **atelectasis, pneumonia, and pulmonary embolism**.
 - Bronchodilators and inhaled steroids may be beneficial in postoperative patients with preexisting disease.
4. **Renal concerns**
- Patients with renal insufficiency may have electrolyte abnormalities, anemia, or poor immune function.
 - Dialysis** may be required before surgery in some patients with renal insufficiency.
 - Acetylcysteine** can be used as a renal protectant in patients with renal insufficiency who are expected to receive intraoperative contrast.
5. **Hepatic concerns**
- Mortality increases with increased bilirubin, decreased albumin, prolonged prothrombin time (PT), and encephalopathy.
 - Electrolyte disorders, coagulopathy, and encephalopathy should be corrected before operation.
 - Surgery should be avoided (unless emergent) in patients with significant hepatitis, cirrhosis, or extrahepatic manifestations of liver disease.
6. **Diabetes mellitus (DM)**
- Diabetic** patients have increased infection risk, worse wound healing, increased cardiac complication risk, and increased postoperative mortality.
 - Blood sugar levels should be well controlled via subcutaneous insulin sliding scale and frequent glucose checks; glycemic fluctuations can increase postoperatively and may require greater insulin administration than at baseline.
7. **Coagulation concerns**
- A history of **abnormal bleeding** or **easy bruising** should raise concerns for a coagulopathy (increased risk of bleeding complications intraoperatively and postoperatively).
 - Patients taking **warfarin** before surgery should **stop** their warfarin use **3 to 4 days** before surgery; international normalized ratio (INR) should be kept <1.5 for any surgery with significant bleeding risk.
 - Fresh frozen plasma (FFP) and vitamin K may be used for rapid reversal of warfarin therapy.
 - Patients with recent **thromboembolism** should be anticoagulated with **heparin** or **low molecular weight heparin (LMWH)** after stopping warfarin use until surgery and then restarted on warfarin postoperatively; heparin or LMWH should be restarted 12 hr postoperatively and continued until a therapeutic INR (>2.0) is reached.
 - Patients not on prior warfarin therapy may be anticoagulated with **aspirin, antiplatelet drugs, or LMWH** per surgeon's preference.
 - In general, warfarin, heparin, and LMWH are associated with a **lower risk** of postoperative **thromboembolism** than aspirin or antiplatelet medications but carry a **greater risk** of postoperative **bleeding complications**.

**QUICK HIT**

LMWH should not be restarted for at least 2 hr after removal of an epidural catheter to avoid formation of an epidural hematoma.

TABLE 7-8 Causes of Postoperative Fever

Cause	When Seen	Diagnosis	Treatment
Pneumonia	After 3rd postoperative day	Productive cough, positive sputum Gram stain or culture, infiltrates or consolidation on CXR	Antibiotics, bronchoscopy
Urinary tract infection	3–5 days postoperatively	Urine Gram stain or culture, urine nitrates, presence of Foley catheter	Antibiotics, remove Foley
Wound/catheter infection	5–8 days postoperatively	Red, warm surgical wound; drainage from wound (possibly purulent)	Antibiotics, irrigation and drainage, surgical debridement
Deep vein thrombosis	Any time postoperatively	Lower extremity warmth and tenderness; US demonstrates noncompressible vein	Anticoagulation, IVC filter
Pulmonary embolism	Any time postoperatively	Dyspnea, tachycardia, pleuritic chest pain, increased A-a gradient, V/Q mismatch	Anticoagulation, IVC filter
Medications	Any time postoperatively	Onset linked to new medication; antibiotics are frequent cause	Stop offending agent
Transfusion reaction	Any time postoperatively	Begins after initiation of transfusion; confirmed by donor/recipient blood compatibility workup	Acetaminophen and diphenhydramine, stop transfusion if symptoms persist

A-a, alveolar-arterial; CXR, chest X-ray; IVC, inferior vena cava; US, ultrasound; V/Q, ventilation-perfusion.

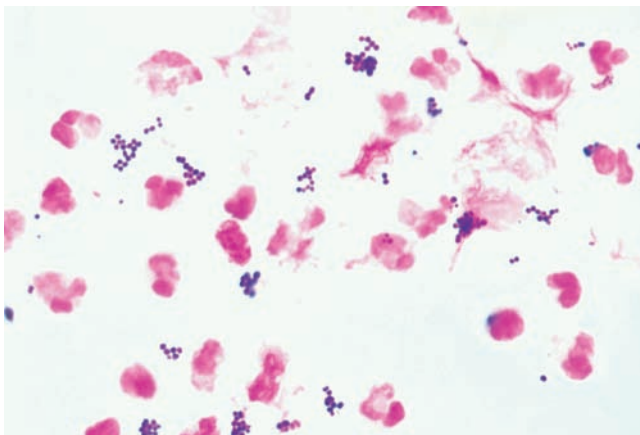
B. Postoperative fever

1. Fever develops postoperatively from pulmonary, infectious, vascular, or pharmacologic causes (see Table 7-8, Figure 7-8).
2. Any postoperative fever should be evaluated with a CXR, complete blood count (CBC), and urinalysis; **urine and blood cultures** should also be performed for any fever beyond the first postoperative day.

C. Wounds and healing

1. Types of wounds
 - a. **Clean:** surgical incisions through disinfected skin; no GI or respiratory entry; 1% to 3% infection risk

FIGURE 7-8 Gram stain for a patient with staphylococcal bacteremia.



Note organization of bacteria in grapelike clusters.
 (From McClatchey, K. D. [2002]. *Clinical Laboratory Medicine* [2nd ed., Figure 51-1]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

QUICK HIT

Postoperative fevers are caused by the 5 Ws: **Wind** (pneumonia), **Water** (urinary tract infection), **Walking** (deep vein thrombosis, pulmonary embolism), **Wound** (wound infection), and **Wonder drugs** (medications).

QUICK HIT

Atelectasis is no longer considered to be a cause of postoperative fever.

- b. **Clean-contaminated:** similar to clean wounds but with GI or respiratory entry; 2% to 8% infection risk
 - c. **Contaminated:** gross contact of wound with GI or genitourinary contents; traumatic wounds; 6% to 15% infection risk
 - d. **Dirty:** established infection in tissue before incision; continued infection following procedure, including debridement; ranges from 7% to 40% infection risk
2. **Wound approximation and healing**
 - a. **Primary intention:** low risk of infection (clean and clean-contaminated wounds or contaminated wounds with good clean-up in healthy patient); full closure of tissue and skin performed
 - b. **Secondary intention:** higher risk for infection; wound left open and allowed to heal through epithelialization
 - c. **Delayed primary closure:** heavily contaminated wounds; left open for a few days and cleaned before wound closure
 - d. **Skin grafts:** portion of epidermis and dermis from other body site transferred to wounds that are too large to close by themselves; large deeper grafts with revascularization are called flaps
 3. Closed wounds require dressings for **initial 48 hr** after closure.
 4. Open wounds require debridement and specialized dressings.
 5. Wound healing can be inhibited by malnutrition, corticosteroids, smoking, hepatic or renal failure, or DM.



II. SURGICAL EMERGENCIES

A. Acute abdomen

1. Severe abdominal pain and rigidity lasting up to several hours that requires prompt treatment (see Table 7-9)

TABLE 7-9 Causes of Acute Abdomen

Condition	History and Physical	Diagnosis	Treatment
Obstruction/ strangulation (from adhesions, hernias, tumors)	Previous surgery , abdominal distention, crampy pain, nausea, vomiting, high-pitched bowel sounds	CT or AXR shows distended loops of bowel and air-fluid levels; barium studies may locate site of obstruction	Surgical lysis of adhesions , hernia repair, surgical excision of tumors
Diverticulitis	Left lower quadrant pain (may progress over several days), blood in stool	CT or AXR may show free air from perforation; increased WBC	Surgical repair
Massive GI hemorrhage (perforation)	Sudden severe pain, hematemesis , hema- tochezia , hypotension	Colonoscopy or EGD visualizes lesion; technetium scan may detect smaller bleeding sources	Octreotide, angiography with embolization , surgical repair of detectable site of bleeding
Appendicitis	Right lower quadrant and periumbilical pain, psoas sign, rectal examination tenderness	Increased WBC; thickened appendix or fecalith on CT if unruptured; free air on CT or AXR if perforated	Appendectomy
Mesenteric ischemia	Severe abdominal pain out of proportion to examination , bloody diarrhea	Bowel wall thickening and air within bowel wall on CT; increased WBC and serum lactate	NPO, antibiotics, resection of necrotic bowel
Pancreatitis	Upper abdominal and back pain, nausea, vomiting, history of gallstones or alcoholism	CT shows inflamed pancreas; increased amylase and lipase	Nasogastric tube, NPO, analgesics
Ruptured ectopic pregnancy	Amenorrhea , lower abdominal pain, possible vaginal bleeding, or palpable pelvic mass	US unable to locate intrauterine pregnancy in presence of positive urine pregnancy test	Surgical excision
Pelvic inflammatory disease	Lower abdominal pain, vaginal discharge, cervical motion pain	Increased WBC; positive serology for <i>Chlamydia</i> or <i>Neisseria gonorrhoeae</i>	Antibiotics, treat sexual partners

AXR, abdominal X-ray; CT, computed tomography; EGD, esophagogastroduodenoscopy; GI, gastrointestinal; NPO, nothing by mouth; US, ultrasound; WBC, white blood cell count.

2. **H/P** = **abdominal pain** (severe or crampy, rapidly or gradually progressive), nausea, vomiting, possible history of recent surgery; fever, abdominal tenderness (with possible **rebound tenderness**, rigidity, **guarding**, spasm, or mass), possible hypotension; pelvic or testicular examination should be performed to rule out gynecologic or testicular condition
3. **Labs** = increased white blood cell count (WBC) in cases of infection or bowel perforation; increased amylase in pancreatitis; increased liver function tests with hepatobiliary dysfunction
4. **Radiology** = abdominal or pelvic CT or abdominal radiograph helpful to recognize bowel gas patterns, air collections, and calcifications; IVP, barium studies, or ultrasound (US) may also be helpful
5. **Treatment** = adequate pain control; **emergent laparotomy** or **laparoscopy** may be needed depending on pathology

B. Malignant hyperthermia

1. Rare genetic disorder in which certain anesthetics (e.g., halothane, succinylcholine) induce hyperthermia (104°F/40°C)
2. **H/P** = symptoms begin after anesthesia use; rigidity, cyanosis, tachycardia, continually rising **body temperature**
3. Uncontrolled hyperthermia can lead to arrhythmias, disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC), acidosis, cerebral dysfunction, and electrolyte abnormalities.
4. **Labs** = mixed acidosis acutely; abnormal increase in muscle contraction following in vitro treatment with halothane or caffeine (testing performed as outpatient)
5. **Treatment** = evaporative cooling (i.e., patient sprayed with water and placed in front of fans), cold inhaled O₂, cold GI lavage, cool IV fluids, **dantrolene**, **stop offending agent**



III. TRANSPLANTATION

A. Indications and selection

1. Organ transplantation is considered in cases of **end-stage organ failure** that are untreatable by other means or are incompatible with survival without treatment by extraordinary means (e.g., frequent dialysis).
2. **Transplant frequency** (see Table 7-10)
 - a. Renal transplants are the most common type.
 - b. Liver, bone marrow, pancreas, heart, lung, skin, and cornea transplants also performed
 - c. Small bowel transplant has been performed on a very limited basis with limited success.
3. **Donor selection**
 - a. Donors are most frequently brain-dead or living voluntary donors without cancer, sepsis, or organ insufficiency.
 - b. Donors are selected based on **ABO blood group compatibility**, **crossmatch compatibility** (i.e., presence of antidonor antibodies on recipient T cells), and **HLA antigen matching**.
 - c. HLA antigen matching is **more important** for **kidney** and **pancreas** transplants and **less important** for **heart** and **liver**.
4. Transplant rejection can be hyperacute, acute, or chronic (see Table 7-11).
5. Patients must be given **immunosuppressive** agents to reduce risk of rejection (see Table 7-12).
6. Transplant recipients have greater risks of infection (secondary to immunosuppression), **cancer** (e.g., skin, B-cell lymphoma, oral squamous cell, cervical, vaginal), and infertility.

B. Graft versus host disease

1. Reaction of **donor immune cells** in transplanted bone marrow to host cells
2. Host is immunocompromised to avoid transplant rejection and is unable to prevent attack by donor cells.



QUICK HIT

Individuals with a specific infection (e.g., **hepatitis**) may be used as donors for patients with the same infection if no significant donor organ injury is detected.

TABLE 7-10 Common Types of Organ Transplantation

Type	Indications	Contraindications	Results
Bone marrow	Aplastic anemia, induction chemotherapy , leukemia, lymphoma, hematopoietic disorders	Donor–recipient mismatch, recipient with high risk for developing post-transplant infection	Improved quality of life and long-term survival if surviving >1 yr post-transplant
Heart (may be performed with lung transplant)	Severe heart disease (CAD, congenital defects, cardiomyopathy) with estimated death within 2 yr without transplant	Pulmonary hypertension, smoking (prior 6 months), renal insufficiency, COPD, >70 yr of age, terminal illness	Acute rejection common, higher mortality risk in initial 6 months, 70% 5-yr survival
Lung	COPD (particularly α_1 -antitrypsin deficiency), primary pulmonary hypertension, cystic fibrosis ; estimated death within 2 yr	Smoking (prior 6 months), poor cardiac function, renal or hepatic insufficiency, terminal illness, >65 yr of age, HIV	Most have at least one episode of acute rejection, pneumonia common, 56% 3-yr survival, chronic rejection common
Liver	Chronic hepatitis B or C , alcoholic cirrhosis, primary biliary cirrhosis, primary sclerosing cholangitis, biliary atresia, progressive Wilson disease	Alcoholism, multiple suicide attempts (e.g., acetaminophen poisoning), liver cancer, cirrhosis from chronic hepatitis (may receive transplants from donors with hepatitis)	40% acute rejection, success correlates with patient health at time of surgery (generally 60%–70% 5-yr survival)
Renal	End-stage renal disease requiring dialysis (glomerulonephritis, DM, polycystic kidney disease, interstitial nephritis, renal hypertension)	Stable health (dialysis is always an option for unstable patients)	Living-donor kidneys have 20% acute rejection and 91% 5-yr survival; cadaver kidneys have 40% acute rejection and 85% 5-yr survival
Pancreas (frequently performed with renal transplant)	DM type I with renal failure	Age >60 yr, CAD, PVD, obesity, DM type II	80% 3-yr survival, acute rejection common

CAD, coronary artery disease; COPD, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease; DM, diabetes mellitus; HIV, human immunodeficiency virus; PVD, peripheral vascular disease.

- Risk factors** = HLA antigen mismatch, old age, donor–host gender disparity, **immunosuppression**
- H/P** = **maculopapular rash**, abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, recurrent infections, easy bleeding
- Labs** = increased liver function tests, decreased immunoglobulin levels, decreased platelets; biopsy of skin or liver detects an inflammatory reaction with significant cell death

TABLE 7-11 Forms of Transplant Rejection

Type	When Seen	Cause	Treatment
Hyperacute	Initial 24 hr after transplantation	Antidonor antibodies in recipient	Untreatable ; should be avoided by proper crossmatching
Acute	6 days–1 yr after transplantation	Antidonor T-cell proliferation in recipient	Frequently reversible through immunosuppressive agents
Chronic	>1 yr after transplantation	Development of multiple cellular and humoral immune reactions to donor tissue	Usually untreatable; immunosuppression may serve some role

TABLE 7-12 Immunosuppressive Drugs to Prevent Transplant Rejection

Drug	Indication	Mechanism	Adverse Effects
Cyclosporine	Rejection prevention	Helper T-cell inhibition	Nephrotoxicity , androgenic effects, HTN
Azathioprine	Rejection prevention	Inhibits T-cell proliferation	Leukopenia
Tacrolimus	Rejection prevention and reversal	Inhibitor of T-cell function	Nephrotoxicity , neurotoxicity
Corticosteroids	Rejection prevention and reversal	Inhibits all leukocyte activity	Cushing syndrome, weight gain, AVN of bone
Muromonab-D3 (OKT3)	Rejection reversal and early rejection maintenance	Inhibitor of T-cell function and depletes T-cell population	Induces one-time cytokine release (fever, bronchospasm), leukopenia; limited to short-term therapy
Rapamycin	Rejection prevention	Helper T-cell inhibition	Thrombocytopenia, hyperlipidemia
Mycophenolic acid	Rejection prevention	Inhibits T-cell proliferation	Leukopenia , GI toxicity
Antithymocyte globulin	Rejection reversal and early rejection maintenance	Depletes T-cell population	Limited to short-term therapy , serum sickness
Hydroxychloroquine	Chronic graft vs. host disease	Inhibits antigen processing	Visual disturbances
Thalidomide	Chronic graft vs. host disease	Inhibits T-cell function and migration	Sedation, constipation, teratogenic

AVN, avascular necrosis; GI, gastrointestinal; HTN, hypertension.

- Treatment** = corticosteroids, tacrolimus, and mycophenolate are useful for decreasing graft response; thalidomide and hydroxychloroquine are used in chronic disease
- Complications** = patients without an early response to therapy frequently develop **chronic** disease with skin sclerosis, hepatic insufficiency, GI ulceration, and pulmonary fibrosis

I. NORMAL NEUROLOGIC AND NEUROVASCULAR FUNCTION

A. Cerebral vasculature

1. The circle of Willis is a system of collateral vessels that supplies all regions of the brain (see Figure 8-1).
2. Symptoms seen with a stroke can be used to determine the site of insult based on association with a particular region of the brain (see Table 8-1).

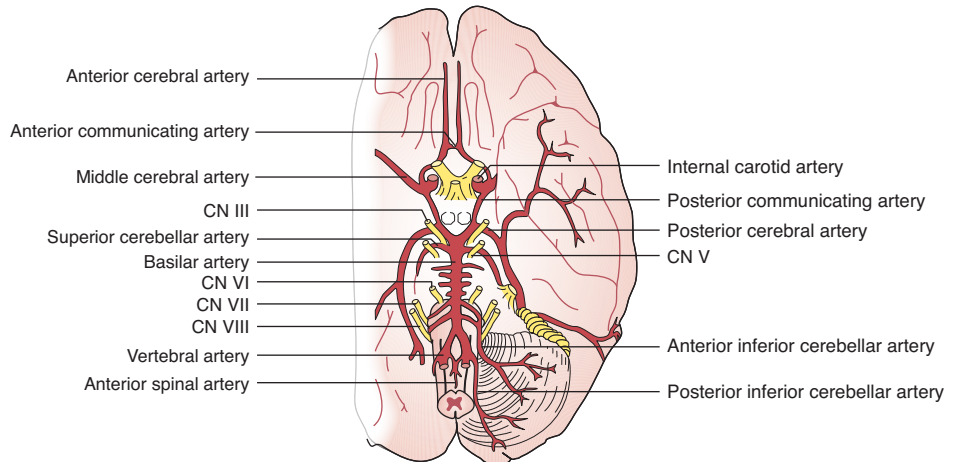
B. Neurologic organization

1. Sensory and motor neurons are organized into distinct tracts in the spinal cord (see Figure 8-2, Table 8-2).

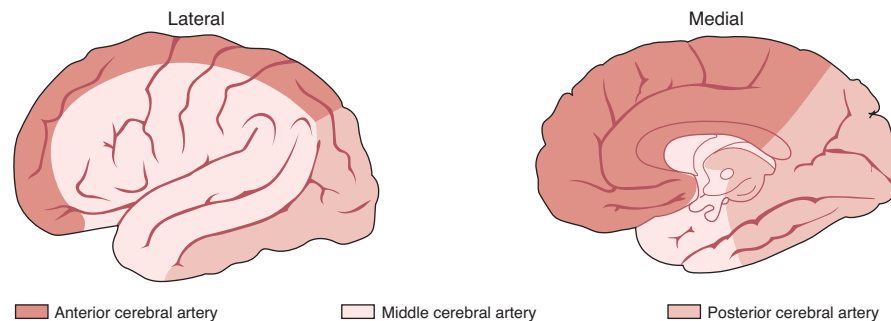
FIGURE 8-1

Arteries of the brain including the circle of Willis and their anatomic relationship to selected cranial nerves.

A. Arteries of the base of the brain and brain stem



B. Arterial blood supply to the cortex



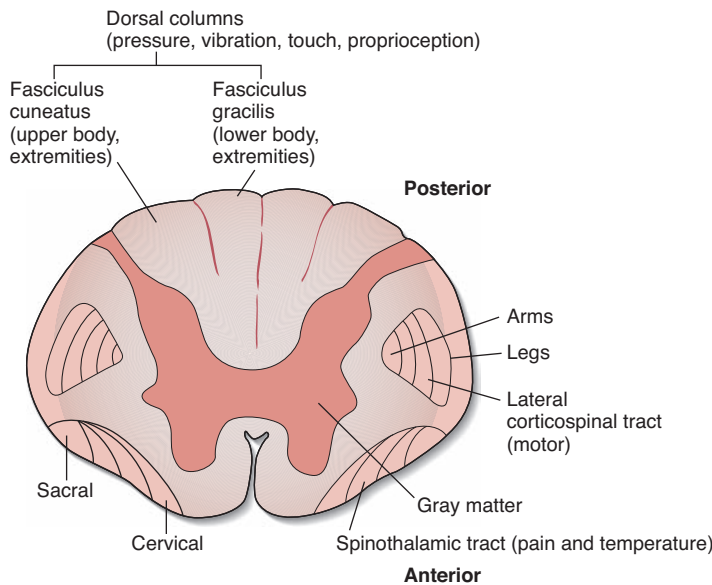
CN, cranial nerve.

(From Mehta, S., Milder, E. A., Mirachi, A. J., & Milder, E. [2003]. *Step-Up: A High-Yield, Systems-Based Review for the USMLE Step 1* [2nd ed.]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.)

TABLE 8-1 Regions of the Brain Supplied by Vessels in the Circle of Willis

Artery	Region of Brain Supplied
Anterior cerebral artery (ACA)	Medial and superior surfaces and frontal lobes
Middle cerebral artery (MCA)	Lateral surfaces and temporal lobes
Posterior cerebral artery (PCA)	Inferior surfaces and occipital lobes
Basilar artery	Midbrain, brainstem (pons)
Anterior inferior cerebellar artery (AICA)	Brainstem (pons) and parts of cerebellum
Posterior inferior cerebellar artery (PICA)	Brainstem (medulla) and parts of cerebellum

FIGURE 8-2 Primary neuronal pathways of the spinal cord in a thoracic cross section.



(From Le, T., Amin, C., Bhushan, V., & Choo, E. [2001]. *First Aid for the USMLE Step 2* [3rd ed.]. New York: McGraw-Hill; with permission.)

TABLE 8-2 Primary Sensory and Motor Tracts of the Spinal Cord

Pathway	Location	First-Order Neurons	Second-Order Neurons	Function
Dorsal columns	Posterior spinal cord	Enter at ipsilateral dorsal horn, ascend in fasciculus gracilis and cuneatus, synapse in nucleus gracilis and cuneatus	Decussate at medulla, ascend as medial lemniscus	Two-point discrimination, sense vibration, sense proprioception
Spinothalamic tract	Anterior spinal cord	Originate in dorsal root ganglion, synapse in dorsolateral tract of Lissauer	Decussate in ventral white commissure, ascend in lateral spinothalamic tract	Senses pain, senses temperature
Corticospinal tract	Lateral spinal cord	Descend from internal capsule and midbrain, decussate in medullary pyramids, descend in cortico-spinal tract, synapse in ventral horn through interneurons	Exit cord through ventral horn	Voluntary movement of striated muscle

TABLE 8-3 Common Lesions of the Spinal Cord

Condition	Tracts Affected	Symptoms
Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS)	Corticospinal tract, ventral horn	Spastic and flaccid paralysis
Poliomyelitis	Ventral horn	Flaccid paralysis
Tabes dorsalis (tertiary syphilis)	Dorsal columns	Impaired proprioception, pain
Spinal artery syndrome	Corticospinal tract, spinothalamic tract, ventral horn, lateral gray matter (dorsal columns spared)	Bilateral loss of pain and temperature (one level below lesion), bilateral spastic paresis (below lesion), bilateral flaccid paralysis (level of lesion)
Vitamin B ₁₂ deficiency	Dorsal columns, corticospinal tract	Bilateral loss of vibration and discrimination and bilateral spastic paresis affecting legs before arms
Syringomyelia	Ventral horn, ventral white commissure	Bilateral loss of pain and temperature (one level below lesion), bilateral flaccid paralysis (level of lesion)
Brown-Sequard syndrome	All tracts on one side of cord	Ipsilateral loss of vibration and discrimination (below lesion), ipsilateral spastic paresis (below lesion), ipsilateral flaccid paralysis (level of lesion), contralateral loss of pain and temperature (below lesion)

- Lesions of the spinal cord cause symptoms that are dependent on the lesion location (see Table 8-3).
- Cranial nerves (CNs) have distinct functions within the head and neck (see Table 8-4).

TABLE 8-4 Cranial Nerves and Their Functions

Nerve	Type	Function/Innervation
Olfactory (CN I)	Sensory	Smell
Optic (CN II)	Sensory	Sight
Oculomotor (CN III)	Motor	Medial, superior, inferior rectus muscles; inferior oblique muscle, ciliary muscle, sphincter muscle of eye
Trochlear (CN IV)	Motor	Superior oblique muscle of eye
Trigeminal (CN V)	Both	Sensation of face; muscles of mastication
Abducens (CN VI)	Motor	Lateral rectus muscle of eye
Facial (CN VII)	Both	Taste (anterior two-thirds of tongue); muscles of facial expression, stapedius muscle, stylohyoid muscle, digastric muscle (posterior belly); lacrimal, submandibular, sublingual glands
Vestibulocochlear (CN VIII)	Sensory	Hearing, balance
Glossopharyngeal (CN IX)	Both	Taste (posterior one-third of tongue), pharyngeal sensation; stylopharyngeus muscle; parotid gland
Vagus (CN X)	Both	Sensation of trachea, esophagus, viscera; laryngeal, pharyngeal muscles; visceral autonomic
Accessory (CN XI)	Motor	Sternocleidomastoid and trapezius muscles
Hypoglossal (CN XII)	Motor	Tongue

CN, cranial nerve.

II. NEUROLOGIC INFECTION

A. Bacterial meningitis

1. Infection of meningeal tissue in brain or spinal cord; common bacterial agents differ depending on patient age (see Table 8-5)
2. Infection is usually caused by hematogenous spread, local extension, or cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) exposure to bacteria (e.g., neurosurgery).
3. **Risk factors** = ear infection, sinusitis, immunocompromise, neurosurgery, maternal group β -streptococci infection during birth
4. **History and physical (H/P)**
 - a. Headache, neck pain, photophobia, malaise, vomiting, confusion; fever
 - b. **Brudzinski sign** (i.e., neck flexion in supine patient prompts reflexive hip flexion) and **Kernig sign** (i.e., painful knee extension occurs with hip flexion in supine patient) are not reliable tests.
 - c. Petechiae are seen in *Neisseria meningitidis* infection.
 - d. Change in mental status, seizures, decreased consciousness seen with worsening infection
 - e. Symptoms in children may be nonfocal.
5. **Labs** = increased white blood cell count (WBC); blood cultures frequently positive; lumbar puncture (LP) useful for differentiating causes of meningitis from each other and from healthy patients; CSF culture may determine exact agent (see Table 8-6)
6. **Radiology** = computed tomography (CT) or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) may be helpful for ruling out other pathologies
7. **Treatment** = initially cephalosporins (third generation) until specific agent is identified, then agent-specific antibiotics; close contacts of patient should be given rifampin or ciprofloxacin for prophylaxis in cases of *Neisseria* infection (rifampin for *H. influenzae* infection in children without prior vaccination)
8. **Complications** = seizures, increased intracranial pressure (ICP), subdural effusion, empyema, brain abscess, hearing loss, mental impairment

B. Viral meningitis (aseptic meningitis)

1. Meningitis caused by viral infection by enterovirus, echovirus, herpes simplex virus, lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus, mumps virus
2. **H/P** = nausea, vomiting, headache, neck pain, photophobia, malaise; fever, rash; symptoms generally milder than for bacterial meningitis
3. **Labs** = LP helpful for diagnosis; viral culture will confirm etiology
4. **Treatment** = empiric antibiotics may be started until viral cause is confirmed; supportive care usually sufficient for confirmed viral cases

QUICK HIT

Haemophilus influenzae has been significantly reduced as a cause of meningitis owing to childhood vaccination.

QUICK HIT

Young children with meningitis frequently have **negative** Brudzinski and Kernig signs.

NEXT STEP

Neurologic examination must be performed before LP. With signs of **increased intracranial pressure (ICP)** (papilledema, focal neurologic deficits, pupil asymmetry), do **not** perform LP because of increased risk of **uncal herniation**.

NEXT STEP

Treat fungal meningitis with amphotericin B, and treat tuberculosis meningitis with the combination of isoniazid, ethambutol, pyrazinamide, and rifampin.

QUICK HIT

Common arboviruses include St. Louis and California strains. Common flaviviruses include **West Nile** and Japanese strains.

QUICK HIT

In young children, encephalitis may be caused by **Reye syndrome** (reaction in children with viral infection who are given aspirin [ASA]).

TABLE 8-5 Common Causes of Meningitis by Age Group

Age	Most Common Agent	Other Common Agents
Newborn	Group β -streptococci	<i>Escherichia coli</i> , <i>Listeria</i> , <i>Haemophilus influenzae</i>
1 month–2 yr	<i>Streptococcus pneumoniae</i> , <i>Neisseria meningitidis</i>	Group β -streptococci, <i>Listeria</i> , <i>H. influenzae</i>
2–18 yr	<i>N. meningitidis</i>	<i>S. pneumoniae</i> , <i>Listeria</i>
18–60 yr	<i>S. pneumoniae</i>	<i>N. meningitidis</i> , <i>Listeria</i>
60+ yr	<i>S. pneumoniae</i>	<i>Listeria</i> , gram-negative rods

TABLE 8-6 CSF Findings for Different Causes of Meningitis

Status	WBCs	Pressure	Glucose	Protein
Healthy patient	<5	50–180 mm H ₂ O	40–70 mg/dL	20–45 mg/dL
Bacterial infection	↑↑ (PMNs)	↑↑	↓	↑
Fungal infection or tuberculosis	↑ (Lymphocytes)	↑↑	↓	↑
Viral infection	↑ (Lymphocytes)	↑	Normal	Normal

CSF, cerebrospinal fluid; PMNs, polymorphonuclear cells; WBCs, white blood cells; ↑, mild increase; ↑↑, significant increase.

C. Encephalitis

- Inflammation of brain parenchyma caused by **viral infection** (e.g., varicella-zoster virus, herpes simplex virus, mumps virus, poliovirus, rhabdovirus, Coxsackie virus, arbovirus, flavivirus, measles) or immunologic response to viral infection
- H/P**
 - Malaise, headache, vomiting, neck pain, decreased consciousness; **change in mental status**, focal neurologic deficits (e.g., hemiparesis, pathologic reflexes, nerve palsy), fever
 - Skin lesions seen with herpes simplex virus
 - Parotid swelling seen with mumps
 - Flaccid paralysis with maculopapular rash seen in West Nile virus
- Labs**
 - LP shows increased WBCs and normal glucose.
 - Culture generally not reliable
 - Serologic testing may be useful to identify viral cause.
 - Brain biopsy can provide definitive diagnosis but is generally impractical.
- Radiology** = CT or MRI may show inflamed region of brain with effusion
- Treatment** = maintain normal ICP, supportive care; herpes simplex virus treated with acyclovir

D. Brain abscess

- Collection of pus in brain parenchyma resulting from extension of local bacterial infection, head wound, or hematogenous spread of bacteria
- H/P** = **headache**, neck pain, nausea, vomiting, malaise; fever, change in mental status, focal neurologic deficits, papilledema, seizures
- Labs** = brain biopsy or culture of abscess material performed during surgical drainage can be used to confirm bacterial identity
- Radiology** = **MRI** or CT may show “ring-enhancing lesion”; CT-guided biopsy can be performed to collect material for culture
- Treatment** = empiric antibiotics until specific agent identified; corticosteroids; **surgical drainage**

E. Poliomyelitis

- Poliovirus (a picornavirus) infection of brain and motor neurons
- Nearly eradicated through polio vaccine given in childhood
- H/P** = possibly asymptomatic; headache, neck pain, vomiting, sore throat; fever, **normal sensation**, **muscle weakness** that may progress to paralysis in severe cases
- Labs** = **positive polio-specific antibody**; LP consistent with viral meningitis; viral culture helpful for diagnosis
- Treatment** = with supportive care, most patients recover fully; assisted respiration may be required if respiratory muscles are affected

F. Rabies

- Rhabdovirus transmitted to humans by **bite of infected animal**
- Causes severe encephalitis with neuronal degeneration and inflammation
- H/P** = malaise, headache, restlessness, **fear of water ingestion** (secondary to laryngeal spasm); progressive cases exhibit severe central nervous system (CNS) excitability, **foaming at mouth**, very painful laryngeal spasms and **alternating mania and stupor**




QUICK HIT

Poliomyelitis may rarely occur after **oral** polio vaccine administration, so inactivated intramuscular polio vaccine is now more commonly used.

4. Labs

- a. Suspected animal should be caught and tested or observed for signs of rabies.
 - b. If the animal appears to be infected, it should be killed and the brain should be tested for presence of virus and Negri bodies (i.e., round eosinophilic inclusions in neurons).
 - c. Viral testing in humans (CSF, skin, serum) with symptoms is confirmatory of disease.
5. Treatment = clean wound area thoroughly; administer rabies immunoglobulin and vaccine to patient if animal was infected or if rabies suspicion is high
6. Complications = 100% mortality without treatment




QUICK HIT

Tension headaches are the **most common** type of headache in adults.

III. HEADACHE (see Table 8-7)

- A.** Head pain that may be a primary disorder (migraine, cluster, tension) or secondary to other pathology (hemorrhage, encephalopathy, meningitis, temporal arteritis, neoplasm)
- B. Trigeminal neuralgia**
- 1. Head and facial pain in trigeminal nerve distribution possibly caused by compression or irritation of trigeminal nerve root
 - 2. H/P = sudden severe pain in distributions of maxillary and mandibular branches; “trigger zone” stimulation may induce pain
 - 3. Radiology = MRI may identify lesions related to nerve compression
 - 4. Treatment = carbamazepine, baclofen, phenytoin, gabapentin, valproate, clonazepam, or other anticonvulsants; surgical decompression of nerve may be helpful



NEXT STEP

Any sudden onset of severe headache or focal neurologic deficits should be further examined using **CT without contrast** or MRI to rule out hemorrhage.

TABLE 8-7 Primary Headache Disorders


Variable	Migraine	Cluster	Tension
Patients	10–30 yr of age, female > male	Young men	Female > male
Pathology	Poorly understood; likely due to neuronal dysfunction	Poorly understood, likely extracerebral cause	Poorly understood
Precipitating factors	Stress, oral contraceptives, menstruation , exertion, foods containing tyramine or nitrates (chocolate, cheese, processed meats)	Alcohol, vasodilators	Stress, fatigue
Pain characteristics	Unilateral, throbbing	Severe, unilateral, periorbital , recurrent (“in clusters” over time)	Bilateral , tightness, occipital or neck pain
Other symptoms	Nausea, vomiting , preceding aura (visual abnormalities), photophobia	Horner syndrome (ptosis, miosis, anhidrosis), lacrimation, nasal congestion	Anxiety
Duration	4–72 hr	30 min–3 hr	Variable
Treatment	NSAIDs, ergots, sumatriptan; IV antiemetics useful for severe cases; prophylaxis includes tricyclic antidepressants, β-blockers, calcium channel blockers, ergots	100% O ₂ , ergots, sumatriptan; prophylaxis similar to that for migraines	NSAIDs, ergots, sumatriptan, relaxation exercises

IV, intravenous; NSAIDs, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs.

IV. CEREBROVASCULAR AND HEMORRHAGIC DISEASES

A. Transient ischemic attack (TIA)

- 1. Acute focal neurologic deficits that last <24 hr and are caused by temporarily impaired vascular supply to brain (e.g., emboli, aortic stenosis, vascular spasm)
- 2. Risk factors = hypertension (HTN), diabetes mellitus (DM), coronary artery disease (CAD), tobacco, hyperlipidemia, hypercoagulable states
- 3. H/P
 - a. Sudden appearance of focal neurologic deficits, including weakness, paresthesias, brief unilateral blindness (i.e., amaurosis fugax) or other vision abnormality, impaired coordination, vertigo



QUICK HIT

Most TIAs last <2 hr and are recurrent.

- b. Carotid bruits suggest carotid atherosclerosis.
- c. Harsh systolic murmur suggests aortic stenosis.
4. **Radiology** = ultrasound (US) may quantify degree of carotid or aortic stenosis; MRI or CT may demonstrate areas of brain ischemia; magnetic resonance angiography (MRA) or CT angiography (CTA) may locate intracranial vascular defects; echocardiography may be useful to determine if septic emboli, mural thrombus, or patent foramen ovale are cause of condition
5. **Treatment**
 - a. Any patient with disease attributable to atherosclerosis should be given antiplatelet (e.g., ASA) and antilipid (e.g., statins) therapy.
 - b. Carotid endarterectomy or angioplasty performed for carotid narrowing >60% in asymptomatic men, >50% in symptomatic men, and >70% in symptomatic women
 - c. β -Blockers, valvuloplasty, or valve replacement used in treatment of aortic stenosis
 - d. Long-term anticoagulation used for arrhythmias
 - e. Treat other underlying disorders

QUICK HIT

Atherosclerosis of carotid, basilar, or vertebral arteries is the most common cause of **thrombotic** ischemic stroke.

QUICK HIT

The **middle cerebral artery** is the most common artery involved in **embolic ischemic** stroke. Most emboli originate in the heart, aorta, carotid, or intracranial arteries.

B. Stroke (cerebrovascular accident [CVA])

1. Acute focal neurologic deficit lasting >24 hr caused by ischemia of brain via **impaired perfusion** (i.e., ischemic stroke) or **hemorrhage** (i.e., hemorrhagic stroke)
2. Ischemic stroke may be **thrombotic** (i.e., obstruction of supplying artery by clot) or **embolic** (i.e., blockage of supplying artery by embolization of distant thrombus)
3. **Risk factors** = increased age, family history, obesity, DM, HTN, tobacco use, atrial fibrillation (Afib)
4. Area of neurologic deficit is dependent on location of stroke (see Figure 8-3, Table 8-8)
5. **H/P**
 - a. Sudden appearance of focal neurologic deficit lasting >24 hr
 - b. Constellation of symptoms depends on location of pathology.

FIGURE 8-3 Motor and sensory cortex and corresponding arterial supply.

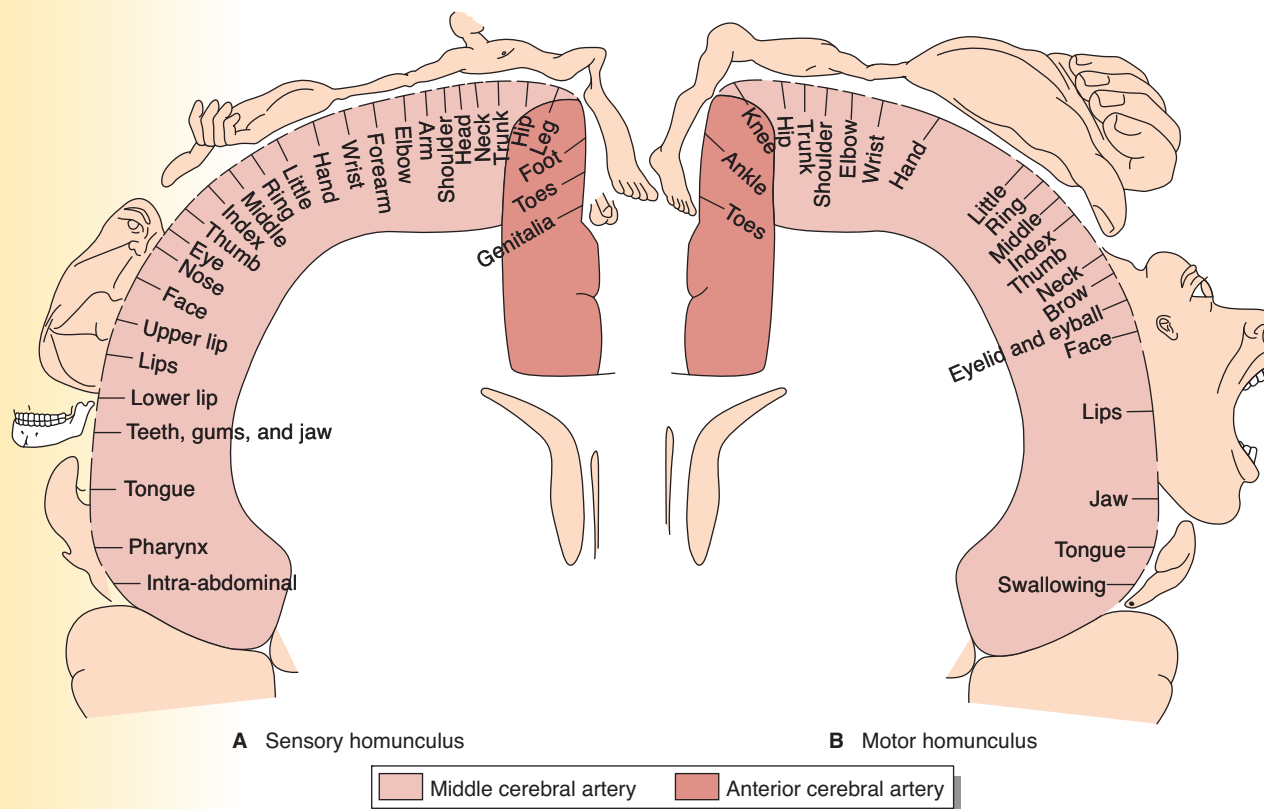


TABLE 8-8 Common Stroke Locations and Corresponding Signs and Symptoms

Location of Stroke	Signs and Symptoms
ACA	Contralateral lower extremity and trunk weakness
MCA	Contralateral face and upper extremity weakness and decreased sensation, bilateral visual abnormalities, aphasia (if dominant hemisphere), neglect, and inability to perform learned actions (if nondominant hemisphere)
PCA	Contralateral visual abnormalities, blindness (if bilateral PCA involvement)
Lacunar arteries	Focal motor or sensory deficits, loss of coordination, difficulty speaking
Basilar artery	Cranial nerve abnormalities, contralateral full body weakness and decreased sensation, vertigo, loss of coordination, difficulty speaking, visual abnormalities, coma

ACA, anterior cerebral artery; MCA, middle cerebral artery; PCA, posterior cerebral artery.

- c. Stable findings indicate stable stroke, but progressive findings indicate evolving stroke.
- d. Thorough serial neurovascular examinations are important to determining region of involvement and evolution.
6. **Radiology** = CT without contrast or MRI useful to differentiate ischemic from hemorrhagic stroke; MRA or CTA may be helpful for locating ischemic cause
7. **Electrocardiogram (ECG)** = detection of new onset arrhythmia or history of Afib seen on prior ECG may be useful in determining cause
8. **Treatment**
 - a. Acute treatment of ischemic stroke
 - (1) **Thrombolytic therapy** can be administered for ischemic stroke if **within 3 hr** of onset and no contraindications (i.e., evidence of hemorrhage on CT, recent surgery, anticoagulant use, recent hemorrhage, blood pressure >185/110 mm Hg) exist.
 - (2) **Antiplatelet therapy** should be started within 48 hr of the event to prevent additional strokes.
 - (3) Heparin or low molecular weight heparin (LMWH) may be considered in patients suspected of having progressive thromboembolism causing worsening symptoms.
 - (4) Lipid-lowering drugs should be started after the acute stages of stroke in addition to optimization of blood pressure control.
 - b. Acute treatment of **hemorrhagic** stroke
 - (1) Reversal of anticoagulation, control of blood pressure, and control of ICP (e.g., mannitol, hyperventilation, anesthesia)
 - (2) Surgical decompression may be considered for collections causing decreased consciousness.
 - (3) Antiplatelet drugs can be restarted 2 weeks after stroke if patient is stable.
 - c. Physical therapy is useful in improving persistent functional deficits.
 - d. Treatment of underlying disorders is important to **prevent** future strokes.
9. **Complications** = better prognosis for recovery in young patients with greater overall health and limited deficits; some deficits may not improve despite treatment

C. Parenchymal hemorrhage

1. Bleeding within brain parenchyma caused by HTN, arteriovenous malformation (AVM), brain aneurysm, or stimulant abuse
2. **H/P** = headache, nausea, vomiting; change in mental status, focal motor or sensory deficits, possible seizure
3. **Radiology** = CT without contrast used to localize and determine extent of bleeding; MRA or CTA may be useful for locating site of bleed
4. **Treatment** = supportive care, maintain normal ICP, **anticonvulsants** for seizure prophylaxis; surgical decompression for large hemorrhages to reduce risk of herniation; surgical repair of AVMs or aneurysms frequently required

NEXT STEP

Do **not** treat HTN immediately following stroke unless it is extreme (>220/120 mm Hg) or if patient has CAD in order to **maintain cerebral perfusion**.



QUICK HIT

Bleeding from parenchymal hemorrhage can extend into the subarachnoid space.



QUICK HIT

Berry aneurysms are associated with **adult polycystic kidney disease** and **Marfan syndrome**.

**QUICK HIT**

Patients may describe the headache in SAH as the **"worst headache of my life."**

**QUICK HIT**

Patients with imminent rupture of a berry aneurysm may have multiple, although less severe, sentinel headaches in the preceding weeks.

**NEXT STEP**

If SAH is suspected despite a **negative CT**, perform an LP.

**QUICK HIT**

A **declining red blood cell (RBC) count over successive collection tubes** can occur in a traumatic LP and can help differentiate it from subarachnoid hemorrhage.

**QUICK HIT**

The most common cause of epidural hematoma is damage to the **middle meningeal artery** from blunt trauma.

**QUICK HIT**

An epidural hematoma may appear to cross the brain midline on CT; subdural hematomas do not.

5. **Complications** = significant supratentorial bleeding can cause transtentorial (uncal) herniation (brainstem damage) and CSF flow obstruction (leading to hydrocephalus and brainstem compression); large hemorrhages are frequently fatal

D. Subarachnoid hemorrhage (SAH)

1. Bleeding between the pia and arachnoid meningeal layers because of rupture of **arterial aneurysm** (i.e., berry aneurysm), AVM, or trauma
2. **H/P** = **sudden severe headache**, neck pain, nausea, vomiting; fever, loss of (or decreased) consciousness, possible seizure
3. **Labs** = LP shows red blood cells, xanthochromia (i.e., yellowish discoloration of CSF), and increased pressure
4. **Radiology** = CT without contrast shows blood in the subarachnoid space; MRA or angiography can localize site of bleeding (see Figure 8-4)
5. **Treatment** = prevent increase in ICP (raise head of bed, administer mannitol), treat HTN, reverse anticoagulation, administer anticonvulsants, perform interventional radiologic or surgical clipping or embolization of aneurysm or AVM
6. **Complications** = recurrence of bleeding, arterial vasospasm, hydrocephalus; permanent neurologic damage or death may result

E. Epidural hematoma

1. Collection of blood between dura and skull caused by arterial hemorrhage
2. **H/P** = possible initial **"lucid interval"** between start of bleeding and onset of symptoms for a few hours or less with no change in consciousness; severe headache, decreased consciousness, nausea; hemiparesis, hemiplegia, seizures, pupil abnormalities (i.e., "blown" pupil)
3. **Radiology** = CT without contrast shows **convex** hyperdensity compressing the brain at site of injury; adjacent skull fracture may be apparent in traumatic cases (see Figure 8-5)
4. **Treatment** = **emergent** drainage of hematoma either under radiographic guidance or by surgical burr hole; stabilization of ICP and blood pressure
5. **Complications** = permanent neurologic injury or death usually results without prompt treatment

FIGURE 8-4

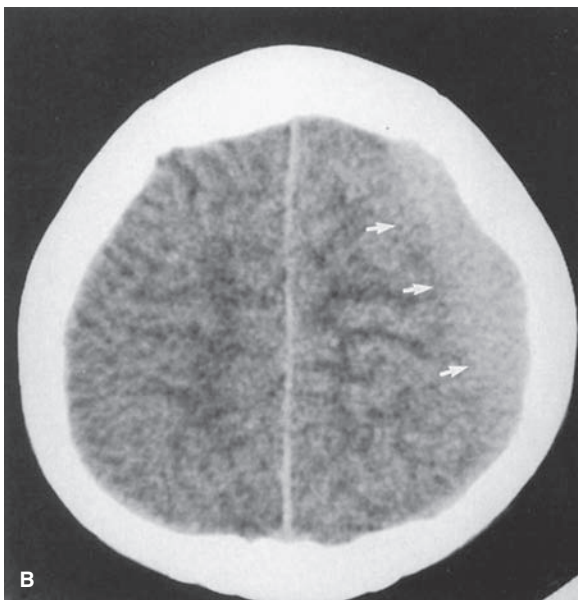
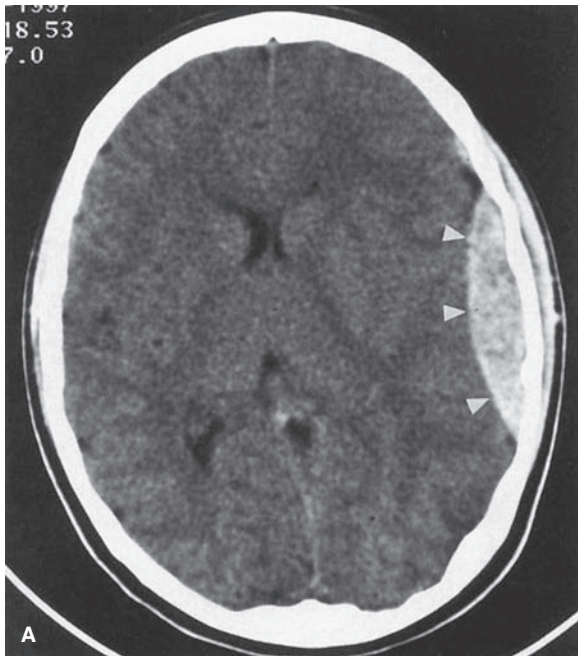
Subarachnoid hemorrhage seen on computed tomography (CT) scan without contrast; blood is evident in the subarachnoid space (**white arrows**).



(From Daffner, R. H. [1999]. *Clinical Radiology: The Essentials* [2nd ed.]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.)

FIGURE 8-5

(A) Epidural hematoma: Note convex hyperdensity caused by blood (*white arrows*).
 (B) Subdural hematoma: Note faint concave hyperdensity caused by blood (*white arrows*).



F. Subdural hematoma

1. Collection of blood between the dura and arachnoid meningeal layers caused by rupture of bridging veins following trauma
2. H/P
 - a. Slowly progressive headache (days to weeks); change in mental status, contralateral hemiparesis, increased deep tendon reflexes (DTRs)
 - b. Large hematomas can cause transtentorial herniation with decreased consciousness and pupil abnormalities.
3. Radiology = CT without contrast shows concave hyperdensity compressing the brain that does **not** cross midline (see Figure 8-5)
4. Treatment = surgical drainage or supportive therapy depending on size of bleed and extent of neurologic deficits

NEXT STEP

With mental status changes seen in an elderly patient with a history of falls, perform a workup for subdural hematoma.

NEXT STEP

Do **not** perform an LP in patients with **subdural hematoma** because of increased risk of herniation.

G. Aphasias

1. Disorders in speech caused by injury of specific regions of the brain following stroke or hemorrhage (see Table 8-9)
2. **Broca** and **Wernicke** aphasias are the most common types of aphasia, although other types exist.
3. Speech therapy may be of some benefit in retraining language centers of brain.

TABLE 8-9 Common Classifications of Aphasias

Type	Area Injured	Characteristics
Broca (expressive)	Inferior frontal gyrus, dorsolateral frontal cortex, anterior parietal cortex	Few words, difficulty producing words (nonfluent); good comprehension ; face and arm hemiparesis, loss of oral coordination
Wernicke (receptive)	Posterior superior temporal gyrus, inferior parietal lobe	Word substitutions, meaningless words, meaningless phrases (poor comprehension , “word salad”)
Conduction	Supramarginal gyrus, angular gyrus	Fluent speech , word substitutions, frequent attempts to correct words , word-finding pauses
Global	Large infarcts of left cerebral hemisphere	Difficulty producing words, nonfluent speech, poor comprehension , limb ataxia

**MNEMONIC**

Remember the signs of normal pressure hydrocephalus by the **3 Ws**: **W**acky (cognitive impairment), **W**et (incontinence), **W**obbly (gait abnormalities).

H. Normal pressure hydrocephalus

1. Collection of excess CSF in cerebral ventricles and spinal thecal sac; may follow SAH, chronic meningitis, or other disease of impaired CSF resorption
2. **H/P** = cognitive impairment, incontinence, gait abnormalities
3. **Labs** = LP shows normal pressure, but removal of CSF can cause improvement in symptoms
4. **Radiology** = MRI shows enlarged cerebral ventricles, white matter lesions, and aqueduct atrophy
5. **Treatment** = ventriculoperitoneal shunting

**V. SEIZURE DISORDERS****A. Causes of seizures**

1. Sudden change in neurologic activity (e.g., behavior, movement, sensation) caused by excessive synchronized discharge of cortical neurons in a limited (focal) or generalized distribution of the brain
2. **Epilepsy** is a condition of **recurrent** seizures.
3. Common causes of seizures vary with age (see Table 8-10).

B. Types of seizures

1. Classified according to electrical activity and extent of brain involvement (see Table 8-11)
2. Electroencephalogram (EEG) used to measure cortical neuron activity and differentiate types of seizures
3. **Treatment**
 - a. Anticonvulsants are the mainstay of therapy (see Table 8-12).
 - b. One medication used initially, but additional drugs can be added for better control
 - c. Drug withdrawal may be considered after an extended seizure-free period, but more than half of patients will have a recurrence.
 - d. Surgery is a consideration for resectable sources of abnormal activity (more common in partial seizures).
 - e. Vagal nerve stimulation can be considered in a patient failing other therapies.

**QUICK HIT**

Generalized seizures involve **the entire cortex**. Partial seizures involve **focal** neurologic deficits and can progress to **secondary** generalization (as distinguished from primary generalized seizures).

TABLE 8-10 Common Causes of Seizures by Age Group

Age Group	Causes
Infants	Hypoxic injury Metabolic defects Genetic or congenital abnormality Infection
Children	Idiopathic Infection Fever Trauma
Adults	Idiopathic Metabolic defects Drugs or drug withdrawal Trauma Neoplasm Infection Cerebrovascular disease Psychogenic
Elderly	Stroke or cerebrovascular disease Metabolic defects Drugs or drug withdrawal Infection Trauma Neoplasm

TABLE 8-11 Types of Seizures

Type	Involvement	History and Physical	Electroencephalogram
Simple partial	Focal cortical region of brain	Focal sensory (paresthesias, hallucinations) or motor (repetitive or purposeless movement) deficit; no loss of consciousness	Distinct focal conductive abnormality
Complex partial	Focal cortical region (most commonly temporal lobe)	Hallucinations (auditory, visual, olfactory), automatisms (repeated coordinated movement), déjà vu, impaired consciousness, postictal confusion	Focal abnormalities in temporal lobe
Generalized convulsive (tonic, clonic, tonic-clonic, myoclonic, atonic)	Bilateral cerebral cortex	Sustained contraction of extremities and back (tonic), repetitive muscle contraction and relaxation (clonic), brief contraction period followed by repetitive contraction-relaxation (tonic-clonic), brief repetitive contractions (myoclonic), or loss of tone (atonic); loss of consciousness, incontinence, significant postictal confusion, possible unilateral weakness lasting several hours (rarely days) after seizure (Todd paralysis)	Generalized electrical abnormalities
Absence	Bilateral cerebral cortex	Brief (few seconds) episodes of impaired consciousness , normal muscle tone, possible eye blinking, no postictal confusion; more common in children	Generalized three-cycle/second spike-and-wave pattern

TABLE 8-12 Anticonvulsant Medications Used in Epilepsy Treatment

Drug	Current Indications	Adverse Effects
Mechanism: Inhibition of voltage-dependent sodium channels		
Carbamazepine	Monotherapy for partial or generalized convulsive seizures	Nausea, vomiting, hyponatremia, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, drowsiness, vertigo, blurred vision, leukopenia
Phenytoin	Monotherapy for partial or generalized convulsive seizures, status epilepticus	Gingival hyperplasia, androgenic, lymphadenopathy, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, confusion, blurred vision
Lamotrigine	Partial seizures, second-line drug for tonic-clonic seizures	Rash, nausea, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, dizziness, sedation
Oxcarbazepine	Monotherapy for partial or generalized convulsive seizures	Hyponatremia, rash, nausea, sedation, dizziness, blurred vision
Zonisamide	Second-line drug for partial and generalized seizures	Somnolence, confusion, fatigue, dizziness
Mechanism: Inhibition of neuronal calcium channels		
Ethosuximide	Absence seizures	Nausea, vomiting, drowsiness, inattentiveness
Mechanism: Enhanced GABA activity		
Phenobarbital, pentobarbital	Nonresponsive status epilepticus	Drowsiness, general cognitive depression, vertigo, nausea, vomiting, rebound seizures
Benzodiazepines	Status epilepticus	Drowsiness, tolerance, rebound seizures
Tiagabine	Second-line drug for partial seizures	Dizziness, fatigue, nausea, inattentiveness, abdominal pain
Mechanism: Inhibition of sodium channels and enhanced GABA activity		
Valproate	Monotherapy or second drug for partial and generalized seizures	Hepatotoxicity, nausea, vomiting, drowsiness, tremor, weight gain, alopecia
Mechanism: Inhibition of NMDA-glutamate receptors and enhanced GABA activity		
Topiramate	Second-line drug for partial and generalized seizures	Weight loss, cognitive impairment, heat intolerance, dizziness, nausea, paresthesias, fatigue
Mechanism: Unknown		
Gabapentin	Monotherapy or second-line drug for partial seizures	Sedation
Levetiracetam	Monotherapy for partial seizures, second-line drug for partial or generalized seizures	Fatigue, somnolence, dizziness

GABA, γ -aminobutyric acid; NMDA, *N*-methyl-D-aspartate.

C. Status epilepticus

1. Repetitive or unremitting seizures without any period of regained consciousness
2. Caused by withdrawal of anticonvulsants, alcohol withdrawal, trauma, preexisting seizure disorder, metabolic abnormalities
3. H/P = uninterrupted seizures lasting >20 minutes (frequently several hours) without return to normal consciousness
4. Labs = complete blood count (CBC), glucose, electrolytes, toxicology, liver function tests (LFTs), blood urea nitrogen (BUN), and creatinine may be useful to determine underlying cause
5. EEG = shows prolonged abnormal electrical activity
6. Treatment
 - a. Maintain airway, breathing, circulation (ABCs)
 - b. Intravenous (IV) benzodiazepines used to end seizure activity, phenytoin given to prevent recurrence
 - c. Refractive seizure activity can be treated with phenobarbital or pentobarbital.
 - d. Treat underlying disorder.
7. Complications = >20% mortality if not controlled promptly

NEXT STEP

Delay CT and EEG during status epilepticus until patient is stabilized.

VI. DEGENERATIVE NEUROLOGIC DISORDERS

A. Parkinson disease

1. Idiopathic dopamine depletion, loss of dopaminergic striated neurons in the substantia nigra, and Lewy body (eosinophilic cytoplasmic inclusions in neurons) formation leading to abnormal cholinergic input to cortex
2. Similar syndrome may be induced by 1-methyl-4-phenyl-1,2,3,6-tetrahydropyridine (MPTP, a side product in illicit opioid production) intoxication.
3. H/P = **resting tremor** (i.e., “pill-rolling” tremor of hands), decreased or slowed voluntary movement (i.e., bradykinesia), masklike facies, **shuffling gait**, involuntary acceleration of gait following initiation, “**cogwheel**” rigidity (i.e., increased tone of agonist and antagonist muscles), memory loss, difficulty initiating movement, postural instability
4. **Treatment**
 - a. Dopaminergic agonists (e.g., levodopa, carbidopa, bromocriptine, amantadine), monoamine oxidase type B (MAO-B) inhibitors (e.g., selegiline), anticholinergic agents (e.g., benztropine), amantadine (see Table 8-13)
 - b. Deep brain electrical stimulation has emerged as a viable option in disease not responsive to medication alone.

B. Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS)

1. Progressive loss of UMNs and LMNs in brain and spinal cord, involving degeneration of anterior horn cells and corticospinal tract
2. H/P = **asymmetric progressive weakness** in face (e.g., tongue, dysphagia) and limbs with **normal sensation**, possible change in personality or impaired judgment; increase or decrease in DTRs, spasticity, positive Babinski sign, flaccid paralysis, and fasciculations seen in limbs
3. **Labs** = blood tests used to rule out other pathologies
4. **Electromyogram (EMG)** = demonstrates widespread muscular denervation and motor block
5. **Radiology** = CT or MRI may be helpful to rule out neurologic lesions
6. **Treatment** = riluzole may slow progression; supportive care (e.g., respiratory support, pain control)
7. **Complications** = half of patients die within 3 years of diagnosis secondary to respiratory failure



MNEMONIC

Remember the common signs of Parkinson disease by the mnemonic **SMART**: **S**huffling gait, **M**asklike facies, **A**kinesia, **R**igidity (“cogwheel”), **T**remor (resting).



QUICK HIT

Signs of **UMN** disease include spasticity, increased DTRs, positive Babinski sign. Signs of **LMN** disease include flaccid paralysis, decreased DTRs, fasciculations, negative Babinski sign.



QUICK HIT

Clinical diagnosis of ALS requires LMN signs in at least two extremities and UMN signs in one region.

TABLE 8-13 Medications Used in Treatment of Parkinson Disease

Drug	Mechanism	Indications	Adverse Effects
Levodopa	Dopamine precursor	Initial therapy	Nausea, vomiting, anorexia, tachycardia, hallucinations, mood changes, dyskinesia with chronic use
Carbidopa	Dopamine decarboxylase inhibitor that reduces levodopa metabolism	Combined with levodopa to augment effects	Reduces adverse effects of levodopa by allowing smaller dosage
Bromocriptine	Dopamine receptor agonist	Increases response to levodopa in patients with declining response	Hallucinations, confusion, nausea, hypotension, cardiotoxicity
Selegiline	Monoamine oxidase type B inhibitor	Early disease; may help delay need to start levodopa	Nausea, headache, confusion, insomnia
Amantadine	Increases synthesis, release, or reuptake of dopamine	More effective against rigidity and bradykinesia	Agitation, hallucinations
Antimuscarinic agents (e.g., benztropine)	Block cholinergic transmission	Adjuvant therapy	Mood changes, dry mouth, visual abnormalities, confusion, hallucinations, urinary retention

**QUICK HIT**

Huntington disease has **100%** genetic penetrance but does not become symptomatic until **middle age**.

NEXT STEP

In elderly patients with **greater than mild** memory loss or dementia, Alzheimer disease should be suspected.

NEXT STEP

Distinguish dementia from Alzheimer disease from that caused by multiple cortical infarcts with MRI. Multiple small lesions or infarcts will be apparent on MRI when the cause is **vascular**.

**MNEMONIC**

Remember that **MS** affects the **Myelin Sheath** and is more common in **MS** (women) than in **MR** (men).

NEXT STEP

Highly suspect MS in a **young woman** with a confusing constellation of neurologic symptoms. Perform MRI to look for white matter lesions and LP to look for oligoclonal bands.

C. Huntington disease

1. Autosomal dominant disease caused by multiple CAG repeats on chromosome 4; higher numbers of CAG repeats lead to earlier onset of disease
2. Characteristic signs include movement and mental dysfunction starting in middle age.
3. **H/P** = progressive, rapid irregular involuntary movement of extremities (**chorea**); dementia (e.g., irritability, antisocial behavior); possible seizures
4. **Labs** = genetic analysis will detect chromosome 4 abnormality
5. **Radiology** = CT or MRI shows caudate nucleus and putamen atrophy
6. **Treatment** = dopamine antagonists may improve chorea; genetic screening can be used in asymptomatic family members with proper counseling
7. **Complications** = usually fatal in <20 years from diagnosis

D. Alzheimer disease

1. Slowly progressive dementia caused by neurofibrillary tangles, neuritic plaques, amyloid deposition, and neuronal atrophy; **most common** cause of dementia
2. **Risk factors** = increased age, family history, Down syndrome; female > male
3. **H/P** = progressive **short-term memory loss**, depression, **confusion**, inability to complete complex movements or tasks; severe cases have personality changes and delusions
4. **Labs** = nondiagnostic but can be used to rule out other causes of dementia
5. **Radiology** = CT or MRI shows **cortical atrophy**
6. **Treatment** = cholinesterase inhibitors (e.g., donepezil, rivastigmine, galantamine) may slow progression; memantine may improve symptoms in moderate disease; occupational therapy helpful to prolong independence
7. **Complications** = median survival following diagnosis is 3 years because of comorbidity

E. Multiple sclerosis (MS)

1. Progressive demyelinating disease of brain and spinal cord with possible autoimmune etiology
2. Most patients are **women** 20 to 40 years of age
3. **H/P**
 - a. **Variable** initial presentation with multiple neurologic complaints (e.g., vertigo, vision abnormalities, paresthesias, weakness, urinary retention) that are difficult to explain through one cause
 - b. Symptoms may progress slowly with several remissions and become worse during stressful events (e.g., infection, childbirth, trauma, heat).
 - c. Late symptoms and signs include worsening vision, poor movement control, difficulty speaking (i.e., dysarthria), sensory abnormalities, postural and positional instabilities (i.e., cerebellar signs), spasticity, increased DTRs, and positive Babinski sign.
4. **Labs** = LP shows CSF with increased protein, mildly increased WBCs, **oligoclonal bands**, increased IgG
5. **Radiology** = MRI shows multiple asymmetric **white matter lesions**
6. Diagnosis is made considering both clinical and radiographic evidence.
7. **Treatment** = corticosteroids, methotrexate, and avoidance of stress may help decrease length of exacerbations; interferon- β and glatiramer acetate decrease frequency of exacerbations; supportive care for worsening neurologic dysfunction
8. **Complications** = progressive neurologic abnormalities with residual deficits; many patients become chronically disabled

F. Syringomyelia

1. Post-traumatic cystic degeneration of spinal cord from an unknown mechanism
2. Syrinx cavity (i.e., centralized channel within spinal cord) expands and compresses adjacent neural tissue.
3. **H/P** = loss of pain and temperature sensation, flaccid paralysis, decreased DTRs, fasciculations
4. **Radiology** = MRI shows syrinx expansion
5. **Treatment** = surgical decompression; shunting may be needed for recurrent cases; supportive care



VII. PERIPHERAL NEUROLOGIC AND NEUROMUSCULAR DISORDERS

A. Myasthenia gravis

1. Autoimmune disorder characterized by antibodies that bind to acetylcholine (ACh) receptors at neuromuscular junction and block normal neuromuscular transmission, resulting in easy fatigability
2. Often associated with thymoma and thyrotoxicosis
3. Most common in **young adult women**
4. H/P = **periodic weakness** and muscle fatigue that worsens throughout day; ptosis, diplopia (i.e., double vision), dysarthria; in severe cases, patients have dyspnea
5. Labs = **positive ACh receptor antibodies**; when edrophonium is administered, symptoms improve (i.e., Tensilon test); nerve stimulation and EMG are helpful in making diagnosis
6. Treatment = anticholinesterase agents (e.g., neostigmine, pyridostigmine), thymectomy, immunosuppressive agents (e.g., prednisone, azathioprine), plasmapheresis, IV immunoglobulin for refractory cases

B. Guillain-Barré syndrome

1. Autoimmune demyelinating disorder of peripheral nerves associated with recent **viral infection, surgery, or vaccination** (rare)
2. H/P
 - a. Rapidly progressive **bilateral weakness** initially in distal extremities in “**stocking-glove**” distribution and extending proximally with **decreased sensation** and possible absent DTRs; possible severe neuropathic pain
 - b. Recent history of viral infection, vaccination, or surgery
 - c. Blood pressure, heart rate, or core temperature may be labile.
 - d. Severe cases may include respiratory muscle weakness.
3. Labs = LP shows increased protein with normal pressure and glucose
4. EMG = consistent with widespread demyelination
5. Treatment = self-resolving within 1 month; plasmapheresis or IV immunoglobulin may accelerate resolution; patients must be watched for signs of **respiratory failure**; adequate analgesia for neuropathic pain
6. Complications = respiratory failure requires intubation and ventilation; most patients recover fully

C. Complex regional pain syndrome (CRPS) (a.k.a. reflex sympathetic dystrophy [RSD])

1. **Chronic pain** syndrome that occurs after trauma because of abnormal neurologic reorganization at site of injury (pain fibers may become “wired” into sympathetic neuronal pathways)
2. H/P = **hypersensitive** and painful limb following recovery from injury, edema, atrophy; abnormal tone and increased sweating at involved site; occasional cyanosis or increased hair growth at injury site
3. Radiology = bone scan or MRI may show decreased perfusion of injured site; X-rays may show osteopenia
4. Treatment
 - a. Selected nerve blocks with sensation testing may help differentiate RSD from other neuropathies.
 - b. Physical therapy, transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS), regional nerve block, topical anesthetics, and corticosteroids have been suggested as initial therapies.
 - c. Corticosteroids and anticonvulsants may be useful in refractory cases.

D. Hyperkinetic disorders

1. Abnormal involuntary movement associated with specific neurologic diseases or other causes
2. Described by pattern of movements (see Table 8-14)



QUICK HIT

Lambert-Eaton syndrome is a paraneoplastic disorder (e.g., **small cell lung cancer**) with similar presentation to myasthenia gravis. It occurs because of antibodies to presynaptic Ca^{2+} channels and is treated with immunosuppressive agents and plasmapheresis.



QUICK HIT

Edrophonium is a short-acting anticholinesterase agent, making it ideal for myasthenia gravis testing but ineffective for therapy.



NEXT STEP

If myasthenia gravis is diagnosed in a patient, always perform a chest CT to look for a **thymoma**.



QUICK HIT

Referral to a pain management center is frequently required in CRPS.

TABLE 8-14 Common Hyperkinetic Disorders

Disorder	Movement	Associated Diseases	Treatment
Benign essential tremor	Fixed oscillation of hands or head	Idiopathic	β -Blockers, primidone, clonazepam; thalamotomy or deep brain stimulation in refractory cases
Chorea	Rapid flinching distal limb and facial movements	Hyperthyroidism , stroke, Huntington disease , SLE, levodopa use, rheumatic fever	Treat the underlying disorder
Athetosis	Writhing, snakelike movement in extremities	Cerebral palsy , encephalopathy, Huntington disease, Wilson disease	Treat underlying disorder
Dystonia	Sustained proximal limb and trunk contractions	Wilson disease, Parkinson disease , Huntington disease, encephalitis, neuroleptic use (tardive dyskinesia)	Carbidopa, levodopa, botulinum toxin, treat underlying disorder
Hemiballismus	Flinging of proximal extremities	Stroke (subthalamic nucleus)	Haloperidol
Tics	Repetitive brief involuntary movement (blinking, grimacing) or sound (grunting, sniffing, throat clearing)	Tourette syndrome , obsessive-compulsive disorder, attention deficit hyperactivity disorder	Fluphenazine, pimozide, tetrabenazine

SLE, systemic lupus erythematosus.



QUICK HIT

Glioblastoma is the most common primary brain tumor in **adults**. **Astrocytoma** is the most common brain tumor in **children**. **Medulloblastoma** is the most common **malignant** brain tumor in children.



QUICK HIT

Metastatic brain tumors are **more common** than primary tumors.



QUICK HIT

Most metastases to the brain are **supratentorial**.

NEXT STEP

If an intracranial tumor is the initial lesion detected, workup should include a full search for a source neoplasm (full body CT, blood cancer antigens, etc.).



VIII. NEOPLASMS

A. Primary CNS neoplasms

- Brain tumors that are not caused by distant metastases; more common in young and middle-aged adults
- Tumors in **adults** tend to be **above** the tentorium (i.e., fold of dural meninges that separates cerebellum below from cortex above); tumors in children tend to be **below** the tentorium.
 - The three most common primary CNS tumors in adults are glioblastoma, meningioma, and schwannoma.
 - The three most common primary CNS tumors in children are astrocytoma (benign), medulloblastoma (malignant), and ependymoma (may be malignant).
- Symptoms result from focal compression (i.e., mass effect) of tumor (e.g., hydrocephalus, increased ICP, venous obstruction).
- H/P** = headache, vomiting, lethargy; focal neurologic abnormalities, change in mental status, possible seizures; blown pupil seen if herniation occurs
- Labs** = biopsy under CT guidance of detected lesion used for diagnosis
- Radiology** = MRI or positron emission tomography (PET) scan detects lesion
- Treatment** = surgical resection (if possible), radiation, chemotherapy; corticosteroids may decrease cerebral edema; anticonvulsants used for seizure prophylaxis

B. Metastatic CNS neoplasms

- Tumors that have metastasized to brain from distant site; lung, renal cell carcinoma, melanoma, breast, and colorectal cancer are most common primary tumors
- H/P** = symptoms similar to presentation for primary tumors; headache, vomiting, lethargy; focal neurologic abnormalities, change in mental status, seizures
- Labs** = biopsy confirms origin of tumor
- Radiology** = MRI is most commonly used tool to detect lesions
- Treatment** = treat original tumor; surgical resection for single metastasis, palliative radiation
- Complications** = poor prognosis

C. Neurofibromatosis type 1 (von Recklinghausen disease)

1. Autosomal dominant disorder (NF1 gene on chromosome 17) with multiple neurologic tumor and dermatologic manifestations
2. Neurofibromatosis type 2 is a rare autosomal dominant disorder linked to chromosome 22, characterized by the development of bilateral **acoustic neuromas**.
3. At least two of the following required for diagnosis:
 - a. >5 **café-au-lait macules** >15 mm diameter
 - b. >1 **neurofibromas** or 1 plexiform neurofibroma (i.e., tumors with mix of Schwann cells, fibroblasts, and mast cells)
 - c. Axillary or inguinal freckling
 - d. Optic glioma (i.e., tumor of optic nerve)
 - e. >1 iris hamartomas (i.e., **Lisch nodules**)
 - f. Bone lesions (e.g., cortical thinning of long bones, sphenoid dysplasia)
 - g. First-degree relative with neurofibromatosis type 1
4. H/P
 - a. Initial signs are freckling, **café-au-lait spots**, **Lisch nodules**, **neurofibromas**, and **bone abnormalities** evident in first few years of life.
 - b. Severe functional limitations are seen in movement and gait, caused by nonunion of bone fragments (i.e., pseudoarthrosis) and fractures during development.
 - c. Short stature and scoliosis may be evident.
 - d. Visual abnormalities may result from compression of optic nerve by glioma.
 - e. Possible cognitive impairments, seizures, or peripheral neuropathic signs
5. Labs = genetic testing detects abnormal gene
6. Radiology = MRI shows multiple areas of increased signal intensity in brain and increased brain volume
7. Treatment = therapy directed at maintaining function and treating complications
8. Complications = increased risk of malignant CNS tumors, developmental delays, mental retardation, peripheral neuropathy, pheochromocytoma, vision abnormalities, severe bone abnormalities, seizures

**MNEMONIC**

Remember the diagnostic criteria for neurofibromatosis type 1 by the mnemonic **COFFINS**: **C**afé-au-lait spots, **O**ptic glioma, **F**reckling, **F**amilial history, **I**ris hamartomas, **N**eurofibromas, **S**keletal lesions.

IX. SLEEP AND LOSS OF CONSCIOUSNESS
A. Sleep

1. Normal sleep cycles
 - a. Stage N1 sleep is light sleep with fast θ waves on EEG.
 - b. Stage N2 sleep is intermediate sleep with sleep spindles and K-complexes on EEG.
 - c. Stage N3 is deep sleep with slow δ waves on EEG.
 - d. Rapid eye movement (REM) sleep occurs every 90 to 120 minutes and is characterized by REMs, dreams, and low-voltage, high-frequency EEG pattern.
2. Sleep apnea
 - a. Hypoventilation during sleep secondary to pulmonary obstruction or decreased neurologic respiratory drive (see Chapter 2, **Pulmonary Disorders**)
3. Narcolepsy
 - a. Persistent excessive daytime sleepiness regardless of prior sleep quality
 - b. H/P = possible sudden loss of muscle tone (i.e., cataplexy), vivid dreams, sleep paralysis; **hypersomnia** (i.e., sudden occurrence of sleep) may occur suddenly during the daytime
 - c. Labs = polysomnography may show multiple arousals and decreased latency until REM sleep
 - d. Treatment = modafinil (preferred), methylphenidate, or pemoline help prevent hypersomnia; tricyclic antidepressants may help prevent cataplexy; establishing regular sleep schedule with short naps improves wakefulness

**QUICK HIT**

40%–50% of sleep is spent in stage N2. **Benzodiazepines** increase stage N2 sleep, decrease stage N3, and do not reproduce normal sleep architecture.

B. Syncope

1. Acute transient loss of consciousness frequently related to inadequate blood supply to the brain
2. Common causes include **cardiac dysfunction** (e.g., aortic stenosis, bradycardia, decreased stroke volume), vasovagal response, hypotension, **hypoglycemia**, seizures, and cerebrovascular ischemia.

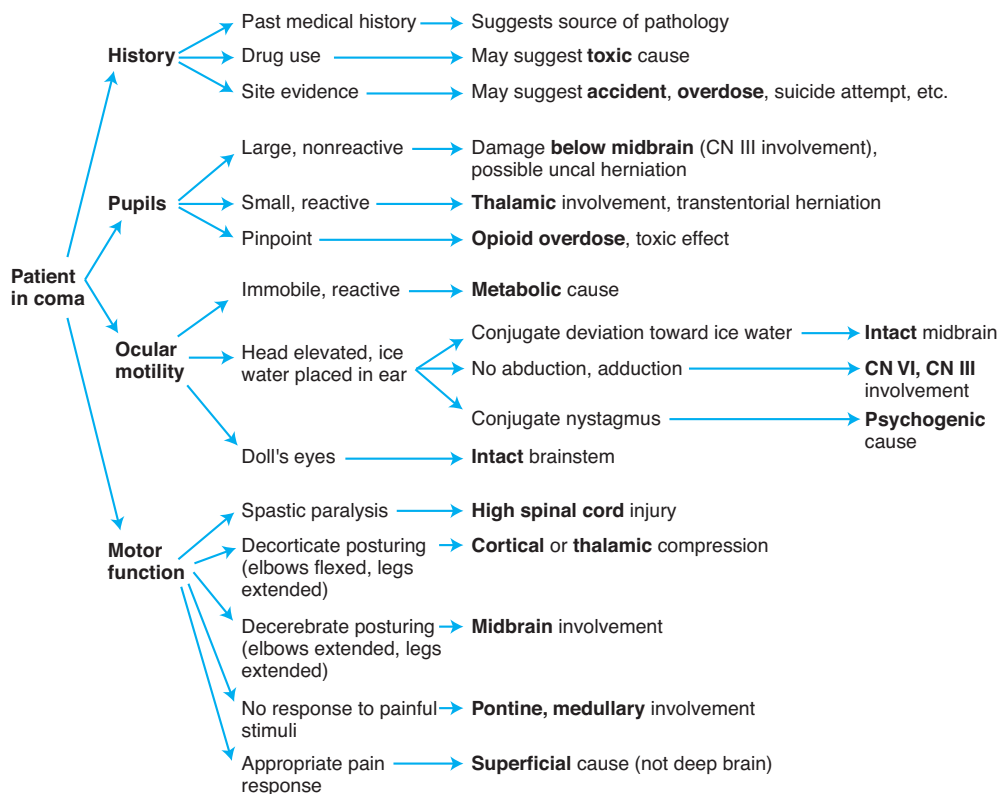

QUICK HIT

A patient in a **persistent vegetative state** has normal sleep cycles, an inability to perceive and interact with the environment, and preserved autonomic function for **>1 month**. Recovery is unlikely if these symptoms last **>3 months**.

3. **H/P** = possible prodrome of lightheadedness, nausea, and weakness preceding loss of consciousness (i.e., fainting); few generalized spasms may be observed; **patient quickly regains consciousness** (although seizure patients may display postictal sleepiness); hypotension, arrhythmias, and neurologic deficits may be detected following the episode
4. **Labs** = glucose levels should be measured; **orthostatics** or tilt testing (i.e., patient response is measured with rapid posture changes), with or without β -blocker infusion, can help diagnose cardiovascular cause; echocardiography or stress testing may be useful
5. **ECG** = useful for diagnosing cardiac causes; ambulatory monitoring may be used to measure extended periods of time
6. **EEG** = useful for detecting epileptic causes
7. **Radiology** = MRI, MRA, or angiography may detect vascular abnormalities
8. **Treatment** = treat underlying cause

C. Coma (see Figure 8-6)

1. Condition in which patient is **unresponsive to stimuli and unable to be aroused**; associated with bilateral cortical or brainstem reticular activating system dysfunction
2. Can result from cerebral hemorrhage, tumor, abscess, sedating drugs (e.g., alcohol, benzodiazepines, narcotics), hypoglycemia, metabolic dysfunction, hypothermia, hepatorenal failure, or psychogenic causes
3. **H/P** = patient unresponsive to stimuli; pertinent history and physical examination helpful for determining cause; CN examination particularly helpful for determining level of injury
4. **Labs** = CBC, electrolytes, BUN and creatinine, glucose, LFTs, coagulation factors, toxicology, CSF analysis, EEG, or arterial blood gas are helpful for diagnosis
5. **Radiology** = CT or MRI may detect intracranial cause (e.g., hemorrhage, tumor)
6. **Treatment** = maintain ABCs; prevent increase in ICP (hyperventilation, mannitol, elevate head); treat underlying cause

FIGURE 8-6
Approach to the patient in a coma.


X. PEDIATRIC NEUROLOGIC ISSUES

A. Febrile seizures

1. Childhood seizures between 6 months and 6 years of age associated with fever
2. Occur in absence of CNS infection or lesion, metabolic abnormality, or history or prior afebrile seizures
3. **H/P** = fever $>102^{\circ}\text{F}/38.9^{\circ}\text{C}$ with rapid rise in temperature; tonic-clonic seizure lasting <15 minutes; atypical seizures can occur at lower temperature and last longer
4. **Labs** = LP should be performed if meningitis suspected or in children <12 months of age
5. **EEG** = usually normal, unless atypical seizure
6. **Treatment** = confirm respiratory stability; **acetaminophen** as antipyretic; atypical seizures should receive more in-depth workup, including blood laboratory studies, EEG, and MRI
7. **Complications**
 - a. Thirty-five percent of patients have recurrent febrile seizures, but there is little increase in lifetime risk of epilepsy.
 - b. **Atypical** febrile seizures are more likely to recur, occur over longer periods of time, and carry an increased risk of epilepsy.

B. Childhood hydrocephalus

1. Hydrocephalus in children caused by either obstruction of CSF circulation in 4th cerebral ventricle (i.e., **noncommunicating**) or dysfunction of subarachnoid cisterns or arachnoid villi (i.e., **communicating**)
2. **H/P** = **increased head growth**, bulging fontanelles, and dilated scalp veins in infants; lethargy, vomiting, poor appetite, irritability, headache, diplopia, papilledema, poor skull suture fusion in older children
3. **Labs** = LP should be performed if infection is suspected
4. **Radiology** = US, CT, or MRI will show expanded ventricles
5. **Treatment** = acetazolamide or furosemide can be used temporarily to relieve symptoms; surgical shunting usually required for most cases
6. **Complications** = increased risk of epilepsy; increased risk of bacterial infection with shunting; 50% mortality before 3 years of age if untreated

C. Tay-Sachs disease

1. Autosomal recessive disorder caused by absence of hexosaminidase A (i.e., enzyme required for lipid ganglioside metabolism)
2. **Risk factors** = **Ashkenazi Jews**, French Canadians
3. **H/P** = poor development after first few months of life, decreased alertness, hyperacute hearing; **cherry red spots** on **retina** on fundoscopic examination, progressive paralysis, vision loss, change in mental status
4. **Labs** = decreased hexosaminidase A activity; DNA analysis confirms diagnosis
5. **Treatment** = supportive care; genetic screening may aid parents with future childbearing decisions
6. **Complications** = death within first few years of life

D. Neural tube disorders

1. Failure of neural tube closure during gestation leading to a spectrum of defects involving CNS formation
2. **Types of defects**
 - a. **Spina bifida occulta**: most benign type; defect in **closure of dorsal vertebral arches** above spinal cord (usually lumbosacral junction)
 - b. **Meningocele**: larger defect with herniation of meninges through dorsal vertebral defect; soft mass may form in midline superficial to defect.
 - c. **Myelomeningocele**: severe defect with herniation of meninges and spinal cord through defect; frequent neurologic deficits, including bowel and bladder incontinence, flaccid paralysis, poor sensation, LMN signs, hydrocephalus



QUICK HIT

Febrile seizures are the most common seizures in **children**.

NEXT STEP

Do **not** give ASA to young children as an antipyretic because of risk of Reye syndrome.



QUICK HIT

Arnold-Chiari malformation type II and Dandy-Walker malformations are anatomic defects of the skull and ventricular system associated with hydrocephalus in children.

- d. **Anencephaly**: severe disorder with failure of cranial neural tube to close; absence of forebrain, meninges, and portions of skull; death occurs within days of birth.
3. **Risk factors** = anticonvulsant use or **poor folate intake** during pregnancy (both result in low maternal serum folate), DM
4. **H/P**
 - a. Symptom severity depends on defect severity; patients with mild spina bifida may have tuft of hair over defect and may be asymptomatic.
 - b. More severe cases of spina bifida can include delayed motor and mental development.
 - c. More severe neural tube defects have more severe neurologic and developmental abnormalities.
 - d. Anencephalic neonates have only brainstem function and no upper cortical function.
5. **Labs** = increased amniotic **α -fetoprotein** and **acetylcholinesterase** during gestation (measured in properly timed quadruple screen)
6. **Radiology** = US during pregnancy may detect defects
7. **Treatment**
 - a. Surgical repair of all but mild defects needed
 - b. Shunting frequently needed for meningocele and myelomeningocele to resolve hydrocephalus
 - c. Physical therapy needed for gait abnormalities for patients capable of walking (spina bifida)
 - d. Fetal surgery is developing as a potential treatment for lower neural tube defects diagnosed in utero.
 - e. Appropriate supportive care for children with more severe neurologic deficits and those involving the genitourinary system
 - f. Pregnant women and women trying to conceive should be given folate supplementation to reduce risk of defects.
8. **Complications** = increased risk of urinary tract infection and CNS infection; hydrocephalus in severe defects; children with severe defects may require lifelong care; survival time for anencephaly is typically for only a few days following birth


QUICK HIT

Spastic CP is caused by damage of **pyramidal** tracts.
Dyskinetic CP results from **extrapyramidal** pathology.

E. Cerebral palsy (CP)

1. Disorders of motor function resulting from CNS damage during in utero or infantile development; most cases result from **perinatal complications**
2. **Risk factors** = prematurity, intrauterine growth restriction, **birth trauma**, neonatal seizures or cerebral hemorrhage, **perinatal asphyxia**, multiple births, intrauterine infection (chorioamnionitis)
3. **Types**
 - a. **Spastic**: spastic paresis of multiple limbs
 - b. **Dyskinetic**: choreoathetoid (see hyperkinetic disorders in this chapter), dystonic, or ataxic movement disorder
4. **H/P**
 - a. Patients with spastic CP have multiple limbs with increased tone, increased DTRs, weakness, gait abnormalities, and frequent mental retardation.
 - b. Patients with dyskinetic CP have choreoathetoid, dystonic, or ataxic movements that worsen with stress as well as difficulty speaking (i.e., dysarthria).
 - c. Both types of CP can include hyperactivity, seizures, or limb contractures.
 - d. Some patients may exhibit symptoms of both types.
5. **Radiology** = MRI may be useful for detecting causative lesions
6. **Treatment**
 - a. Pharmacologic therapy (e.g., botulinum toxin, dantrolene, baclofen, benzodiazepines), physical therapy, bracing, and surgery can be used to alleviate contractures and improve function.
 - b. Speech therapy is useful for dysarthria.
 - c. Special education is needed for patients with mental retardation.
 - d. Social and psychological support will be needed to help parents coordinate the many services needed for chronic care.

F. Retinoblastoma

1. Malignant tumor of retina in children and the most common **intraocular** tumor in children
2. Some cases have a genetic link that increases risk of tumor for both eyes.
3. **H/P** = rarely, patients experience decrease in vision or eye inflammation; ophthalmologic examination may detect poor red light reflex in affected eye (i.e., **leukocoria**) or white retinal mass (see Figure 8-7)
4. **Labs** = mutation of RBI gene apparent on genetic testing
5. **Radiology** = US and CT detect size and extent of tumor; finding of calcified mass with normal globe size on CT is needed before therapy can be initiated
6. **Treatment**
 - a. Enucleation performed for large tumors with no vision potential
 - b. Radiation can be used for bilateral tumors or tumors near optic nerve.
 - c. Cryotherapy or laser photocoagulation used for smaller tumors
 - d. Chemotherapy used for metastases or vision salvage
7. **Complications** = good prognosis if metastasis has not occurred; risk of vision loss is high if tumor is adjacent to cornea

FIGURE**8-7** Leukocoria in a child with a left-eye retinoblastoma.

(From Rubin, E., & Farber, J. L. [1999]. *Pathology* [3rd ed., Figure 29-23A]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

XI. OPHTHALMOLOGY

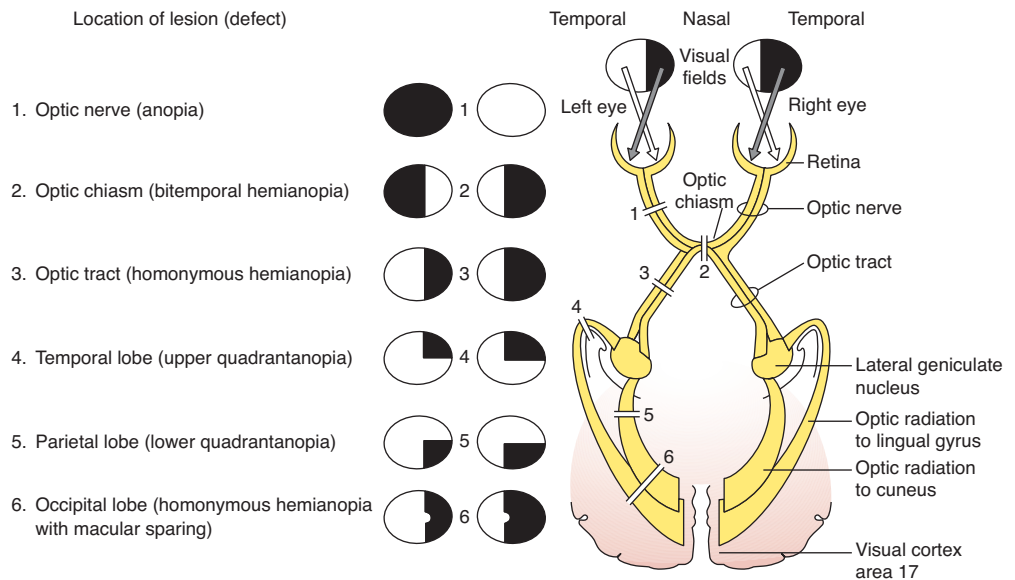
A. Normal eye function

1. Retinal artery and vein are vasculature for the retina; vascular pathology affects vision (e.g., occlusion, DM retinopathy).
2. Nerves
 - a. Optic nerve (CN II) responsible for vision
 - b. Trochlear nerve (CN IV) controls superior oblique muscle (downward medial gaze, inward eye rotation).
 - c. Abducens nerve (CN VI) controls lateral rectus muscle (abduction).
 - d. Oculomotor nerve (CN III) controls all other eye muscles.
 - e. Medial longitudinal fasciculus (MLF) maintains conjugate gaze when one eye abducts.
 - f. Specific distortions in vision result from neuronal injury depending on site of insult (see Figure 8-8, Table 8-15).

B. Common vision abnormalities

1. Types of visual irregularity are caused by abnormal eye shape, gaze alignment, or eye focal orientation (see Table 8-16).
2. Usually correctable through lenses, visual training, or surgery

FIGURE 8-8 Visual field defects resulting from neuronal injury.



(From Mehta, S., Milder, E. A., Mirachi, A. J., & Milder, E. [2003]. *Step-Up: A High-Yield, Systems-Based Review for the USMLE Step 1* [2nd ed.]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.)

TABLE 8-15 Common Pupil and Gaze Abnormalities

Abnormality	Presentation	Cause
Argyll Robertson pupil	Accommodation to near objects, nonreactive to light	Syphilis, SLE, DM
Marcus Gunn pupil	Light in affected pupil causes minimal bilateral constriction, light in normal pupil causes normal bilateral constriction	Afferent nerve defect
Horner syndrome	Ptosis, miosis, anhidrosis	Sympathetic trunk lesion (e.g., Pancoast tumor)
Adie pupil	Minimally reactive dilated pupil	Abnormal innervation of iris
MLF syndrome	With lateral gaze, there is absent contralateral eye adduction	Intracranial lesion, MS

DM, diabetes mellitus; MLF, medial longitudinal fasciculus; MS, multiple sclerosis; SLE, systemic lupus erythematosus.

TABLE 8-16 Common Vision Abnormalities

Disorder	Cause	History and Physical	Treatment
Myopia	Refracting power of eye is too great, causing image focal point to be anterior to retina	Blurred vision, vision quality worsens as objects move farther away	Corrective lenses, laser correction
Hyperopia	Refracting power of eye is insufficient, causing image focal point to be posterior to retina	Blurred vision, vision quality worsens as objects move closer	Corrective lenses, laser correction
Astigmatism	Asymmetric cornea surface, causing inconsistent refraction of light	Blurred vision	Corrective lenses
Strabismus	Deviation of eye unable to be overcome by normal motor control	Gaze for each eye is in different directions, double vision, progressive blindness	Vision training, surgery frequently required to achieve bilateral alignment
Amblyopia	Developmental defect in neural pathways of eye	Poor visual acuity, spatial differentiation in affected eye	Vision training, levodopa, carbidopa

C. Eye inflammation and infection

1. Conjunctivitis

- a. Inflammation of eye mucosa secondary to bacterial (e.g., *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Streptococcus pneumoniae*) or viral infection or allergic reaction
- b. H/P = mildly painful eye, **inflamed conjunctiva**, possible lymphadenopathy, pruritic eye when caused by allergy; purulent discharge often seen with bacterial infection (but can also be seen with viral or allergic conjunctivitis)
- c. **Labs** = Gram stain and culture of discharge may indicate bacterial cause
- d. **Treatment** = self-limited; topical sulfonamides or erythromycin reduce duration of bacterial infection; antihistamines improve symptoms caused by allergic reaction; fastidious handwashing decreases community spread of infection

2. Uveitis

- a. Inflammation of iris, choroids, and ciliary bodies caused by infectious (e.g., viral, syphilis), autoimmune (e.g., ankylosing spondylitis, **juvenile idiopathic arthritis**), or inflammatory (e.g., ulcerative colitis, Crohn's disease) conditions
- b. H/P
 - (1) **Anterior uveitis**: pain and photophobia; slit lamp examination shows inflammation of eye and keratin deposits on cornea
 - (2) **Posterior uveitis**: mild vision abnormalities; slit lamp examination shows eye inflammation and retinal lesions
- c. **Treatment** = topical antibiotics if caused by infection; topical or systemic corticosteroids if not caused by infection; treat underlying condition

D. Cataracts

1. **Clouding of lens** leading to progressive vision loss
2. **Risk factors** = trauma (caustic substances), DM, corticosteroid use, age, low education, alcohol use, tobacco use
3. H/P = progressive hazy and blurred vision occurring over months to years; examination reveals opacity of lenses and decreased red reflex
4. **Treatment** = lens replacement surgery

E. Glaucoma

1. Increased intraocular pressure (IOP) leading to loss of vision
2. **Open angle glaucoma**
 - a. **Gradual bilateral increase in IOP**
 - b. **Risk factors** = increased age, increased IOP, blacks, DM, myopia, family history
 - c. H/P = initially asymptomatic; gradual loss of visual fields (from **peripheral to central**), halos seen around lights, headache, and poor adaptation to changes in light; **cupping** of optic disc seen on fundoscopic examination
 - d. **Labs** = IOP testing (i.e., tonometry) shows increased pressure over several tests performed at 2- to 4-week intervals
 - e. **Treatment**
 - (1) Topical β -blockers (e.g., timolol) and α -adrenergic agonists decrease aqueous humor production; prostaglandin analogues, α -adrenergic agonists, and cholinergic agonists (e.g., pilocarpine) increase aqueous humor removal.
 - (2) Laser surgery improves aqueous humor drainage in refractory cases.
 - (3) Prevention is important for all at-risk patients, who should receive **regular ophthalmologic examinations**.
 - f. **Complications** = progressive, permanent vision loss
3. **Closed angle glaucoma**
 - a. **Acute increase in IOP** secondary to narrowing of anterior chamber angle and obstructed drainage of aqueous humor from eye
 - b. **Risk factors** = increased age, Asian, hyperopia, dilated pupils (e.g., low-light environments, optometry examination dilation)
 - c. H/P = severe eye pain, blurred vision, halos seen around lights, nausea, and vomiting; eye is inflamed and **hard** with a **dilated** and nonreactive pupil
 - d. **Labs** = tonometry demonstrates increased IOP

**QUICK HIT**

Conjunctivitis facts:

- Adenovirus is the most common cause.
- Typically highly contagious and can be spread by contact with towels or linens or by close contact
- Can be caused by *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* and *Chlamydia trachomatis* after sexual contact
- Can occur in the perinatal period if mother is infected with *N. gonorrhoeae* or *C. trachomatis*

**QUICK HIT**

Open angle glaucoma is the **most common** type of glaucoma.

NEXT STEP

Any patient who requires **frequent changes of lens prescriptions** should be suspected of having glaucoma and pressure testing should be performed.

**QUICK HIT**

Closed angle glaucoma is usually **unilateral**.

NEXT STEP

Never induce additional pupil dilation during examination of patient with suspected closed angle glaucoma because it will acutely worsen the condition.



QUICK HIT

Macular degeneration is the most common cause of **bilateral** vision loss in the elderly.

e. Treatment

(1) Acetazolamide decreases pressure; pilocarpine administered after pressure is lowered to reduce obstruction.

Laser iridotomy should be performed to prevent recurrence (frequently performed on unaffected eye as prophylaxis).

f. Complications = rapid permanent vision loss

F. Macular degeneration

1. Atrophic (slow) or exudative (rapid) degeneration of retina, leading to **retinal fibrosis and permanent vision loss**
2. **Risk factors** = white, tobacco, family history, increased age, prolonged sunlight exposure, HTN; female > male
3. **H/P** = painless, gradual loss of vision (**central to peripheral**) at all distances; retinal pigmentation (atrophic type) and hemorrhage (exudative type) in macular region and possible retinal detachment seen on fundoscopic examination
4. **Radiology** = fluorescein angiography may show neovascular membranes and retina
5. **Treatment** = dietary supplementation with vitamin C, vitamin E, β -carotene, copper, and zinc may slow progression; intravitreal ranibizumab may help treat exudative lesions near the fovea; laser photocoagulation of discrete lesions may delay progression
6. **Complications** = treatment effectiveness is limited; gradual progression to severe vision loss

G. Retinal detachment

1. Separating of retina from adjacent epithelium, leading to acute vision loss
2. **Risk factors** = trauma, cataract surgery, myopia, family history
3. **H/P** = painless acute loss of vision (“**window shade pulled over eye**” or **numerous “floaters**”); pigmented fragments or gray retina floating in vitreous humor seen on fundoscopic examination
4. **Treatment** = laser photocoagulation or cryotherapy to halt tear progression and reattachment of retina (may not fully restore loss of vision)

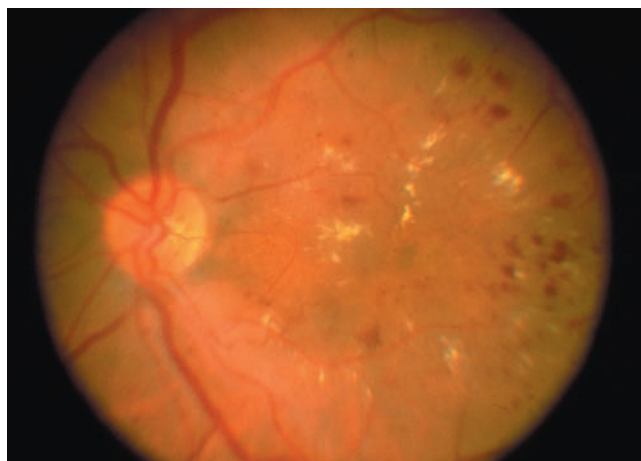
H. Retinal vessel occlusion

1. Occlusion of retinal artery or vein resulting in sudden loss of vision
2. Most commonly caused by atherosclerosis, DM, HTN, **thromboembolic disease** (see Figures 8-9, 8-10, and 8-11)
3. **H/P**
 - a. **Retinal artery occlusion**: sudden painless loss of vision; fundoscopic examination shows **cherry red spot** in fovea and poor arterial filling
 - b. **Retinal vein occlusion**: more gradual painless loss of vision; fundoscopic examination shows **cotton wool spots**, edema, **retinal hemorrhages**, and dilated veins

FIGURE

8-9

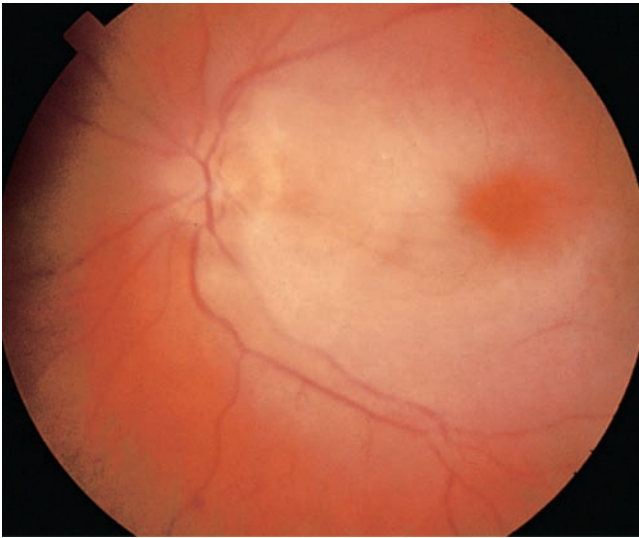
Diabetic retinopathy.



Note yellowish lipid exudates and multiple small retinal hemorrhages.

(From Rubin, E., & Farber, J. L. [1999]. *Pathology* [3rd ed., Figure 29-11A]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

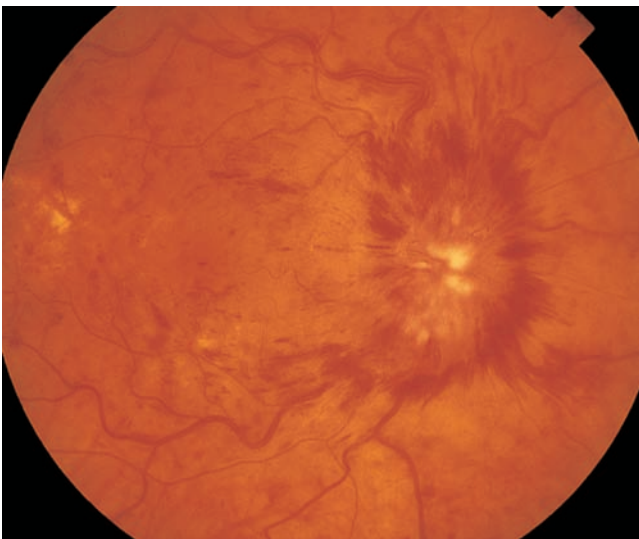
FIGURE 8-10 Retinal artery occlusion.



Note generalized retinal edema and presence of cherry red spot.

(From Gold, D. H., & Weingeist, T. A. [2001]. *Color Atlas of the Eye in Systemic Disease* [Figure 75-2]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

FIGURE 8-11 Retinal vein occlusion.



Note edematous retina, retinal hemorrhages, cotton wool spots, and venous dilation.

(From Gold, D. H., & Weingeist, T. A. [2001]. *Color Atlas of the Eye in Systemic Disease* [Figure 29-1]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

4. Treatment

- a. Thrombolysis of arterial occlusion should be performed within 8 hr of onset.
- b. Acetazolamide and O₂ administration also used to decrease congestion and increase perfusion for arterial occlusion
- c. Laser photocoagulation may be useful for venous occlusion.

5. **Complications** = without prompt treatment, permanent vision loss results



XII. AUDIOVESTIBULAR DISORDERS

A. Otitis media

1. Infection of middle ear caused by *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, *Haemophilus influenzae*, *Moraxella catarrhalis*, *S. pyogenes*, or viruses

2. Increased risk in children secondary to shorter and more horizontal ear canal than in adults; pacifier use; hypertrophic tonsillar tissue
3. **H/P** = ear pain, decreased hearing; fever, bulging tympanic membrane with **decreased mobility**, poor light reflex; possible bloody discharge with perforation (i.e., otorrhea)
4. **Treatment**
 - a. Initially observation and supportive care
 - b. For unresolved cases, amoxicillin for 10 days; resistant strains may require amoxicillin-clavulanic acid or stronger cephalosporins
 - c. Recurrent cases may require surgical placement of tympanic tubes to assist in middle ear drainage.
5. **Complications** = mastoiditis, meningitis, hearing loss, sigmoid sinus thrombosis, or brain abscess can occur in untreated cases

B. Otitis externa (“swimmer’s ear”)

1. Infection of outer ear canal most commonly caused by *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Pseudomonas*, or *S. epidermidis*; frequently associated with water in ears (e.g., swimming)
2. **H/P** = painful, swollen ear with possible white discharge; **ear canal** is red and swollen; tenderness of pinna
3. **Treatment** = topical polymyxin, neomycin, and hydrocortisone; oral cephalosporins or ciprofloxacin can be used for *Pseudomonas* infection or infection that spreads to involved skull; topical drying agents after water exposure to prevent recurrent infection

C. Benign paroxysmal positional vertigo (BPPV)

1. Vertigo (i.e., abnormal feeling of rotational movement leading to poor balance and coordination) caused by a dislodged otolith in the inner ear that interferes with semicircular canal stabilization
2. **H/P**
 - a. Brief, episodic vertigo that can occur with certain head movements and is accompanied by nausea and vomiting
 - b. Nystagmus may be seen during episodes.
 - c. **Dix-Hallpike maneuver** (i.e., moving from sitting to supine while quickly turning head to side) induces symptoms and confirms diagnosis.
3. **Labs** = normal thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) level rules out thyroid pathology
4. **Radiology** = CT or MRI can rule out intracranial lesion
5. **Treatment** = physical maneuvers designed to free otolith from semicircular canal can alleviate recurrent episodes

D. Ménière disease (endolymphatic hydrops)

1. Vertigo caused by distension of endolymphatic compartment of inner ear
2. **H/P** = acute vertigo lasting **several hours**, nausea, vomiting, decreased hearing, feeling of ear fullness, tinnitus (ringing in ears)
3. **Labs** = audiometry shows **low-frequency hearing loss**
4. **Treatment** = anticholinergics, antiemetics, and antihistamines improve exacerbations; salt restriction and thiazide diuretics may reduce frequency of episodes; surgical decompression needed in refractory cases
5. **Complications** = progressive hearing loss

E. Acoustic neuroma (acoustic schwannoma)

1. Benign tumor of Schwann cells of CN VIII that can lead to hearing loss secondary to nerve compression
2. **H/P** = hearing loss, dizziness, tinnitus; unilateral facial palsy; decreased sensation may be seen on examination
3. **Labs** = audiometry shows sensorineural hearing loss
4. **Radiology** = MRI can localize tumor
5. **Treatment** = surgical excision
6. **Complications** = large tumors can compress cerebellum or brainstem



QUICK HIT

Conductive hearing loss:

- Pathology occurs along conductive pathway from outer ear to inner ear
- Audiometry shows **preserved bone** conduction, but air conduction shows consistently low hearing threshold (abnormal Rinne test).

Sensorineural hearing loss:

- Pathology in neural pathways from ear to brain
- Audiometry shows both **impaired bone and air conduction** (asymmetric Weber test, normal Rinne test)

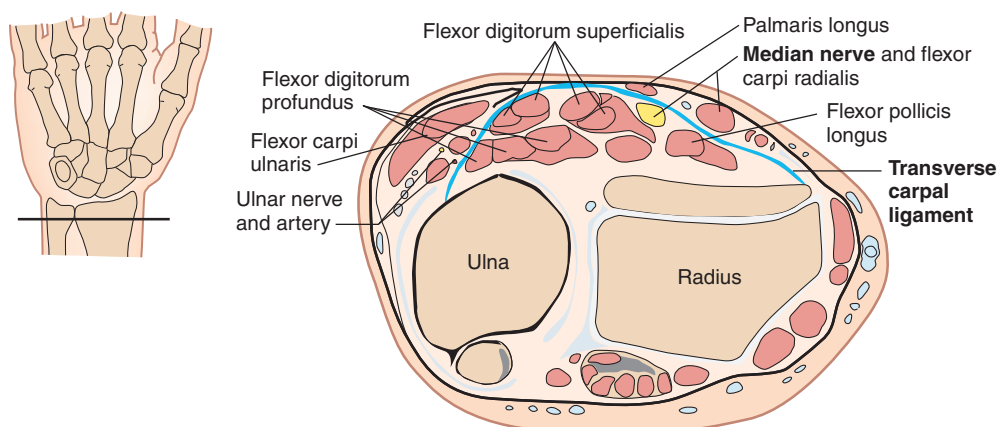
Musculoskeletal Disorders

I. COMMON ADULT ORTHOPEDIC CONDITIONS

A. Carpal tunnel syndrome

1. Syndrome resulting from median compression at the wrist (see Figure 9-1)
2. Risk factors
 - a. Pregnancy, rheumatoid arthritis (RA), diabetes mellitus (DM), acromegaly, hypothyroidism, obesity, **overuse** (activities requiring significant wrist motion, including typing, piano playing, writing, etc.)
 - b. Most common in persons 30 to 55 years of age; female > male
3. History and physical (H/P)
 - a. Wrist pain that radiates up arm and worsens with hand flexion and grasping, decreased hand strength, numbness in thumb and in index and middle fingers; decreased palmar two-point discrimination, except on the radial side of the palm
 - b. Positive **Tinel** sign (i.e., tapping over carpal tunnel elicits wrist tingling and pain) and **Phalen** sign (i.e., placing dorsal side of hands together and flexing wrists 90° causes the onset of symptoms within a minute)
 - c. Thenar muscle atrophy is seen in long-term cases.
4. **Electromyogram (EMG)** = can be used in addition to nerve conduction studies to evaluate nerve compromise (will show impaired conduction)
5. **Treatment** = wrist splints, **activity modification**, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), corticosteroid injections, surgical release of the transverse carpal ligament

FIGURE 9-1 Tendinous and neurovascular structures superficial and deep to the transverse carpal ligament in the wrist.



(Modified from Moore, K. L. [1992]. *Clinically Oriented Anatomy* [3rd ed.]. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.)


**NEXT
STEP**

Suspect axillary nerve injury in cases of **deltoid** malfunction (inability to extend arm) or shoulder numbness following shoulder dislocation.


**NEXT
STEP**

An **open** fracture (fracture penetrates skin and is exposed to outside environment) requires thorough **irrigation** in the operating room and antibiotics to reduce the risk of **infection**.

**QUICK HIT**

Computed tomography (CT) is generally more useful in the diagnosis of **bone** pathology, whereas **MRI** is more useful for **soft tissue** injuries.

**QUICK HIT**

A medially directed blow to the lateral side of the knee (i.e., a valgus stress) can cause the **unhappy triad**: **lateral meniscus** tear, **medial collateral ligament (MCL)** tear, and **ACL** tear.

**QUICK HIT**

Young athletes may get an **exertional** compartment syndrome during athletic activity with mild elevation of compartment pressures that **resolves following activity cessation** and carries a **minimal risk** of significant tissue ischemia.

**QUICK HIT**

A painful leg that has a pulse **never** rules out compartment syndrome.

B. Dislocations

1. Shoulder

- Most commonly **anterior** (posteriorly directed force on distal humerus or forearm during abduction causes cantilever effect that drives humeral head forward and tears anterior shoulder capsule)
- Posterior** dislocations most frequently occur following **seizures** and **electrical shock** (strong contraction in internally rotated, adducted arm causes humeral head dislocation).
- Treatment** = urgent closed reduction, sling; chronic dislocations may require surgery to improve joint stability
- Complications** = axillary artery and nerve injury, increased risk of future dislocations

2. Hip

- Most commonly **posterior** via a posteriorly directed force on an internally rotated, flexed, and adducted hip (e.g., dashboard injury)
- Treatment** = closed reduction, bracing, abduction pillow

C. Fractures

- Fractures are associated with a particular mechanism of injury and carry different options, depending on location (see Table 9-1).

D. Sprains

- Most common in the ankle and knee
- Injuries to **ligaments** and surrounding soft tissues in a joint; structures are partially or completely torn at ligament–bone interface or within ligament substance
- H/P** = pain in involved joint with weight bearing or movement
- Treatment** = **RICE**: Rest, Icing, Compression of swelling, Elevation of joint; analgesics

E. Ligament tears

- Occur from excessive stress across joints
- H/P** = pain and swelling that worsens with joint stress, decreased joint range of motion; ligamentous **instability** on joint stress testing
- Radiology** = magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) may confirm tear
- Treatment** = initially, as for sprains; may require surgical repair

F. Meniscus tears (knee)

- Result from repetitive microtrauma and degeneration or forceful twisting of a planted knee
- Frequently associated with anterior cruciate ligament (ACL) injury (especially from blunt trauma or sports injuries)
- H/P** = vague pain inside knee joint, clicking or locking of joint; pain along joint line near tear
- Radiology** = MRI may detect tear
- Treatment** = NSAIDs, physical therapy, arthroscopic repair or debridement
- Complications** = meniscal debridement predisposes knee to developing osteoarthritis at an earlier age

G. Compartment syndrome

- Trauma (surgical or accidental) in extremities leads to reperfusion injury and swelling of fascial compartments; **intracompartmental swelling** can cause compression of neurovascular structures leading to **ischemia** of soft tissues within compartment and distal to site of compression.
- Most common in **lower leg** (e.g., tibial fracture) and forearm
- H/P** = **6 Ps** are signs of progression (**Pain**, **Pallor**, **Poikilothermia**, **Pulselessness**, **Paresthesia**, **Paralysis**); compartment pain with passive stretching is best screening test
- Labs** = elevated compartment pressures (needle inserted into compartment and attached to manometer to determine pressures)
- Treatment** = **emergent fasciotomy** for pressures >30 mm Hg or for pressures within 20 mm Hg of diastolic blood pressure

TABLE 9-1 Common Fractures, Their Mechanism of Injury, and Appropriate Treatment

Type	Bones Involved	History and Physical	Treatment	Clinical Pearls
Colles	Distal radius ± distal ulna	Fall on outstretched hand , distal radius is posteriorly displaced and angulated (forearm profile looks like a dinner fork)	Closed reduction Long arm cast Possible surgery	Most common wrist fracture, particularly common in osteoporotic bone
Smith	Distal radius	Fall on flexed wrists, distal radius is anteriorly displaced	Cast Closed reduction Possible surgery	Much less common than Colles fracture
Scaphoid	Scaphoid	“Snuffbox” tenderness, fall on radially deviated outstretched hand	Thumb spica cast Possible surgery	Increased risk of AVN; not seen on X-ray for 1–2 wk after injury ; most common carpal fracture
Boxer	Fifth-metacarpal neck	Punching hard object or surface with a strong force applied to fifth metacarpal	Closed reduction Ulnar gutter splint Surgical pinning	Beware the “fight bite” —open wounds from teeth will need surgical exploration to rule out tendon involvement; antibiotics
Humerus	Humerus	Trauma (motor vehicle accident, blunt trauma, etc.)	Closed reduction splint Possible surgery	With wrist drop or weakened thumb abduction, think radial nerve injury
Monteggia	Dislocation of radial head and ulnar diaphyseal fracture	Defense against blunt trauma (e.g., nightstick injury)	Closed reduction of radial head Surgical repair of ulna	
Galeazzi	DRUJ dislocation and radial diaphyseal fracture	Trauma (direct blow or fall)	Surgical repair Cast forearm in supination to maintain reduction of DRUJ	
Hip	Femoral head or neck	Fall, motor vehicle accident, trauma Injured leg is shortened and externally rotated Frequently occurs from strong axial force (e.g., fall or knee hitting a car dashboard)	Surgical repair May require joint replacement	Increased risk for AVN and DVT (should anticoagulate patient); particularly common in osteoporotic bone
Femur	Femoral diaphysis	Trauma	Surgical repair	Increased risk of fat embolization
Tibial	Tibia	Trauma	Cast Surgical repair	Increased risk for compartment syndrome
Ankle	Medial, lateral, and/or posterior malleoli	Trauma, excessive twist of ankle (most commonly supination and external rotation)	Cast Possible surgical repair	
Rib	Nonfloating ribs	Trauma, pain worse during deep breathing	Pain control Possible splinting	
Pelvic	Pelvis	Major trauma	Pain control surgical repair, if in weight-bearing portion	High risk of major blood loss

AVN, avascular necrosis; DRUJ, distal radial ulnar joint; DVT, deep vein thrombosis.


QUICK HIT

90% of back pain caused by muscular injury resolves within 6 weeks, regardless of treatment.

II. SPINE

A. Back pain

1. Back pain can be caused by musculoskeletal, neurologic, neoplastic, infectious, or rheumatic causes (see Figure 9-2).
2. **Treatment** = NSAIDs, physical therapy, or rest for muscular injuries

B. Degenerative disc disease

1. Vertebral disc is composed of a dense annulus fibrosus and a gelatinous nucleus pulposus.
2. Degenerative changes in disc lead to **herniation** (most frequently, posterior or posterior lateral) of nucleus pulposus and subsequent **nerve impingement**.
3. Herniation is most common in the lumbosacral region (L4–L5, L5–S1 discs) but can also be cervical (see Figure 9-3).
4. **H/P** = pain extending from the nerve root **along path of compressed nerve**; characteristic sensory and motor deficits, depending on nerve root involved; pain worsens with straight leg raises or Valsalva maneuver (see Table 9-2)
5. **Radiology** = MRI confirms diagnosis; CT is helpful for analysis of bone structure

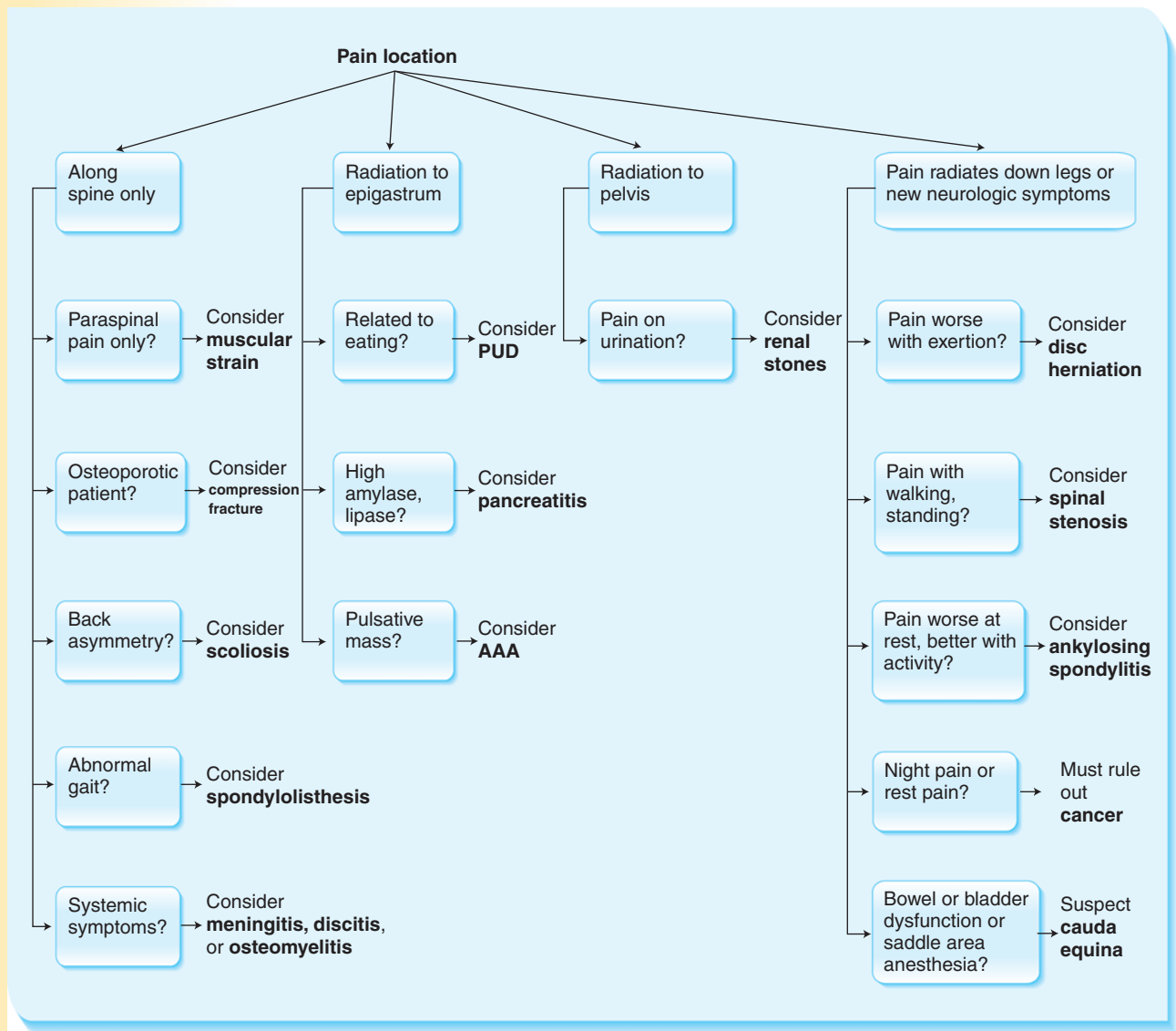
FIGURE
9-2 Differential diagnosis for back pain.


FIGURE 9-3

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) of lumbar spine demonstrating herniation of L5–S1 disc (arrows) and compression of spinal cord.



(From Daffner, R. H. [1999]. *Clinical Radiology: The Essentials* [2nd ed.]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.)

6. **Treatment** = disease may be self-limited; NSAIDs, activity modification, epidural injection of anti-inflammatory agents, or surgical decompression can be used, depending on symptom duration and severity

C. Spinal stenosis

1. Generalized narrowing of bony spaces in the spine secondary to arthritic changes, causing nerve compression
2. Most common in middle-aged and older adults
3. **H/P** = radiating pain that is worse with walking and standing
4. **Radiology** = CT or X-ray confirms diagnosis; MRI may also be helpful to rule out herniation
5. **Treatment** = analgesics (e.g., NSAIDs), physical therapy, epidural injections, surgical decompression

TABLE 9-2 H/P for Compression of Specific Cervical and Lumbosacral Nerve Roots

Nerve Root	Reflex	Motor Deficit	Sensory Deficit
C5	Biceps	Deltoid, biceps	Anterior shoulder
C6	Brachioradialis	Biceps, wrist extensors	Lateral forearm
C7	Triceps	Triceps, wrist flexors, finger extensors	Posterior forearm
C8	None	Finger flexors	Fourth and fifth fingers, medial forearm
T1	None	Finger interossei	Axilla
L4	Patellar	Tibialis anterior (foot dorsiflexion)	Medial leg
L5	None	Extensor hallucis longus (first-toe dorsiflexion)	Lateral lower leg, first web space
S1	Achilles	Peroneus longus and brevis (foot eversion), gastrocnemius (foot plantarflexion)	Lateral foot

H/P, history and physical.

NEXT STEP

Treat **cauda equina syndrome** with **immediate** surgical decompression because it can quickly result in permanent neurologic injury.



MNEMONIC

Remember the organization of the brachial plexus by the mnemonic **Real Texans Drink Cold Beer**:
Roots, **T**runks, **D**ivisions, **C**ords, **B**ranches (proximal to distal).

D. Cauda equina syndrome

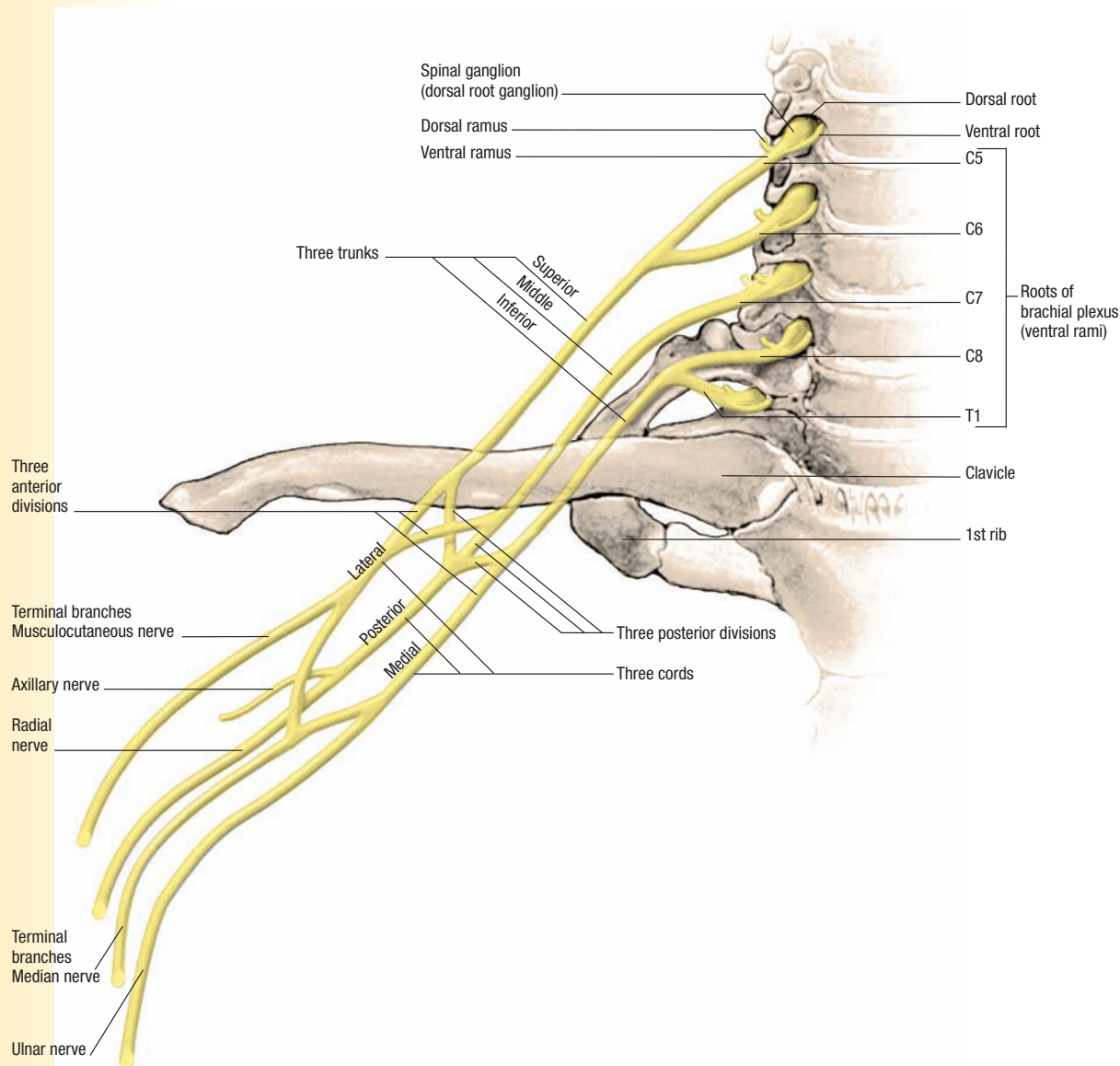
1. Cauda equina is the extension of the dural-arachnoid sac beyond the inferior tip of the spinal cord and the complex of terminal nerve roots contained within it.
2. Trauma can damage nerves running in the sac; neoplasms can cause nerve compression.
3. **H/P** = **urinary retention** following trauma, change in bowel habits; anesthesia in perineal region (i.e., **saddle anesthesia**), decreased rectal tone or bulbocavernosus reflex
4. **Treatment** = **emergency surgical decompression** of cauda equina; intravenous (IV) corticosteroids commonly given to decrease spinal cord inflammation; radiation used in cases of neoplasm

E. Brachial plexus

1. The brachial plexus is composed of nerve roots C5–T1 and innervates the upper extremity (see Figure 9-4).
2. Brachial plexus disorders are related to specific mechanisms of injury (see Table 9-3).

FIGURE 9-4

Diagram of major neural branches of the brachial plexus.



(Asset provided by Anatomical Chart Company.)

TABLE 9-3 Common Brachial Plexus Disorders

Condition	Site of Injury	Cause of Injury	Clinical Features
Erb-Duchenne palsy	Superior trunk	Hyperadduction of arm causing widening of the humeral-glenoid gap (e.g., birth, shoulder dystocia)	Waiter's tip (arm extended and adducted with pronated forearm)
Claw hand	Ulnar nerve	Epiphyseal separation of medial epicondyle of humerus	Weak finger adduction, poor fourth- or fifth-finger flexion, clawed fourth or fifth fingers from lumbrical weakness
Wrist drop	Posterior cord or radial nerve	Mid-humerus fracture causes nerve impingement or tear	Inability to extend wrist or fingers; loss of sensation from dorsal hand
Deltoid paralysis	Axillary nerve	Anterior shoulder dislocation causes axillary nerve impingement or stretching	Impaired shoulder abduction or elevation
Klumpke palsy	Posterior or medial cords	Hyperabduction of arm places excess tension on lower cords and nearby sympathetic chain	Claw hand , poor wrist and hand function, association with Horner syndrome

III. METABOLIC BONE DISEASES

A. Osteoporosis

- Substantial osteopenia (i.e., decreased bone density) but normal mineralization in existing bone stock
- Results from decreased bone formation or increased resorption of bone
- Peak bone mass occurs at 20 to 25 years of age.
- Risk factors** = inadequate dietary calcium during young adulthood, smoking, excessive alcohol consumption, sedentary lifestyle, decreased estrogen or testosterone (e.g., postmenopausal), long-term steroid use, hyperparathyroidism, hyperthyroidism; typical patients are thin, white, postmenopausal women
- H/P** = usually asymptomatic until fractures (e.g., Colles, femoral neck, and vertebral) and neurovascular impingement occur
- Radiology** = decreased bone density evident on dual X-ray absorptiometry (DXA), X-ray, and CT
- Treatment**
 - Prevention is key, with exercise and sufficient calcium and vitamin D in diet (especially before the peak bone density age of 35 years) important for maintaining bone stock.
 - Bisphosphonates** decrease osteoclast activity (less bone resorption), increase bone density, and decrease fracture risk.
 - Selective estrogen receptor modulators (e.g., raloxifene) help increase bone density with fewer adverse effects than classic hormone replacement therapy.
 - Pulsatile teriparatide (recombinant human parathyroid hormone) stimulates osteoblasts and bone remodeling; it may be used for up to 2 years.

B. Osteopetrosis

- Increased bone density caused by impaired osteoclast activity
- H/P** = increased incidence of fractures, possible blindness or deafness, variable neurologic symptoms (from bony compression of nerves), impaired fracture healing
- Labs** = decreased hemoglobin (Hgb), decreased hematocrit (Hct) (via narrowing of marrow cavities), increased acid phosphatase, increased creatine kinase (CK)
- Radiology** = general increased bone density seen on X-ray, including thickening of cranium and vertebrae
- Treatment** = transfusion of marrow components necessary for osteoclast production, activity restriction



QUICK HIT

Osteoporosis is **less** likely to occur in **obese** people, because the increased load placed on bones helps to prevent osteopenia.



QUICK HIT

Hormone and electrolyte levels will be normal for age in osteoporosis unless an underlying **endocrine** disorder exists.



QUICK HIT

X-rays will only show changes in osteoporotic bone after significant bone loss.



QUICK HIT

Hormone replacement therapy is no longer considered acceptable for osteoporosis prevention because it carries increased risks for breast cancer, deep vein thrombosis (DVT), coronary artery disease (CAD), and stroke.

NEXT
STEP

If a patient complains that “my hats no longer fit,” consider a workup for Paget disease or osteopetrosis.

NEXT
STEP

Allopurinol should **not** be administered in acute attacks of gout.

C. Paget disease of bone

1. Overactive osteoclasts and osteoblasts leading to excessive bone turnover and disorganized bony architecture
2. **H/P** = possibly, asymptomatic or deep bone pain, increased incidence of fractures; **tibial bowing**, kyphosis, **increased cranial diameter**, deafness (from changes in auditory ossicles)
3. **Labs** = increased alkaline phosphatase; increased urine hydroxyproline; normal calcium and phosphorus
4. **Radiology** = X-rays may demonstrate osteolytic lesions and expanded hyperdense bone; bone scan will detect diffuse “hot spots” in areas of active disease
5. **Treatment** = bisphosphonates, calcitonin

D. Osteogenesis imperfecta

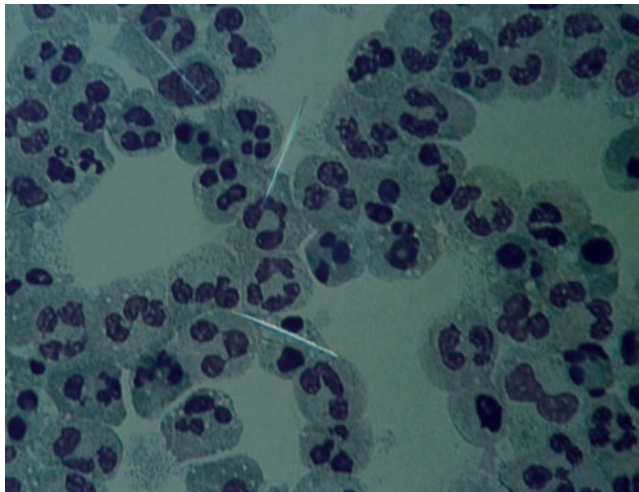
1. Defective production of collagen from a genetic disorder
2. Diagnosis primarily made during childhood
3. **H/P** = frequent fractures from **minimal trauma**, **blue sclerae**, skin and teeth deformities, possible deafness, joint hypermobility (may resemble child abuse)
4. **Treatment** = activity restriction, surgical correction of bony misalignment, bisphosphonates decrease fracture risk

E. Gout

1. Peripheral monoarthritis caused by deposition of **sodium urate crystals** in joints
2. **Risk factors** = renal disease, male gender, obesity, excessive consumption of purine-rich foods, urate underexcretion, diuretic use, cyclosporine use, cancer, hemoglobinopathies
3. **H/P**
 - a. **Sudden severe pain and swelling** in one joint that frequently starts at night
 - b. First metatarsophalangeal joint most commonly affected (i.e., **podagra**); ankle, knee, and foot joints also common sites
 - c. Possible concurrent fever, chills, or malaise
4. **Labs** = serum uric acid can be normal or increased; joint aspiration shows **needle-shaped, negatively birefringent crystals** and several white blood cells (WBCs) (see Figure 9-5)
5. **Radiology** = X-ray may rarely show bony erosions in chronic cases, and possibly tophi

FIGURE**9-5**

Synovial aspirate from patient with gout.



Note needle-shaped, negatively birefringent sodium urate crystals that are visible under polarized light microscopy.

(From McClatchey, K. D. [2002]. *Clinical Laboratory Medicine* [2nd ed., Figure 27-17]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

6. Treatment

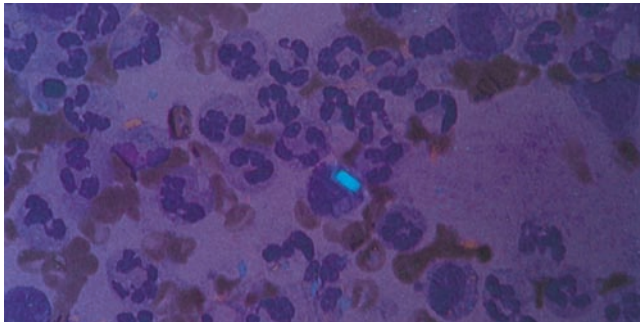
- NSAIDs (especially indomethacin), colchicine, corticosteroids
- Decreasing alcohol and diuretic use and avoiding foods high in purines (e.g., red meats, fish) helps prevent exacerbations.
- Allopurinol (inhibits uric acid formation) or probenecid (inhibits kidney uric acid resorption) used in cases of chronic gout to prevent flare-ups

7. **Complications** = long-standing disease leads to chronic tophaceous gout with formation of nodular tophi (large deposits of crystals in soft tissues), leading to permanent deformity

F. Pseudogout (calcium pyrophosphate dihydrate deposition disease or CPPD)

- Calcium pyrophosphate dihydrate crystal deposition in joints
- Familial condition associated with other endocrine diseases (e.g., DM, hyperparathyroidism)
- H/P** = similar presentation to gout but less severe symptoms; knee and wrist most commonly initially affected joints
- Labs** = joint aspiration shows positively birefringent, rhomboid crystals (see Figure 9-6)
- Radiology** = X-ray may show chondrocalcinosis (i.e., calcification of articular cartilage in joints)
- Treatment** = NSAIDs, colchicine

FIGURE 9-6 Synovial aspirate from patient with calcium pyrophosphate dihydrate deposition disease; under polarized light microscopy, rhomboid-shaped calcium pyrophosphate dihydrate crystals appear positively birefringent.



(From McClatchey, K. D. [2002]. *Clinical Laboratory Medicine* [2nd ed., Figure 27-22]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

IV. INFECTION

A. Septic joint and septic arthritis

- Most commonly occurs through **hematogenous spread** of bacteria, extension of local infection, or direct inoculation (e.g., open fracture)
- Most commonly caused by *Staphylococcus aureus*; consider *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* in young, sexually active patients
- Consider gram-negative rods in patients with DM, cancer, or other underlying illnesses.
- Preexisting arthritis increases risk of progressive damage to cartilage.
- H/P** = sudden onset of joint pain (usually monoarticular); warm, red, tender, swollen joint, pain with any motion (i.e., micromotion tenderness), possible overlying skin lesions; children may show vague signs of pain and refusal to walk
- Labs** = increased WBCs, erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR), and C-reactive protein (CRP); joint aspiration shows **numerous WBCs** (lower for *N. gonorrhoeae* than *S. aureus*) with a high percentage of neutrophils and decreased glucose; positive cultures (frequent false-negative findings for *N. gonorrhoeae*) (see Table 9-4)



QUICK HIT

Podagra rules out CPPD and suggests a diagnosis of **gout**.



QUICK HIT

The body's inflammatory response to bacteria in the joint is the cause of cartilage destruction in joint sepsis.



QUICK HIT

Because the inflammatory response to *N. gonorrhoeae* is not as severe as that for other bacteria, I&D is not required for treatment.

TABLE 9-4 Findings in Aspirated Joint Fluid for Common Inflammatory Joint Conditions

Conditions	Joint Aspiration Leukocytes	Histology
Osteoarthritis, trauma	<2,000/mm ³	May see signs of hemarthrosis (bleeding into joint) for trauma; otherwise negative
Inflammatory arthropathies (e.g., rheumatoid arthritis, gout, pseudogout)	5,000–50,000/mm ³	Needle-shaped, negatively birefringent crystals for gout Positively birefringent rhomboid crystals for pseudogout
Septic joint	>50,000/mm ³	Many WBCs ; infrequently, bacteria seen

WBCs, white blood cells.

- Treatment** = surgical irrigation and drainage (I&D) required for any infection other than *N. gonorrhoeae*; for *N. gonorrhoeae*, use IV ceftriaxone and doxycycline for possible *Chlamydia* coinfection; for *S. aureus*, use penicillinase-resistant penicillin; for gram-negative bacteria, use aminoglycosides

B. Osteomyelitis

- Bone infection** via hematogenous spread or local extension
- S. aureus* and *Pseudomonas* most common causes; consider *Salmonella* in patients with sickle cell disease
- H/P** = bone pain, tenderness, fever, chills; possible skin involvement with a draining sinus
- Labs** = increased WBC, ESR, and CRP; cultures needed to define appropriate antibiotic therapy
- Radiology** = X-rays are not helpful initially and only show signs of infection after 10 days; MRI demonstrates bone edema early in disease; bone scan will show increased uptake after 72 hr; tagged-WBC scan is more sensitive than standard bone scan
- Treatment** = IV antibiotics for 4 to 6 weeks (empiric initially, pathogen specific following culture); I&D must be performed for an abscess inside the bone (i.e., sequestrum) or in surrounding tissue
- Complications** = inadequately treated infection can lead to chronic osteomyelitis that is difficult to cure or may require amputation

C. Lyme disease

- Caused by *Borrelia burgdorferi*; the organism is delivered through the bite of the *Ixodes* tick
- H/P**
 - Early localized stage: chills, fatigue, arthralgias, headache; **erythema chronicum migrans** (i.e., bull's eye rash), fever (see Figure 9-7)
 - Early disseminated stage: **myocarditis weeks to months** after infection, cardiac arrhythmias, heart block, **Bell palsy**, sensory-motor neuropathies, aseptic meningitis, or meningoencephalitis
 - Late disseminated stage: a **few months to years** later, chronic synovitis, **monoarthritis or oligoarthritis**, subacute encephalopathy, or polyneuropathy may develop
- Labs** = positive enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) and western blot tests for antibodies; joint aspiration is not helpful
- Treatment** = **doxycycline**, amoxicillin, or cefuroxime (oral form can be used in early disease, but IV forms are required in disseminated disease)



QUICK HIT

Although *Salmonella* should be considered in patients with sickle cell disease and *Pseudomonas* should be considered in intravenous drug abusers, *S. aureus* is still the **most common** cause of osteomyelitis in these patients.

FIGURE 9-7

Patient with Lyme disease exhibiting erythema chronicum migrans (bull's eye rash).



(From Goodheart, H. P. [2003]. *Goodheart's Photoguide of Common Skin Disorders* [2nd ed., Figure 7-19]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)



V. OSTEOARTHRITIS (OA)

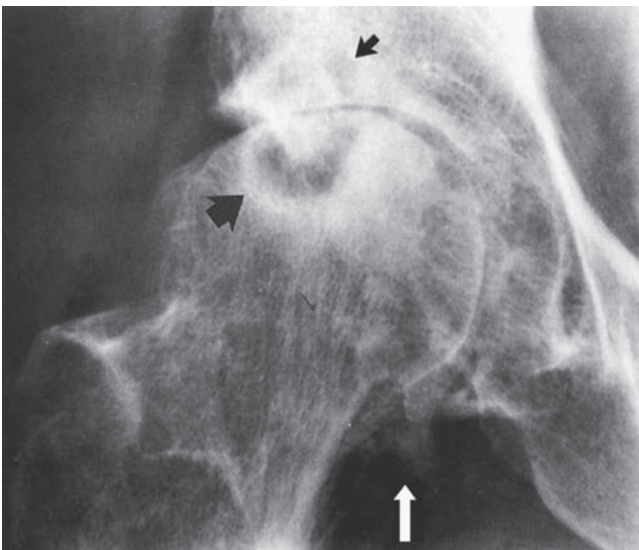
A. Degenerative joint disease

1. Chronic, noninflammatory joint degeneration involving **articular cartilage deterioration**
2. Most commonly affects **hips, knees**, ankles, hands, wrists, and shoulders; can cause spinal stenosis in vertebral bodies
3. **Risk factors** = advanced age, family history, obesity, previous joint trauma, repetitive joint stress (heavy labor occupations)
4. **H/P** = joint crepitus, insidious onset of joint stiffness and pain that **worsens with activity and weight bearing** and is relieved by rest, no systemic symptoms; patients have decreased range of motion, bony protuberances in the distal interphalangeal (DIP) (i.e., **Heberden nodes**) and proximal interphalangeal (PIP) (i.e., **Bouchard nodes**) joints
5. **Labs** = normal ESR; <2,000 leukocytes on joint aspiration
6. **Radiology** = X-ray demonstrates osteophyte formation, joint space narrowing, subchondral bone sclerosis, and subchondral bone cyst formation (see Figure 9-8)



QUICK HIT

- **Osteoarthritis**: typically **asymmetric** and may only affect one joint; DIP joints are frequently involved in hands.
- **RA**: affects joints on both sides of the body in a **symmetric** distribution; DIP joints are spared in hands.

FIGURE 9-8Osteoarthritis in a right hip joint; synovial cysts (**black arrows**) and osteophytes (**white arrow**) are evident.

(Modified from Daffner, R. H. [1999]. *Clinical Radiology: The Essentials* [2nd ed.]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.)

7. **Treatment** = activity modification, heat, analgesics (e.g., NSAIDs), weight loss, physical therapy, corticosteroid or hyaluronic acid injections, joint replacement in advanced cases



VI. RHEUMATOLOGIC DISEASES

A. Rheumatoid arthritis (RA)

1. Chronic inflammatory disorder with infiltration of synovial joints by inflammatory cells and progressive erosion of cartilage and bone
2. **Synovial hypertrophy** with granulation tissue formation on articular cartilage (i.e., **pannus formation**) caused by joint inflammation
3. Most commonly seen in middle-aged women; increased frequency in people with HLA-DR4 serotype
4. **PIP** and metacarpophalangeal (MCP) joints are usually first involved; **symmetric polyarthropathy** develops, involving ankles, knees, shoulders, hips, elbows, and spine.
5. **H/P**
 - a. Malaise, weight loss, insidious onset of **morning stiffness with pain**, decreased mobility
 - b. Warm joints, joint swelling, fevers, ulnar deviation of fingers; MCP hypertrophy, **swan-neck deformities** (i.e., flexed DIP plus hyperextended PIP), **boutonniere deformities** (i.e., flexed PIP), subcutaneous nodules, pleuritis, pericarditis, scleritis
6. **Labs**
 - a. Rheumatoid factor (RF) positive in 75% of patients but not specific for the disease
 - b. Positive antinuclear antibodies (ANA) in 40% of patients (see Table 9-5)
 - c. Increased ESR, increased anticitrulline-containing protein IgM antibodies
 - d. Joint aspiration shows 5,000 to 50,000 leukocytes.

TABLE 9-5 Immunologic Markers Found in Rheumatic Diseases

Disease	Immunologic Markers
Systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)	ANA (95% of patients) Anti-dsDNA antibodies (60% of patients) Anti-Sm antibodies False-positive RPR (syphilis test)
Drug-induced lupus	Antihistone antibodies
Rheumatoid arthritis (RA)	RF (75% of patients) ANA (<50% of patients) HLA-DR4 common
Polymyositis or dermatomyositis	ANA Anti-Jo-1 antibodies
Ankylosing spondylitis	HLA-B27 (90% of patients)
Psoriatic arthritis	Possible HLA-B27
Scleroderma	Anti-scl-70 ANA
CREST syndrome	Anticentromere antibodies
Mixed connective tissue disease (MCTD)	Anti-RNP ANA
Sjögren syndrome	Anti-Ro (anti-SSA) ANA Anti-La (anti-SSB) ANA

ANA, antinuclear antibodies; CREST, calcinosis, Raynaud, esophageal dysmotility, sclerodactyly, and telangiectasias; dsDNA, double-stranded DNA; RF, rheumatoid factor; RPR, rapid plasma reagin.

7. **Radiology** = X-rays may demonstrate soft tissue swellings, joint space narrowing, marginal bony erosions, or subluxation; MRI is more sensitive than X-ray for detecting similar findings
8. **Treatment**
 - a. Initially, NSAIDs and physical therapy, as needed
 - b. Patients still mildly symptomatic following NSAID use may be started on sulfasalazine or hydroxychloroquine and analgesics, as needed.
 - c. Moderate disease can be treated with methotrexate; antitumor necrosis factor (TNF) drugs (e.g., infliximab) or corticosteroids may be considered.
 - d. Anti-TNF drugs and corticosteroids combined with other regimens in severe disease

B. Systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)

1. Multisystem autoimmune disorder involving a variety of autoantibodies affecting several body systems
2. Antibody-mediated cellular attack occurs with deposition of antigen-antibody complexes in affected tissues.
3. **Risk factors** = young women, blacks, Asians, Hispanics
4. Hydralazine, procainamide, isoniazid, methyl dopa, quinidine, and chlorpromazine can cause similar symptoms that **resolve** when the **drug is discontinued**.
5. **H/P**
 - a. Common findings include malar and discoid rashes, serositis, oral ulcers, arthritis, photosensitivity, CNS symptoms, cardiac symptoms, and renal symptoms (see Figure 9-9).
 - b. Can also experience fevers, malaise, weight loss, abdominal pain, vomiting, conjunctivitis, blindness
 - c. Any combination of symptoms is possible and can change during the course of the disease.
6. **Labs**
 - a. Positive ANA in 95% of patients (see Table 9-5)
 - b. Anti-double-stranded DNA (dsDNA) antibodies found in 60% of patients but not found in other rheumatologic disorders
 - c. Presence of anti-Sm antibodies is very specific for disease.
 - d. Antihistone antibodies may be seen for drug-induced lupus-like symptoms.
 - e. Patients frequently have a **false-positive test for syphilis**.
 - f. Antiphospholipid (anticardiolipin) antibodies
 - g. Decreased complement (C3 and C4)

FIGURE
9-9

Symptoms of systemic lupus erythematosus.

Skin disorders

- **Malar (butterfly) rash**
- **Discoid rash**
- **Photosensitivity**
- **Oral ulcers**

Inflammatory disorders

- **Arthritis** (symmetric nonerosive arthritis in PIPs, MCPs, wrists, knees, feet)
- **Serositis** (pleuritis, pneumonitis, pericarditis)
- **Antinuclear antibodies (ANA)** increased

Organ system disorders

- **Renal disease** (immune complex glomerulonephritis, interstitial nephritis, proteinuria, increased BUN & creatinine)
- **Neurologic disorders** (psychosis, seizures, stroke, neuropathy)
- **Hematologic disorders** (autoimmune hemolytic anemia, leukopenia, thrombocytopenia)
- **Immunologic disorders** (anti-double-stranded DNA [dsDNA] antibodies, anti-Smith antibodies, antiphospholipid antibodies)

**QUICK HIT**

Weakness is a symptom of **polymyositis** but not of polymyalgia rheumatica.

**QUICK HIT**

Patients with PMR will frequently experience significant symptomatic improvement after just 1 day of corticosteroid administration.

NEXT STEP

Once polymyalgia rheumatica has been diagnosed, the patient should automatically have a workup for **temporal arteritis**.

7. **Treatment** = avoidance of sun, NSAIDs given for pain, hydroxychloroquine improves skin and renal symptoms, corticosteroids given for immunosuppression and to decrease exacerbations, other immunosuppressant drugs given in cases resistant to corticosteroids, anticoagulation required if patient considered hypercoagulable
8. **Complications** = lupus anticoagulant and anticardiolipin antibodies increase the risks of miscarriage and fetal death; disease follows variable course, with some cases remaining benign and others progressing rapidly; patient death results from progressive impairment of lung, heart, brain, and kidney function

C. Polymyositis and dermatomyositis

1. Progressive systemic diseases with skeletal muscle inflammation; one-third of patients with polymyositis also have dermatomyositis (i.e., polymyositis with skin manifestations)
2. **Risk factors** = more common in women, blacks, elderly
3. **H/P**
 - a. Symmetric progressive **proximal** muscle weakness (occurs in **legs first**) and myalgias, muscle atrophy in later stages of disease
 - b. Cutaneous manifestations of dermatomyositis are a **red heliotropic rash** on the face, upper extremities, chest, or back; violet discoloration of eyelids or scaly patches over hand joints
 - c. Patients with lung involvement have dyspnea and poor oxygenation saturation.
4. **Labs**
 - a. Increased creatinine, aldolase, CK, aspartate aminotransferase (AST), alanine aminotransferase (ALT), and lactate dehydrogenase (LDH)
 - b. ANA frequently positive
 - c. Anti-Jo-1 antibodies in patients with interstitial lung disease (see Table 9-5)
 - d. Muscle biopsy shows inflammatory cells and muscle degeneration, inflammatory cells **within** muscle fascicles in **polymyositis**, and **surrounding** muscle fascicles in **dermatomyositis**.
5. **EMG** = spontaneous fibrillations
6. **Treatment** = high-dose corticosteroids, methotrexate, or azathioprine for 4 to 6 weeks followed by tapered dosing; IV immune globulin or other immunosuppressants can be added to regimen in resistant cases
7. **Complications** = possible interstitial lung disease, increased risk of several malignancies

D. Polymyalgia rheumatica (PMR)

1. Rheumatic disease with multiple sites of joint pain and frequently associated with **temporal arteritis**; most common in elderly women (see Chapter 1, Cardiovascular Disorders)
2. **H/P** = pain and stiffness in shoulder and pelvic girdle, difficulty raising arms and getting out of bed because of pain, malaise, unexplained weight loss; fever, minimal joint swelling, muscle strength maintained, although movement limited by pain
3. **Labs** = decreased Hct, **markedly increased ESR**, negative RF
4. **Radiology** = MRI demonstrates increased signal at tendon sheaths and synovial tissue outside of joints; positron emission tomographic (PET) scan shows increased uptake in large vessels
5. **Treatment** = low-dose corticosteroids, followed by tapered dosing

E. Fibromyalgia

1. Disease causing **chronic pain** in muscles and tendons in absence of apparent inflammation
2. Unknown etiology, but frequently associated with **depression**, anxiety, and irritable bowel disease
3. Possible predisposition with hypothyroidism, RA, sleep apnea; more common in women 20 to 50 years of age
4. **H/P** = myalgias and weakness without inflammation; “trigger points” on examination (i.e., specific locations that when stimulated reproduce pain symptoms),

fatigue; possible depression, sleep disturbances, dizziness, headaches, and mood disturbances

5. **Treatment** = stretching, antidepressants (e.g., tricyclic antidepressants [TCAs], selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors [SSRIs]), patient education, physical therapy modalities

F. Ankylosing spondylitis

1. Chronic inflammatory disease of the **spine** and pelvis that results in eventual bone fusion
2. **Risk factors** = 20 to 40 years of age, male > female, white > black
3. **H/P**
 - a. Hip and low back pain that is **worse in the morning and following inactivity; pain improves over course of day**
 - b. Possible limited range of motion in spine, hip, or chest
 - c. Painful kyphosis that is relieved by bending forward
 - d. Possible self-limited anterior uveitis
4. **Labs** = positive HLA-B27 in 90% of patients, increased or normal ESR, negative RF, negative ANA (see Table 9-5)
5. **Radiology** = X-ray shows **bamboo spine** (multiple vertebral fusions); MRI shows increased signal in sacroiliac joints and vertebrae
6. **Treatment** = physical therapy, NSAIDs; exercise helps to prevent or delay permanent deformities; sulfasalazine, methotrexate, or anti-TNF drugs may be beneficial in more significant disease; joint replacement may be needed in extremities

G. Psoriatic arthritis

1. Arthritis that develops in 10% to 20% of patients with **psoriasis**; DIP joints and spine most commonly affected
2. **H/P** = asymmetric joint pain and stiffness, symptoms worse in morning and improve with activity, symptoms usually less severe than RA, possible anterior uveitis; joint line pain, pain with stress on joints, pitting of nails
3. **Labs** = negative RF and ANA, possible positive HLA-B27 (see Table 9-5)
4. **Radiology** = X-rays show findings similar to RA and highly destructive lesions of DIP and PIP joints (i.e., “pencil in cup” deformities); MRI is more sensitive in finding marrow edema
5. **Treatment** = NSAIDs, methotrexate, sulfasalazine, or anti-TNF drugs, depending on severity

H. Scleroderma

1. Chronic multisystem sclerosis with accumulation of connective tissue, skin thickening, and visceral involvement
2. **H/P** = arthralgias, myalgias, hand swelling, **Raynaud phenomenon** (i.e., blue distal extremities caused by arteriolar spasm), **skin thickening**, **esophageal dysmotility**, intestinal hypomotility, dyspnea, possible arrhythmias or heart failure
3. **Labs** = positive anti-scl-70 ANA (see Table 9-5)
4. **CREST syndrome** is a variant with Calcinosis, Raynaud phenomenon, Esophageal dysmotility, Sclerodactyly, and Telangiectasias
 - a. Skin thickening limited to distal extremities and face
 - b. Labs show anticentromere antibodies (see Table 9-5).
 - c. Better prognosis than scleroderma
5. **Treatment** = supportive care; angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors (ACE-I) for malignant renal hypertension; calcium channel blockers and avoidance of caffeine, nicotine, and decongestants to relieve Raynaud symptoms; methotrexate or corticosteroids may improve skin thickening and pulmonary symptoms
6. **Complications** = pulmonary fibrosis, heart failure, acute renal failure caused by malignant renal hypertension

I. Mixed connective tissue disease (MCTD)

1. Overlapping features of SLE, scleroderma, and polymyositis
2. Can progress to a single diagnosis



MNEMONIC

Remember the arthritic conditions that are negative for rheumatoid factor by the mnemonic **PEAR**: **P**soriatic arthritis (inflammatory bowel disease), **A**nyklosing spondylitis, **R**eactive arthritis.



QUICK HIT

Raynaud phenomenon may prohibit accurate measuring of pulse oximetry via a fingertip probe.

**QUICK HIT**

Sicca syndrome is Sjögren syndrome **without** a secondary autoimmune association.

NEXT STEP

Because most bone tumors are metastases and not primary tumors, any patient with a new bone tumor should have a full workup to look for a tumor source.

**MNEMONIC**

Remember the tumors that metastasize to bone by the mnemonic **Permanently Relocated Tumors Like Long Bones: Prostate, Renal cell, Thyroid, Lung, Lymphoma, Breast.**

3. **H/P** = Raynaud phenomenon, polyarthralgias, arthritis, swollen hands, proximal muscle weakness, esophageal hypomotility, pulmonary symptoms; absence of renal and neurologic symptoms
4. **Labs** = positive antiribonucleoprotein (RNP) ANA (see Table 9-5)
5. **Treatment** = NSAIDs, corticosteroids, ACE-I, supportive measures

J. Sjögren syndrome

1. Autoimmune disorder with lymphocytic infiltration of exocrine glands
2. Can be seen in association with RA, SLE, or primary biliary cirrhosis
3. **H/P** = dry eyes, dry mouth, enlarged parotid glands, purpura on legs, peripheral neuropathy, possible symmetric arthritis associated with other autoimmune conditions
4. **Labs** = positive anti-Ro (anti-SSA) and anti-La (anti-SSB) antibodies (see Table 9-5)
5. **Treatment** = supportive care, corticosteroids for significant symptoms

**VII. NEOPLASMS****A. Bone metastases**

1. Most common bone tumors in adults
2. Can result from nearly any primary tumor (most commonly breast, renal cell, prostate, lung, thyroid, lymphoma)
3. **H/P** = presence of primary form of cancer; deep bone pain, possible palpable bone mass, fractures following minor trauma
4. **Labs** = biopsy is important to identifying source of metastasis
5. **Radiology** = X-ray identifies lesion in a bone; bone scan suggests extent of metastases in body; MRI useful to determine extent of a lesion
6. **Treatment** = chemotherapy as for primary tumor; bisphosphonates help slow bone loss; radiation therapy helps to decrease metastasis size; fixation of fractures required; prophylactic fixation may be performed for impending fractures

B. Osteosarcoma

1. Most common primary malignant bone tumor; more common in adolescents, male > female
2. Most frequently involves distal femur, proximal tibia, or proximal humerus
3. **Risk factors** = Paget disease of bone, p53 genetic mutations, familial retinoblastoma, radiation exposure, bone infarcts
4. **H/P** = deep bony pain, later development of palpable bony mass
5. **Labs** = increased alkaline phosphatase, increased ESR, increased LDH; biopsy provides definitive diagnosis
6. **Radiology** = X-ray shows bone lesion with a sunburst pattern and Codman triangle (i.e., periosteal new bone formation at the diaphyseal end of the lesion) (see Figure 9-10); MRI or PET scan useful for determining extent of lesion; chest CT routinely performed to look for metastases
7. **Treatment** = radical surgical excision, chemotherapy
8. **Complications** = 90% 5-year survival rate for low-grade disease, 50% 5-year survival for higher grade lesions

C. Ewing sarcoma

1. Highly malignant cartilage tumor occurring in diaphysis of long bones; most common in children, 5 to 15 years of age
2. **H/P** = bony pain, tissue swelling, fever, fatigue, weight loss, fractures with minor trauma; possible palpable mass
3. **Labs** = increased WBCs, decreased Hgb, increased ESR; biopsy important for making diagnosis
4. **Radiology** = X-ray may detect large destructive lesions with significant periosteal reaction (Codman triangle, or “onion-skin” bone lesion); MRI determines extent of lesion
5. **Treatment** = radiation, adjuvant chemotherapy, radical excision
6. **Complications** = 60% 5-year survival rate when both radiation and chemotherapy are used in nonmetastatic disease, 20% 5-year survival with metastases

FIGURE

9-10 Osteosarcoma in left proximal tibia.

Note the dense sunburst pattern of the lesion (*solid black arrows*) and presence of Codman triangle (*open arrow*).
(From Daffner, R. H. [1999]. *Clinical Radiology: The Essentials* [2nd ed.]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.)

D. Osteochondroma

1. Most common **benign** bone tumor in metaphysis of long bones; more common in patients <25 years of age, male > female
2. Typically occurs in lower femur or upper tibia
3. **H/P** = irritated soft tissues overlying mass, mass itself frequently nontender; palpable hard mass
4. **Radiology** = X-ray shows bony growth off metaphysis of long bone; CT or MRI shows cancellous portion of long bone to be continuous with interior of lesion
5. **Treatment** = none necessary unless causing soft tissue irritation or neurovascular compromise or if continued growth occurs (surgical excision indicated)
6. **Complications** = rare (1%) transformation into chondrosarcoma

**QUICK HIT**

A bony growth on a long bone that sits on top of cortical bone and is **not continuous** with the normal cancellous bone is concerning for a malignant lesion.

VIII. PEDIATRIC ORTHOPEDICS

A. Developmental dysplasia of the hip (DDH)

1. Perinatal displacement of the femoral head from acetabulum disrupting normal development of the hip joint
2. Occurs because of poor development of acetabulum in *utero*
3. **Risk factors** = female > male, firstborn children, babies delivered in breech presentation, oligohydramnios
4. **H/P**
 - a. Children have delayed walking or abnormal gait if diagnosis not made early.
 - b. Positive **Barlow** and **Ortolani** maneuvers (provocation of hip dislocation or reduction)
 - c. Knees at unequal heights when hips and knees flexed (i.e., **Galeazzi sign**)
 - d. Trendelenburg gait (i.e., sagging of opposite hip)
 - e. Asymmetric skin folds
5. **Radiology** = **ultrasound** is the most commonly used method of imaging hip congruity; X-rays are not helpful in making a diagnosis until after 4 months of age

6. **Treatment** = Pavlik harness used in children <6 months of age; closed or open reduction and Spica casting performed in children 6 months to 2 years of age; open reduction performed after age 2 years; correction may not be performed after age 8 years because of reduced benefit
7. **Complications** = permanent hip dysplasia results from inadequately treated cases; likelihood of successful treatment and normal hip development improves with earlier treatment

B. Slipped capital femoral epiphysis (SCFE)

1. Separation through growth plate of femoral epiphysis from metaphysis
2. **Risk factors** = adolescent, obese, black race, hypothyroidism
3. **H/P** = thigh and knee pain; limp, limited internal rotation and abduction of the hip; hip flexion produces obligatory external hip rotation
4. **Radiology** = X-rays indicate posterior and medial displacement of the femoral head from the femoral metaphysis
5. **Treatment** = surgical pinning, weight-bearing restrictions following repair if unstable (unable to bear weight on presentation), prophylactic pinning of normal contralateral side performed in cases of hypothyroidism
6. **Complications** = increased risk of avascular necrosis (AVN) and premature osteoarthritis if treatment is not performed early

C. Rickets

1. **Impaired calcification** of bone in children caused by deficient vitamin D intake, absorption, or metabolism (i.e., hypocalcemic types) or impaired phosphate absorption (i.e., hypophosphatemic type)
2. Called **osteomalacia** in adults
3. Results from lack of sunlight and/or poor diet in absence of renal or metabolic defects
4. Epiphyseal cartilage becomes hypertrophic without calcification.
5. **H/P** = bone pain, delayed walking; **bowed legs**, kyphoscoliosis, proximal limb weakness, decreased height, softened skull bones; fractures that result from minimal trauma in adults
6. **Labs** = increased alkaline phosphatase (all types), decreased phosphorus (all types), decreased calcium (hypocalcemic), decreased (hypocalcemic) or increased (hypophosphatemic) 25-hydroxyvitamin D3 and 1,25-dihydroxycholecalciferol, increased parathyroid hormone (hypocalcemic)
7. **Radiology** = X-rays will demonstrate widening of physes, bowing of long bones, translucent lines in bones, flattening of skull, and enlarged costal cartilages
8. **Treatment** = phosphorus supplementation for all types, vitamin D supplementation for poor intake, 1,25-dihydroxycholecalciferol for impaired vitamin absorption or metabolism

D. Juvenile idiopathic arthritis (JRA)

1. Nonmigratory arthropathy affecting one or more joints for >3 months
2. Classified as pauciarticular, polyarticular, or systemic, depending on the constellation of symptoms (see Table 9-6)
3. **H/P** = arthralgias of joints involved, morning stiffness; fever; additional findings depend on subtype
4. **Labs** = vary with subtype
5. **Radiology** = X-rays may demonstrate osteopenia and subchondral sclerosis around **involved joints**
6. **Treatment** = varies with subtype but usually consists of NSAIDs, methotrexate, or corticosteroids

E. Osgood-Schlatter disease

1. Inflammation of the bone–cartilage interface of the tibial tubercle (i.e., osteochondritis)
2. Most common in young boys during pubertal growth spurt

TABLE 9-6 Variants of Juvenile Idiopathic Arthritis

	Pauciarticular	Polyarticular	Systemic
Joints involved	Fewer than four joints; large joints except hips	Five or more joints; hips less common	Any number
Age of presentation	2–3 yr	2–5, 10–14 yr	Any age <17 yr
Joint symptoms	Insidious swelling and decreased range of motion	Symmetric joint involvement, spine involvement, hand deformities	Acute significant pain, pain severity may follow fevers, neck stiffness common, occasional jaw involvement
Extrasosseous symptoms	30% cases have uveitis or iridocyclitis	Growth retardation, fever, rare iridocyclitis	Spiking fevers, maculopapular rash, organomegaly, lymphadenopathy, pericarditis, growth retardation
Labs	Weakly positive ANA	Mildly increased ESR, mildly decreased Hgb, weakly positive ANA in younger ages, positive RF in older ages	Increased WBC, decreased Hgb, increased ESR, negative ANA, rarely positive RF
Treatment	NSAIDs; methotrexate for chronic cases	NSAIDs, methotrexate, sulfasalazine, or etanercept	NSAIDs, methotrexate, corticosteroids, cytotoxic drugs
Prognosis	Most cases resolve in <6 months; uncommon chronic arthritis	60% patients enter remission within 15 yr; higher rate of severe chronic arthritis than pauciarticular; worse prognosis with older onset	Highly variable course; 50% patients will achieve eventual remission, significant minority have chronic disease
Complications	Blindness from iridocyclitis, leg length discrepancy, rare chronic disease with progressive arthritis	Chronic arthritis, leg length discrepancy	Leg length discrepancy, chronic arthritis, jaw arthritis, amyloidosis

ANA, antinuclear antibody; ESR, erythrocyte sedimentation rate; Hgb, hemoglobin; NSAIDs, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs; RF, rheumatoid factor; WBC, white blood cell.

3. H/P = pain at involved site that worsens with activity
4. Treatment = stretching exercises, NSAIDs

F. Clavicular fracture

1. Most common fracture in children (e.g., birth trauma, falls)
2. H/P = pain overlying midshaft clavicle, most common fracture sustained during birth
3. Treatment = no treatment needed in neonates; figure-of-eight sling

G. Physeal fractures

1. Fractures involving the growth plate of growing bones; described by Salter-Harris classification system (see Table 9-7)
2. Most heal uneventfully, but some will result in impairment of bone growth at site of injury.
3. H/P = pain at site of injury; possible gross deformity, swelling, warmth at fracture site; growth disturbance with limb inequality seen in cases of permanent physeal damage
4. Radiology = X-ray demonstrates fracture at site of injury; premature closure of physis seen in cases of growth disturbance
5. Treatment = adequate reduction and immobilization, fixation for unstable fractures; growth disturbance may require limb-lengthening procedures, excision of closed portion of physis, or epiphysiodesis of contralateral physis (i.e., surgical disturbance of physis) to achieve equal limb size

TABLE 9-7 Salter-Harris Classification of Physeal Fractures

Type	Description	Prognosis
I	Physeal separation without extension into adjacent bone	Good with adequate reduction, quick healing
II	Partial physeal separation with proximal extension into metaphysis	Good; rare growth disturbance
III	Partial physeal separation with distal extension into epiphysis	Poor unless accurate reduction; fixation usually required to maintain stability
IV	Fracture extends through metaphysis, physis, and epiphysis	Perfect reduction must be achieved; guarded prognosis even with good reduction
V	Crush injury of physis	High likelihood of partial growth arrest

H. Nursemaid's elbow

1. Radial head subluxation that occurs via pulling and lifting on the hand (e.g., yanking the child out of danger by his or her arm)
2. **H/P** = child with painful arm who will not bend elbow
3. **Treatment** = manual reduction via supination of the arm with flexion of the elbow from 0° to 90° of flexion

I. Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease

1. AVN of capital femoral epiphysis most common between 3 and 8 years of age
2. **H/P** = gradual progressive limp, insidious onset of pain, decreased range of motion
3. **Radiology** = X-ray shows asymmetric hips; affected femoral head appears small with sclerotic bone and widened joint space
4. **Treatment** = containment of hip within acetabulum via bracing or surgical means; **acetabular reconstruction performed in cases of permanent hip dysplasia**
5. **Complications** = 50% untreated cases recover fully; increased risk of hip complications in adulthood, including osteoarthritis, progressive AVN, and need for early arthroplasty in cases of permanent dysplasia

J. Club foot

1. Inversion of foot, plantar flexion of ankle, and adduction of forefoot
2. **H/P** = child who is slow to walk, limp; obvious defect on examination
3. **Treatment** = **serial casting** of foot in correct position; surgery required in long-standing cases to release contractures and modify bone alignment

K. Scoliosis

1. Resting lateral **curvature** of the spine with associated rotatory deformity
2. Curve is at risk of progressing during periods of rapid growth; risk of curve progression increases with size of curve.
3. Initially, mainly a **cosmetic issue**; progressive curvature interferes with activities
4. Severe cases result in decreased pulmonary function.
5. **H/P** = asymmetry of back musculature and palpable curve of the spine that are augmented when patient bends at the waist; possible pulmonary compromise in severe cases
6. **Treatment** = observation for small curves; bracing for moderate curves in young patients; surgery for more severe curves or curves in older patients
7. **Complications** = severe curves can cause restrictive respiratory disease by limiting lung expansion

L. Duchenne muscular dystrophy

1. X-linked disorder resulting from deficiency of **dystrophin** (subsarcolemmal cytoskeletal protein)
2. **Most common** lethal muscular dystrophy
3. Onset at 2 to 6 years of age
4. **H/P** = progressive clumsiness, easy fatigability, **difficulty standing up and walking**, waddling gait, positive **Gower maneuver** (i.e., must push on thighs with hands to stand up); weakness occurs in proximal muscles before distal muscles; **pseudohypertrophy** occurs in calf muscles from fatty infiltration
5. **Labs** = increased CK; muscle biopsy shows muscle fiber degeneration and fibrosis and basophilic fibers; immunostaining for dystrophin (**absent** in disease) is diagnostic
6. **EMG** = polyphasic potentials and increased fiber recruitment
7. **Treatment** = physical therapy, corticosteroids, pulmonary support, ACE-I decrease cardiac afterload
8. **Complications** = progressive cardiac issues, scoliosis, and flexion contractures; death commonly occurs by 20 years of age because of respiratory issues

**QUICK HIT**

Becker muscular dystrophy is similar to Duchenne muscular dystrophy, except symptoms are less severe and progression occurs more slowly.

QUICK HIT

Skin and wound cultures are rarely useful in cellulitis because they frequently contain other normal skin flora or findings are false negative.

QUICK HIT

Anaerobic bacteria are more commonly a cause of abscesses in the lower back and perineal regions than in other parts of the body.

I. INFECTIONS

A. Cellulitis

1. Acute skin infection most frequently caused by *Staphylococcus aureus* or group A streptococci; methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* (MRSA) has increasingly evolved as a cause of cellulitis that is difficult to treat because of antibiotic resistance
2. Risk factors = intravenous drug use, diabetes mellitus (DM), immunocompromise, penetration of skin (e.g., surgery, trauma), previous cellulitis, venous or lymphatic dysfunction
3. History and Physical (H/P) = erythema, swollen and painful skin, myalgias, chills; warmth in involved area, fever, lymphadenopathy; skin findings may be near wound (see Figure 10-1)
4. Labs = increased white blood cell count (WBC), erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR), and C-reactive protein (CRP)
5. Treatment = oral cephalosporins or penicillinase-resistant β -lactams for 10 to 14 days; intravenous (IV) antibiotics for severe cases or bacteremia; linezolid or IV vancomycin used for MRSA or cases not responding to initial antibiotic therapy; diabetics should receive broad coverage antibiotics because of the increased risk for multiorganism infections
6. Complications = necrotizing fasciitis; 20% to 50% recurrence rate

B. Skin abscess

1. Subcutaneous collection of pus most commonly caused by staphylococcal bacteria
2. Can occur as collection of multiple infected hair follicles (i.e., carbuncle)

FIGURE 10-1

Cellulitis of the right pretibial region.



Note the erythematous, swollen skin with mild desquamation.

(From Goodheart, H. P. [2003]. *Photoguide of Common Disorders* [2nd ed., Figure 2-69]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

3. Hidradenitis suppurativa

- a. Chronic follicular occlusion and **apocrine gland** inflammation resulting in recurrent abscesses in the axilla, groin, and perineum
 - b. Chronic infection leads to scarring.
 - c. May require both antibiotics and surgical excision for treatment
4. **H/P** = erythematous, fluctuant, and localized swelling in skin; tender on palpation; pain frequently relieved by rupture of abscess
 5. **Labs** = culture of abscess contents can determine pathogen but carries a high rate of false-positive findings if not performed under sterile conditions
 6. **Treatment** = **incision and drainage** with healing by secondary intention; antibiotics (cephalosporins initially, then pathogen specific)
 7. **Complications** = large, eroding facial abscess can cause cavernous sinus thrombosis

C. Necrotizing fasciitis

1. Quickly spreading group A *Streptococcus* or multipathogen infection of **fascial planes** leading to extensive soft tissue destruction and systemic infection
2. **H/P** = erythematous, warm, and swollen skin; **loss of sensation** in involved tissue, fever, crepitus in infected skin, purple discoloration, bullae over infected region
3. **Labs** = increased WBC, ESR, and CRP; operative culture useful for determining pathogen
4. **Radiology** = X-ray or computed tomography (CT) may detect subcutaneous collections of air
5. **Treatment** = prompt surgical debridement, incision, and drainage; IV antibiotics
6. **Complications** = sepsis, gangrene, high mortality (30% patients)

D. Gangrene

1. Tissue necrosis because of **poor vascular supply** or severe infection (occasionally, *Clostridium perfringens*); described as wet or dry, depending on appearance
2. **H/P** = prior skin infection or penetrating wound, severe pain in skin; fever, hypotension, skin crepitus, **rotten-smelling skin**
3. **Labs** = culture may be useful when caused by infection; ankle-brachial indices should demonstrate asymmetry between limbs
4. **Radiology** = subcutaneous air seen on X-ray or CT for wet gangrene; angiography or magnetic resonance angiography (MRA) demonstrates vascular insufficiency
5. **Treatment** = incision and drainage, debridement, antibiotics; amputation frequently required

E. Impetigo

1. **Contagious skin infection** most commonly found in **children**; caused by *S. aureus* or **group A streptococci**
2. **H/P** = facial pruritus; **yellow crusted lesions** around mucocutaneous surfaces; erythematous vesicles (blisters) seen in staphylococcal infection; erythematous pustules on face and extremities with streptococcal infections (see Figure 10-2)
3. **Treatment** = wash all affected areas; erythromycin, cephalosporins, or topical antibiotics; unaffected family members should not share towels or clothing to prevent spread until cure achieved

F. Acne vulgaris

1. Inflammation of hair follicles and sebaceous glands associated with *Propionibacterium acnes*, adolescence, androgens, and obstruction of pores by exfoliated skin or personal care products
2. **H/P**
 - a. Most frequently occurs in **adolescents**
 - b. Erythematous pustules predominantly on face, neck, chest, and back
 - c. **Cystic lesions can form in severe cases.**
3. **Treatment**
 - a. Topical **retinoids** decrease sebaceous gland activity and normalize follicular keratinization; they are the recommended first-line treatment.

**QUICK HIT**

Dry gangrene, gradual necrosis of skin from vascular insufficiency, features hard and dry skin. **Wet gangrene**, necrosis caused by acute vascular obstruction or infection, features blistering and swelling of the involved area.

**QUICK HIT**

No proven association exists between acne vulgaris and certain types of food.

**QUICK HIT**

Acne usually decreases in severity as adolescence ends. **Corticosteroid use** and **androgen** production disorders are common causes of outbreaks in adulthood.

FIGURE 10-2**Impetigo involving left nostril caused by *Staphylococcus aureus* infection.**

Note presence of greasy yellow scales within lesion.

(From Smeltzer, S. C., & Bare, B. G. [2000]. *Textbook of Medical-Surgical Nursing* [9th ed., Figure 52-1]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

NEXT STEP

Women should have at least two **negative urine pregnancy tests** before an oral isotretinoin is prescribed.

- b. Antibiotics (oral or topical) may inhibit bacterial growth (second-line therapy, used in conjunction with a topical retinoid).
 - c. Benzoyl peroxide has antimicrobial properties and also helps prevent follicular obstruction by comedolytic properties (second-line therapy, often used in conjunction with a topical retinoid and an antibiotic).
 - d. Oral contraceptives may be useful in women with excess androgen production.
 - e. Oral isotretinoin given for severe cases but requires close monitoring of liver enzymes (hepatotoxicity risk) and mandatory pharmacologic contraception (high teratogenic risks).
 - f. Soaps and astringents have little effect on the condition.
4. **Complications** = cystic acne can result in permanent scarring; oral vitamin A analogues can cause birth defects or hepatotoxicity

G. Herpes simplex virus (HSV)

1. Recurrent viral infection of mucocutaneous surfaces caused by HSV-1 or HSV-2
2. HSV transmitted through contact with **oral or genital fluids**
3. HSV-1 causes primarily **oral** disease; HSV-2 causes primarily **genital** disease.
4. After primary infection, viral genetic material remains in sensory ganglia; stress will cause reactivation of disease in distribution of involved nerves.
5. **H/P** = small painful vesicles around mouth (HSV-1) or genitals (HSV-2) lasting several days (see Figure 10-3); primary infection usually presents with more severe symptoms and a flulike illness; disease affecting eyes causes impaired vision; disease affecting esophagus causes odynophagia and dysphagia
6. **Labs** = Tzanck smear of lesions shows multinucleated giant cells; viral culture confirms diagnosis; Herpes antibodies
7. **Treatment** = incurable, so treatment should be directed at minimizing symptoms and exacerbations; acyclovir, famciclovir, or valacyclovir shortens duration of recurrences and may decrease number of recurrences in patients with frequent eruptions; therapy can either be intermittent (episodic) or continuous (suppressive)
8. **Complications**
 - a. May be transmissible even when no vesicles are present
 - b. Transmission from **infected mother to newborn** can cause disseminated disease with severe neurologic involvement.
 - c. Rarely, mother-to-newborn transmission can occur in the absence of visible vesicles.

FIGURE 10-3 Herpes simplex.



These perioral vesicles are more indicative of infection with herpes simplex virus type 1 than type 2.
(From Weber, J., & Kelley, J. [2003]. *Health Assessment in Nursing* [2nd ed., Display 13-1a]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

H. Varicella

1. Infection by varicella-zoster virus (i.e., herpes zoster) that can present as primary disease (i.e., chickenpox) or recurrent disease (i.e., shingles) (see Figure 10-4)
2. Chickenpox and shingles have different presentations, despite being caused by the same viral infection (see Table 10-1).

TABLE 10-1 Characteristics of Primary (Chickenpox) and Recurrent (Shingles) Varicella

Varicella Condition	Chickenpox (Primary)	Shingles (Recurrent)
Patients affected	More common in children	Patient with prior history of varicella-zoster infection
Timing of presentation	Symptoms 2+ wk after infection occurs; symptoms of headache, malaise, myalgias, and fever precede development of lesions by <3 days	Myalgias, fever, malaise preceding lesions by approximately 3 days
Type of lesion	Small, red macules that evolve into papules and then vesicles that eventually become crusted	Small, red macules that evolve into papules and then vesicles that eventually become crusted
Distribution of lesions	Wide distribution	Limited to single or few distinct dermatomes ; involvement of multiple dermatomes indicates disseminated disease
Course of disease	Lesions may develop up to 1 wk and resolve a few days after appearing; infective until lesions crust over	Lesions exist for a week and may be painful ; infective until lesions crust over
Treatment	Antipruritics aid symptoms; acyclovir used in severe cases or in immunocompromised patients; vaccination has reduced disease incidence significantly	Analgesics, possible corticosteroids; acyclovir used in immunocompromised patients and trigeminal nerve distribution
Complications	More severe course in older and pregnant patients (increased risk of varicella pneumonia); can have severe consequences if passed from infected mother to unborn fetus	Postinfectious neuralgia (long-lasting pain at site of eruption), trigeminal neuropathy

NEXT STEP

Check varicella immunity status (received vaccine or had chickenpox as child) in all **pregnant women**; **varicella immune globulin** should be given to all nonimmune pregnant women who contract the disease.



QUICK HIT

Immunocompromised patients are at an increased risk for developing **encephalopathy** or **retinitis** as complications from varicella infection.

FIGURE 10-4 Chicken pox in a child caused by varicella-zoster infection.



While the small crusted vesicles are distributed across the body in the childhood form, reactivated infection in adults (shingles) occurs in a single dermatome.

(From Goodheart, H. P. [2003]. *Goodheart's Photoguide of Common Skin Disorders* [2nd ed., Figure 8-2]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

I. Warts

1. Benign epithelial tumors caused by local infection by one of many types of **human papillomavirus (HPV)**
2. **H/P** = well-defined lesions of thickened epithelium, may appear flat (plantar warts) or raised; occasional tenderness to palpation
3. **Treatment** = occasionally self-limited; chemical, laser, or cryotherapy may be required for removal
4. **Complications** = some forms of HPV (types 6 and 11) that cause genital warts are associated with cervical cancer (see Chapter 11, **Gynecologic and Breast Disorders**)

J. Molluscum contagiosum

1. Viral skin infection most frequently seen in children and in patients positive for human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)
2. **H/P**
 - a. Painless, **shiny papules** with **central umbilication** (<5 mm diameter)
 - b. In children, found on face, back, chest, and extremities; in adults, found in perineal region
3. **Labs** = Giemsa and Wright stains on histology show large inclusion bodies
4. **Treatment** = frequently self-limited; chemical, laser, or cryotherapy for removal

K. Scabies

1. Cutaneous infestation by *Sarcoptes scabiei* mite
2. **Risk factors** = **crowded living conditions**, poor hygiene
3. **H/P** = severe pruritus at site of involvement (most commonly webs of fingers and toes) that worsens after a hot bath; **mite burrows** with nearby papules may be seen on close examination of skin
4. **Labs** = mites and eggs may be seen in skin scrapings under microscope
5. **Treatment**
 - a. Permethrin cream or oral ivermectin; diphenhydramine to relieve pruritus
 - b. All clothing, towels, and linens must be washed in hot water.
6. **Complications** = **infection of close contacts** common

L. Fungal infections

1. Cutaneous fungal infections typically characteristic for a specific body region (see Table 10-2 and Figure 10-5)
2. Frequently associated with **warm or moist environments**, obesity, DM, or recent antibiotic use

TABLE 10-2 Common Cutaneous Fungal Infections

Condition	Fungus	Lesions	Diagnosis	Treatment
Tinea versicolor (pityriasis versicolor)	<i>Malassezia furfur</i>	Salmon-colored, light brown, or hypopigmented macules, most frequently on chest and back; lesions do not tan and may scale when scraped	KOH preparation shows short hyphae and spores (“spaghetti and meatballs”), Wood lamp examination shows extent of disease	Topical antifungal agent for several weeks or oral ketoconazole for 1–5 days
Tinea not caused by <i>M. furfur</i> . Described by location: corporis (body), cruris (groin), pedis (feet), unguium (nail beds), capitis (scalp)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Microsporum</i> • <i>Trichophyton</i> • <i>Epidermophyton</i> 	Pruritic, erythematous, scaly plaques with central clearing	KOH preparation shows hyphae	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Topical antifungal agent for multiple weeks • Oral antifungal agent for resistant cases
Intertrigo	<i>Candida albicans</i>	Pruritic, painful, erythematous plaques with pustules most commonly in skin creases	KOH preparation shows pseudohyphae	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Topical antifungal agent • Topical corticosteroid

KOH, potassium hydroxide.

FIGURE 10-5 Tinea corporis; fungal infection of skin characterized by scaly rash on the body, with central clearing and a popular border.



(From Goodheart, H. P. [2003]. *Goodheart's Photoguide of Common Skin Disorders* [2nd ed., Figure 4-12]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

II. INFLAMMATORY SKIN CONDITIONS

A. Hypersensitivity reactions in skin

1. Allergic reaction seen in skin because of cutaneous contact or ingestion of a given allergen (e.g., drugs)
2. Mechanism of reaction
 - a. **Type I:** caused by mast cell degranulation; light, diffuse rash (i.e., urticaria) appears soon after exposure and lasts only several hours
 - b. **Type IV:** caused by lymphocyte activity; measles-like (i.e., morbilliform) rash appears several days after second exposure to allergen (mechanism for most allergic contact dermatitis)
3. H/P
 - a. Pruritus, erythematous rash in distinct patterns (lines, shapes) in contact dermatitis



QUICK HIT

Common causes of allergic contact dermatitis include plants (poison ivy, poison oak, etc.), nickel, soaps, and latex.

NEXT STEP

Use the pattern of a rash to distinguish an **external cause** (defined shape) from an **internal cause** (nondefined distribution) of rash.

FIGURE 10-6 Contact dermatitis.



Contact dermatitis caused by exposure to poison ivy. Note the linearity of the rash consistent with an external cause. (From Goodheart, H. P. [2003]. *Goodheart's Photoguide of Common Skin Disorders* [2nd ed., Figure 2-48]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

- b. Ingestion of an allergen (e.g., food, drug reaction) can cause rash in a characteristic location or in a poorly defined area.
- c. History of drug ingestion, contact with allergen, or previous reaction is helpful for diagnosis (see Figure 10-6).
4. **Treatment**
 - a. Stop offending agent or remove contact with allergen.
 - b. Mild cases can be treated with topical corticosteroids and antihistamines.
 - c. Oral corticosteroids may be required in worse cases.

B. Erythema multiforme

1. More serious cutaneous hypersensitivity reaction caused by **drugs, infection, or vaccination**
2. **H/P** = malaise, myalgias, pruritus; macules (i.e., small, nonpalpable lesions); plaques (i.e., large nonpalpable lesions) or vesicles on extremities (especially palms, soles); **target lesions** (i.e., erythematous center surrounded by pale inner ring and erythematous outer ring) may be evident
3. **Labs** = increased eosinophils; skin biopsy shows increased lymphocytes and necrotic keratinocytes
4. **Treatment** = may be self-limited; stop offending agent; corticosteroids, analgesics

C. Stevens-Johnson syndrome

1. Severe form of erythema multiforme involving mucous membranes and severe plaque formation
2. **Skin sloughing** may be evident; high risk of dehydration
3. **H/P** = similar skin appearance to erythema multiforme but more severe; more likely to have myalgias, fever, nausea, vomiting, oral pain, and eye pain
4. **Treatment** = stop offending agent; corticosteroids, analgesics, IV fluids; frequently treated in burn unit

D. Toxic epidermal necrolysis (TEN)

1. Most severe form of hypersensitivity reaction with **significant skin sloughing and full-thickness epidermal necrosis** (see Figure 10-7)



QUICK HIT

Penicillins, sulfonamides, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), oral contraceptives, and anticonvulsant medications are agents most frequently associated with erythema multiforme.



QUICK HIT

HSV and *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* are common infectious causes of erythema multiforme.

FIGURE 10-7 Toxic epidermal necrolysis (TEN).



This severe dermatologic condition begins as a generalized erythematous rash that progresses into widespread desquamation and erosion formation.

(From Elder, D., Elenitsas, R., Johnson, B. Jr., Ioffreda, M., Miller, J. J., & Miller, F. O. [1999]. *Synopsis and Atlas of Lever's Histopathology of the Skin* [Clinical Figure IVC2.c]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

2. **Labs** = decreased WBC, decreased hemoglobin, decreased hematocrit, increased alanine aminotransferase (ALT), increased aspartate aminotransferase (AST)
3. **Treatment**
 - a. **Stop offending agent.**
 - b. Treat patient in **burn center**, IV hydration, corticosteroids, intravenous immune globulin
 - c. Acyclovir may be useful in cases caused by HSV.

E. Seborrheic dermatitis

1. Chronic hyperproliferation of epidermis most commonly on **scalp** or face
2. Most common in adolescents and infants
3. **H/P** = pruritus; erythematous **plaques with yellow, greasy scales**
4. **Treatment** = shampoo containing selenium, tar, or ketoconazole when scalp involved; topical corticosteroids and antifungals used for other regions
5. **Complications** = frequent recurrence

F. Atopic dermatitis (i.e., eczema)

1. Chronic inflammatory skin rash characterized by **dry skin patches** with papules
2. Both **infantile** (resolves with initial years of life) and **adult** (recurrent) forms exist.
3. **Risk factors** = asthma, allergic rhinitis, family history
4. **H/P** = pruritus; erythematous patches of dry skin with possible vesicles on flexor surfaces, dorsum of hands and feet, chest, back, or face; lesions more commonly on face and scalp in infants (see Figure 10-8)
5. **Treatment** = avoidance of precipitating factors, moisturizing creams, topical corticosteroids or tacrolimus; severe cases can be treated with oral corticosteroids and antihistamines

G. Psoriasis

1. Inflammatory skin disorder characterized by epidermal hyperproliferation
2. **H/P** = possible pruritus; well-defined **red plaques with silvery scales** on **extensor surfaces** (especially knees and elbows) that bleed easily with scale removal (i.e., Auspitz sign), possible small pustules, pitted nails, lifting of nails (see Figure 10-9)



QUICK HIT

"**Cradle cap**" is seborrheic dermatitis of the scalp in infants.



QUICK HIT

Of patients with psoriasis, 10%–20% also have **psoriatic arthritis** (see Chapter 9, **Musculoskeletal Disorders**).

FIGURE 10-8 Adult atopic dermatitis (eczema) characterized by erythematous patches of dry skin.



(From Goodheart, H. P. [2003]. *Goodheart's Photoguide of Common Skin Disorders* [2nd ed., Figure 2-8]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

FIGURE 10-9 Psoriasis



Red plaques with silver scales on extensor forearm surface of a patient with psoriasis; similar lesions are also seen on the extensor surfaces of the knee. (From Goodheart, H. P. [2003]. *Goodheart's Photoguide of Common Skin Disorders* [2nd ed., Figure 2-23]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)



QUICK HIT

Rash distribution in pityriasis rosea occurs in a "Christmas tree" pattern.

3. **Labs** = negative for rheumatoid factor; skin biopsy shows thickened epidermis, absent granular cell layer, and nucleated cells in stratum corneum; possible increased uric acid, increased ESR
4. **Treatment** = topical corticosteroids, tar, retinoids, tacrolimus, or antifungal agents; phototherapy, methotrexate, cyclosporine, or antitumor necrosis factor (anti-TNF) drugs can be used in severe disease

H. Pityriasis rosea

1. Mild inflammatory skin disorder in children and young adults with possible viral association characterized by papular lesions on the trunk and extremities
2. **H/P**
 - a. Pruritus; oval erythematous papules covered with white scale located primarily on chest, back, and extremities
 - b. Rash begins with appearance of "herald patch" (i.e., single round lesion up to 5 cm in diameter) a few days before generalized eruption (see Figure 10-10).

FIGURE 10-10 Pityriasis rosea.



These scaled papules fan out across the chest or back to give the overall appearance of a Christmas tree pattern. (From Barankin, B., Metelitsa, A. I., & Lin, A. N., [2004]. *Stedman Illustrated Dictionary of Dermatology Eponyms*. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.)

3. **Treatment** = self-limited; topical steroids, phototherapy, or erythromycin may decrease duration of exacerbation

I. Erythema nodosum

1. Inflammation of **subcutaneous fat septa** resulting in painful erythematous nodules; most commonly on anterior tibiae but can also affect trunk and other extremities
2. Caused by delayed immunologic reaction to infection, collagen-vascular diseases, inflammatory bowel disease, or drugs
3. **H/P** = malaise, arthralgias; tender **erythematous nodules** (usually pretibial), fever
4. **Labs** = possible positive antistreptolysin O titer (when associated with streptococcal infection), increased ESR; skin biopsy may show fatty inflammation
5. **Treatment** = self-limited; NSAIDs, potassium iodide, corticosteroids

III. BULLOUS DISEASES

A. Pemphigus vulgaris

1. Autoimmune disorder characterized by autoantibodies to adhesion molecules in epidermis
2. Patients usually middle aged or elderly
3. **H/P** = **painful, fragile blisters** in oropharynx and on chest, face, and perineal region; blisters rupture easily and erosions are common (see Figure 10-11)
4. **Labs** = skin biopsy shows separating of epidermal cells (i.e., **acantholysis**) with intact basement membrane; immunofluorescence demonstrates antiepidermal antibodies
5. **Treatment** = corticosteroids, azathioprine, or cyclophosphamide
6. **Complications** = sepsis, high mortality without treatment, osteoporosis (chronic corticosteroid use)

B. Bullous pemphigoid

1. Autoimmune disorder characterized by autoantibodies to epidermal basement membrane
2. Most patients >60 years of age
3. **H/P** = **widespread blistering** (especially on flexor surfaces and perineal region), pruritus; erosions can form with blister rupture (see Figure 10-12)
4. **Labs** = immunofluorescence shows antibasement membrane antibodies
5. **Treatment** = oral or topical corticosteroids or azathioprine

C. Porphyria cutanea tarda

1. Disease resulting from deficiency of hepatic uroporphyrinogen decarboxylase, an enzyme involved in heme metabolism

FIGURE

10-11 Pemphigus vulgaris.



Fragile bullae develop, which rupture, easily leading to widespread erosions and desquamation.

(From Elder, D., Elenitsas, R., Johnson, B. Jr., Ioffreda, M., Miller, J. J., & Miller, F. O. [1999]. *Synopsis and Atlas of Lever's Histopathology of the Skin*. [Clinical Figure IVD3.b]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

FIGURE 10-12 Bullous pemphigoid.



Multiple large bullae form on an erythematous base leading to severe erosions.

(From Elder, D., Elenitsas, R., Johnson, B. Jr., Ioffreda, M., Miller, J. J., & Miller, F. O. [1999]. *Synopsis and Atlas of Lever's Histopathology of the Skin* [Clinical Figure IVE3]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

2. **Risk factors** = alcoholism, hepatitis C, iron overload, estrogen use, smoking
3. **H/P** = chronic blistering lesions on sun-exposed skin (especially the dorsa of hands, forearms, neck, face, ears, feet), hyperpigmented skin, facial hypertrichosis; ruptured blisters heal poorly and result in scarring
4. **Labs** = elevated AST and ALT, increased total plasma porphyrin, increased urine porphyrins, decreased uroporphyrinogen decarboxylase
5. **Treatment** = periodic phlebotomy, low-dose chloroquine or hydroxychloroquine, sunscreen use, avoidance of triggers such as alcohol, estrogens, tobacco, iron supplements

NEXT STEP

Even when actinic keratosis is the suggested diagnosis, biopsy a lesion to rule out squamous cell cancer.

QUICK HIT

Use of a good sunscreen (\geq SPF 15) is important in the prevention of skin cancer associated with sun exposure.

IV. NEOPLASMS

A. Actinic keratosis

1. Precancerous skin lesion that can progress to squamous cell cancer
2. **Risk factors** = sun exposure
3. **H/P** = erythematous papule with rough, yellow-brown scales <5 mm in diameter; lesions found in sun-exposed areas (see Figure 10-13)
4. **Labs** = biopsy shows dysplasia of epithelium (deeper epithelial cells show variations in shape and nuclei with increased staining)
5. **Treatment** = topical 5-fluorouracil or imiquimod, cryotherapy
6. **Complications** = 0.1%/year risk of progression to squamous cell carcinoma (60% of squamous cell carcinomas arise from actinic keratosis)

B. Squamous cell carcinoma

1. Skin cancer involving squamous cells of epithelium
2. **Risk factors** = sun exposure (particularly UVB radiation), actinic keratosis, arsenic exposure, fair complexion, radiation
3. **H/P** = painless, erythematous papule with scaling or keratinized growths in sun-exposed area; progressive lesions may bleed, ulcerate, or be painful (see Figure 10-14)
4. **Labs** = biopsy shows anaplastic epidermal cells extending to dermis
5. **Treatment** = surgical excision; Mohs excision (i.e., serial shallow excisions with histologic analysis to minimize cosmetic damage) may be performed for lesions on face; radiation may be helpful in large lesions
6. **Complications** = progresses slowly but can be a large lesion by time of diagnosis if located in poorly visualized region (back, scalp); 5% to 10% of cases metastasize

FIGURE 10-13 Actinic keratosis.



These lesions are superficial papules covered by dry scales and are a result of sun exposure. (From Sauer, G. C. [1985]. *Manual of Skin Diseases*. [5th ed., Table 4-4]. Philadelphia: JB Lippincott, ; with permission.)

C. Basal cell carcinoma

1. Skin cancer arising in basal epidermal cells
2. Risk factors = sun exposure
3. H/P = pearly papule with fine vascular markings (i.e., telangiectasias) (see Figure 10-15)
4. Labs = biopsy shows basophilic-staining basal epidermal cells arranged in palisades
5. Treatment = surgical excision, Mohs excision, radiation, or cryotherapy
6. Complications = lesions metastasize in <0.1% of cases

D. Melanoma

1. Malignant melanocyte tumor that spreads rapidly
2. Risk factors = sun exposure, fair complexion, family history, numerous nevi (i.e., moles)

FIGURE 10-14 Squamous cell carcinoma with erythematous base and ulceration.



(From Rubin, E., & Farber, J. L. [1999]. *Pathology* [3rd ed., Figure 24-76A]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)



QUICK HIT

Basal cell carcinoma is the **most common** type of skin cancer.



QUICK HIT

Shave biopsy should **never** be used to study a suspicious melanotic lesion because it does not provide sufficient tissue for clear diagnosis and cannot be used to measure lesion depth.



QUICK HIT

Nevi should be followed to look for the ABCDEs of melanoma: **A**symmetry, **B**order (irregular), **C**olor (variable), **D**iameter (>6 mm), and **E**nlargement.

FIGURE 10-15 Basal cell carcinoma.



Note the pearly appearance of a papule with central ulceration.

(From Goodheart, H. P. [2003]. *Goodheart's Photoguide of Common Skin Disorders*. (2nd ed., Figure 22-17). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

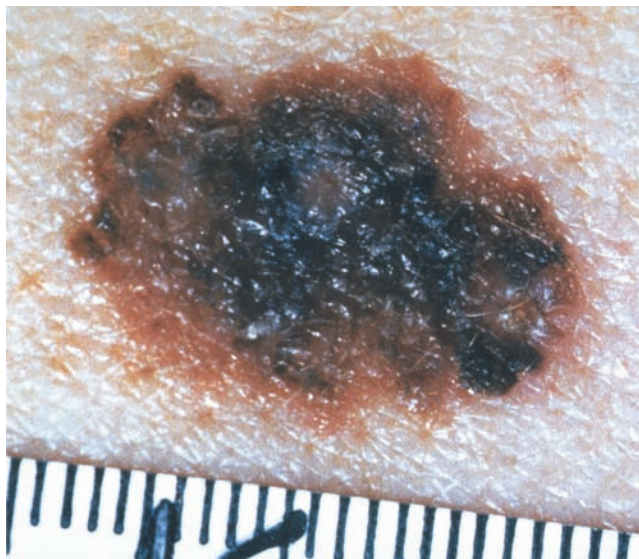
3. Types

- Superficial spreading:** most common type; grows laterally before invasive growth occurs
- Nodular:** grows only vertically and becomes invasive rapidly; difficult to detect
- Acral lentiginous:** involves palms, soles, and nail beds
- Lentigo maligna:** long-lasting in situ stage before vertical growth

4. H/P

- Painless,** pigmented lesion with recent changes in appearance
- Lesions have irregular borders, multiple colors, and can be large or rapidly growing (see Figure 10-16).
- In contrast, melanocytic nevi are more symmetric, have more regular borders, are homogeneously colored, and remain relatively the same size over time (see Figure 10-17).

FIGURE 10-16 Melanoma, superficial spreading type.



Note the ABCDs of the lesion: asymmetry, irregular border, inconsistent color, and large diameter (>20 mm).

(From Rubin, E., & Farber, J. L. [1999]. *Pathology* [3rd ed., Figure 24-51]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

FIGURE 10-17 Melanocytic nevus.



Unlike melanoma, this lesion is nearly symmetric, has better border regularity, is a more consistent color, and is smaller in diameter. (From Goodheart, H. P. [2003]. *Goodheart's Photoguide of Common Skin Disorders* [2nd ed., Figure 21-7]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

5. **Labs** = excisional biopsy shows atypical melanocytes and possible invasion into dermis
6. **Treatment** = surgical excision (0.5 cm margin if in situ, 1 cm margin if <2 mm thick, 2 cm margin if >2 mm thick) with possible lymph node dissection; chemotherapy and radiation therapy if metastatic
7. **Complications** = aggressive cancer; lesions can have metastasized by time of discovery (most commonly, lung, brain, and gastrointestinal tract)

V. PLASTIC SURGERY

A. Grafts and flaps (see Table 10-3)

1. Transfer of skin and soft tissues from one location of body to another for use in wound repair
2. Skin grafts can be autografts (i.e., from healthy tissue on same patient), allografts (i.e., donor tissue from another individual), or xenografts (i.e., donor tissue from another species).
3. Flaps can be rotational or transpositional (i.e., left partially attached to donor site and rotated or stretched to cover wound) or free flaps (i.e., flap completely removed from donor site and transferred in whole to wound).



QUICK HIT

The most important prognostic factor for melanoma is **thickness of lesion** (>0.76 mm associated with increased risk of metastasis).



QUICK HIT

Periodic skin checks should be performed in anyone with a history of significant sun exposure and a positive family history for melanoma.

TABLE 10-3 Common Types of Skin Grafts and Tissue Flaps Used in Wound Repair

Type	Description	Common Donor Sites	Indications
Split-thickness graft	Skin graft composed of epidermis and part of dermis	Abdomen, thighs, buttocks	Skin replacement in wounds; useful to cover extensive surface area (contracts over time)
Full-thickness graft	Skin graft composed of epidermis and full dermis	Above ears (for face), forearm, groin	Defects on face, hands
Composite graft	Skin grafts that also contain other tissues (cartilage, nail bed, fat)	Fingertip, ear, etc.	Site-specific anatomic reconstruction
Fasciocutaneous flap	Skin and subcutaneous tissue with attached vascular supply	Forehead, groin, deltopectoral region, thighs	Large defects with good vascular supply requiring padding
Muscle flap	Transferred muscle that either includes skin (myocutaneous flap) or requires additional skin graft	Tensor fascia lata, gluteal muscles, sartorius, rectus abdominus, latissimus dorsi	Areas requiring increased vascularized tissue, exposed deep tissues, severe radiation injury



**NEXT
STEP**

Genitourinary reconstruction or gender reassignment requires a careful preoperative evaluation to determine true gender of patient, genetic causes, realistic outcomes, expectations, and psychiatric issues.

B. Reconstructive surgery

1. Repair of soft tissue defects caused by surgery, congenital anomalies, or wounds
2. Multiple types of tissue are used to recreate normal anatomy (e.g., skin, muscle, bone, cartilage, vessels, nerves).
3. Examples
 - a. Maxillofacial: cleft lip repair, cleft palate repair, facial trauma
 - b. Breast: reconstruction with muscle flaps or implants following mastectomy
 - c. Genitourinary: repair of epispadias, hypospadias, or genital agenesis
 - d. Soft tissues: following sarcoma excision or for filling defects

C. Cosmetic surgery

1. Surgical alteration of appearance
2. Can be performed to remove anatomic anomalies or results of massive weight loss, surgery, or injury (e.g., gynecomastia, postmastectomy, excessive skin, difficulty breathing)
3. More often used to combat effects of **aging** or to **modify** physical appearance
4. Examples
 - a. Facial: facelift, brow-lift, blepharoplasty (i.e., repair of baggy eyelids), rhinoplasty
 - b. Skin: removal of scarring, spider veins, age wrinkles (dermabrasion, laser treatment, chemical peel)
 - c. Breast: augmentation, reduction (may be helpful to reduce back strain)
 - d. Fatty tissue reduction: abdominoplasty, liposuction
5. **Psychiatric** issues must be considered, especially in patients who repeatedly request “upgrades.”

Gynecologic and Breast Disorders

I. MENSTRUAL PHYSIOLOGY

A. Gynecologic development

1. Reproductive changes driven by follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) and luteinizing hormone (LH) levels (see Table 11-1, Figure 11-1)
2. Secondary sexual characteristics are caused by androgens.
3. Tanner stages describe breast and pubic hair development during puberty (see Table 11-2).



QUICK HIT

The mean age of menarche is 13 years in the United States and tends to occur earlier in blacks than in whites.

TABLE 11-1 Gynecologic Development by Age

Age	Hormone Levels	Characteristics
Fetal to 4 yr	High intrauterine FSH and LH that peaks at 20 wk gestation and decreases until birth FSH and LH increase again from birth until 6 months of age then gradually decrease to low levels by age 4 yr	All oocytes formed and partially matured by 20 wk gestation Tanner stage 1 characteristics
4–8 yr	Low FSH, LH, and androgen levels caused by GnRH suppression	Tanner stage 1 characteristics Any sexual development considered precocious
8–11 yr	LH, FSH, and androgen levels begin to increase	Initial pubertal changes, including early breast development and pubic and axillary hair growth
11–17 yr	Further increase of LH, FSH, and androgens to baseline mature levels Hormones secreted in pulsatile fashion (higher at night) caused by sleep-associated increase in GnRH secretion	Puberty Progression through Tanner stages Development of secondary sexual characteristics and growth spurt Menarche in females (beginning of menstrual cycles) and further oocyte maturation
17–50 yr (females)	LH and FSH follow menstrual cycle Gradual increase in FSH and LH with ovarian insensitivity	Menstrual cycles Mature sexual characteristics
≥50 yr (females)	LH and FSH levels increase with onset of ovarian failure	Perimenopause: menstrual cycles become inconsistent (oligomenorrhea) Menopause: menstrual cycles cease (amenorrhea)

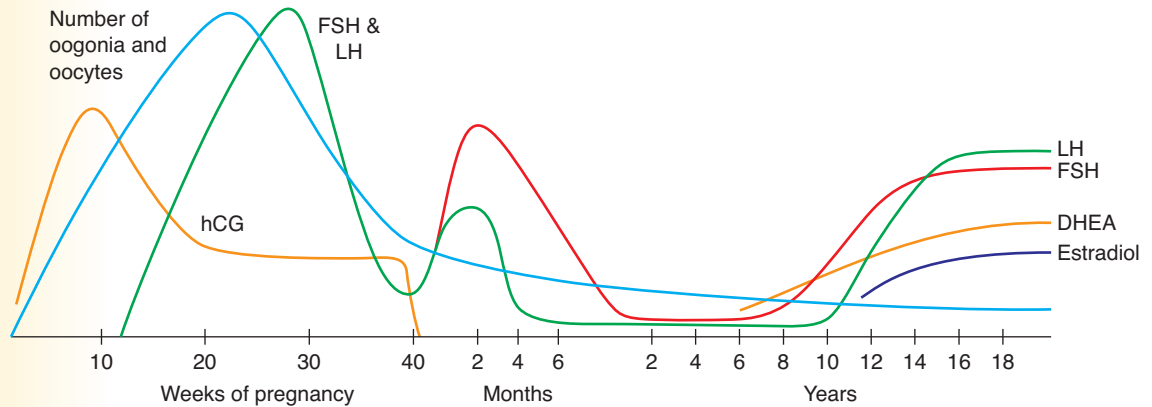
FSH, follicle-stimulating hormone; GnRH, gonadotropin-releasing hormone; LH, luteinizing hormone.



QUICK HIT

Order of events of normal female puberty: adrenarche (adrenal androgen production), gonadarche (activation of gonads by FSH and LH), thelarche (appearance of breast tissue), pubarche (appearance of pubic hair), growth spurt, menarche (onset of menses).

FIGURE 11-1 Changes in hormone and oogonia (egg) levels with gestation and age.



DHEA, dehydroepiandrosterone; FSH, follicle-stimulating hormone; hCG, human chorionic gonadotropin; LH, luteinizing hormone.

(From Speroff, L., Glass, R. H., & Kase, N. G. [1991]. *Clinical Gynecologic Endocrinology and Infertility* [7th ed.]. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins)

TABLE 11-2 Tanner Stages for Female Breast and Hair Development

Tanner Stage	Breast Development	Pubic Hair Development
1	Prepubertal: raised papilla (nipple) only	Prepubertal: no hair growth
2	Breast budding, areolar enlargement	Slight growth of fine labial hair
3	Further breast and areolar enlargement	Further growth of hair
4	Further breast enlargement: areola and papilla form secondary growth above level of breast	Hair becomes coarser and spreads over much of pubic region
5	Mature breast: areola recedes to level of breast while papilla remains extended	Coarse hair extends from pubic region to medial thighs

QUICK HIT

Precocious puberty in boys occurs <9 years and is most commonly caused by adrenal hyperplasia.

QUICK HIT

Central nervous system (CM) lesions or trauma is a cause of isosexual precocious puberty in approximately 10% of cases.

B. Precocious puberty

- Development of pubertal changes in girls <8 years
- Because of early activation of the hypothalamic–pituitary–gonadal axis or autonomous excess secretion of sex steroids
- Types
 - Heterosexual**
 - Virilization of girls or feminization of boys
 - In girls, most commonly results from congenital adrenal hyperplasia, exposure to exogenous androgens, or androgen-secreting neoplasm
 - Isosexual**
 - Premature sexual development appropriate for gender
 - Can be complete (i.e., all sexual characteristics develop prematurely) or incomplete (i.e., only one sexual characteristic develops prematurely)
- History and physical (H/P)**
 - Complete isosexual: normal pubertal changes take place but at **earlier-than-normal age**
 - Incomplete isosexual: premature breast budding (i.e., **thelarche**), axillary hair growth, or pubic hair growth (i.e., **pubarche**) may take place
- Labs**
 - Increased LH and FSH with additional release following administration of gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH) suggests pituitary gland activation; low LH and FSH with no response to GnRH suggests excess sex steroid production.

- b. Increased estrogen in the presence of low LH and FSH suggests exogenous hormone production (neoplasm); significantly high levels of adrenal steroids may be seen with neoplasm or congenital adrenal hyperplasia (CAH).
- c. Increased thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) with low thyroxine (T_4) and triiodothyronine (T_3) suggest precocious puberty in response to chronic hypothyroidism.
- 6. **Radiology** = magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) or computed tomography (CT) with contrast may detect cerebral or adrenal lesions
- 7. **Treatment**
 - a. **GnRH analogues** are useful for LH and FSH suppression in hypothalamic–pituitary–gonadal axis pathologies.
 - b. Precocious puberty secondary to ectopic hormone secretion should be treated by locating and removing the source of the hormone.
 - c. Precocious puberty caused by CAH should be treated with cortisol replacement (see Chapter 5, **Endocrine Disorders**).
 - d. Complete precocious puberty with an onset close to the expected start of puberty may not require treatment.
 - e. Incomplete precocious puberty requires only observation to make sure that it does not become complete precocity.
- 8. **Complications** = short stature (bones fuse at early age); social and emotional adjustment issues

C. Normal menstrual cycle (see Figure 11-2)

- 1. LH, FSH, estrogen, progesterone, and human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG) all play roles in the menstrual cycle (see Table 11-3).
- 2. **Follicular phase**
 - a. Begins at first day of menses (i.e., menstruation)
 - b. FSH stimulates **growth of ovarian follicle** (granulosa cells), which in turn secretes estradiol.
 - c. **Estradiol induces endometrial proliferation** and further increases FSH and LH secretion from positive feedback of pituitary.
- 3. **Luteal phase**
 - a. **LH surge induces ovulation.**
 - b. Residual follicle (i.e., **corpus luteum**) secretes estradiol and progesterone to **maintain endometrium** and induce development of secretory ducts.
 - c. High estradiol levels inhibit FSH and LH.
 - d. If egg is **not** fertilized, corpus luteum degrades, progesterone and estradiol levels decrease, and the **endometrial lining degrades** (i.e., menses).
- 4. **Fertilization**
 - a. If the egg is fertilized, it will implant in the endometrium.
 - b. Endometrial tissue secretes **hCG to maintain the corpus luteum.**
 - c. Corpus luteum continues to secrete progesterone until sufficient production is achieved by a developing placenta (~8 to 12 weeks).

D. Menopause

- 1. **Permanent end of menstruation** because of **ceasing of ovarian function** in later middle age (~50 years)
- 2. Premature menopause is defined as ovarian failure before age 40 years (more likely with history of tobacco use, radiation therapy, chemotherapy, autoimmune disorders, or abdominal or pelvic surgery).
- 3. During evolution of menopause (i.e., **perimenopausal period**), ovarian response to FSH and LH decreases, whereas FSH and LH levels increase and estrogen levels fluctuate.
- 4. **H/P = hot flashes** (secondary to thermoregulatory dysfunction), breast pain, sweating, **menstrual irregularity** with eventual **amenorrhea**, possible menorrhagia, fatigue, anxiety, irritability, depression, **dyspareunia** (caused by vaginal wall atrophy and decreased lubrication), urinary frequency, dysuria, change in bowel habits; examination detects vaginal atrophy
- 5. **Labs** = increased FSH, increased LH, decreased estradiol



QUICK HIT

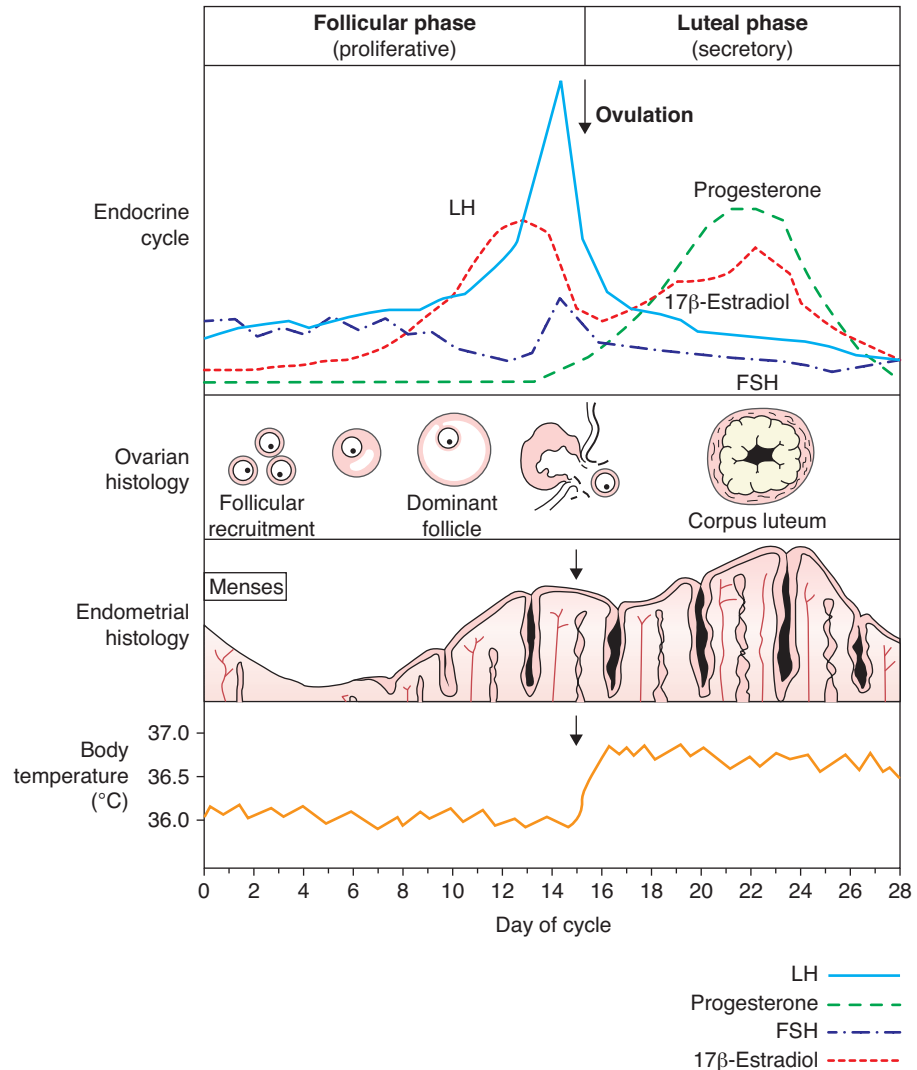
One year of amenorrhea is required for a diagnosis of menopause.



QUICK HIT

Increased risk of **osteoporosis** in menopausal women is caused by **decreased estrogen** production by the ovaries.

FIGURE 11-2 Hormone levels during the menstrual cycle with appropriate ovarian, endometrial, and basal body temperature responses.



FSH, follicle-stimulating hormone; LH, luteinizing hormone.

(From Mehta, S., Milder, E. A., Mirachi, A. J., & Milder, E. [2003]. *Step-Up: A High-Yield, Systems-Based Review for the USMLE Step 1* [2nd ed.]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.)



QUICK HIT

Topical estrogen use is contraindicated in any patient with a history of breast cancer.

6. Treatment

- Lubricating agents to treat dyspareunia (i.e., painful intercourse); short-term topical vaginal estrogen used in cases of significant vaginal symptoms
- Calcium, vitamin D, bisphosphonates, and exercise to prevent osteoporosis
- Selective estrogen receptor modulators, such as raloxifene and tamoxifen, may serve a role in reducing osteoporosis and cardiovascular risks.
- Regular cardiovascular follow-up
- Hormone replacement therapy was a mainstay of therapy for many years, but its benefits have more recently been shown to be less than previously believed, and it has been linked to increased risk for breast cancer and deep vein thrombosis.

7. Complications = osteoporosis, coronary artery disease, dementia

TABLE 11-3 Roles of Hormones Involved in the Menstrual Cycle

Hormone A	Effects
Luteinizing hormone (LH)	Midcycle surge induces ovulation Regulates cholesterol conversion to pregnenolone in ovarian theca cells as initial step in estrogen synthesis
Follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH)	Stimulates development of ovarian follicle Regulates ovarian granulosa cell activity to control estrogen synthesis
Estrogens (estradiol, estriol)	Stimulates endometrial proliferation Aids in follicle growth Induces LH surge High levels inhibit FSH secretion Principal role in sexual development
Progesterone	Stimulates endometrial gland development Inhibits uterine contraction Increases thickness of cervical mucus Increases basal body temperature Inhibits LH and FSH secretion; maintains pregnancy Decrease in levels leads to menstruation
Human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG)	Acts like LH after implantation of fertilized egg Maintains corpus luteum viability and progesterone secretion

II. CONTRACEPTION

- A.** Methods of contraception attempt to prevent pregnancy (see Table 11-4).
- B.** The various forms of contraception are each associated with certain side effects.
- C. Method choice**
 1. Should consider likelihood of patient compliance
 2. Side effects must be tolerated by patient.
 3. Certain methods may be contraindicated for comorbid medical conditions.

QUICK HIT

The rate of pregnancy in 1 year **without any contraception** is 85%.

QUICK HIT

Barrier methods (not spermicide alone) are the only contraception shown to reduce the spread of sexually transmitted diseases (STDs).

TABLE 11-4 Methods of Contraception

Method	Description	Effectiveness ^a		Side Effects
		Ideal (%)	Typical (%)	
Hormonal methods				
Oral contraceptive pills (OCPs) (combined formulation)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Estrogen–progestin combination of pills that inhibits follicle development and ovulation, changes endometrial quality, and increases cervical mucus viscosity to prevent fertilization and implantation 	99	92	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Possible nausea, headache, weight gain • Increased risk of DVT • Contraindicated for heavy smokers or women with a history of DVT, estrogen-related cancer, liver disease, or hypertriglyceridemia
Oral contraceptive pills (progestin formulation)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Progestin-only pills that change endometrial quality and increase cervical mucus viscosity to prevent fertilization and implantation • May be option for women with contraindication for estrogen 	98	92	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Increased breakthrough bleeding • Must be taken at same time every day to maximize efficacy
Medroxyprogesterone acetate (Depo-Provera)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Progestin analogue injected by health care provider every 3 months that inhibits ovulation and endometrial development 	99	97	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Nausea, headache, weight gain • Irregular bleeding

(continued)

TABLE 11-4 Methods of Contraception (Continued)

Method	Description	Effectiveness ^a		Side Effects
		Ideal (%)	Typical (%)	
Progestin implant	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Subcutaneous implant that slowly release progestin over ~3 yr (similar activity to progestin-only pill) 	100 ^b	100 ^b	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Irregular bleeding, breast pain
Transdermal contraceptive patch	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Transdermal delivery of estradiol and progestin analogue to act in similar manner to OCPs Patch must be changed weekly 	99	92	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Risk of patch detachment Nausea, headache, weight gain Irregular bleeding, breast pain Less effective in heavier women because of diffusion into adipose tissue Increased risk of DVT
Intravaginal ring	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ring inserted intravaginally that releases ethinyl estradiol over 3 wk to prevent ovulation (less estrogen than OCPs) Replaced each month 	99	92	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Withdrawal bleeding, device-related discomfort, headache Increased risk of DVT
Emergency contraception	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Regimen of estradiol and progestin taken within 72 hr of unprotected intercourse or intercourse with failed contraception method (e.g., broken condom) to prevent ovulation or inhibit fertilization Levonorgestrel (Plan B) Copper IUD inserted within 4–5 days of intercourse interferes with sperm function Mifepristone (RU 486) interrupts new pregnancy 	>90	>90	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Nausea, headache more severe than that seen with OCPs Menstrual bleeding expected within 1 wk of administration
Barrier methods				
Condom	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Barrier (most frequently latex) placed over penis and left in place until withdrawal following ejaculation Frequently used with spermicide Polyurethane condoms are produced for those with latex allergy 	98	85	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Risk of condom breakage Latex significantly more effective than other materials (with possible exception of polyurethane) Risk of latex allergy
Diaphragm or cervical cap	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Barrier inserted into vagina before intercourse to cover cervix Used with spermicide and left in place for several hours after intercourse 	94	84	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inconvenient Frequent poor compliance Increased risk of UTI
Contraceptive sponge	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Polyurethane sponge implanted with spermicide that releases spermicide over 24 hr after insertion to inhibit fertilization 	91 ^c	80 ^c	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Possible increased risk of toxic shock syndrome
Spermicide alone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Insertion of spermicidal jelly or cream into vagina immediately before intercourse 	82	71	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Correct usage and quantity difficult to achieve consistently
Sexual practice methods				
Abstinence	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Not engaging in intercourse 	100	100	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> None
Rhythm method	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Recording occurrence of menses, daily basal body temperature, and cervical mucus to determine timing of cycle, occurrence of ovulation, and period of fertility 	95	83	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> May be useful in diagnosing infertility
Withdrawal method	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Withdrawal of penis from vagina immediately before ejaculation 	96	73	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Decreased pleasure Difficult to conduct in effective manner
Lactation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Unprotected intercourse during active postpartum lactation period 	98	95	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Only able to be performed if actively breastfeeding, <6 months postpartum, and amenorrheic (pregnancy rate = no contraception rate otherwise)

(continued)

TABLE 11-4 **Methods of Contraception** (Continued)

Method	Description	Effectiveness ^a		Side Effects
		Ideal (%)	Typical (%)	
Intrauterine devices				
Copper intrauterine device (IUD)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Object inserted into uterus by physician with slow release of copper to prevent fertilization and interfere with sperm transportation Left in place ~10 yr May be placed soon after intercourse as emergency contraception (90% decrease in pregnancy rate) 	99	99	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Small risk of spontaneous abortion and uterine perforation Menorrhagia
Progestin-releasing IUD	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Object inserted into uterus by physician with slow release of progestin to prevent fertilization, interfere with sperm transportation, and inhibit ovulation Left in place ~5 yr 	99	99	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Small risk of spontaneous abortion and uterine perforation
Surgical methods				
Sterilization	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cutting of vas deferens in men (vasectomy) or tubal ligation in women to prevent fertilization 	~100	~100	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> May be difficult to reverse Increased risk of ectopic pregnancy in cases of failure or after voluntary ligation reversal

^aAs defined by pregnancy rate with 1 yr of use (6 months for lactation).

^bOnly one efficacy study performed; no pregnancies occurred in study.

^cEffectiveness decreases to 80%/60% in women with prior vaginal birth history.

DVT, deep venous thrombosis; UTI, urinary tract infection.

III. MENSTRUAL DISORDERS AND ISSUES

A. Amenorrhea

- Absence of menstruation
 - Primary:** absence of menses (never has happened) with normal secondary sexual characteristics by a 16-year-old or absence of both menses and secondary sexual characteristics by a 13-year-old
 - Secondary:** absence of menses for 6 months in patient with prior history of menses
- Causes
 - Primary: hypothalamic or pituitary dysfunction, anatomic abnormalities (e.g., absent uterus, vaginal septa), **chromosome abnormalities** with gonadal dysgenesis
 - Secondary: pregnancy, ovarian failure, hypothalamic or pituitary disease, uterine abnormalities (e.g., Asherman syndrome), polycystic ovary syndrome (PCOS), anorexia nervosa, malnutrition, thyroid disease
- H/P
 - History should address occurrence of any previous menstruation periods (e.g., primary or secondary amenorrhea), exercise and eating habits (e.g., substantial exercise or inadequate eating), family history, medications, androgenous symptoms (e.g., facial hair, voice deepening), and known comorbidity.
 - Examination should note Tanner stages (see Table 11-2) and should check for normal sexual anatomy.
- Labs
 - β-hCG test** used to rule out pregnancy (see Figure 11-3)
 - TSH, T₄, and T₃-reuptake can diagnose thyroid dysfunction.

QUICK HIT

Asherman syndrome is scarring of the uterus that follows infection or postpartum infection.

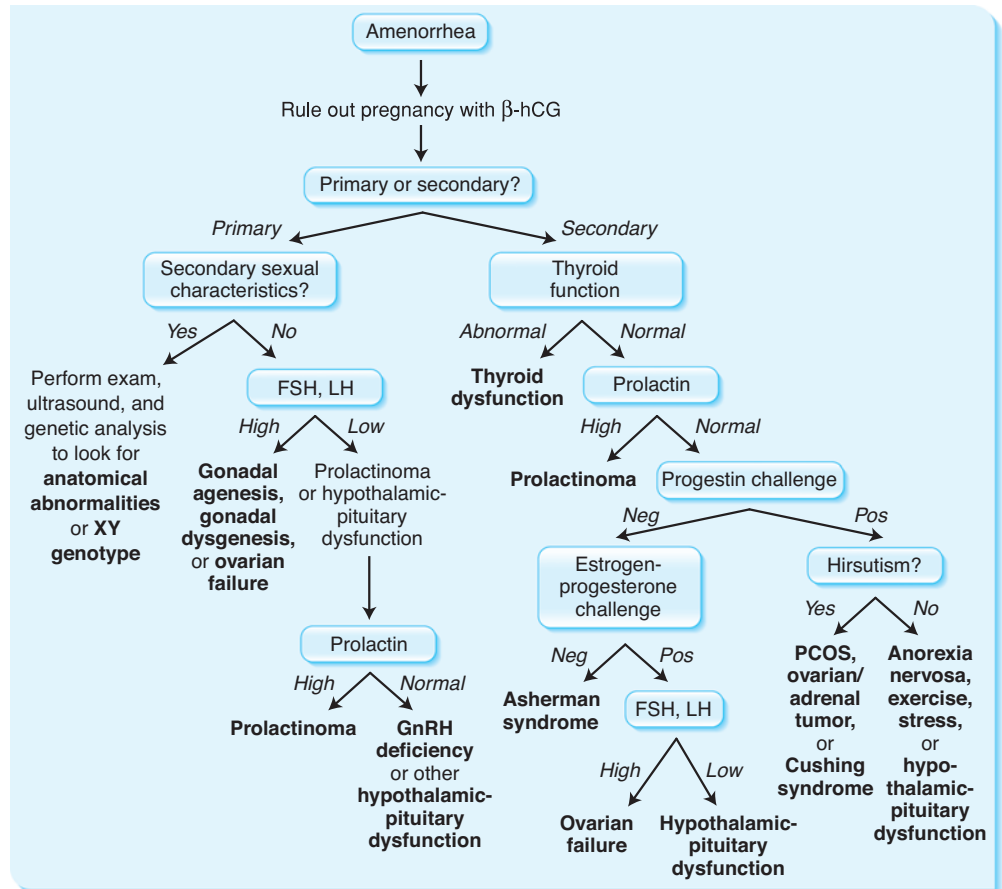
NEXT STEP

If testicles are present in an XY patient with androgen insensitivity syndrome, they should be **removed** at an early age because of increased risk of **testicular cancer**.

NEXT STEP

β-hCG pregnancy test is always the first step in the workup of any type of amenorrhea.

FIGURE 11-3 Approach to the patient with amenorrhea.



FSH, follicle-stimulating hormone; GnRH, gonadotropin-releasing hormone; β -hCG, human chorionic gonadotropin; LH, luteinizing hormone; Neg, negative; PCOS, polycystic ovary syndrome; Pos, positive.

- c. Increased prolactin suggests prolactin-secreting tumor.
- d. FSH and LH levels measure hypothalamic-pituitary activity.
- e. Increased androgens (e.g., testosterone, dehydroepiandrosterone [DHEA]) suggest PCOS.
- f. **Progestin challenge** (i.e., patient is observed for bleeding after 5-day administration of progesterone) and **estrogen-progesterone challenge** (i.e., patient is observed for bleeding after administration of estrogen and progesterone) can help detect anatomic abnormalities (bleeding indicates normal outflow tract), hormonal abnormalities, or hypothalamic-pituitary activity.
5. **Treatment**
 - a. Modify behaviors (e.g., eating disorders, exercise) to allow menstruation.
 - b. Anatomic abnormalities require surgical correction.
 - c. Hypothalamic-pituitary dysfunction may be treatable by GnRH or gonadotropin replacement.
 - d. Prolactinoma may be treated with dopamine agonists.
 - e. Hormone replacement therapy may be considered in ovarian failure.
 - f. Lysis of adhesions and estrogen administration performed for Asherman syndrome
 - g. Thyroid dysfunction and Cushing syndrome treated according to specific pathology
 - h. In some untreatable patients with appropriate anatomy, pregnancy may be accomplished through egg donation, in vitro fertilization, and hormone modulation.
6. **Complications** = patients with genetic disorders or ovarian failure may be unable to achieve normal menstrual cycles

B. Dysmenorrhea

1. Periodic pain associated with menses that may be primary (without pelvic pathology) or secondary (caused by endometriosis, pelvic inflammatory disease [PID], uterine fibroids, ovarian cysts, or adenomyosis)
2. **Risk factors** = menorrhagia, menarche <12 years, body mass index <20, PID, sexual assault, smoking, premenstrual syndrome
3. **H/P** = crampy lower abdominal pain associated with menstruation, nausea, vomiting, headache, diarrhea; mild abdominal tenderness
4. **Labs** = β -hCG and blood and vaginal cultures are helpful to rule out pregnancy and infection
5. **Radiology** = ultrasound (US) may be used to detect ovarian and uterine lesions; hysteroscopy or laparoscopy may be needed to detect intrauterine pathology, intra-abdominal pathology, or endometriosis
6. **Treatment** = nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) or oral contraceptive pills (OCPs) for primary disorders; treat underlying infection or uterine disease

C. Premenstrual syndrome (PMS) and premenstrual dysphoric disorder (PMDD)

1. Syndromes seen in women with normal functioning ovaries that precede menses and are characterized by multiple pain, mood, and autonomic symptoms; mood symptoms are more severe in PMDD
2. Most women with menstrual cycles experience some symptoms, but 5% to 10% of women have severe symptoms that **interfere with daily life**.
3. **Risk factors** (for severe symptoms) = family history
4. **H/P**
 - a. Weight gain, headache, abdominal or pelvic pain, abdominal bloating, change in bowel habits, food cravings, mood lability, depression, fatigue, irritability; breast tenderness, edema, abdominal tenderness, acne
 - b. Findings precede menses and **occur at similar time points** in each cycle.
5. **Treatment** = exercise, vitamin B₆, NSAIDs, OCPs, progestins; selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) \pm alprazolam may improve mood symptoms in both PMS and PMDD

D. Endometriosis

1. Presence of **endometrial tissue outside the uterus** (e.g., ovaries, broad ligament); ectopic tissue follows same menstrual cycle as normal tissue
2. Retrograde menstruation, vascular/lymphatic spread of endometrial tissue from uterus to pelvic cavity, or iatrogenic spread of endometrial tissue (e.g., during caesarian section) are most plausible causes of condition.
3. **Risk factors** = family history, **infertility**, nulliparity (i.e., no history of childbirth), low body mass index
4. **H/P** = dysmenorrhea, dyspareunia, painful bowel movements (i.e., dyschezia), **pelvic pain**, possible infertility; uterine or adnexal tenderness; palpable adhesions on uterus or ovaries
5. **Labs** = **biopsy** of lesions shows **endometrial tissue**; β -hCG and urinalysis helpful to rule out pregnancy and urinary tract infection; CA-125 marker frequently increased but not a highly sensitive test
6. **Radiology** = **laparoscopy** will show “**powder-burn**” lesions and cysts on involved areas and is optimal diagnostic tool
7. **Treatment**
 - a. Recording a journal of symptoms is useful for defining treatment.
 - b. OCPs, progestins, danazol, or GnRH agonists may supply symptomatic relief.
 - c. Laparoscopic ablation may successfully remove lesions while maintaining fertility potential.
 - d. Hysterectomy, lysis of adhesions, or salpingo-oophorectomy may be required in severe cases.
8. **Complications** = fertility may not be achieved despite pharmacologic or laparoscopic intervention



QUICK HIT

Primary dysmenorrhea symptoms occur in the **beginning** of menstruation and resolve over several days; **secondary** dysmenorrhea symptoms often begin **midcycle** before the onset of menstruation and increase in severity until the conclusion of menstruation.



NEXT STEP

Any woman of childbearing age with abdominal pain must be given a β -hCG pregnancy test to rule out **ectopic pregnancy**.



NEXT STEP

If a patient suspected of having PMS or PMDD has mood symptoms **throughout** her menstrual cycle, initiate a psychiatric workup for a mood disorder. Menstrual-related symptoms should **only** occur in the **second half** of the cycle.



QUICK HIT

Endometriosis is the **most common** cause of **female infertility** and may be responsible for up to 50% of cases.



QUICK HIT

Adenomyosis is endometrial tissue that invades the myometrium, causing uterine enlargement and cyclical pain.

E. Abnormal uterine bleeding

1. **Irregular** menstruation, excessive menses (i.e., menorrhagia), or **increased duration** of menses that may be the result of a variety of causes (e.g., uterine fibroids, cancer, hypothalamic-pituitary dysfunction, bleeding diatheses [e.g., von Willebrand disease], threatened abortion, molar pregnancy, ectopic pregnancy)
2. **H/P**
 - a. Uterine bleeding that does not follow usual menstrual cycle or occurs in postmenopausal women
 - b. Menses with **<24-day or >35-day intervals, lasting >7 days, or blood loss >80 mL** are considered abnormal.
 - c. Associated symptoms (e.g., fever, abdominal pain, vaginal discharge, acne, changes in bowel or bladder function), family history, history of medical conditions useful to making diagnosis
 - d. Visualization of bleeding site (e.g., cervix, vagina, anus, vulva), palpation of pelvic masses important
3. **Labs**
 - a. β -hCG used to rule out pregnancy
 - b. Complete blood count (CBC), coagulation studies, TSH, FSH, and LH are used to rule out anemia, coagulopathy, and endocrine abnormalities.
 - c. Papanicolaou (Pap) smear and endometrial biopsy (possibly obtained during dilation and curettage [D&C]) used to rule out cancer
 - d. Testing for STDs used to rule out infection
4. **Radiology** = US may detect uterine lesions; hysteroscopy frequently indicated to visualize lesions and perform D&C
5. **Treatment**
 - a. Treat underlying disorder (e.g., coagulopathies, thyroid disease, infection).
 - b. OCPs can be used for cycle irregularity.
 - c. Endometrial ablation may be performed for severe or recurrent bleeding.

F. Polycystic ovary syndrome (PCOS)

1. Hypothalamic-pituitary disease with LH and androgen overproduction leading to **amenorrhea, infertility, and hirsutism**
2. **Excess LH secretion** induces overproduction of androgens by ovaries.
3. Some patients with PCOS may have hyperinsulinemia, which induces androgen production and increases risk of insulin resistance.
4. **Excess androgens** produced by ovaries and adrenals are converted to estrogen, which induces further ovarian androgen production.
5. Amenorrhea and infertility caused by abnormal LH levels and FSH inhibition by high estrogen level; hirsutism results from increased androgens
6. **H/P**
 - a. **Obesity** (frequently initial sign)
 - b. **Hirsutism**: excess growth of facial, chest, and abdominal hair
 - c. **Acne**
 - d. **Menstrual dysfunction**: amenorrhea, oligomenorrhea, breakthrough bleeding
 - e. **Infertility**
 - f. Bilateral ovarian enlargement on bimanual examination
7. **Labs** = increased LH, **LH:FSH ratio >3**, increased DHEA, increased androstenedione; positive progestin challenge
8. **Radiology** = US shows **enlarged ovaries with multiple cysts**
9. **Treatment**
 - a. Exercise and weight loss
 - b. OCPs can be used to suppress LH and FSH, regulate menstrual cycles, decrease circulating estrogen, and decrease endometrial cancer risk.
 - c. If OCPs are not an option, progestin alone for 7 days each month will induce bleeding and prevent endometrial hyperplasia.
 - d. Spironolactone has antiandrogen effects and may help treat hirsutism, if response to OCPs is inadequate; it must be stopped in pregnancy due to risk of antiandrogen effects in male fetus.

QUICK HIT

PCOS is the **most common** cause of androgen excess in women.

QUICK HIT

Ovarian cysts are not the cause of disease in PCOS but are a result of androgen hypersecretion.

QUICK HIT

Diagnosis of PCOS requires at least **two** of the following: anovulation, androgen excess, and polycystic ovaries (by ultrasound).

- e. Clomiphene (antiestrogen) induces follicle stimulation and maturation to allow pregnancy.
 - f. Metformin will facilitate weight loss, improve cholesterol profile, reduce blood pressure (BP), and reduce cardiovascular risk; some women may start ovulating solely with metformin therapy; management of glucose intolerance required to avoid complications of diabetes mellitus (DM)
 - g. Consider a statin to lower lipid and testosterone levels
 - h. Antibiotics as needed for acne
10. **Complications** = infertility; increased risk for DM, hypertension, ischemic heart disease, ovarian torsion, and endometrial cancer

QUICK HIT

Patients with **PCOS** are at an increased risk for **endometrial cancer** secondary to chronically **high estrogen** levels.

IV. COMMON GYNECOLOGIC INFECTIONS

A. Vaginitis

1. Vaginal infection caused by overgrowth of normal bacteria (*Gardnerella vaginalis*), protozoans (*Trichomonas*), or fungus (*Candida albicans*)
2. **Risk factors** = DM, human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), unprotected sex, multiple partners, young age at first intercourse, douching, intrauterine device (IUD) use, smoking
3. **H/P** = vaginal **irritation** or **pruritus**, vaginal discharge; examination detects vaginal inflammation with characteristic findings depending on cause (see Table 11-5, Figure 11-4)
4. **Labs** = **wet mount** (i.e., smear of vaginal fluid examined under microscope) with saline or potassium hydroxide (KOH) and **vaginal pH** testing useful to distinguish cause; diagnostic cards are available for testing vaginal fluid samples when microscopy is unavailable
5. **Treatment** = metronidazole (*G. vaginalis* or *Trichomonas*), clindamycin (*G. vaginalis*), or fluconazole (*C. albicans*)

QUICK HIT

Lactobacilli are a common normal bacteria whose presence on a wet mount does **not** suggest infection.

QUICK HIT

Treatment of **partners** is **unnecessary** for *G. vaginalis* or *C. albicans* but is **required** with *Trichomonas* infection (metronidazole).

B. Toxic shock syndrome

1. Severe systemic reaction to *Staphylococcus aureus* exotoxin associated with **prolonged tampon use**, prolonged intravaginal contraception use, or postpartum or postabortion infection
2. **H/P** = vomiting, diarrhea, sore throat, headache; high fever, generalized macular rash; severe cases develop **hypotension**, shock, respiratory distress, and **desquamation of palms and soles**
3. **Labs** = vaginal fluid culture shows *S. aureus*; decreased platelets, increased alanine aminotransferase (ALT) and aspartate aminotransferase (AST), and increased blood urea nitrogen (BUN) and creatinine in progressing cases

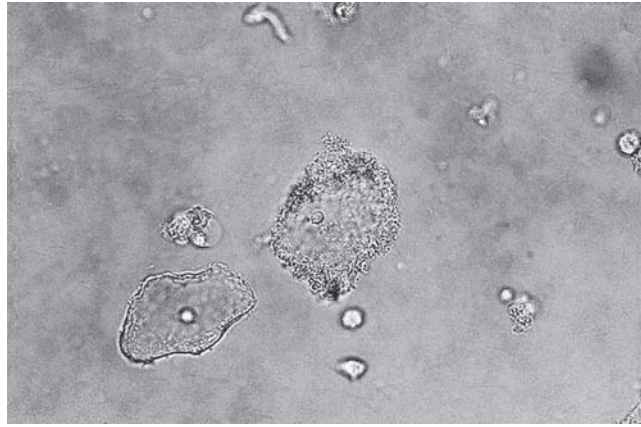
TABLE 11-5 Common Infections Causes of Vaginitis

Characteristics	<i>Gardnerella vaginalis</i>	<i>Trichomonas vaginalis</i>	<i>Candida albicans</i>
Physical examination	Mild vaginal inflammation	Vaginal and cervical inflammation, cervical petechiae	Significant vaginal inflammation
Discharge	Thin, white, fishy odor	Malodorous, frothy, greenish	Thick, white, “cottage cheese–like”
Wet mount (saline)	Clue cells (epithelial cells with multiple attached bacteria)	Motile trichomonads	Normal
Wet mount (KOH)	Fishy odor (positive whiff test)	Possible fishy odor	Pseudohyphae
Vaginal pH	>4.5 (high)	>4.5 (high)	3.5–4.5 (normal)
Treatment	Metronidazole	Metronidazole (also treat partner)	Topical clotrimazole, miconazole, or nystatin, or oral fluconazole (single dose)

KOH, potassium hydroxide.

FIGURE 11-4

Vaginal wet mount (saline preparation) showing clue cell with multiple bacteria attached to the border.



A normal epithelial cell is adjacent to the clue cell (1,000 × magnification).

(From Fleisher, G. R., Ludwig, S., & Baskin, M. N. [2004]. *Atlas of Pediatric Emergency Medicine*. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.)

4. Treatment

- Remove tampon or other intravaginal objects.
- Supportive care for hypotension; pressors may be required
- Clindamycin or penicillinase-resistant β -lactam antibiotics (e.g., oxacillin, nafcillin); vancomycin required for methicillin-resistant strains



V. SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED DISEASES (STDs)

A. Cervicitis

- Infection of cervical columnar epithelium caused by *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* or *Chlamydia trachomatis*
- Urethra, oral cavity, or rectal area can also become infected through sexual contact.
- H/P
 - Possibly asymptomatic (>50% of cases in chlamydial infection)
 - Dyspareunia, bleeding after intercourse, **purulent vaginal discharge** (milder for *Chlamydia*)
 - Urethritis associated with purulent discharge and dysuria
 - Rectal and pharyngeal infections are frequently asymptomatic.
 - Examination detects inflammation of cervix with associated purulent discharge.
- Labs
 - Gram stain of cervical scraping shows gram-negative diplococci with *N. gonorrhoeae* (usually nothing seen with *Chlamydia* infection).
 - Culture on Thayer-Martin agar detects *N. gonorrhoeae*.
 - Enzyme immunoassays** are useful for detecting both pathogens.
 - DNA probes** and **DNA amplification testing** (i.e., polymerase chain reaction [PCR]) are highly sensitive means of detecting either pathogen on swabs of cervical fluid.
- Treatment** = ceftriaxone for *N. gonorrhoeae*, doxycycline (not in pregnancy) or azithromycin for *Chlamydia*; both antibiotics often given together because of **frequent dual infection**; sexual partners must be treated to reduce risk of reinfection
- Complication** = PID, septic arthritis

B. Pelvic inflammatory disease (PID)

- Progressive *N. gonorrhoeae* or *Chlamydia* infection resulting in involvement of ovaries, uterus, fallopian tubes, or peritoneal cavity
- Less frequently caused by *Bacteroides*, *Escherichia coli*, or streptococci
- Risk factors** = multiple sexual partners, unprotected intercourse, prior PID, douching, young age at first intercourse



QUICK HIT

Chlamydia infection is the **most common reportable STD** because it can be **asymptomatic** (especially in men) and frequently goes unrecognized.



QUICK HIT

Clinical cervicitis with negative Gram stain and cultures is highly suggestive of *Chlamydia* infection.



QUICK HIT

Barrier contraception use can **reduce** risk of PID.

4. **H/P** = lower abdominal pain starting within days of menses, nausea, vomiting, dysuria; purulent cervical discharge, abdominal tenderness, fever, **cervical motion tenderness**, adnexal tenderness, possible abdominal guarding
5. **Labs**
 - a. Pregnancy test needed to rule out ectopic pregnancy
 - b. Increased white blood cell count (WBC), increased erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR)
 - c. Gram stain, culture, immunoassays useful for identifying agent
 - d. **Culdocentesis** (i.e., aspiration of intraperitoneal fluid from cul-de-sac posterior to uterus) yields pus.
6. **Radiology** = transvaginal US may detect inflamed and enlarged uterus, abscess of fallopian tubes or ovaries, or free fluid (technique used for diagnosis less now than in the past); laparoscopy may visualize inflamed tissue
7. **Treatment** = empiric antibiotics until specific agent identified (doxycycline, ceftriaxone, cefoxitin); treat as inpatient if high fevers or young age; treat sexual partners
8. **Complications** = **infertility** because of adhesion formation, chronic pelvic pain, **tubo-ovarian abscess**, increased risk of ectopic pregnancy

C. Syphilis

1. Disease caused by the spirochete *Treponema pallidum* (only transmitted by sexual contact or from mother to child)
2. **H/P** = varies according to stage of disease
 - a. **Primary**
 - (1) One to 13 weeks after exposure (average **3 weeks**)
 - (2) Solitary **chancre** (i.e., firm papule that evolves into **painless ulcer**) forms near area of contact and heals spontaneously within 9 weeks.
 - b. **Secondary**
 - (1) Begins as chancre heals and can last up to 12 weeks
 - (2) Headache, malaise; fever, **maculopapular rash** on palms and soles, lymphadenopathy, papules in moist areas of body (i.e., condyloma lata)
 - (3) Symptoms and lesions resolve spontaneously.
 - (4) Brief relapses of secondary symptoms can occur for a few years after the initial presentation.
 - c. **Latent**
 - (1) Asymptomatic
 - (2) Can last years
 - d. **Tertiary**
 - (1) One-third of untreated patients progress beyond latent stage in 1 to 30 years after infection.
 - (2) Granulomatous lesions (i.e., **gummas**) of skin, bone, and liver
 - (3) Loss of two-point discrimination and proprioception secondary to dorsal column degeneration (i.e., **tabes dorsalis**), Argyll-Robertson pupils
3. **Labs**
 - a. VDRL and rapid plasma regain (RPR) are 80% sensitive screening tests.
 - b. Fluorescent treponemal antibody absorption (FTA-ABS) or microhemagglutination assay for antibodies to treponemes (MHA-TP) used to confirm diagnosis
 - c. Spirochetes may be seen with dark-field microscopy analysis of swabs of lesions.
 - d. Examination of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) should be performed to confirm tertiary syphilis in patients with neurologic findings.
4. **Treatment** = **penicillin G**, doxycycline, or tetracycline; IV penicillin G used in severe tertiary cases
5. **Complications** = gummatous destruction of skin, bones, and liver; cardiovascular syphilis (aortic regurgitation, aortitis); neurosyphilis (cerebral atrophy, tabes dorsalis, meningitis)



QUICK HIT

Patients with PID may exhibit the “**chandelier sign**”: palpating the cervix during pelvic examination may be so painful that they almost jump off of the examination table.



NEXT STEP

Suspect **tubo-ovarian abscess** in a patient with PID who also has signs of **sepsis** or **peritonitis**. Inpatient treatment is required with intravenous (IV) hydration, IV antibiotics, and surgical drainage.



QUICK HIT

RPR and VDRL will become negative following syphilis treatment, but FTA-ABS will remain positive for life.



QUICK HIT

Treponema pallidum cannot be cultured.


QUICK HIT

HPV typing after an abnormal Pap smear is important to assess cervical cancer risk.

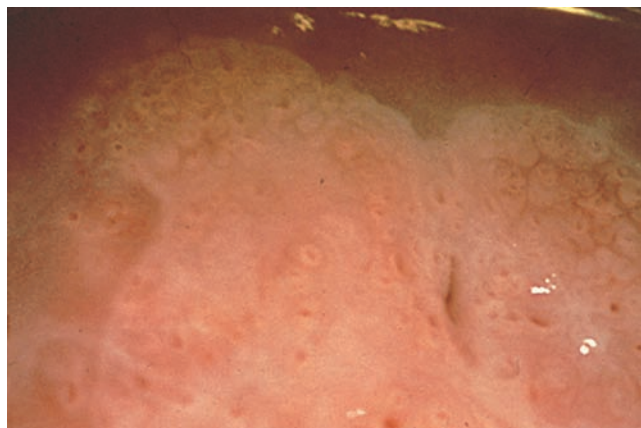
**MNEMONIC**

Remember the characterization of genital ulcers by the mnemonic **Some Girls Love Licorice, but Fellows Hate Candy: Syphilis, Granuloma inguinale, and Lymphogranuloma venereum = painLess. PainFul = Herpes simplex and Chancroid.**

- D. Genital herpes:** disease caused by herpes simplex virus type 2 (most cases) or type 1 (less common) (see Chapter 10, *Dermatology*)
- E. Molluscum contagiosum** (see Chapter 10, *Dermatology*)
- F. Human papillomavirus (HPV)**
- Several types of papillomavirus (>100) that may be associated with **genital warts** (types 6 and 11) or **cervical cancer** (types 16 or 18 in 70% of cases)
 - H/P** = frequent small pink papules at site of contact; infection caused by HPV types 6 or 11 can cause larger cauliflower-like warts on genital region
 - Labs**
 - An abnormal Pap smear should prompt HPV testing and colposcopy to look for lesions (see Figure 11-5).
 - Application of acetic acid to lesions will turn them white during examination.
 - Biopsy of lesions can be used to confirm infection and determine virus type through HPV DNA analysis.
 - Treatment** = podophyllin, trichloroacetic acid, topical 5-fluorouracil, α -interferon injection of large lesions, cryotherapy, or laser therapy; a vaccine is now available for HPV types **6, 11, 16, and 18** that acts as prophylaxis against 90% of genital warts and 70% of cervical cancers
 - Complications** = vaginal scarring for removal of large lesions, possible **increased risk of cervical cancer** depending on viral type
- G. Chancroid**
- Highly contagious disease caused by *Haemophilus ducreyi* seen most commonly in tropical or subtropical regions or in immunocompromised patients
 - H/P** = within 2 weeks of contact, small papule forms in area of contact and transforms into **painful ulcer** with grayish base and foul odor; possible inguinal lymphadenopathy that can cause **significant inguinal swelling** (i.e., bubo formation)
 - Labs** = Gram stain of tissue at ulcer edge shows gram-negative rods
 - Treatment** = ceftriaxone, erythromycin, or azithromycin
- H. Lymphogranuloma venereum**
- Disease caused by L-1, L-2, or L-3 serotypes of *C. trachomatis* (differentiated from cervicitis); more common in developing nations
 - H/P**
 - Within 2 weeks of contact, malaise, headache, fever, and formation of papule at site of contact that becomes **painless ulcer** that heals after a few days

FIGURE 11-5

Colposcopy view of the cervix with multiple lesions consistent with human papillomavirus (HPV) infection.



Application of acetic acid to the cervix during the examination has made these lesions more apparent.

(From Goodheart, H. P. [2003]. *Goodheart's Photoguide of Common Skin Disorders* [2nd ed., Figure 19-6]. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; with permission.)

- b. After 1 month, **significant inguinal buboes** develop (more common in men than in women).
- c. Can progress to bubo ulceration, elephantiasis (i.e., severe connective tissue swelling secondary to lymph vessel obstruction), fistula formation, and abscess formation
3. **Labs** = immunoassays for *Chlamydia* may be helpful for diagnosis
4. **Treatment** = tetracycline, erythromycin, or doxycycline

I. Granuloma inguinale

1. Disease caused by infection by *Klebsiella granulomatis*
2. **H/P**
 - a. Papule on external genitalia forms several weeks after contact and rapidly becomes **painless ulcer with beefy red base and irregular borders**.
 - b. Mild lymphadenopathy can occur.
 - c. Infection of ulcers can lead to significant scarring, vaginal stenosis, or elephantiasis.
3. **Labs** = lesion biopsy on Giemsa stain shows **Donovan bodies** (i.e., red encapsulated intracellular bacteria)
4. **Treatment** = doxycycline or trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole for 3 weeks



VI. GYNECOLOGIC NEOPLASMS

A. Uterine fibroids (uterine leiomyoma)

1. **Benign** uterine masses composed of smooth muscle; can vary in size with menstrual cycle and generally regress after menopause
2. **Risk factors** = nulliparity, African-American heritage, diet high in meats, alcohol consumption, family history
3. **H/P** = possibly asymptomatic; possible **menorrhagia, abdominal pain**, urinary frequency, or **infertility**; palpable mass on examination
4. **Radiology** = transvaginal US or hysteroscopy used to locate or visualize mass; MRI is useful to measure extent of fibroid and detect additional smaller fibroids
5. **Treatment**
 - a. Follow **asymptomatic** fibroids with US to detect **abnormal growth**.
 - b. **GnRH agonists** reduce uterine bleeding and fibroid size but are only recommended as temporary therapy (reduce fibroid size before surgery or as temporizing measure before imminent menopause)
 - c. **Myomectomy** (laparoscopic or hysteroscopic for isolated lesions, open for multiple lesions) indicated for resection of symptomatic fibroids in women wishing to maintain fertility
 - d. **Hysterectomy** can be performed for symptomatic fibroids in patients for whom fertility is not a concern.
 - e. **Uterine artery embolization** following a pelvic MRI to rule out other soft tissue pathology may be performed to selectively infarct small fibroids in women wishing to avoid surgery but carries a high likelihood of impaired fertility.

B. Endometrial cancer

1. Adenocarcinoma of uterine tissue most commonly related to **exposure to high estrogen levels**; most common in postmenopausal women
2. **Risk factors** = unopposed exogenous estrogen, PCOS, obesity, nulliparity, DM, hypertension, family history, increased age (postmenopausal), high-fat diet, colon cancer (hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer [HNPCC])
3. **H/P** = heavy menses, midcycle bleeding, or **postmenopausal bleeding**, with possible abdominal pain; ovaries or uterus may feel fixed in position if tumor has local extension
4. **Labs** = endometrial biopsy (or examination of cells collected during D&C) shows hyperplastic abnormal glands with vascular invasion; **increased CA-125** tumor marker (not specific for endometrial cancer and not always increased) is useful in monitoring response to therapy
5. **Radiology** = chest X-ray (CXR) and CT can be used to detect metastases; transvaginal US may detect masses and can be used to measure endometrial wall thickness



QUICK HIT

Uterine fibroids do **not** continue to grow after menopause (because of estrogen sensitivity and decreased postmenopausal estrogen levels).



QUICK HIT

Endometrial cancer **not related** to excess endogenous or exogenous estrogen exposure carries a **worse** prognosis than estrogen-related tumors.

NEXT STEP

Although **atrophic vaginitis** is the **most common cause** of vaginal **bleeding** in postmenopausal women (80% cases), endometrial cancer must be ruled out for any postmenopausal woman presenting with this complaint (perform **endometrial biopsy**).

6. Treatment

- Total abdominal hysterectomy with bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy (TAH-BSO) and lymph node sampling
- Women who have cancer limited to the endometrial lining and who desire to maintain fertility can be treated temporarily with progestins to limit growth but should have TAH-BSO following childbearing years.
- Surgical debulking should be performed for large tumors unable to be completely resected.
- Any high-grade malignancy or tumors with spread beyond the endometrial lining should receive adjuvant radiation therapy in addition to surgery.
- Chemotherapy (in place of radiation) used for any cases with spread beyond the uterus
- Hormone therapy (e.g., progesterone, tamoxifen) may be beneficial for advanced tumors not cured by surgery and radiation.

7. Complications

- Local extension to fallopian tubes, ovaries, and cervix
- Metastases to peritoneum, aortic and pelvic lymph nodes, lungs, and vagina
- Ninety-six percent 5-year survival rate for localized disease; 25% 5-year survival rate with metastases



QUICK HIT

All women should receive **Pap smears** beginning at **21 years of age**, and most guidelines recommend stopping at age 65 years. Women 21–29 years of age should be screened **every 2 years**, and women ≥ 30 years may be screened every 2–3 years, if they have had three consecutive normal Pap tests. Women ≥ 30 years may have HPV testing every 3–5 years in addition to the Pap smear cytology.

C. Cervical cancer

- Squamous cell cancer (80% cases), adenocarcinoma (15% cases), or mixed adenosquamous carcinoma (5% cases) of the cervix that results from progression of cervical dysplasia
- Risk factors** = early first intercourse, tobacco, HPV (types 16, 18, 31, or 33), multiple sexual partners, high-risk sexual partners, history of STDs
- Cervical dysplasia
 - Precancerous squamous cell lesions of the cervix that progress to invasive cervical cancer in 1% to 22% of cases depending on cellular grade
 - Usually detected by Pap smear or liquid-based cytology (abnormal cells seen on cytology)
 - Cellular grading classified by Bethesda system (see Table 11-6)
- H/P** = usually asymptomatic in early stages; possible vaginal bleeding (postcoital or spontaneous), pelvic pain, or cervical discharge; cervical mass may be palpated; invasive cancer can be frequently seen on cervical examination
- Labs** = detected by **Pap smear**; punch biopsy of visible lesions; cone biopsy determines invasion extent
- Radiology** = CT, MRI, or US may be useful for determining extent of disease

TABLE 11-6 Bethesda Classification of Cervical Squamous Cell Dysplasia and Appropriate Therapy

Grade	Characteristics	Treatment
Atypical squamous cells of undetermined significance (ASCUS)	Cellular abnormalities not explained by reactive changes; not suggestive of intraepithelial lesions	HPV screening; repeat Pap smear in 6 and 12 months; repeat HPV testing in 12 months
Atypical squamous cells, cannot exclude HSIL (ASCH)	Cellular abnormalities not explained by reactive changes; HSIL cannot be excluded	HPV screening; endocervical biopsy; repeat Pap smear in 6 and 12 months; repeat HPV testing in 12 months
Low-grade squamous intraepithelial lesion (LSIL) (a.k.a. CIN 1)	Mild cellular dysplasia	Repeat Pap smear in 6 and 12 months; repeat HPV testing in 12 months; excision by loop electrocautery excision procedure (LEEP) or conization or laser ablation may be performed
High-grade squamous intraepithelial lesion (HSIL) (a.k.a. CIN 2 or 3)	Moderate or severe cellular dysplasia including carcinoma in situ	Excision by LEEP or conization or laser ablation; repeat cervical cytology every 6 months
Squamous cell carcinoma	Highly atypical cells with stromal invasion	Varies with degree of invasion and extent of involvement

CIN, cervical intraepithelial neoplasia; HPV, human papillomavirus.

7. Treatment

- a. Cervical dysplasia: treatment based on cellular grade (see Table 11-6)
- b. Invasive carcinoma
 - (1) Lesions with microscopic invasion <5 mm treated with TAH or conization (i.e., cone-shaped endocervical resection) if patient desires to maintain fertility
 - (2) For small lesions with close surgical margins, postoperative chemotherapy should be administered.
 - (3) Visibly invasive lesions or those that involve the uterus but do not extend to the pelvic wall or lower third of the vagina should be treated by radical hysterectomy with lymphadenectomy or radiation therapy plus cisplatin-based chemotherapy.
 - (4) Lesions with extension to parametrial tissue, pelvic wall, lower third of the vagina, or adjacent organs or any lesions with metastases should be treated with radiation therapy and chemotherapy.

8. **Complications** = 5-year survival is >90% for microscopic lesions, 65% to 85% for visible lesions limited to the uterus, 40% for lesions extending beyond the uterus, and 20% for metastatic lesions

D. Benign ovarian tumors

- 1. Benign ovarian lesions of functional ovarian cell, epithelial cell, or germ cell origin (see Table 11-7)

TABLE 11-7 Common Types of Benign Ovarian Masses

Tumor	Origin	Characteristics	History and Physical	Treatment
Follicular cyst	Ovarian follicle	Granulosa cells, cystic (~3 cm diameter), occur in first 2 wk of cycle and may regress over menstrual period	Abdominal pain and fullness; palpable tender mass on bimanual examination Peritoneal signs if torsion or rupture occur	Observation ; ovarian cystectomy if mass does not regress or for increased suspicion of cancer
Corpus luteum cyst	Corpus luteum	Theca cells, cystic or hemorrhagic corpus luteum, usually larger and firmer than follicular cyst, more common in later weeks of cycle	Abdominal pain; palpable tender mass on bimanual examination Greater risk of torsion or rupture with significant bleeding than follicular cyst	Observation ; ovarian cystectomy if mass does not regress or for increased suspicion of cancer; rupture with significant hemorrhage requires surgical hemostasis and cystectomy
Mucinous or serous cystadenoma	Epithelial tissue	May resemble endometrial or tubal histology, cystic with serous or mucinous contents, may form calcifications (psammoma bodies), may become extremely large	Frequently asymptomatic until significant growth has occurred Palpable mass on bimanual examination that may be palpable during abdominal examination if large	Unilateral salpingo-oophorectomy; TAH/BSO if postmenopausal
Endometrioma	Endometrium	Spread of endometriosis to involve ovary, similar behavior to other sites of endometriosis	Frequently asymptomatic Abdominal pain, dyspareunia, infertility Tender palpable mass	OCPs, GnRH agonists, progestins, danazol may lessen symptoms; cystectomy or oophorectomy frequently required because of high recurrence rate
Benign cystic teratoma (i.e., desmoid cyst)	Germ cells	Composed of multiple dermal tissues including hair, teeth, and sebaceous glands	Frequently asymptomatic Oily contents released during rupture can cause peritonitis	Cystectomy with attempted preservation of ovary if benign; 1%–2% undergo malignant transformation and require salpingo-oophorectomy
Stromal cell tumor	Granulosa, theca, or Sertoli Leydig cells	Secrete hormones appropriate to cells of origin, malignant potential	Precocious puberty (granulosa theca cell tumors) or virilization (Sertoli-Leydig cell tumors)	Unilateral salpingo-oophorectomy; TAH/BSO if postmenopausal

GnRH, gonadotropin-releasing hormone; OCPs, oral contraceptive pills; TAH/BSO, total abdominal hysterectomy with bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy.

QUICK HIT

CA-125 is useful only in **postmenopausal** women as an indicator for ovarian cancer.

QUICK HIT

US findings of cystic mass, smooth lesion edges, and few septa are more consistent with **benign** ovarian tumors.

- Findings of irregularity, nodularity, multiple septa, and pelvic extension are more suggestive of **malignancy**.

QUICK HIT

Surgical resection is vital to establishing an accurate cytologic diagnosis of a suspected ovarian malignancy.

QUICK HIT

Monthly **self-breast examinations** after each menstrual period are the best way to distinguish **developing lesions** from **monthly variations** in breast tissue make-up but have not been shown to decrease mortality.

QUICK HIT

Suspicious lesions on mammogram are those with **hyperdense regions** or **calcifications**.

2. **H/P**
 - a. Frequently asymptomatic
 - b. Lower abdominal pain (more common with functional tumors or tumor torsion), nausea, vomiting, abdominal fullness (only after significant growth)
 - c. Palpable ovarian mass on bimanual examination, possible abdominal tenderness, fever
 - d. In cases of ruptured mass, patient may have guarding, rebound tenderness, and abdominal rigidity.
3. **Labs** = frequently **increased CA-125**; biopsy of tumor used to determine benign or malignant nature
4. **Radiology** = US used to evaluate type of mass (cystic or solid) and quality of mass (irregular, multiple septa, smooth edges)
5. **Treatment** = observation common for functional cysts; oophorectomy performed for benign neoplasms; TAH-BSO considered for postmenopausal women
6. **Complications** = tumor torsion, tumor rupture with hemorrhage

E. Ovarian cancer

1. Cancer of ovaries most commonly of epithelial (65% cases) or germ cell (25% cases) origin; most cases are diagnosed only after considerable growth
2. **Risk factors** = family history, infertility, nulliparity, **BRCA1** or **BRCA2** gene mutations
3. **H/P**
 - a. Usually **asymptomatic** or **minimally symptomatic until late in disease course**
 - b. Abdominal pain, fatigue, weight loss, change in bowel habits, menstrual irregularity; ascites, mass may be palpated on bimanual examination
4. **Labs** = **increased CA-125** (80% of cases) in epithelial tumors; α -fetoprotein, hCG, and lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) may be increased in germ cell tumors
5. **Radiology** = US used to detect mass; MRI or CT useful to determine extent of involvement
6. **Treatment**
 - a. Epithelial tumors
 - (1) TAH/BSO, pelvic wall sampling, and appendectomy; adjuvant chemotherapy frequently prescribed
 - (2) Tumor debulking with resection of involved bowel, liver, omentum, spleen, and lymph nodes performed for extensive disease with metastases
 - (3) Single oophorectomy may be performed for tumors detected early in patients wanting to maintain fertility.
 - b. Germ cell tumors
 - (1) Unilateral salpingo-oophorectomy performed for limited disease
 - (2) Surgical debulking performed for extensive tumors
 - (3) Chemotherapy typically administered postoperatively
7. **Complications** = 5-year survival improves with early detection, but because tumor is frequently in advanced stages by time of detection, prognosis is often poor

VII. DISORDERS OF THE BREAST**A. Fibrocystic changes**

1. Increased number of benign cysts and fibrous tissue found in women of childbearing age that varies in size during menstrual cycle
2. **H/P** = multiple bilateral small tender breast masses, possible mild breast pain preceding menses, symptoms improve after menses; breast examination detects mobile masses that **vary in size during menstrual cycle**
3. **Labs** = biopsy (performed when atypical lesions suspected) shows epithelial hyperplasia
4. **Radiology** = mammograms (yearly imaging starting by age 40 years) should be used to identify and follow lesions; US useful for detecting large cystic lesions
5. **Treatment** = caffeine and dietary fat reduction, OCPs, progesterone, or tamoxifen may improve symptoms in confirmed benign lesions

B. Breast abscess

1. Local infection of breast tissue caused by *S. aureus* or streptococcus (superficial infections) or anaerobic bacteria (subareolar infections)
2. Most are related to **breastfeeding**; more common in smokers
3. **H/P** = painful mass in breast; fever, palpable red and warm breast mass, breast tenderness, purulent drainage from mass or from nipple
4. **Labs** = increased WBCs; fine needle aspiration (FNA) of abscess confirms infection
5. **Radiology** = US helps to locate abscess within breast
6. **Treatment** = agent-appropriate oral or IV antibiotics; incision and drainage of fluctuant masses; continue breastfeeding
7. **Complications** = fistula formation with recurrent abscesses; high recurrence rate

C. Fibroadenoma

1. Most common benign breast tumor (proliferative process in single duct); more common in women <30 years of age
2. **H/P** = **solitary, solid, and mobile mass with well-defined edges**; size may vary during menstrual cycle
3. **Labs** = biopsy (FNA or open) confirms benign nature
4. **Radiology** = US, mammogram, or MRI can determine location of mass and determine if solid or cystic
5. **Treatment** = surgical excision or US-guided cryotherapy
6. **Complications** = recurrence is common

D. Intraductal papilloma

1. Benign lesions of ductal tissue that may have malignant potential
2. **H/P** = **bloody or nonbloody discharge** from nipple on stimulation, breast pain; palpable mass behind areola
3. **Labs** = excisional biopsy used to rule out cancer; ductal lavage by microcatheter can be used to test for abnormal intraductal cells and is more accurate than examination of aspirated nipple fluid
4. **Treatment** = surgical excision

E. Breast cancer

1. Malignant neoplasms of the breast arising from either ductal (80% of cases, more aggressive) or lobular (20% of cases, less aggressive, more difficult to detect) tissue (see Table 11-8)
2. **Risk factors** = family history (first-degree relative), BRCA1 or BRCA2 gene mutations, ovarian cancer, endometrial cancer, prior breast cancer, increased estrogen exposure, early menarche, late menopause, nulliparity, late first pregnancy (35 years of age), increased age, obesity, alcohol, diethylstilbestrol (DES), industrial chemicals or pesticides, radiation exposure
3. **H/P**
 - a. Possibly asymptomatic and undetected
 - b. Painless breast lump, possible nipple discharge
 - c. Palpable **solid and immobile** breast lump (when of sufficient size), peau d'orange (i.e., lymphatic obstruction causing lymphedema and skin thickening that makes breast look like an orange peel), possible nipple retraction
 - d. Axillary lymphadenopathy in progressive cases
4. **Labs**
 - a. **Biopsy** is indicated for any palpable breast mass or suspicious mammography findings (see Figure 11-6).
 - (1) FNA can be performed on palpable lesions or through US localization; it can be performed quickly with a high sensitivity and specificity by an experienced clinician but cannot differentiate between in situ and invasive carcinoma.
 - (2) Core biopsy provides a better definitive histologic diagnosis and can determine if a lesion is invasive.
 - (3) Needle localization under US guidance may be performed on nonpalpable lesions with calcifications to localize a mass for open biopsy.

**QUICK HIT**

Nonbloody nipple discharge is consistent with a **noncancerous** pathology and frequently does **not** require excision.

**QUICK HIT**

1% of all cases of breast cancer occur in **males**.

**QUICK HIT**

Hormone replacement therapy has been linked to an **increased** incidence of breast cancer caused by exogenous estrogen administration.

**QUICK HIT**

The **upper outer quadrant** is the most common site of breast cancer.

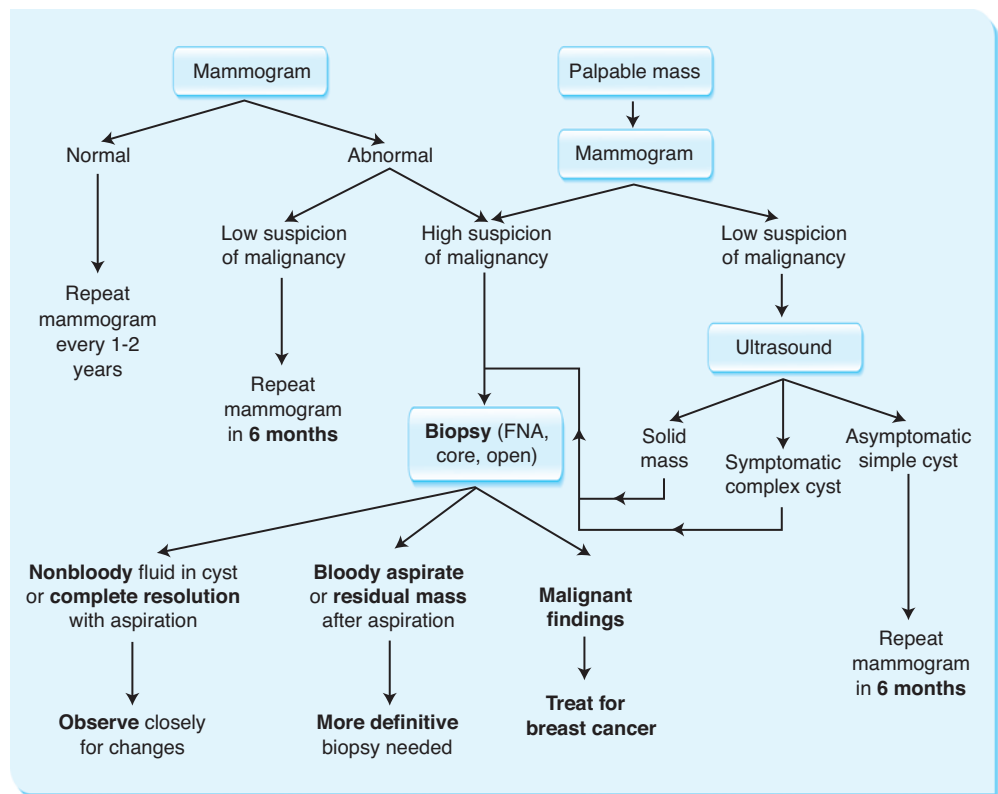
**QUICK HIT**

Most breast cancers are detected through an **abnormal screening mammogram**, but **20%** of breast cancers are not detected on mammogram (typically in upper outer quadrant of breast).

TABLE 11-8 Features of Breast Cancer Variants

Variant	Characteristics	History and Physical
Ductal carcinoma in situ (DCIS)	Malignant cells in ducts without stromal invasion ; possible calcifications; unifocal; higher risk of subsequent invasive cancer than LCIS	Usually asymptomatic, possible nipple discharge or palpable lump
Lobular carcinoma in situ (LCIS)	Malignant cells in lobules without stromal invasion ; no calcifications; can be multifocal; lower risk of invasion than DCIS, but increased risk of contralateral malignancy	Incidental finding, asymptomatic
Infiltrating ductal carcinoma	Malignant cells in ducts with stromal invasion and microcalcifications; fibrotic response in surrounding breast tissue; most common form of invasive breast cancer (80% of cases)	Firm palpable mass, skin dimpling, nipple retraction, peau d'orange, or nipple discharge
Infiltrating lobular carcinoma	Malignant cells in breast lobules with insidious infiltration and less fibrous response ; more frequently bilateral or multifocal than ductal carcinoma; slower metastasis; greater association with hormone replacement therapy	Firm palpable mass, skin dimpling, nipple retraction, peau d'orange, or nipple discharge; may be more subtle than ductal carcinoma
Medullary carcinoma	Well-circumscribed mass; rapid growth ; better prognosis than ductal carcinoma	Soft , well-circumscribed mass
Mucinous carcinoma	Well-circumscribed mass; slow growth ; more common in older women; better prognosis than ductal carcinoma	Gelatinous , well-circumscribed mass
Tubular carcinoma	Slow-growing malignancy of well-formed tubular structures invading the stroma; patients typically in late 40s; excellent prognosis	Rarely detected before mammography
Inflammatory carcinoma	Subtype of ductal carcinoma characterized by rapid progression and angioinvasive behavior; poor prognosis	Breast pain, tender breast, erythema, warmth, peau d'orange, lymphadenopathy

FIGURE 11-6 Approach to the patient with suspected breast cancer.



FNA, fine needle aspiration.

- b. Testing for estrogen and progesterone receptors in tumor helps guide treatment.
- c. Sentinel node biopsy performed during surgical resection helps determine extent of spread and directs need for axillary node dissection.
5. **Radiology** = **mammography** is principal screening method; US can be used to differentiate cystic from solid lesions and to localize masses to guide intervention; MRI may be useful to determine extent of lesion; bone scan and CT can be used to identify metastases
6. **Treatment**
 - a. Carcinoma in situ
 - (1) **Ductal carcinoma in situ (DCIS)** treated with **lumpectomy** and possible radiation therapy; mastectomy considered in high-risk individuals
 - (2) **Lobular carcinoma in situ (LCIS)** treated with **close observation** and tamoxifen or raloxifene
 - (3) Prophylactic bilateral mastectomy can be performed in women with LCIS who do not desire lifelong observation.
 - b. Invasive carcinoma
 - (1) **Lumpectomy** with radiation therapy may be performed for **early focal cancers**.
 - (2) **Mastectomy** should be performed for **multifocal** lesions or patients with prior breast radiation; radiation therapy is performed for tumors >5 cm.
 - (3) **Sentinel lymph node biopsy** should be performed to look for spread to axillary nodes; positive sentinel node biopsy indicates need for axillary node dissection at time of tumor resection.
 - (4) **Systemic therapy** (hormone or chemotherapy) is indicated for all **node-positive cancers**, tumors >1 cm, and tumors with aggressive histology; **hormone therapy** used for tumors with positive hormone receptors; **chemotherapy** can be used in patients with node-positive or negative tumor; **trastuzumab** (anti-HER-2/neu receptor antibody) used in patients with the appropriate receptors
 - c. Advanced cancer
 - (1) Chemotherapy and hormone therapy used for locally advanced lesions with extension beyond breast
 - (2) Surgical resection and/or radiation therapy can be performed after systemic therapy has decreased tumor size.
 - (3) Metastases treated with systemic therapy; surgical resection or radiation therapy can be performed for solitary lesions
 - d. Inflammatory breast cancer
 - (1) Best survival rates when mastectomy, radiation therapy, and chemotherapy are all utilized
7. **Complications**
 - a. Tumors not responding to surgery and radiation are unlikely to be cured.
 - b. Metastases to bone, thoracic cavity, brain, and liver
 - c. Tumors with positive estrogen or progesterone hormone receptors or HER-2/neu protein receptors and those seen in older patients have a better prognosis.
 - d. Lymphedema, a frequent sequela of lymph node dissection, can be complicated by cosmetic disfigurement, impaired wound healing, decreased range of motion, and increased risk of infection.

NEXT STEP

FNA of a solid breast mass carries a **20%** chance of a **false-negative** finding, so any negative FNA of a solid breast mass requires a more definitive biopsy.

QUICK HIT

Presence of **positive axillary lymph nodes** and **large tumor size** carries a **worse prognosis** in breast cancer.

QUICK HIT

Patients with BRCA1 or BRCA2 gene mutations should be followed very closely to look for breast or ovarian cancer and may want to consider prophylactic mastectomies and oophorectomies.

12

Obstetrics

QUICK HIT

Teratogens will either **kill** the fetus or will have **no effect** within the **initial 2 weeks** of gestation. They can cause **abnormal organ formation** between **2 and 12 weeks**.

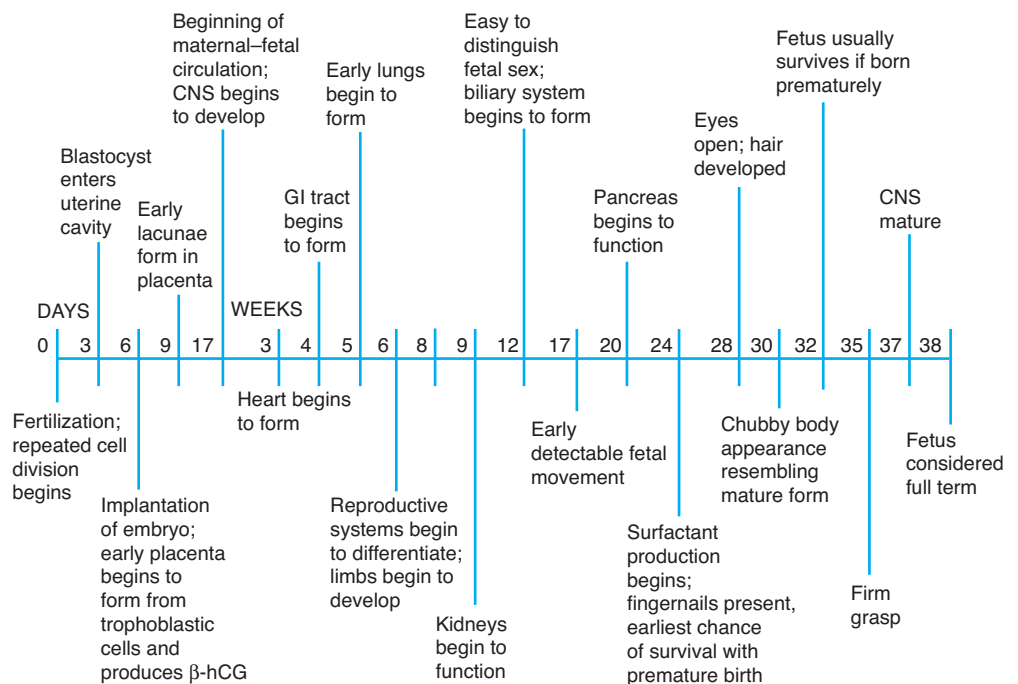
I. NORMAL PREGNANCY PHYSIOLOGY

- A. Embryonic and fetal development** begins with fertilization and takes approximately 38 weeks until fetal maturity occurs (see Figure 12-1).
- Gestational age is calculated from the mother's last menstrual period (LMP), which began roughly 14 days prior to fertilization. Therefore, **gestational age** is 2 weeks older than the **embryonic age**.
 - Naegele's rule can be used to estimate delivery date by taking LMP, adding 7 days, subtracting 3 months, and adding 1 year (LMP + 7 days – 3 months + 1 year).

B. Normal changes in maternal physiology during pregnancy

- Several physiologic changes occur in the mother in response to the maintenance of fetal viability (see Table 12-1).
- Normal changes in maternal physiology affect every organ system.

FIGURE 12-1 Timeline of fetal development during gestation.



β -hCG, β -human chorionic gonadotropin; CNS, central nervous system; GI, gastrointestinal. Dates are given using embryonic age, not gestational age.

TABLE 12-1 Normal Changes in Maternal Physiology during Pregnancy

Anatomy/System	Changes
Cardiovascular	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cardiac output increases 40% with associated increases in SV (10%–30%) and HR (12–18 bpm) • Systolic murmur may be heard because of increased cardiac output • Myocardial O₂ demand increases • Systolic and diastolic blood pressures decrease slightly • Uterus displaces heart slightly superiorly
Respiratory	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Uterus displaces diaphragm superiorly and causes decrease of residual volume, functional residual capacity, and expiratory reserve volume • Total body O₂ consumption increases 20% • Tidal volume increases 40% with associated increase in minute ventilation because of stimulation by progesterone • Pco₂ decreases to ~30 mm Hg; dyspnea is frequent complaint despite increased minute ventilation and normal rate
Renal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Renal plasma flow and glomerular filtration rate increase 40% • Decrease in BUN and creatinine • Increased renal loss of bicarbonate to compensate for respiratory alkalosis • Blood and interstitial fluid volumes increase
Endocrine	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Nondiabetic hyperinsulinemia with associated mild glucose intolerance • Production of human placental lactogen contributes to glucose intolerance by interfering with insulin activity • Fasting triglycerides increase • Cortisol increases • Thyroid-binding globulin (TBG) and total T₄ increase, but free T₄ is unchanged • TSH decreases slightly during early pregnancy (but still within normal limits)
Hematologic	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hypercoagulable state • Increased RBC production • Hematocrit decreases because of increased blood volume
Gastrointestinal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Increased salivation • Decreased gastric motility

bpm, beats per minute; BUN, blood urea nitrogen; HR, heart rate; RBC, red blood cell; SV, stroke volume; T₄, thyroxine.



QUICK HIT

Low-risk activity during pregnancy:

- **Exercise is encouraged** during pregnancy to improve maternal feelings of well-being, reduce symptoms caused by positional effects of the fetus, and promote healthy blood sugar levels.
- Sexual intercourse can be continued during pregnancy unless the mother is considered at high risk for spontaneous abortion, premature labor, or placenta previa.



II. PRENATAL CARE

A. Nutrition

1. Maternal nutritional demands alter during pregnancy to support both the mother and the developing fetus.
2. Some nutrients are specifically required to **reduce the risk of birth defects** (e.g., folate, iron) (see Table 12-2).
3. Ideal weight gain
 - a. 28 to 40 lb in women with a body mass index (BMI) <19.8
 - b. 25 to 35 lb for BMI 19.8 to 26 (~2 lb in first trimester, 0.75 to 1 lb/week in second and third trimesters)
 - c. 15 to 25 lb for BMI >26
4. Fish (methylmercury contamination) and caffeine (increased risk of spontaneous abortion) consumption should be limited during pregnancy.

B. Prenatal visits

1. **Good prenatal care** is vital to healthy fetal development; its goals are to prevent or manage conditions that may be harmful to the mother or fetus.
2. Maternal weight (to monitor weight gain), urinalysis (to detect urinary tract infection [UTI] and gestational diabetes mellitus [DM]), blood pressure, fundal height



QUICK HIT

Daily caloric intake during pregnancy should be approximately **2,500 kcal**.



QUICK HIT

Women at risk for poor nutrition during pregnancy include those who are teenagers, have a lower socioeconomic status, adhere to diets with certain food avoidances, are underweight, or who smoke, are alcoholics, or are drug abusers.

TABLE 12-2 Important Increased Nutritional Demands during Pregnancy

Substance	Increased Need	Reason for Need	Effects of Insufficiency
Folate	0.8–1 mg/day (should be started 4 wk before attempted conception)	Normal fetal neural tube development	Neural tube defects
Calcium	1,000–1,300 mg/day (50% increase)	Lactation reserves Increased utilization by fetus	Impaired maternal bone mineralization Hypertension Premature birth, low birth weight
Iron	30 mg/day (100% increase)	RBC production	Maternal anemia Premature birth, low birth weight, Maternal cardiac complications
Protein	60 g/day (30% increase)	Additional needs of maternal, fetal, and placental tissue	Impaired fetal and placental growth
Fluids	Adequate hydration important	Increased total maternal–fetal fluid volume	Relative dehydration

RBC, red blood cell.

(to estimate fetal growth), and fetal heart sounds (confirms fetal viability) are evaluated at each visit.

- Initial visit includes detailed history, physical, and **risk assessment**.
- Education should be provided to the patient concerning weight gain, nutrition, drug and substance abstinence, animal handling or avoidance, seat belt use, concerning symptoms and signs, scheduling of care and tests, childbirth and breast-feeding classes, and confidentiality issues.
- Labs and ultrasound (US) are performed at certain time points during gestation to detect infection and fetal abnormalities (see Table 12-3).

TABLE 12-3 Common Screening Labs Performed during Pregnancy

Length of Gestation	Labs or Study Performed
Initial visit	CBC Blood antibody and Rh typing Pap smear Gonorrhea/chlamydia screening Urinalysis RPR or VDRL Rubella antibody titer Hepatitis B surface antigen HIV screening (with maternal consent)
16–18 wk	Quadruple screen ^a (maternal serum α -fetoprotein, hCG, unconjugated estriol, maternal serum inhibin A) to look for trisomies 21 and 18 and neural tube defects
18–20 wk	US dating of pregnancy and assessment for gross fetal abnormalities
24–28 wk	1-hr glucose challenge to screen for gestational DM
32–37 wk	Cervical culture for <i>Neisseria gonorrhoeae</i> and <i>Chlamydia trachomatis</i> (selected populations) Group B streptococcus screening

^aSee Table 12-4 for description of quadruple screen.

CBC, complete blood count; DM, diabetes mellitus; hCG, human chorionic gonadotropin; Rh, rhesus factor; RPR, rapid plasma reagin; US, ultrasound; VDRL, Venereal Disease Research Laboratories.

TABLE 12-4 Prenatal Assessment for Congenital Diseases in High-Risk Pregnancies

Test	Description	Indications
Quadruple screen	Maternal serum α -fetoprotein, estriol, hCG, and maternal serum inhibin A levels measured to assess risk for neural tube defects and trisomies 18 and 21	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Performed in all pregnant women at 16–18 wk gestation Frequently initial marker for fetal complications
Full integrated test	US measurement of nuchal translucency and serum measurement of pregnancy-associated plasma protein A (PAPP-A) in first trimester and quadruple screen in second trimester; lowest false-positive rate for noninvasive tests	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Women who present in first trimester who desire noninvasive testing with the lowest false-positive risk
Amniocentesis	Transabdominal needle aspiration of amniotic fluid from amniotic sac after 16 wk gestation to measure amniotic α -fetoprotein and determine karyotype (detects neural tube defects and chromosome disorders with greater sensitivity than triple screen alone)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Abnormal quadruple screen, women >35 yr of age, risk of Rh sensitization Carries an excess 1% risk of spontaneous abortion over normal risks for abortion
Chorionic villi sampling	Transabdominal or transcervical aspiration of chorionic villus tissue at 9–12 wk gestation to detect chromosomal abnormalities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Early detection of chromosomal abnormalities in higher risk patients (advanced age, history of children with genetic defects)
Percutaneous umbilical blood sampling	Blood collection from umbilical vein after 18 wk gestation to identify chromosomal defects, fetal infection, Rh sensitization	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Late detection of genetic disorders, pregnancies with high risk for Rh sensitization

hCG, human chorionic gonadotropin; Rh, rhesus factor; US, ultrasound.

- Screening lab tests that are not routinely performed at the first prenatal visit but should be considered in patients at risk: purified protein derivative (PPD) (for TB), red blood cell (RBC) indices, hemoglobin (Hgb) electrophoresis (anemias), hexosaminidase A (Tay Sachs), phenylalanine levels (phenylketonuria), hepatitis C serology, toxoplasmosis screening, and cystic fibrosis genetic screening.
- Leopold maneuvers** (i.e., external abdominal examination) can be performed in the third trimester to determine fetal presentation.
- Specialized tests are performed in women with increased risk for congenital abnormalities (e.g., >35 year of age, history of spontaneous abortion, teratogen exposure, DM, history of fetal demise) (see Table 12-4, Table 12-5).



QUICK HIT

Although the full integrated test is the most sensitive screening test for trisomies with the lowest rate of false-positive findings, it is not routinely performed because abnormal first trimester results frequently prompt the decision to abandon the second trimester tests and perform a more invasive test to find a definitive answer.

TABLE 12-5 Interpretation of Full Integrated Test and Quadruple Screen

Genetic disorder	Full Integrated Test (1st trimester)			Quadruple Screen (2nd trimester)			
	PAPP-A	hCG	NT	AFP	uE3	hCG	Inh A
Trisomy 21 (Down syndrome)	↓	↑	↑	↓	↓	↑	↑
Trisomy 18	↓↓	↓↓	↑	↓	↓↓	↓↓	↔
Trisomy 13	↓↓	↓	↑	↔	↔	↔	↔

AFP, α -fetoprotein; hCG, human chorionic gonadotropin; Inh A, Inhibin A; NT, nuchal translucency; PAPP-A, pregnancy-associated plasma protein A; uE3, estriol.



QUICK HIT

Maternal serum α -fetoprotein levels:

- This screening test is **only valid** if performed during the correct gestational window (**16 to 18 weeks' gestation**).
- High** levels are associated with an increased risk of **neural tube defects** or multiple gestations.
- Low** levels are associated with increased risk of **trisomies 21 and 18**.



QUICK HIT

Gestational DM occurs in 1%–6% of pregnancies.

NEXT STEP

Gestational DM occurs most frequently in the **second** or **third trimesters**. If mother presents with signs of DM earlier in pregnancy, suspect non-gestational (type I or II) DM.

NEXT STEP

Continue glucose assessment after birth because maternal glucose needs will change suddenly for patients with gestational DM and because the mother has a low risk of remaining diabetic after pregnancy.



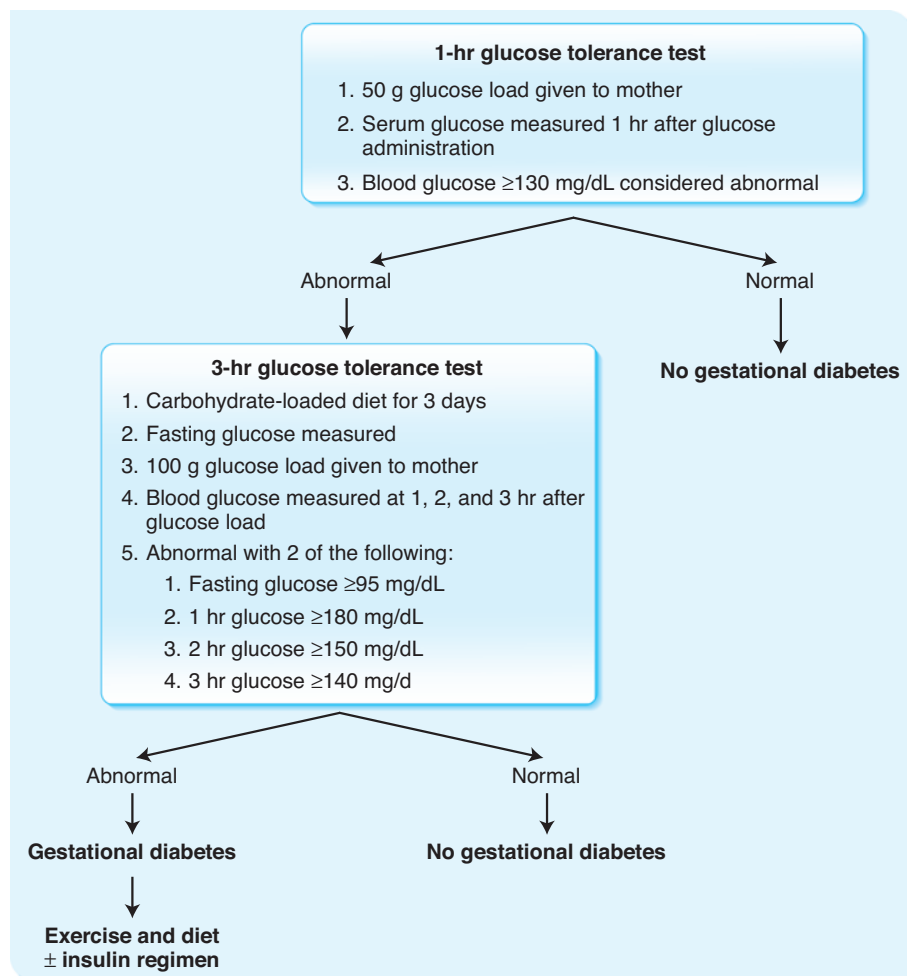
III. MEDICAL COMPLICATIONS OF PREGNANCY

A. Gestational diabetes mellitus (DM)

1. New onset glucose intolerance that begins during pregnancy (after 24 weeks)
2. Risk factors = family history of DM, >25 years of age, obesity, prior polyhydramnios, recurrent abortions, prior stillbirth, prior macrosomia, hypertension (HTN), African or Pacific Islander heritage, corticosteroid use, polycystic ovarian syndrome (PCOS)
3. History and physical (H/P) = usually asymptomatic
4. Labs = fasting glucose >126 mg/dL or abnormal glucose tolerance test performed at 24 to 28 weeks' gestation (see Figure 12-2)
5. Treatment
 - a. Strict glucose control through diet and exercise
 - (1) 40 kcal/kg/day in women with BMI <22
 - (2) 30 kcal/kg/day in women with BMI 22 to 27
 - (3) 24 kcal/kg/day in women with BMI 27 to 29
 - (4) 12 to 15 kcal/kg/day in women with BMI >29
 - (5) Self-monitoring of glucose performed to determine therapy efficacy
 - b. Insulin should be used in patients failing nonpharmacologic therapy to keep fasting glucose <90 mg/dL and 1-hour postprandial glucose <120 mg/dL.
 - c. Periodic fetal US and nonstress tests (discussed later) performed to assess fetal well-being
 - d. Caesarean section may be indicated for macrosomic babies.

FIGURE 12-2

Screening for gestational diabetes mellitus performed at 24 to 28 weeks' gestation.



6. Complications

- Fetal: macrosomia (i.e., baby of abnormally large size), polyhydramnios, delayed pulmonary maturity, uteroplacental insufficiency (resulting in intrauterine growth restriction [IUGR] or intrauterine fetal demise)
- Perinatal or postnatal: traumatic delivery, delayed neurologic maturity, fetal respiratory distress syndrome, hypoglycemia (secondary to therapy; can also occur after delivery), hypocalcemia

B. Pregestational diabetes mellitus (DM)

- DM that exists **before** pregnancy; patient may or may not be aware of disease
- H/P = consistent with typical presentation of DM (see Chapter 5, **Endocrine Disorders**); patients more likely to have significant hyperglycemia, postpartum hyperglycemia, and low BMI
- Labs** = increased serum glucose (prior to and during pregnancy), increased hemoglobin A1c with poor control; detection of anti-insulin and anti-islet cell antibodies is diagnostic for DM type I
- Treatment**
 - Try to control glucose with diet and exercise.
 - Insulin used for glucose control in type I and in type II DM not adequately controlled with lifestyle modification
 - Fetal US and echocardiogram (especially third trimester) used to identify cardiac, neurologic, and growth abnormalities
 - Early delivery after fetal lung assessment and corticosteroid administration recommended for poor glucose control or maternal complications
- Complications
 - Maternal: preeclampsia, renal insufficiency, retinopathy, diabetic ketoacidosis, hyperosmolar hyperglycemic nonketotic state (HHNS)
 - Fetal: cardiac defects (especially transposition of the great vessels, tetralogy of Fallot), neural tube defects, sacral agenesis, renal agenesis, polyhydramnios, macrosomia, IUGR, intrauterine fetal demise

C. Preeclampsia

- Pregnancy-induced HTN with **proteinuria** and **edema** that develops after 20 weeks' gestation in 5% of pregnancies owing to an unknown cause
- Risk factors** = HTN, nulliparity, prior history of preeclampsia, <15 or >35 years of age, multiple gestation (e.g., twins), vascular disease, chronic HTN or renal disease, DM, obesity, African-American ancestry
- H/P**
 - Asymptomatic in mild cases
 - Edema** in **hands** and **face**, rapid weight gain, headache, epigastric abdominal pain, visual disturbances, hyperreflexia
 - Blood pressure** $\geq 140/90$ mm Hg during pregnancy in a patient who was formerly normotensive
- Labs**
 - Urinalysis shows 2+ proteinuria on dipstick or >300 mg protein/24 hr.
 - Decreased platelets, normal or mildly increased creatinine, increased alanine aminotransferase (ALT) and aspartate aminotransferase (AST), decreased glomerular filtration rate (GFR)
 - Fetal nonstress test and amniocentesis (less commonly) can be useful to assess fetal well-being.
- Treatment**
 - If near term, **induce delivery**.
 - If mild and far from term, prescribe restricted activity, frequent maternal examinations for worsening symptoms, protein assessments, and fetal nonstress tests twice per week.
 - If severe and far from term, closely monitor in inpatient setting and maintain blood pressure <155/105 with diastolic blood pressure >90 using antihypertensive medications (labetalol frequently used), give intravenous (IV) MgSO₄



QUICK HIT

The only definitive cure for preeclampsia is **delivery**.



QUICK HIT

Do not use angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors (**ACE-I**) or angiotensin receptor blockers (ARBs) to stabilize blood pressure in pregnancy because of risk of **teratogenic** effects.

**QUICK HIT**

HELLP syndrome is a form of preeclampsia with poor fetal prognosis and 1% maternal mortality characterized by **H**emolysis, **E**levated Liver enzymes, and **L**ow Platelets.

NEXT STEP

Do not confuse **eclampsia** with **epilepsy**. Know the patient's history before making a diagnosis because induced delivery **will not** cure the **epileptic** patient.

**QUICK HIT**

Anticonvulsant use in pregnancy:

- Patients with epilepsy should be kept on their regular anticonvulsant medication during pregnancy but should be given supplemental vitamin K and folate.
- Diazepam can be used to break active seizures (80% effective).

**QUICK HIT**

Hyperemesis gravidarum is severe nausea and vomiting that affects 1% of pregnant women. It may be complicated by electrolyte abnormalities and treated with avoidance of large meals, adequate hydration, and pyridoxine and doxylamine.

for seizure prophylaxis, closely monitor maternal and fetal health, and induce delivery as soon as fetus is considered viable.

- Continue antihypertensive medications and MgSO₄ postpartum and continue close observation for symptoms and lab abnormalities before discontinuing medications.
 - Mothers with preexistent HTN should be treated pharmacologically for HTN >140/95 mm Hg; labetalol or methyldopa is used initially, and a long-acting calcium channel blocker (e.g., nifedipine, amlodipine) may be added as a second agent.
6. **Complications** = **eclampsia**, seizures, stroke, IUGR, pulmonary edema, maternal organ dysfunction, oligohydramnios, preterm delivery; hemolysis, elevated liver enzymes, and low platelet counts (HELLP) syndrome can also cause abruptio placentae, renal insufficiency, encephalopathy, and disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC)

D. Eclampsia

- Progression of preeclampsia leading to **maternal seizures** that can be severe and fatal for both mother and child if untreated
- H/P** = headaches, visual disturbances (scotomata), and upper abdominal pain frequently precede onset of **seizures**
- Labs** = findings similar to preeclampsia
- Treatment**
 - Treatment is similar to that for preeclampsia, with **delivery** being the definitive solution; labor should be induced as soon as stable.
 - Use MgSO₄ and IV **diazepam** to control seizures.
 - Stabilize patient with sufficient O₂ and blood pressure control (labetalol or hydralazine).
 - Continue** MgSO₄ and antihypertensive medications for **48 hr** following delivery because **25% of seizures** occur within 24 hr postpartum.
- Complications** = risk of maternal (<2%) and fetal (6% to 12%) death; 65% risk of preeclampsia and 2% risk of eclampsia in subsequent pregnancy

E. Maternal asthma (preexisting)

- Severe maternal asthma is associated with preeclampsia, spontaneous abortion, intrauterine fetal demise, and IUGR.
- H/P** = course of disease frequently does not change during pregnancy from prior severity, but exacerbations may be less tolerated by the mother because of normal physiologic respiratory changes of pregnancy
- Treatment**
 - Mild intermittent asthma treated with short-acting β -agonists (e.g., albuterol) as needed (also used as needed for all more severe variants)
 - A low-dose inhaled corticosteroid is added to the regimen for mild persistent asthma.
 - A medium-dose inhaled corticosteroid or a low-dose inhaled corticosteroid plus a long-acting β -agonist (e.g., salmeterol) is used for moderate persistent asthma.
 - A high-dose inhaled corticosteroid and a long-acting P-agonist are used for severe persistent asthma.
- Complications** = increased risk of preeclampsia, spontaneous abortion, intrauterine fetal death, and IUGR in untreated severe disease; oral corticosteroid use may be associated with IUGR and cleft palate (although unproved)

F. Maternal nausea and vomiting

- Most pregnant women experience nausea and vomiting in the **first trimester** of pregnancy (i.e., morning sickness); most cases improve by the second trimester.
- Most likely caused by increases in chorionic gonadotropins or imbalance of progesterone and estrogen
- H/P** = nausea and vomiting that occurs frequently and may be daily; typically occurs in first trimester and improves after 16 weeks' gestation
- Treatment** = maintenance of hydration status, avoidance of large meals, elevating head in bed; antacids following meals may be helpful in worse cases

G. Maternal deep venous thrombosis (DVT)

1. Risk of DVT increases during pregnancy because of venous stasis and relative increase in circulating clotting factors.
2. H/P = similar presentation to that in nonpregnant patients (see Chapter 1, **Cardiovascular Disorders**); clinical diagnosis may be more difficult in pregnant patients because edema is also common in absence of DVT
3. **Radiology** = US and Doppler studies are safe means of finding thrombosis
4. **Treatment**
 - a. At diagnosis, IV heparin dosed to maintain partial thromboplastin time (PTT) at two times normal, or low molecular weight heparin (LMWH) (e.g., enoxaparin) dosed to achieve consistent anti-factor Xa levels 0.5–1.2 U/mL at 4 hr after injection
 - b. At discharge, patients should be switched to subcutaneous LMWH.
 - c. If possible, discontinue anticoagulation 24 to 36 hours prior to delivery; patients at high risk may be switched to IV unfractionated heparin until 6 hours prior to delivery.
 - d. Anticoagulants should be continued following delivery for 6 weeks (warfarin or enoxaparin can be used postpartum).
5. **Complications** = pulmonary embolus; heparin therapy can be complicated by hemorrhage or thrombocytopenia

**QUICK HIT**

Warfarin has teratogenic effects and should **not** be used during pregnancy but is safe to use during breastfeeding.

**NEXT STEP**

Stop all anticoagulation during active labor until 6 hours after delivery to prevent severe hemorrhage.

H. Maternal UTIs

1. UTIs are **more common** during pregnancy because of maternal immunosuppression, outflow obstruction, and decreased ureteral peristalsis (secondary to increased progesterone).
2. H/P = similar symptoms to nonpregnant patients (e.g., dysuria, urinary frequency, urgency) or asymptomatic
3. **Labs** = urinalysis shows white blood cells (WBCs) and nitrates; urine culture shows bacteria
4. **Treatment** = amoxicillin, nitrofurantoin, or cephalexin × 3 to 7 days; recurrent cases or pyelonephritis may require longer therapy

**QUICK HIT**

Fluoroquinolones should not be used for treatment of UTI because of teratogenic effects.

I. Maternal drug use

1. Several prescribed and illicit drugs can have a negative effect on pregnancy (see Table 12-6, Table 12-7).

TABLE 12-6 Recreational Drug Use and Associated Risks to Mother and Fetus during Pregnancy

Drug	Maternal Risks	Fetal Risks
Marijuana	Minimal	IUGR, prematurity
Cocaine	Arrhythmia , myocardial infarction, subarachnoid hemorrhage, seizures, stroke, abruptio placentae	Abruptio placentae , IUGR, prematurity, facial abnormalities, delayed intellectual development, fetal demise
Ethanol	Minimal	Fetal alcohol syndrome (mental retardation, IUGR, sensory and motor neuropathy, facial abnormalities), spontaneous abortion, intrauterine fetal demise
Opioids	Infection (from needles), narcotic withdrawal, premature rupture of membranes	Prematurity, IUGR, meconium aspiration, neonatal infections, narcotic withdrawal (may be fatal)
Stimulants	Lack of appetite and malnutrition , arrhythmia, withdrawal depression, hypertension	IUGR, congenital heart defects, cleft palate
Tobacco	Abruptio placentae, placenta previa , premature rupture of membranes	Spontaneous abortion, prematurity, IUGR , intrauterine fetal demise, impaired intellectual development, higher risk of neonatal respiratory infections
Hallucinogens	Personal endangerment (poor decision making)	Possible developmental delays

IUGR, intrauterine growth restriction.

TABLE 12-7 Common Medications That Carry Teratogenic Risks

Medication	Teratogenic Risks
ACE-I	Renal abnormalities, decreased skull ossification
Aminoglycosides	CN VIII damage, skeletal abnormalities, renal defects
Carbamazepine	Facial abnormalities, IUGR, mental retardation, cardiovascular abnormalities, neural tube defects
Chemotherapeutics (all drug classes)	Intrauterine fetal demise (~30% pregnancies), severe IUGR, multiple anatomic abnormalities (palate, bones, limbs, genitals, etc.), mental retardation, spontaneous abortion, secondary neoplasms
Diazepam	Cleft palate, renal defects, secondary neoplasms
DES	Vaginal and cervical cancer later in life (adenocarcinoma)
Fluoroquinolones	Cartilage abnormalities
Heparin	Prematurity, intrauterine fetal demise; considered much safer than warfarin
Lithium	Ebstein anomaly
OCPs	Spontaneous abortion, ectopic pregnancy
Phenobarbital	Neonatal withdrawal
Phenytoin	Facial abnormalities, IUGR, mental retardation, cardiovascular abnormalities
Retinoids	CNS abnormalities, cardiovascular abnormalities, facial abnormalities, spontaneous abortion
Sulfonamides	Kernicterus (bile infiltration of brain)
Tetracycline	Skeletal abnormalities, limb abnormalities, teeth discoloration
Thalidomide	Limb abnormalities
Valproic acid	Neural tube defects (~1% pregnancies), facial abnormalities, cardiovascular abnormalities, skeletal abnormalities
Warfarin	Spontaneous abortion, IUGR, CNS abnormalities, facial abnormalities, mental retardation, Dandy-Walker malformation

ACE-I, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors; CN, cranial nerve; CNS, central nervous system; DES, diethylstilbestrol; IUGR, intrauterine growth restriction; OCPs, oral contraceptive pills.

2. **H/P** = a complete drug history should be taken to assess all potential fetal risks

3. **Treatment**

- a. Appropriate counseling and education for drug abuse
- b. Stop teratogenic drugs during pregnancy (unless stopping drug is more harmful than use) and select alternative medications or therapies to treat medical conditions.
- c. Careful screening for related domestic abuse

J. Congenital infections

1. Maternal infections during pregnancy that may have significant negative effects on fetal development or viability (see Table 12-8)
2. Prenatal screening is performed to detect certain infections that are of particular risk to the fetus.



MNEMONIC

Congenital infections are frequently referred to as the TORCH infections: **T**oxoplasmosis, **O**ther (varicella-zoster, Parvovirus B19, group B streptococcus, chlamydia, gonorrhea), **R**ubella/Rubeola/**R**PR (syphilis), **C**ytomegalovirus, **H**erpes simplex/**H**epatitis B/**H**IV

TABLE 12-8 Congenital Infections and Effects upon the Fetus and Neonates

Maternal Infection	Possible Fetal/Neonatal Effects	Diagnosis	Treatment
Toxoplasmosis	Hydrocephalus, intracranial calcifications, chorioretinitis, microcephaly, spontaneous abortion, seizures	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Possible mononucleosis-like illness • Amniotic fluid PCR for <i>Toxoplasma gondii</i> or serum antibody screening may be helpful for diagnosis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pyrimethamine, sulfadiazine, and folinic acid • Mother should avoid gardening, raw meat, cat litter boxes, and unpasteurized milk
Rubella	Increased risk of spontaneous abortion, skin lesions (“blueberry muffin baby”), congenital rubella syndrome (IUGR, deafness, cardiovascular abnormalities, vision abnormalities, CNS abnormalities, hepatitis) if disease transmission occurs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Early prenatal IgG screening 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mother should be immunized before attempting to become pregnant • No treatment if infection develops during pregnancy • No proved benefit from rubella immune globulin
Rubeola (measles)	Increased risk of prematurity, IUGR, and spontaneous abortion; high risk (20% if term birth, 55% if preterm) of neonatal death if disease transmission occurs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clinical diagnosis in mother confirmed by IgM or IgG antibodies after rash develops 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mother should be immunized before attempting to become pregnant • Immune serum globulin given to mother if infection develops during pregnancy • Vaccine is contraindicated during pregnancy (live attenuated virus carries risk of fetal infection)
Syphilis	Neonatal anemia, deafness, hepatosplenomegaly, pneumonia, hepatitis, osteodystrophy, rash followed by hand/foot desquamation; 25% neonatal mortality	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Early prenatal RPR or VDRL • Confirm with FTA-ABS 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Maternal or neonatal penicillin
Cytomegalovirus	IUGR, chorioretinitis, CNS abnormalities , mental retardation, vision abnormalities, deafness, hydrocephalus, seizures, hepatosplenomegaly	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Possible mononucleosis-like illness • IgM antibody screening or PCR of viral DNA within first few weeks of life 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No treatment if infection develops during pregnancy • Ganciclovir may decrease effects in neonates • Good hygiene reduces risk of transmission
Herpes simplex	Increased risk of prematurity, IUGR, and spontaneous abortion; high risk of neonatal death or CNS abnormalities if disease transmission occurs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clinical diagnosis confirmed with viral culture or immunoassays 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delivery by caesarean section to avoid disease transmission if active lesions present or if primary outbreak • Acyclovir may be beneficial in neonates
Hepatitis B	Increased risk of prematurity, IUGR; increased risk of neonatal death if acute disease develops	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Prenatal surface antigen screening 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Maternal vaccination; vaccination of neonate and administration of immune globulin shortly after birth
HIV	Viral transmission in utero (5% risk), rapid progression of disease to AIDS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Early prenatal maternal blood screening (consent required) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AZT significantly reduces vertical transmission risk • Continue prescribed antiviral regimen, but avoid efavirenz, didanosine, stavudine, and nevirapine
Gonorrhea/chlamydia	Increased risk of spontaneous abortion; neonatal sepsis, conjunctivitis	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cervical culture and immunoassays 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Erythromycin given to mother or neonate
Varicella-zoster	Prematurity, encephalitis, pneumonia , IUGR, CNS abnormalities , limb abnormalities, blindness; high risk of neonatal death if birth occurs during active infection	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • IgG titer screening in women with no known history of disease • IgM and IgG antibody titers can confirm diagnosis in neonates 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Varicella immune globulin given to nonimmune mother within 96 hr of exposure and to neonate if born during active infection • Vaccine is contraindicated during pregnancy (live-attenuated virus carries risk of fetal infection)
Group B streptococcus	Respiratory distress, pneumonia, meningitis , sepsis	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Antigen screening after 34 wk gestation 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • IV β-lactams or clindamycin during labor or in infected neonates
Parvovirus B19	Decreased RBC production, hemolytic anemia, hydrops fetalis	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • IgM antibody screening or PCR of viral DNA 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Monitor fetal hemoglobin by PUBS and give intrauterine transfusion for severe anemia

AIDS, acquired immunodeficiency syndrome; AZT, zidovudine; CNS, central nervous system; FTA-ABS, fluorescent treponemal antibody absorption test; HIV, human immunodeficiency virus; Ig, immunoglobulin; IUGR, intrauterine growth restriction; IV, intravenous; PCR, polymerase chain reaction; PUBS, percutaneous umbilical blood sampling; RBC, red blood cell; RPR, rapid plasma reagin; VDRL, Venereal Disease Research Laboratories.


**NEXT
STEP**

Any woman of childbearing age who presents with abdominal pain must be given a β -hCG pregnancy test.

**QUICK HIT**

The most common causes of vaginal bleeding in early pregnancy are **ectopic pregnancy**, threatened or inevitable **spontaneous abortion**, **physiologic** bleeding (related to implantation), and **uterine-cervical pathology**.

**QUICK HIT**

Spontaneous abortions occur in up to 25% of pregnancies.


IV. OBSTETRIC COMPLICATIONS OF PREGNANCY
A. Ectopic pregnancy

1. Implantation of zygote **outside of uterus**; most commonly occurs in **ampulla of fallopian tube** (95% of cases) but can also occur on ovary, cervix, or abdominal cavity
2. **Risk factors** = pelvic inflammatory disease, sexually transmitted diseases, gynecologic surgery, **prior ectopic pregnancy**, multiple sexual partners, smoking
3. H/P
 - a. **Abdominal pain**, nausea, amenorrhea; **scant vaginal bleeding**, possible palpable pelvic mass
 - b. In cases of rupture, abdominal pain becomes severe and can be accompanied by hypotension, tachycardia, and peritoneal signs.
4. **Labs** = elevated β -hCG (urine or serum) indicates pregnancy; β -hCG in intrauterine pregnancy will double every 48 hr; β -hCG that is **low for time of gestation** should raise suspicion for ectopic pregnancy)
5. **Radiology**
 - a. Transabdominal and transvaginal US should be able to visualize pregnancy once β -hCG reaches 6,500 mIU/mL and 1,500 mIU/mL, respectively.
 - b. **Absence of visible intrauterine pregnancy** should raise suspicion.
 - c. US may show free abdominal fluid if rupture has occurred.
6. **Treatment** = unruptured ectopic pregnancy of <6 weeks' gestation is treated with methotrexate to abort pregnancy; longer term or ruptured ectopic pregnancy treated with IV hydration and **surgical excision** with attempt to preserve fallopian tube
7. **Complications** = unavoidable fetal death, severe maternal hemorrhage, increased risk of future ectopic pregnancy, infertility, Rh sensitization, **maternal death**

B. Spontaneous abortion (miscarriage) (see Table 12-9)

1. Nonelective termination of pregnancy <20 weeks' gestation (see Table 12-9)
 - a. First-trimester spontaneous abortions are usually the result of **fetal chromosomal abnormalities** (especially trisomies).
 - b. Second-trimester spontaneous abortions are usually caused by infection, **cervical incompetence**, **uterine abnormalities**, hypercoagulable state, poor maternal health, or **drug use** (prescription or recreational).
2. **Risk factors** = **increased maternal age**, multiple prior births, prior spontaneous abortion, uterine abnormalities, smoking, alcohol, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), cocaine, caffeine, certain maternal infections, low folate level, autoimmune disease

TABLE 12-9 Types of Spontaneous Abortions

Abortion Type	Threatened	Missed	Inevitable	Incomplete	Complete
Sign/Symptoms					
Uterine bleeding	In initial 20 wk of gestation	Present or with pain	Initial 20 wk + pain	Initial 20 wk	Initial 20 wk
Cervical os	Closed	Closed	Open	Open	Open or closed
Uterine contents expelled	None	None	None	Some	All
Diagnosis	US detects viable fetus	US detects nonviable intrauterine fetus	Possible detection of fetus by US	Based on history of expelled products of conception	Based on history of expelled products of conception
Treatment	Bed rest, limited activity	Misoprostol or D&C	Misoprostol or D&C to remove uterine contents	Misoprostol or D&C	None

D&C, dilation and curettage; US, ultrasound.

3. **H/P** = history should focus on prior abortions, birth history, prior gynecologic infections, and family history of congenital diseases; vaginal bleeding, and possible open cervical os seen on examination
4. **Labs** = β -hCG used to assess gestational age and track progress of pregnancy
5. **Radiology** = US used to assess fetal viability
6. **Treatment** = depends on type of spontaneous abortion

C. Intrauterine fetal demise

1. Intrauterine fetal death that occurs **after 20 weeks' gestation** and before the onset of labor
2. Caused by **placental or cord abnormalities** secondary to maternal cardiovascular or hematologic conditions, maternal HTN, **infection**, poor maternal health, or fetal congenital abnormalities
3. **H/P** = pregnant patient notes no fetal activity; uterus small for length of gestation, no fetal movement, no fetal heart tones
4. **Radiology** = US shows unviable intrauterine fetus with no heart activity
5. **Treatment** = oxytocin, misoprostol (prostaglandin E_1), or prostaglandin E_2 can be used to induce labor and delivery; dilation and evacuation (D&E) might be used to remove fetus if <24 weeks' gestation
6. **Complications** = DIC if fetus is retained for prolonged amount of time

D. Intrauterine growth restriction (IUGR)

1. Fetal growth that lags behind gestational age (<10th percentile)
2. Types
 - a. **Symmetric**
 - (1) 20% of cases
 - (2) Overall decrease in fetal size
 - (3) Early in pregnancy
 - (4) Most commonly caused by **congenital infection, chromosomal abnormalities, or maternal drug use** (illicit or recreational)
 - b. **Asymmetric**
 - (1) 80% of cases
 - (2) Decreased abdominal size with preservation of head and extremities
 - (3) Late in pregnancy
 - (4) Caused by multiple gestation, **poor maternal health**, or placental insufficiency
3. **H/P** = fundal height is at least **3 cm smaller** than expected for gestational age (beginning at 20 weeks' gestation, distance in centimeters from pubis to top of fundus should equal gestational age in weeks)
4. **Radiology**
 - a. US shows head circumference:abdominal circumference and femur length:abdominal circumference ratios **increased** in **asymmetric IUGR** and **normal** in **symmetric IUGR**.
 - b. US can be used to estimate fetal weight.
 - c. US frequently detects oligohydramnios.
 - d. Doppler US studies may detect decreased fetal, umbilical, or maternal blood flow.
5. **Treatment**
 - a. Fetal growth should be followed with US.
 - b. Nutritional supplementation, maternal O_2 therapy, and maternal bed rest may aid fetal growth.
 - c. Delivery should be induced if fetal growth slows further, maternal health worsens, or tests show fetal distress.
 - d. Maternal antenatal corticosteroids help to speed fetal lung maturation in mothers expected to deliver early.

E. Oligohydramnios

1. Deficiency of **amniotic fluid** in gestational sac (amniotic fluid index <5 cm)
2. Associated with **IUGR**, fetal stress, fetal renal abnormalities, or poor fetal health



QUICK HIT

The initial US finding for IUGR is frequently an **abdominal circumference <10th percentile** for gestational age.

3. Significance of timing
 - a. **First trimester:** frequently results in **spontaneous abortion**
 - b. **Second trimester:** may be due to **fetal renal abnormalities**, maternal cause (e.g., preeclampsia, renal disease, HTN, collagen-vascular disease), or placental thrombosis
 - c. **Third trimester:** associated with **premature rupture of membranes (PROM)**, preeclampsia, abruptio placentae, or idiopathic causes
4. **H/P** = possibly asymptomatic; fundal height may be small for gestational age
5. **Radiology** = US used to determine amniotic volume and perform fetal assessment; amniotic fluid index will be <5 cm, with no pockets at least 2 cm in size
6. **Treatment** = expectant management if fetus responds well to tests of well-being; induce delivery of viable fetus if risk of fetal demise is significant (poor response of fetus to tests of well-being); hydration, and bed rest may improve amniotic volume
7. **Complications** = spontaneous abortion, intrauterine fetal demise; abnormalities in limb, facial, lung, and abdominal development caused by **compression**

**QUICK HIT**

Excessive amniotic fluid frequently **reaccumulates** following percutaneous drainage.

F. Polyhydramnios

1. Excess of amniotic fluid in gestational sac (amniotic fluid index >25 cm)
2. Can result from insufficient swallowing of amniotic fluid (e.g., esophageal atresia) by fetus or increased fetal urination related to **maternal diabetes**, multiple gestation, fetal anemia, or chromosomal abnormalities
3. **H/P** = fundal height may be larger than expected for gestational age
4. **Radiology** = US used to assess amniotic fluid volume; amniotic fluid index will be >25 cm or will show one pocket of at least 8 cm
5. **Treatment** = only administered if mother is uncomfortable or if a threat of preterm labor exists; pregnancies of <32 weeks' gestation treated with amnioreduction and indomethacin (tapered dosing); pregnancies >32 weeks' gestation treated with amnioreduction alone
6. **Complications** = preterm labor, PROM, fetal malpresentation, maternal respiratory compromise

**QUICK HIT**

Internal manual examination should **not** be performed by the physician in cases of PROM because of an **increased risk of introducing infection** into the vaginal canal.

G. Premature rupture of membranes (PROM)

1. Spontaneous **rupture of amniotic sac** with spillage of amniotic fluid **before** onset of labor
2. **Risk factors** = vaginal or cervical infection, cervical incompetence, poor maternal nutrition, prior PROM
3. **H/P** = loss of amniotic fluid from vagina; amniotic fluid may be seen pooling in vagina on visual examination
4. **Labs** = **microscopic examination** of vaginal fluid will show “**ferning**” if amniotic fluid is present; vaginal fluid will turn **nitrazine paper blue** in presence of amniotic fluid; vaginal fluid should be cultured to detect infection
5. **Radiology** = US should be used to confirm oligohydramnios and to assess volume of residual amniotic fluid and fetal position
6. **Treatment**
 - a. If PROM occurs at <32 weeks' gestation, give corticosteroids (to hasten fetal lung maturation) and prophylactic antibiotics (for group B streptococcus); labor should be induced once amniotic fluid analysis indicates fetal lung maturity.
 - b. If PROM occurs at 32 to 34 weeks' gestation, amniotic fluid analysis is performed to determine fetal lung maturity; labor is induced if lung maturity has occurred; corticosteroids and antibiotics are administered if lungs are immature until induction at 34 weeks.
 - c. If PROM occurs after 34 weeks' gestation, antibiotics are administered and delivery is induced.

**QUICK HIT**

Fetal lung maturity can be quantified by measuring lecithin (L) and sphingomyelin (S) levels in amniotic fluid and determining the **LS ratio** (**L:S** >2 with the presence of phosphatidylglycerol [PG] in amniotic fluid **suggests lung maturity**).

H. Preterm labor

1. Onset of labor <37 weeks' gestation
2. **Risk factors** = **multiple gestation**, PROM, infection, placenta previa, abruptio placentae, previous preterm labor, polyhydramnios, cervical incompetence, poor nutrition, stressful environment, **smoking**, substance abuse, or lower socioeconomic status

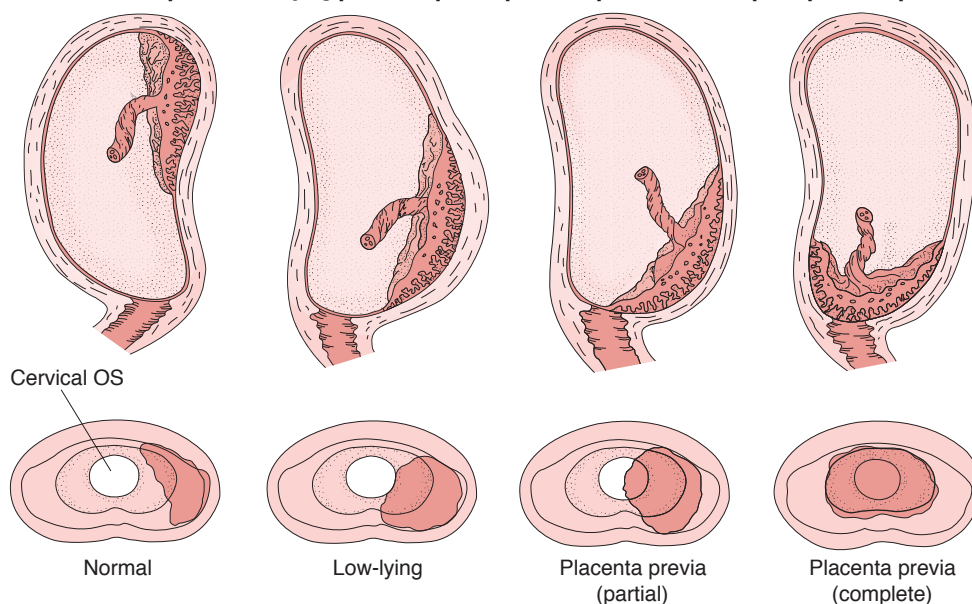
3. **H/P** = constant low back pain, cramping, signs of labor (painful contractions in the setting of cervical change) <37 weeks' gestation
4. **Labs** = urine, vaginal, and cervical cultures performed to detect infection
5. **Radiology** = US used to assess amniotic fluid volume and fetal well-being and verify gestational age
6. **Treatment**
 - a. At <34 weeks' gestation
 - (1) Expectant management (even if PPRM)
 - (2) Hospitalization, hydration, and activity restriction
 - (3) **Tocolytic therapy** (with MgSO₄, terbutaline, indomethacin, or nifedipine) for 48 hours
 - (4) Glucocorticoids (betamethasone or dexamethasone) for 48 hours to mature fetal lungs
 - (5) Give empiric ampicillin for prophylaxis against group B streptococcus if delivery is imminent or if there is evidence of active infection.
 - b. At >34 weeks' gestation
 - (1) Expectant management if lung maturity is proven
 - (2) Active management if there is an indication for delivery (e.g., nonreassuring fetal testing, infection, maternal threat)
 - (3) Tocolysis and glucocorticoids are of no proven benefit beyond 34 weeks.
 - (4) Give empiric ampicillin if delivery is imminent.
7. **Complications** = increased risk of neonatal complications and fetal respiratory distress syndrome with shorter gestational age

I. Placenta previa

1. **Implantation** of placenta near cervical os frequently associated with vaginal bleeding
2. **Types** (see Figure 12-3)
 - a. **Low implantation**: placenta implanted in lower uterus but does not infringe on cervical os until dilation occurs
 - b. **Partial placenta previa**: placenta partially covers os
 - c. **Complete placenta previa**: placenta completely covers os
3. **Risk factors** = multiparity (i.e., prior pregnancy), increased maternal age, **prior placenta previa**, **prior caesarean section**, multiple gestation, uterine fibroids, history of abortion, smoking

FIGURE 12-3

Uterine profiles and cross sections demonstrating normal placental implantation and examples of low-lying placenta, partial placenta previa, and complete placenta previa.



(From *OB-GYN Scenes and Procedures*. LifeART Nursing Collection, with permission.)



QUICK HIT

Although not used to diagnose labor, ultrasound can measure cervical length. A cervical length >35 mm is associated with a very low risk of preterm birth; a cervical length <15 mm has high risk of preterm birth.



QUICK HIT

Manual or speculum vaginal examination should **not** be performed in cases of placenta previa to prevent inducing **greater hemorrhage**.



QUICK HIT

Placenta previa and **abruptio placentae** are the most common causes of vaginal bleeding after 20 weeks' gestation. Bleeding in **placenta previa** is **painless**, and bleeding in **placental abruption** is **painful**.

4. **H/P** = **painless** vaginal bleeding in **third trimester** (30th week of gestation is most common time of onset)
5. **Radiology** = US determines location of placenta (transvaginal or translabial US more sensitive)
6. **Treatment**
 - a. Bed rest in cases of minor inconsistent bleeding; inpatient admission with maternal and fetal monitoring for active bleeding; give Rho(D) immune globulin to Rh-negative mothers for any bleeding in the third trimester
 - b. **Tocolytics** can be used to delay delivery and reduce maternal bleeding risk in cases of a preterm fetus with **immature lungs** and **mild maternal bleeding**.
 - c. When delivery is indicated, perform by **caesarean section**.
 - d. Vaginal delivery can be performed with a low-lying placenta.
7. **Complications** = severe hemorrhage, IUGR, malpresentation, PROM, vasa previa (fetal vessels overlie the os and increase risk for fetal exsanguination); 1% of cases result in **maternal death**

J. Abruptio placentae

1. Premature separation of the placenta from uterine wall leading to **significant maternal hemorrhage**
2. **Risk factors** = HTN, prior abruptio placentae, trauma, **tobacco use**, cocaine use, PROM, multiple gestation, multiparity
3. **H/P** = **painful** vaginal bleeding in **third trimester**, back pain, abdominal pain; pelvic and abdominal tenderness, **increased uterine tone**; hypotension occurs with severe hemorrhage
4. **Radiology** = US **inconsistently** shows separation of placenta from uterus
5. **Treatment**
 - a. Bed rest in inpatient setting for very mild cases
 - b. Delivery typically occurs rapidly secondary to uterine irritation, but **caesarean section** should be performed in cases of **hemodynamic instability**.
 - c. Transfusion is frequently required for significant hemorrhage.
6. **Complications** = DIC; **severe hemorrhage** that increases risk of maternal death; **fetal demise** occurs in 20% of cases; increased risk of abruption in future pregnancies

K. Multiple gestations

1. Any pregnancy in which **more than one fetus** develops at the same time
2. More likely to occur with fertility drug use
3. Types
 - a. **Monozygotic**: division of zygote resulting in development of identical fetuses; fetuses may or may not share amnion
 - b. **Dizygotic**: fertilization of more than one egg by different sperm resulting in development of dissimilar (i.e., fraternal) fetuses and separate amnions
4. Increased incidence of complications
 - a. Maternal: HTN, DM, **preeclampsia**, **preterm labor**
 - b. Fetal: **malpresentation**, placenta previa, abruptio placentae, PROM, IUGR, birth trauma, cerebral palsy, respiratory distress syndrome
5. **H/P** = fundal height large for gestational age; more than one fetal heart tone may be detected
6. **Radiology** = US detects 2+ gestational sacs
7. **Treatment**
 - a. Close maternal follow-up (weekly or biweekly) starting at 24 weeks' gestation
 - b. Activity restriction, frequent assessment of fetal growth with US, and weekly nonstress tests starting at 36 weeks' gestation
 - c. Preterm labor should be halted with tocolytic therapy.
 - d. Vertex-vertex (i.e., both heads downward) presentations may be delivered vaginally, but other presentations (e.g., vertex-transverse, vertex-breech) require caesarean section.



QUICK HIT

Conjoined twins only occur in cases of monozygotic twinning.



QUICK HIT

If the umbilical cords for multiple fetuses are fused, **twin-twin transfusion syndrome** can result, in which one twin is **inadequately** perfused, leading to an increased risk of fetal complications.



QUICK HIT

The average delivery time for twins is 36 weeks' gestation.



V. LABOR AND DELIVERY

A. Assessment of fetal well-being

1. Tests of fetal activity, heart rate, and responses to stress used to confirm fetal wellbeing and to detect fetal distress
2. **Nonstress test**
 - a. Used often during **prenatal assessment** and into labor
 - b. Mother reclines in left lateral supine position.
 - c. Fetal heart rate is monitored with external fetal heart rate and uterine contraction monitors.
 - d. **Effects of fetal movement on heart rate** are noted.
 - e. Normal (“reactive”) test is considered to be two or more 15-bpm accelerations of fetal heart rate lasting at least 15 seconds, each within 20 minutes.
 - f. An external sound device (vibroacoustic stimulator) can be attached to the mother’s abdomen to encourage fetal activity and shorten the time of the test.
 - g. Nonreactive test prompts the performance of a biophysical profile.
3. **Biophysical profile**
 - a. Performed in follow-up to nonreactive nonstress test
 - b. **Nonstress test repeated** and US assessment performed
 - c. US used to measure **amniotic fluid index** (i.e., total linear measurement in centimeters of largest amniotic fluid pocket detected in each of four quadrants of amniotic sac), **fetal breathing rate**, **fetal movement**, **fetal tone** (i.e., extension of fetal spine or limb with return to flexion)
 - d. Scoring system applied to nonstress test results and all US measurements; if test component satisfies criteria, it is given 2 points; if it does not meet criteria, it is assigned 0 points (no 1 point scores allowed).
 - (1) Reactive nonstress test (2 points)
 - (2) Amniotic fluid index = 5 to 23 cm (2 points)
 - (3) 1+ episode of rhythmic breathing lasting 20 seconds within a 30-minute period (2 points)
 - (4) 2+ episodes of discrete fetal movement within a 30-minute period (2 points)
 - (5) 1+ episodes of spine and limb extension with return to flexion (2 points)
 - e. **Reassuring profile** is a score of 8 or 10 and suggests minimal risk of fetal asphyxia; **lower score** suggests **fetal distress**.
4. **Contraction stress test**
 - a. Used late in pregnancy or during labor to assess uteroplacental dysfunction
 - b. Fetal heart rate is recorded with external fetal monitor or fetal scalp electrode.
 - c. **Beat-to-beat variability** of ~5 bpm, **long-term heart rate variability**, and occasional **heart rate accelerations** (2+ accelerations of 15 bpm lasting at least 15 seconds within a 20-minute period) are **reassuring** signs.
 - d. **Decelerations** of heart rate from baseline may indicate fetal head compression, fetal hypoxia, or umbilical cord compression (see Table 12-10, Figure 12-4).
5. **Fetal scalp blood sampling**
 - a. Performed when a consistently abnormal fetal heart rate tracing seen or evidence of significant meconium in amniotic fluid detected
 - b. Normal fetal blood pH is reassuring; **decreased pH** and **hypoxemia** and increased lactate indicate **fetal distress**.
6. **Fetal scalp monitoring**
 - a. Monitor attached to fetal scalp to track pulse oximetry and perform continuous fetal heart rate monitoring and electrocardiogram (ECG)
 - b. Should be used only in pregnancies >36 weeks’ gestation with vertex presentation

B. Stages of labor

1. Labor (i.e., contractions and cervical effacement) typically begins at 37 to 42 weeks’ gestation and involves four stages of progression (see Table 12-11).
2. Nulliparous and multiparous women proceed through labor at different rates.



QUICK HIT

Normal fetal heart rate is 120–160 bpm.



QUICK HIT

A fetal **nonstress test** and **biophysical profile** are easy ways to assess fetal well-being and risk of fetal demise because of a stressful environment.



QUICK HIT

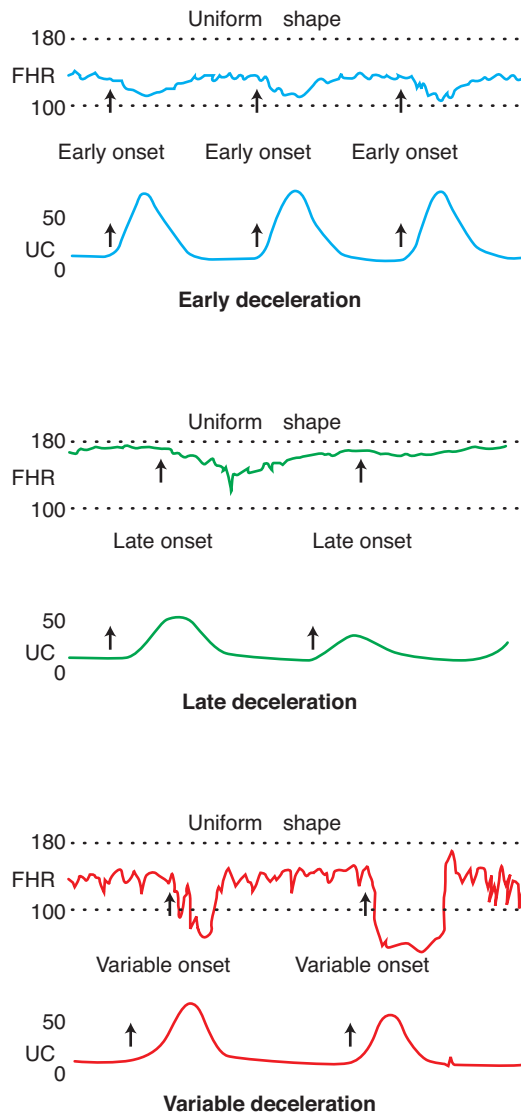
During the last few weeks of gestation, a woman may experience multiple **false** (Braxton-Hicks) **contractions** not associated with true labor.

TABLE 12-10 Types of Decelerations Seen on Fetal Heart Rate Tracings

Deceleration	Appearance	Cause	Treatment
Early	Decelerations begin and end with uterine contractions	Head compression	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None required • Not a sign of fetal distress
Late	Begin after initiation of uterine contraction and end after contraction has finished	Uteroplacental insufficiency , maternal venous compression, maternal hypotension, or abruptio placentae; may suggest fetal hypoxia	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Test fetal blood from scalp sample to diagnose hypoxia or acidosis • Recurrent late decelerations or fetal hypoxia direct prompt delivery
Variable	Inconsistent onset, duration, and degree of decelerations	Umbilical cord compression	Change mother's position

FIGURE 12-4

Examples of fetal heart and uterine tone tracings for early, late, and variable decelerations of fetal heart rate (FHR) following uterine contraction (UC).



(Modified from Hon, E. [1973]. *An Introduction to Fetal Heart Rate Monitoring*. Los Angeles: University of Southern California.)
 Also see Feibusch, K. C., Miroiu, M. Y., Breaden, R. S., Bader, C., Gomperts, S. N. (2002). *Prescription for the Boards: USMLE Step 2* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

TABLE 12-11 Stages of Labor

Stage	Beginning/End	Activity	Management	Duration	
				Nulliparous	Multiparous
1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Latent phase: start of uterine contractions until 4 cm cervical dilation and complete effacement Active phase: 4 cm cervical dilation until near 10 cm cervical dilation with consistent progression Deceleration phase: transition from active phase to second stage of labor 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Latent phase: cervical effacement and gradual dilation Active phase: regular uterine contractions, quick progression of cervical dilation (1.2 cm/hr for nulliparous, 1.5 cm/hr for multiparous) and effacement Deceleration phase: slowdown of dilation and effacement shortly before engagement of fetal head in pelvis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Monitor fetal heart rate and uterine contractions, assess progression of cervical changes periodically during active phase 	<20 hr (2/3 latent, 1/3 active)	<14 hr
2	Full (10 cm) cervical dilation until delivery	Fetal descent through birth canal driven by uterine contractions	Monitor fetal heart rate and movement through birth canal	<2 hr (<3 hr with epidural)	<1 hr (<2 hr with epidural)
3	Delivery of neonate until placental delivery	Placenta separates from uterine wall up to 30 min after delivery of neonate and emerges through birth canal, uterus contracts to expel placenta and prevent hemorrhage	Uterine massage, examination of placenta to confirm no intrauterine remnants	0–30 min	0–30 min
4	Initial postpartum hr	Hemodynamic stabilization of mother	Monitor maternal pulse and blood pressure, look for signs of hemorrhage	1 hr	1 hr

C. Induction of labor

- Intervention (oxytocin, misoprostol, etc.) to initiate uterine contractions or speed progress of labor
- Indications
 - Maternal: preeclampsia, DM, stalled stage of labor, chorioamnionitis
 - Fetal: prolonged pregnancy (i.e., >40 to 42 weeks), IUGR, PROM, some congenital defects
- Contraindications to induction of labor are need for caesarean section, prior uterine surgery, fetal lung immaturity, malpresentation, acute fetal distress, active genital herpes, and placenta or vasa previa.
- Likelihood of vaginal delivery following induction predicted by measuring fetal station and cervical dilation, effacement, consistency, and position (i.e., Bishop score) (see Table 12-12)
 - Greater cervical dilation and effacement, softer cervix, more anterior cervical position, and greater station are associated with greater likelihood of vaginal delivery (i.e., higher Bishop score).
 - Lower Bishop score is associated with higher likelihood of caesarean delivery (30% rate of caesarean delivery if Bishop score <3 after induction, 15% if >3).

D. Malpresentation

- Normal fetal presentation (i.e., cephalic or vertex) is with fetal head down, chin tucked, and occiput directed toward birth canal.
- Face (i.e., full hyperextension of neck) presentation occurs rarely and usually undergoes normal vaginal delivery if chin is anterior.
- Brow (i.e., partial hyperextension of neck) presentation occurs very rarely and requires caesarean delivery if the head does not spontaneously correct to a normal presentation.

TABLE 12-12 Bishop Scoring System^a

Score	0	1	2	3
Dilation (cm)	0	1–2	3–4	5–6
Effacement (%)	0–30	40–50	60–70	>70
Station (cm) ^b	–3	–2	–1, 0	+1, +2
Cervical consistency	Firm	Medium	Soft	
Cervical position	Posterior	Middle	Anterior	

^aFrom Bishop, E. H. (1964). Pelvic scoring for elective induction. *Obstetrics and Gynecology*, 24, 266–268.

^bDistance of presenting body part above (–) or below (+) ischial spines.



QUICK HIT

Presentation at birth:

- Vertex presentation is position at time of delivery in >95% of pregnancies.
- Before 28 weeks' gestation, **25%** of pregnancies are in **breach** presentation, but **most** will assume **vertex** presentation by the time of birth.



QUICK HIT

Risk of maternal mortality is similar for elective caesarean section and vaginal delivery, but emergency caesarean section carries a higher risk of mortality.

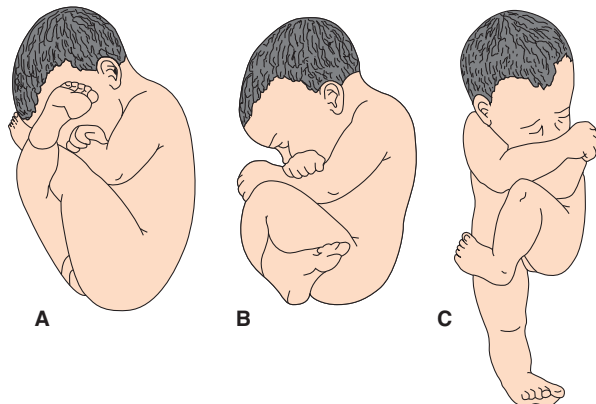
4. Breech presentation is the most common malpresentation (Figure 12-5).
 - a. Frank breech: 75% of cases; thighs flexed and knees extended
 - b. Complete breech: thighs and knees flexed
 - c. Footling breech: one or both legs extended
 - d. Risk factors = prematurity, multiple gestation, polyhydramnios, uterine anomaly, placenta previa
 - e. H/P = abdominal examination (i.e., Leopold maneuvers) detects fetal head in abdomen, vaginal examination may detect presenting part
 - f. Radiology = US confirms fetal orientation
 - g. Treatment = most cases will resolve before labor; external cephalic version may be applied to abdomen at 37 weeks' gestation to attempt repositioning of fetus (up to 75% effective); caesarean section performed in most cases
 - h. Complications = cord prolapse, head entrapment, fetal hypoxia, abruptio placentae, birth trauma

E. Caesarean section

1. Delivery of fetus through incision in uterine wall
2. Types
 - a. Vertical: vertical incision in anterior muscular portion of the uterus (i.e., classic) or lower uterine segment (i.e., low vertical); chosen when fetus lies in transverse presentation, adhesions or fibroids prevent access to lower uterus, hysterectomy is scheduled to follow delivery, cervical cancer is present, or in postmortem delivery to remove living fetus from dead mother
 - b. Low transverse: transverse incision in lower uterine segment; decreased risk of uterine rupture, bleeding, bowel adhesions, and infection (preferred to classic technique and performed more commonly)

FIGURE 12-5

Examples of frank (A), complete (B), and incomplete (C) variations of breech presentation.



(From LifeART. [2007]. *Obstetrics and Gynecology*. Philadelphia; Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.)

3. Indications
 - a. Maternal: eclampsia, prior uterine surgery, prior classic caesarean section, cardiac disease, birth canal obstruction, maternal death, cervical cancer, active genital herpes
 - b. Fetal: acute fetal distress, malpresentation, cord prolapse, macrosomia
 - c. Combined maternal and fetal: failure to progress in labor, placenta previa, abruptio placentae, cephalopelvic disproportion
4. In subsequent pregnancies, vaginal delivery can be attempted only if transverse caesarean section was performed.
5. If vertical incision has been used previously, repeat caesarean delivery must be performed because of risk of uterine rupture.
6. **Complications** = hemorrhage, infection and sepsis, thromboembolism, injury to surrounding structures

F. Normal puerperium and postpartum activity

1. Care of the newborn
 - a. Immediate suction of mouth and nose to aid in breathing and to prevent aspiration
 - b. Neonate is dried and wrapped in clothes to prevent heat loss.
 - c. Umbilical cord is clamped and cut; blood sample is taken from cord to measure blood gases and blood type.
 - d. Onset of respiration within 30 seconds is confirmed; if spontaneous respiration does not begin, **resuscitation** must be initiated.
 - e. Tracheal injection of synthetic or exogenous surfactant may be given in cases of lung immaturity.
 - f. **Apgar score** is performed at 1 and 5 minutes after birth; a score of 7+ at 1 minute and 9+ at 5 minutes is **reassuring** (see Table 12-13).
2. Maternal changes
 - a. Uterus decreases in size and cervix becomes firm over 3 weeks.
 - b. Uterine discharge (i.e., lochia) is red during initial days after birth but becomes paler and white by 10th day postpartum.
 - c. Vaginal wall gradually becomes firmer.
 - d. Total peripheral resistance increases rapidly because of elimination of utero-placental circulation; diuresis causes significant weight loss in first week postpartum; cardiac output gradually returns to normal.
 - e. Mother may feel mild depression for few days after delivery (i.e., “postpartum blues”); most cases resolve without complications.
 - f. Menstruation returns 6 to 8 weeks postpartum in non-nursing mothers.
 - g. Ovulation and menstruation may not occur for several months in nursing mothers (98% effective in preventing pregnancy for 3 months after delivery if performed regularly).



QUICK HIT

Breast milk is considered the ideal infant nutrient because it contains important **IgA antibodies** for the newborn, is in **sufficient supply**, is **cost-free**, and enhances mother–infant bonding.



QUICK HIT

Early breast milk (**colostrum**) is rich in proteins, fat, and minerals and contains IgA; after 1 week postpartum, breast milk contains proteins, fat, water, and lactose.

TABLE 12-13 Apgar Scoring System for Determining Neonatal Well-Being^a

Sign	Score		
	0	1	2
Heart rate	None	<100 bpm	>100 bpm
Respirations	None	Poor, weak cry	Good, strong cry
Muscle tone	Poor	Some movement	Active movement
Response to stimulation	None	Grimace	Strong cry
Color	Blue, pale	Pink torso, blue extremities	Pink

From Apgar, V. (1953). A proposal of a new method of evaluation of the newborn infant. *Current Researches in Anesthesia and Analgesia*, 32, 261–267.

**QUICK HIT**

Uterine atony is more likely after multiple gestation, prolonged labor, and chorioamnionitis.

**QUICK HIT**

Retained placental tissue causes the most substantial volume of postpartum bleeding.

G. Postpartum bleeding

1. Blood loss >500 mL/24 hr following vaginal delivery or >1,000 mL/24 hr after caesarean section is abnormal.
2. Because of **uterine atony** in most cases (more likely after multiple gestation, prolonged labor, and chorioamnionitis)
3. Can also result from **birth canal trauma, retained placental tissue, or coagulopathy** (e.g., DIC)
4. **H/P** = excessive postpartum bleeding from genital tract; soft, boggy uterus palpable with uterine atony; vaginal examination may detect lacerations; examination of placenta after birth should detect any missing segments
5. **Radiology** = US may show retained placental tissue
6. **Treatment**
 - a. Uterine massage and oxytocin administration help increase uterine tone and decrease hemorrhage.
 - b. Surgical repair of lacerations should be performed.
 - c. Dilation and curettage (D&C) may successfully remove retained placental tissue.
 - d. Hysterectomy may need to be performed in severe or refractory cases.

**VI. GESTATIONAL TROPHOBLASTIC DISEASE****A. Hydatidiform mole**

1. Benign neoplasms of trophoblastic cells (i.e., cells that make up placenta) that infrequently become malignant; **benign** trophoblastic neoplasms make up 80% of trophoblastic disease
2. Types
 - a. Complete: 46 XX or 46 XY genotype; completely derived from father (empty egg penetrated by sperm)
 - b. Incomplete: 69 XXY, 69 XXX, or 69 XYY genotype; fertilization of egg by two sperm; associated with abnormal fetus
3. **Risk factors** = low socioeconomic status, older age (>40 years) at time of pregnancy, history of prior molar pregnancy, Asian heritage, smoking
4. **H/P** = heavy or irregular painless vaginal bleeding during **first** or **second** trimester, hyperemesis gravidarum, dizziness, anxiety; large fundal height for gestational age, expulsion of “grape-like” vesicles from vagina, no fetal movement or heart tones detected
5. **Labs** = β -hCG is much **higher** than expected for gestational age
6. **Radiology** = US detects “snowstorm” pattern in uterus without presence of gestational sac
7. **Treatment** = D&C to remove neoplasm; follow β -hCG for 1 year (levels should gradually decrease); avoid pregnancy for 6 months to 1 year
8. **Complications** = malignant gestational trophoblastic neoplasm (20% of cases), choriocarcinoma (5% of cases, suggested by continued high β -hCG following D&C)

B. Choriocarcinoma

1. **Malignant** trophoblastic neoplasm that arises from hydatidiform moles (50% of cases) or following abortion, ectopic pregnancy, or normal pregnancy
2. **H/P** = vaginal bleeding and possible hemoptysis, dyspnea, headache, dizziness, or rectal bleeding; enlarged uterus on examination with bleeding seen from cervical os
3. **Labs** = increased β -hCG
4. **Radiology** = US detects uterine mass with mix of hemorrhagic and necrotic areas and possible parametrial invasion; computed tomography (CT) may detect metastases
5. **Treatment** = hysterectomy of disease limited to uterus; chemotherapy routinely administered; patient with early limited disease wishing to maintain fertility may choose chemotherapy alone; follow β -hCG to track cure; avoid pregnancy for 1 year after therapy
6. **Complications** = **metastases** to lungs, brain, liver, kidneys, or gastrointestinal tract; good prognosis unless presence of brain or liver metastases; frequently missed diagnosis if not caused by progression from molar pregnancy

NEXT STEP

High β -hCG is seen in both **hydatidiform mole** and **multiple gestations**; differentiate the conditions with US.

NEXT STEP

Highly suspect a molar pregnancy if **preeclampsia** occurs in the **first half** of pregnancy, and perform an US to confirm diagnosis.

I. DEVELOPMENT AND HEALTH SUPERVISION

A. Physical growth

1. Characteristics of growth (i.e., weight, height, and head circumference) fall in a normal range; deviations from this range suggest abnormal growth, disease processes, or environmental concerns.
2. Pediatrician should keep a record of growth on a chart.
3. **Weight**
 - a. Initial loss of weight in first few days after birth is normal; birth weight is regained by 2 weeks of age.
 - b. Birth weight **doubles** by ~4 months, **triples** at ~12 months, and **quadruples** at ~24 months.
 - c. From age 2 years to adolescence (age 13 years), annual weight gain is ~5 lb.
 - d. Inadequate weight gain can result from **poor food intake** (including poor feeding and abuse), chronic vomiting or diarrhea, **malabsorption**, neoplasm, or congenital diseases (e.g., cardiac, endocrine).
 - e. Weight <5th percentile on growth charts or a consistently low weight for a given height suggests **failure to thrive** (see Chapter 3, **Gastrointestinal Disorders**).
 - f. The prevalence of **childhood obesity** (body mass index matched for age and gender >95th percentile) has steadily increased in the United States and is associated with rapid growth, sleep apnea, hypertension (HTN), slipped capital femoral epiphysis, precocious puberty, increased incidence of skin infections, social dysfunction, and earlier development of diabetes mellitus (DM).
4. **Height**
 - a. **Height** (or birth length) is increased by 50% at ~1 year of age, **doubles** at ~4 years of age, and **triples** at ~13 years of age.
 - b. Annual height gain from age 2 years to adolescence is ~2 in/year.
 - c. Greater-than-normal height can be associated with familial tall stature, precocious puberty, gigantism, hyperthyroidism, Klinefelter syndrome, Marfan syndrome, or obesity.
 - d. Lower-than-normal height can be associated with familial short stature, neglect, Turner syndrome, constitutional growth delay, chronic renal failure, asthma, cystic fibrosis, inflammatory bowel disease (IBD), immunologic disease, growth hormone deficiency, hypothyroidism, glucocorticoid excess, skeletal dysplasias, or neoplasm.
5. **Head circumference**
 - a. Measured during first 1 to 3 years of life
 - b. ~5 cm growth during age 0 to 3 months, ~4 cm in 3 to 6 months, 2 cm in 6 to 9 months, and 1 cm in 9 to 12 months
 - c. Macrocephaly can be associated with cerebral metabolic diseases (e.g., Tay-Sachs, maple syrup urine disease), neurocutaneous syndromes (e.g., neurofibromatosis,

NEXT STEP

Be sure to collect a thorough **family history** while assessing growth or developmental delays to help distinguish a **hereditary** cause from an **environmental** one.

- tuberous sclerosis), hydrocephalus, increased intracranial pressure, skeletal dysplasia, acromegaly, or intracranial hemorrhage.
- d. Microcephaly can be associated with fetal toxin exposure (e.g., fetal alcohol syndrome), chromosomal trisomies, congenital infection, cranial anatomic abnormalities, metabolic disorders, or neural tube defects.
6. Trend of growth abnormalities helps suggest certain pathologies.
 - a. Normal growth rate that declines after birth suggests **postnatal** onset.
 - b. Growth that is **abnormal from the time of birth** suggests **prenatal** onset (e.g., genetic abnormalities, intrauterine pathology).
 - c. Growth that is in low-normal range but eventually becomes closer to the mean suggests **constitutional growth delay**.
 - d. Growth that is **consistently low-normal** suggests genetic short stature (i.e., compare with parents).
 7. **History and physical (H/P)**
 - a. Look for other symptoms and signs that suggest a particular disease.
 - (1) Malabsorption: diarrhea
 - (2) DM: hyperglycemia
 - (3) Congenital heart disease: cyanosis, etc.
 - (4) Signs of abuse: bruising, abnormal parent–child interaction
 - (5) Psychosocial abnormalities: inattentiveness, apathy
 - b. Growth should be assessed at **each health visit** to confirm normal patterns and catch abnormalities early.
 8. **Labs** = should be directed at diagnosis of a specific disease when clinical suspicion exists (e.g., for DM, blood glucose; for congenital heart disease, arterial blood gas, etc.)
 9. **Treatment**
 - a. Treat underlying disorder.
 - b. Seek intervention for cases of abuse.
 - c. Provide parental education to help alleviate poor intake, poor-quality diets, or malnutrition and to help deal with psychosocial issues.

QUICK HIT

It is **legally imperative** that **all suspected** cases of child abuse are **well documented** and **reported** to the appropriate authorities.

QUICK HIT

Ages for developmental milestones are **guidelines**. It is normal for milestones to occur at an appropriate **range of ages**, and parents should be reassured that milestones occur within such a range and not at concrete ages.

QUICK HIT

The first dose of hepatitis B vaccine is typically administered shortly after birth before the infant leaves the hospital.

QUICK HIT

Haemophilus influenzae type b (Hib) vaccine is **unnecessary** in previously unvaccinated children **>5 years** because of the low risk of severe infection at this age and older. **Asplenic** children should **always** receive Hib and pneumococcal vaccines regardless of their age.

B. Developmental milestones

1. **Social, physical, and intellectual** achievements are reached by children at characteristic ages (see Table 13-1).
2. Absence or delay of milestones can suggest developmental delays.
3. Some delays are hereditary, but multiple or significant delays are a cause for concern.
4. Multiple or persistent delays can result from mental retardation, genetic disorders (e.g., fragile X syndrome, trisomy 21), language or hearing disorders, child abuse, or psychiatric conditions (e.g., attention deficit hyperactivity disorder [ADHD], autism).
5. Certain reflexes are prevalent during infancy but naturally disappear by **6 months** of age; absence or persistence of infantile reflexes beyond 6 months (especially with a history of perinatal complications or suspected congenital malformation) may suggest central nervous system (CNS) pathology (see Table 13-2).

C. Childhood health maintenance

1. Periodic physician visits are important during childhood to assess **growth**, detect growth and developmental **delays**, provide **vaccinations**, **screen** for certain disease processes, and provide **anticipatory guidance** (see Table 13-3).
 - a. Visits ~1 week after birth and at 1 month of age
 - b. Visits at 2 months old, then every 2 months (2, 4, 6 months) until 6 months old
 - c. Visits every 3 months from age 6–18 months (6, 9, 12, 15, 18 months)
 - d. Visits at age 2 years and annually thereafter
2. Screening during visits should address common medical concerns (e.g., vision, hearing, dentition, diseases in high-risk populations).
3. Anticipatory guidance should address **nutrition, development, daily care, accident prevention, and behavioral issues**.
4. Vaccinations should be given at appropriate visits (see Table 13-4).

TABLE 13-1 Important Developmental Milestones during Childhood

Age	Social/Cognitive	Gross Motor	Fine Motor	Language
2 months	Social smile	Lifts head 45°	Eyes follow object to midline	Coos
4 months	Laughs Aware of caregiver Localizes sound	Lifts head 90°	Eyes follow object past midline	
6 months	Differentiates parents from others Stranger anxiety	Rolls over Holds self up with hands Sits without support	Grasps/rakes Attempts to feed self	Babbles
9 months	Interactive games Separation anxiety (9–15 months)	Crawls Pulls to stand	Grasps with thumb	First words
12 months	Separation anxiety (9–15 months)	Walks with help	Pincer grasp Makes tower of two blocks	~5–10-word vocabulary
18 months	Parallel play	Walks well Walks backward	Makes tower of four blocks Uses cup or spoon	10–50-word vocabulary 2-word sentences
2 yr	Dresses self with help	Runs Climbs stairs (initially 2 feet/ step, then 1 foot/step)	Makes tower of six blocks	50–75-word vocabulary 3-word sentences
3 yr	Magical thinking	Climbs/descends stairs	Makes tower of nine blocks Able to draw circle (↑)	
4 yr	Plays with others	Hops on 1 foot	Able to draw line image (+); later able to draw closed line drawing (Δ)	250+ word vocabulary 4-word sentences
6 yr	Able to distinguish fantasy from reality	Skips	Draws a person	Fluent speech

TABLE 13-2 Childhood Reflexes and Their Relation to Central Nervous System Pathology

Reflex	Description	Time of Disappearance	Area of CNS Associated with Abnormal Persistence or Disappearance
Moro	Extension of head causes extension and flexion of limbs; startle reflex	3 months	Medulla, vestibular nuclei
Grasp	Placing finger in palm causes grasping	3 months	Medulla, vestibular nuclei
Rooting	Rubbing cheek causes turning of mouth to stimuli	3 months	Medulla, trigeminal nuclei
Tonic neck	When head turned, arm on faced side extends and arm on opposite side flexes (fencer's position)	3 months	Medulla, vestibular nuclei
Placing	Rubbing foot dorsum causes foot to step up	2 months	Cortex

CNS, central nervous system.

TABLE 13-3 Screening Performed and Anticipatory Guidance Discussed during Regular Childhood Health Visits

Visit	Screening	Nutrition	Daily Care	Accident Prevention	Behavioral Issues
Newborn/ 1 wk	Phenylketonuria, hypothyroidism, genetic metabolic disorders (maple syrup urine disease, cystic fibrosis, etc.) in high-risk patients; hearing; visual mobility and reflexes	Breast or bottle feeding	Crying, sleep position, bathing	Smoke detectors, baby furniture, car seats	Parent-child interaction
1 month	Visual mobility and reflexes	Breast or bottle feeding, fluoride supplements	Sleep, bowel, and bladder habits	Sun exposure	Importance of close contact
2 months	Visual mobility and reflexes		Sleep, bowel habits	Close supervision, risks with ability to roll over	
4 months	Visual mobility and reflexes	Iron-fortified cereal	Teething	Keeping small objects out of reach	Vocal interaction
6 months	Visual mobility and reflexes	Cup training, daily caloric needs, finger foods, avoidance of milk or juice at bedtime	Shoes	Preparation for increased mobility ("childproofing" the house), electrical socket covers, stair and door gates	Stranger anxiety, separation anxiety
9 months	Hgb/Hct; visual mobility and reflexes	Iron supplementation, self-feeding, spoon training	Tooth care, favorite toys	Aspiration risks	Communication, discipline
12 months	Visual mobility and reflexes; lead exposure; PPD in high-risk areas	Bottle weaning, eating at table, whole cow's milk		Poisoning risks, stair safety, burns	Speech, rules, positive reinforcement
15 months	Hgb/Hct; visual mobility and reflexes	Family meals			Toilet training, temper tantrums, punishment, listening to parent read
18 months	Visual mobility and reflexes	Reinforcement of utensil use	Nightmares, bedtime regimens	Supervised play, dangerous toys	Discipline, "terrible 2s," toilet training, games
2 yr	Lead exposure; visual mobility and reflexes	Avoiding unhealthy snacks, encouraging eating during meals	Transition from crib to bed, toothbrush training		Toddler independence, explanation of body parts, early play with other children
3 yr	Visual acuity; cholesterol (if family history of high cholesterol or CAD)	Healthy diet	Regular sleep schedule, TV/media limitation	Water safety, animal safety	Day care or babysitters (earlier if both parents work), play with other children, reinforce consistent toileting, conversation
4 yr	Hearing; lead exposure; visual acuity; PPD (if high-risk group); urinalysis	Meals as time for family bonding	Self-dental care	Pedestrian and bicycle safety, car seat or seat belt, dangers of strangers, guns, fires, poisons, teach phone number	Chores, interactions at day care or preschool, school preparation

(continued)

TABLE 13-3 Screening Performed and Anticipatory Guidance Discussed during Regular Childhood Health Visits (Continued)

Visit	Screening	Nutrition	Daily Care	Accident Prevention	Behavioral Issues
6 yr	Lead exposure; visual acuity	Avoidance of excess weight; obesity prevention counseling	Exercise, hygiene, school activities	Swimming	Allowance, encourage learning and development, reading
10 yr	Hearing, visual acuity			Hazardous activities, drug use (including alcohol and tobacco)	Friends, sexual education, puberty, responsibility
12 yr	Hearing; visual acuity; PPD (if high-risk group); Pap smear only if sexually active (girls)		Adequate sleep, school and extra-curricular activities	Sexual responsibility	Body image, privacy issues
14 yr and older	Hearing; Hgb/Hct (girls); visual acuity; STD screening (if sexually active)	Weight maintenance	School and activities	Risk-taking behavior, driving, sexual responsibility	Dating, sexuality, goals, careers, independence issues

Note: anticipatory guidance from **prior** visits should be **reviewed**, when appropriate.
 CAD, coronary artery disease; Hgb/Hct, hemoglobin and hematocrit; PPD, purified protein derivative of tuberculin (TB test); STD, sexually transmitted disease.

TABLE 13-4 Vaccination Schedule and Contraindications during Well-Child Health Visits (2007 Recommendations)

Vaccine	Age											
	Birth	1 mo	2 mo	4 mo	6 mo	12 mo	15 mo	18 mo	24 mo	4–6 yr	11–12 yr	13–18 yr
HepB ^a	HepB		HepB					HepB				
Rota ^b			Rota	Rota	Rota							
DTaP ^c			DTaP	DTaP	DTaP			DTaP		DTaP	Td	
Hib ^d			Hib	Hib	Hib			Hib				
PCV ^e			PCV	PCV	PCV			PCV				
IPV ^f			IPV	IPV				IPV		IPV		
MMR ^g								MMR		MMR		
VZV ^h								VZV		VZV		
HepA ⁱ								HepA × 2				
MCV4 ^j											MCV4	MCV4
HPV ^k											HPV × 3	

^aHepatitis B (HepB); contraindications: allergy to yeast or anaphylaxis following prior dose.
^bRotavirus (Rota); contraindications: anaphylaxis following prior dose.
^cDiphtheria, tetanus, acellular pertussis (DTaP); tetanus booster (Td) given in adolescence; contraindications: encephalopathy or anaphylaxis following prior dose.
^d*Haemophilus influenzae* type b (Hib); no contraindications.
^ePneumococcal vaccine (PCV); contraindications: anaphylaxis following prior dose.
^fInactivated polio vaccine (IPV); contraindications: pregnancy (or pregnant female at home) and anaphylaxis following prior dose.
^gMeasles, mumps, rubella (MMR); contraindications: pregnancy (or pregnant female at home), immunocompromise, thrombocytopenia, hematologic or solid neoplasm, anaphylaxis following prior dose.
^hVaricella-zoster vaccine (VZV); contraindications: allergy to neomycin, anaphylaxis following prior dose, immunosuppression, pregnancy (or pregnant female at home), moderate or severe illness.
ⁱHepatitis A (HepA); given in two doses at least 6 months apart; contraindications: anaphylaxis following prior dose.
^jMeningococcal vaccine (MCV4); possible rare association with Guillain-Barré syndrome.
^kHuman papilloma virus vaccine (HPV); given as three doses over 6-month period.

TABLE 13-5 Tanner Stages for Male Genital and Pubic Hair Development

Tanner Stage	Penile/Testicular Development	Pubic Hair Development
1	Prepubertal; small genitals	Prepubertal; no hair growth
2	Testicular and scrotal enlargement with skin coarsening	Slight growth of fine genital and axillary hair
3	Penile enlargement and further testicular growth	Further growth of hair
4	Further penile glans enlargement and darkening of scrotal skin	Hair becomes coarser and spreads over much of pubic region
5	Adult genitalia	Coarse hair extends from pubic region to medial thighs



NEXT STEP

Because of adolescents' desire for independence and need for good self-esteem, adolescent patients should be approached in a **nonjudgmental** fashion to perform an accurate history and physical examination.



QUICK HIT

Confidentiality between a physician and patient must be maintained during adolescence **unless life-threatening** concerns are involved (e.g., suicidal ideation, homicidal ideation, life-threatening disease), and this right may need to be stressed to parents.



QUICK HIT

Presentation of immune disorders does not occur immediately after birth because newborns retain **maternally derived antibodies** for ~3 months.

D. Adolescence

1. Period of **rapid physical, psychosocial, and sexual growth** and maturity leading into adulthood; encompasses time between 10 and 19 years of age
2. Puberty typically begins at age 9 to 10 years in girls and 9 to 11 years in boys; development of puberty before these ages is considered **precocious** puberty.
3. Physical changes are classified by Tanner stages (see Table 13-5; also refer to Chapter 11, **Gynecologic and Breast Disorders**).
4. Psychosocial issues
 - a. Early adolescence (10 to 13 years) is typified by concrete thinking and early independent behavior.
 - b. Middle adolescence (14 to 16 years) is typified by emergence of **sexuality** (e.g., sexual identity, sexual activity), an increased **desire for independence** (e.g., conflict with parents, need for guidance, self-absorption), and abstract thought.
 - c. Late adolescence (17 to 21 years) is typified by increased self-awareness, increased confidence in own abilities, a more open relationship with parents, and cognitive maturity.
 - d. Adolescents are at an increased risk for **risk-taking behaviors** (e.g., drug use, unprotected sexual activity, violence), **depression, suicidal ideation, homicide, and eating disorders**.
5. **H/P**
 - a. History during visits should address **risk factors** (e.g., sexually transmitted diseases [STDs], violence, abuse), substance use, mood, physical changes, nutritional habits, menstrual issues (girls), and **concerns of patient**.
 - b. Examination should focus on sexual maturation, dermatologic issues (e.g., acne, sun exposure, nevi), appropriate height and weight growth, and scrotal masses (i.e., detection of testicular cancer in boys).
 - c. Additional medical screening should include that for HTN, obesity, DM, and hyperlipidemia.
6. **Treatment**
 - a. Most teenagers proceed through adolescence without serious incidents even though accidents are the no. 1 cause of death in this age group.
 - b. Risk-taking behavior can result in STDs and drug addiction that need to be treated appropriately.
 - c. Emphasis should be placed on maintaining a good physician–patient relationship while addressing risk prevention.



II. IMMUNE DISORDERS

- A. Congenital immune deficiencies are uncommon and can result from defects in T cells and/or B cells, phagocytic cells, or complement (see Table 13-6).

TABLE 13-6 Types of Congenital Immunodeficiency Disorders

Disease	Description	Diagnosis	Treatment
T-cell disorders			
DiGeorge syndrome	Chromosomal deletion in 22q11 resulting in thymic and parathyroid hypoplasia, congenital heart disease , tetany, and abnormal facial structure; recurrent viral and fungal infections occur because of insufficient T cells	Tetany and facial abnormalities on examination; decreased serum calcium; evidence of congenital heart disease; chest radiograph may show absence of thymic shadow; genetic screening can detect chromosomal abnormality	Calcium, vitamin D, thymic transplant, bone marrow transplant, surgical correction of heart abnormalities; IVIG or prophylactic antibiotics may be helpful
Chronic mucocutaneous candidiasis	Persistent infection of skin, mucous membranes, and nails by Candida albicans from T-cell deficiency; frequent associated adrenal pathology	Poor reaction to cutaneous <i>C. albicans</i> anergy test; possible decreased IgG	Antifungal agents (e.g., fluconazole)
B-cell disorders			
X-linked agammaglobulinemia	Abnormal B-cell differentiation resulting in low B-cell and antibody levels; X-linked disorder with boys experiencing recurrent bacterial infections after 6 months of age	No B cells in peripheral smear ; low total immunoglobulin levels	IVIG, appropriate antibiotics, supportive pulmonary care
IgA deficiency	Specific IgA deficiency because of abnormal immune globulin production by B cells; patients have increased incidence of respiratory and gastrointestinal infections	Decreased IgA with normal levels of other immune globulins	Prophylactic antibiotics; IVIG with caution (small risk of anaphylaxis)
Hyper IgM disease	Defect in T-cell CD40 ligand resulting in poor interaction with B cells, low IgG, and excessive IgM; infection by encapsulated bacteria (pulmonary and gastrointestinal)	Decreased IgG and IgA, increased IgM ; possible decreased Hgb, Hct, platelets, and neutrophils	IVIG, prophylactic antibiotics; bone marrow transplant
Common variable immunodeficiency	Autosomal disorder of B-cell differentiation resulting in low immune globulin levels; patients experience increased respiratory and gastrointestinal infections beginning in second decade of life; associated with increased risk of malignant neoplasms and autoimmune disorders	Low immune globulin levels; poor response to vaccines; decreased CD4:CD8 T-cell ratio; family history shows both men and women affected	IVIG, appropriate antibiotics
Combined B- and T-cell disorders			
Severe combined immunodeficiency syndrome (SCID)	Absent T cells and abnormal antibody function resulting in severe immune compromise ; patients experience significant recurrent infections by all types of pathogens from an early age; frequently fatal at an early age	Significantly decreased WBCs, decreased immune globulins	IVIG, antibiotics, bone marrow transplant ; no live or attenuated vaccines should be administered
Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome	X-linked disorder of immune development resulting in significant susceptibility to encapsulated bacteria and opportunistic pathogens; associated with eczema and thrombocytopenia	Recurrent infections in presence of eczema and easy bleeding ; decreased platelets, decreased IgM with normal or high other immune globulins; genetic analysis detects abnormal WASP gene	Splenectomy , antibiotic prophylaxis, IVIG, bone marrow transplant
Ataxia-telangiectasia	Autosomal recessive disorder causing cerebellar dysfunction, cutaneous telangiectasias , increased risk of cancer, and impaired WBC and IgA development	Telangiectasias and ataxia develop after 3 yr of age; recurrent pulmonary infections begin a few years later; decreased WBCs, decreased IgA	IVIG and prophylactic antibiotics may be helpful, but treatment usually unable to limit disease progression

(continued)

TABLE 13-6 Types of Congenital Immunodeficiency Disorders (Continued)

Disease	Description	Diagnosis	Treatment
Phagocytic cell disorders			
Chronic granulomatous disease	Defect in which neutrophils cannot digest engulfed bacteria, resulting in recurrent bacterial and fungal infections	Cutaneous, pulmonary, and perirectal abscess formation; chronic lymphadenopathy; genetic analysis detects causative genetic mutations	Prophylactic antibiotics, γ -interferon, corticosteroids, bone marrow transplant
Hyper-IgE disease (Job syndrome)	Defect in neutrophil chemotaxis, T-cell signaling, and overproduction of IgE resulting in chronic dermatitis, recurrent skin abscesses , and pulmonary infections; patients commonly have coarse facial features and retained primary teeth	Increased IgE, increased eosinophils; defective chemotactic response of neutrophils on stimulation	Prophylactic antibiotics; skin hydration and emollient use
Chediak-Higashi syndrome	Autosomal recessive dysfunction of neutrophils resulting in recurrent <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i> , streptococcal, gram-negative bacteria, and fungal infections; associated with abnormal platelets, albinism, and neurologic dysfunction	Large granules seen in granulocytes on peripheral smear	Prophylactic antibiotics, bone marrow transplant
Leukocyte adhesion deficiency (types 1 and 2)	Inability of neutrophils to leave circulation because of abnormal leukocyte integrins (type 1) or E-selectin (type 2); recurrent bacterial infections of upper respiratory tract and skin, delayed separation of umbilical cord; short stature, abnormal facies, and cognitive impairment seen in type 2 disease	Increased serum neutrophils; defective chemotactic response of neutrophils upon stimulation	Prophylactic antibiotics; bone marrow transplant needed in type 1 disease; type 2 disease treated with fucose supplementation
Complement disorders			
Complement deficiencies	Multiple inherited deficiencies of one or more complement components, resulting in recurrent bacterial infections and predisposition to autoimmune disorders (e.g., SLE)	Hemolytic complement test results are abnormal and indicate problem in pathway; direct testing of components can detect exact deficiency	Appropriate antibiotics; treat autoimmune disorders, as needed

Hct, hematocrit; Hgb, hemoglobin; IVIG, intravenous immune globulin; SLE, systemic lupus erythematosus; WBC, white blood cell.

- B. H/P** = frequent and **recurrent infections** beginning after 3 months of age, including diseases caused by opportunistic pathogens; wound healing may be impaired
- C. Labs** = complete blood count (CBC) detects general white blood cell (WBC) abnormalities; determination of specific WBCs affected (T cells, B cells, neutrophils, etc.) and peripheral blood smear can help determine precise cell type abnormality
- D. Treatment** = antibiotics (both prophylactic and therapeutic) are required to treat infections; severe immune deficiencies may require immunotherapies or bone marrow transplant
- E. Complications** = recurrent infections, poor wound healing; death frequently occurs **before third decade of life** (younger for more severe deficiencies) because of body's inability to combat pathogens



III. GENETIC DISORDERS (CHROMOSOMAL PATHOLOGY)

A. Sex chromosome disorders

1. Diseases caused by an abnormal number of sex chromosomes in the genetic karyotype (see Table 13-7)

TABLE 13-7 Common Sex Chromosome Disorders

Condition	Karyotype	History and Physical
Turner syndrome	45XO or mosaicism	Female with short stature, infertility , abnormal genital formation, increased incidence of renal and cardiac defects (coarctation of aorta), craniofacial abnormalities (protruding ears, neck webbing , low occipital hairline)
Klinefelter syndrome	47XXY	Male with testicular atrophy , tall and thin body, gynecomastia, infertility, mild mental retardation, and psychosocial adjustment abnormalities
XYY	47XYY	Male with tall body (>6 feet), significant acne, mild mental retardation
XXX	47XXX	Female with increased incidence of mental retardation, menstrual abnormalities

2. In females, sex chromosome abnormalities are usually less severe than autosomal disorders because X chromosome inactivation attempts to restore the normal number of active chromosomes and because Y chromosomes contain relatively few genes.
3. Labs = karyotyping will reveal an abnormal number of sex chromosomes
4. Treatment
 - a. Turner syndrome requires regular cardiovascular assessments and estrogen and progestin replacement.
 - b. Special education or behavior counseling may be needed for mental impairments.
 - c. Generally, patients are able to live productive adult lives.


B. Trisomies

1. Syndromes that occur because of **autosomal nondisjunction** or **genetic translocation** during sex cell production that result in extra copies of autosomal genetic material (see Table 13-8)

TABLE 13-8 Autosomal Trisomies


Condition	Incidence	History and Physical
Trisomy 21 (Down syndrome)	~1/700 births (increases with maternal age)	Mental retardation , craniofacial abnormalities (protruding tongue, flat nose, small ears), vision and hearing loss, broad hands with simian crease, cervical spine instability, increased space between first and second toes; increased risk of duodenal atresia and other GI abnormalities, Alzheimer disease , ALL, and cardiac defects ; usually survive into fourth decade of life or longer
Trisomy 18	1/6,000 births (increases with maternal age)	Severe mental retardation, small mouth, limb abnormalities (malposition, rocker-bottom feet , overlapping fingers on grasp), cardiac defects, GI abnormalities; frequently fatal within first year
Trisomy 13	1/5,000 births (increases with maternal age)	Cleft lip and palate, cardiac defects, CNS defects, severe mental retardation, rounded nose, polydactyly ; frequently fatal within first year

ALL, acute lymphoblastic leukemia; CNS, central nervous system; GI, gastrointestinal.




QUICK HIT

Most pregnancies with a 45XO karyotype end in spontaneous abortion.




QUICK HIT

It was previously believed that males with an XYY genotype were at a higher risk for violent and antisocial behavior, but this trend has been disproved. They have the same rate of criminal activity as 46XY individuals with similar intelligence levels.




QUICK HIT

Down syndrome is the most common cause of **congenital** mental retardation when both genders are considered.



QUICK HIT

Nearly all trisomies result from nondisjunction during meiosis of **maternal** germ cells.



QUICK HIT

The risk of trisomy increases exponentially in women after 35 years of age.

2. **Labs**
 - a. Karyotyping can detect extra chromosomes, and genetic screening can detect translocations.
 - b. Prenatal quadruple screen can help detect potentially affected fetuses, and amniocentesis may be used to confirm the diagnosis.
3. **Treatment**
 - a. Appropriate care for associated medical conditions
 - b. Special education or selective environment used to handle mental retardation
 - c. Surgical correction of anatomic defects, when appropriate
 - d. Genetic counseling and prenatal preparation recommended for parents
 - e. Degree of mental impairment determines ability to function in society or need for constant care.

C. Deletion syndromes

1. Diseases that result from deletion of all or part of an **autosomal** chromosome (see Table 13-9)
2. Usually severe disorders because of importance of missing genetic material
3. **Labs** = high-resolution chromosome banding and fluorescence in situ hybridization techniques are useful for detecting small defects; karyotyping may detect substantial defects
4. **Treatment** = supportive care; genetic counseling recommended for parents
5. **Complications** = early mortality can result from associated abnormalities or diseases and not from deletions directly

D. Fragile X syndrome

1. X-linked chromosomal disorder associated with mental retardation in males; females may be carriers and rarely show any effects of the abnormal gene
2. End of X chromosome appears fragile and does not condense normally because of a high number of terminal CGG codon repeats.
3. **H/P** = large face with **prominent jaw and large ears**; mild hand and foot abnormalities, large testicles (i.e., macroorchidism); **mental retardation**, hyperactivity, possible seizures



QUICK HIT

Fragile X syndrome is the most common cause of familial mental retardation in men.



MNEMONIC

Remember the differences between Prader-Willi syndrome and Angelman syndrome by the mnemonics **POP** and **MAMA**: **P**rader-Willi, **O**vereating, **P**aternal and **M**aternal, **A**ngelman, **M**ood (happy), **A**nimated movements.

TABLE 13-9 Common Deletion Syndromes

Syndrome	Deletion	History and Physical
Cri du chat	Entire 5p chromosome arm	High-pitched, catlike cry , small head, low birth weight, mental retardation; early mortality can result from failure to thrive
Wolf-Hirschhorn	4p16 to end of arm	Mental retardation, multiple cranial abnormalities , seizures
Prader-Willi	15q11-15q13 (deletion of paternal allele)	Overeating, obesity , decreased muscular tone in infancy, mental retardation, small hands and feet; obesity-related complications can decrease lifespan
Angelman	15q11-15q13 (deletion of maternal allele)	Puppetlike movement, happy mood, unprovoked laughter , mental retardation, seizures
Velocardiofacial	22q11	Cleft palate , cardiac defects, mild mental retardation, significant overbite, speech disorders , T-cell deficiency, hypocalcemia, association with DiGeorge syndrome; early mortality can result from associated cardiac complications or DiGeorge syndrome
Williams	7q11.23	"Elfin facies" (short, upturned nose; long philtrum, wide mouth), short stature, mental retardation , cheerful/friendly personality, cardiac defects (supravalvular stenosis)

4. **Labs** = genetic screening detects hundreds of CGG repeats at end of X chromosome (number of repeats increases with each generation when inherited from a woman but not from a man); prenatal DNA analysis can be performed in mothers with a positive family history
5. **Treatment** = appropriate genetic counseling for parents; special education and monitoring will likely be needed by affected males

TABLE 13-10 Important Pediatric Pathologies to Remember

Condition	Brief Description	Cross-Reference Chapter
Atrial/ventricular septal defect	Opening in septum of heart allowing shunting of blood	Chapter 1, Cardiovascular Disorders
Patent ductus arteriosus	Failure of ductus arteriosus to close after birth resulting in shunting of blood	Chapter 1, Cardiovascular Disorders
Tetralogy of Fallot	Ventricular septal defect, right ventricle hypertrophy, overriding aorta, and right ventricle outflow obstruction	Chapter 1, Cardiovascular Disorders
Croup	Inflammation of larynx	Chapter 2, Pulmonary Disorders
Epiglottitis	Infection of epiglottis, leading to airway obstruction	Chapter 2, Pulmonary Disorders
Respiratory distress of the newborn	Respiratory distress in premature infants caused by surfactant deficiency	Chapter 2, Pulmonary Disorders
Cystic fibrosis	Genetic exocrine gland disorder characterized by frequent respiratory infections and malabsorption	Chapter 2, Pulmonary Disorders
Pyloric stenosis	Pyloric hypertrophy causing gastric obstruction	Chapter 3, Gastrointestinal Disorders
Intussusception	Telescoping of bowel into adjacent bowel, resulting in obstruction	Chapter 3, Gastrointestinal Disorders
Wilms tumor	Malignant renal tumor in children	Chapter 4, Genitourinary Disorders
Cretinism	Congenital hypothyroidism, leading to poor physical and mental development	Chapter 5, Endocrine Disorders
Hemolytic disease of the newborn	Neonatal hemolysis caused by Rh sensitization of the mother before birth	Chapter 6, Hematology and Oncology
Childhood leukemias	Malignant transformation of myeloid or lymphoid cells in bloodstream and bone marrow	Chapter 6, Hematology and Oncology
Neural tube disorders	Failure of neural tube to close during fetal development, leading to spectrum of neurologic disorders	Chapter 8, Neurologic Disorders
Cerebral palsy	Neurologic injury during prenatal/perinatal insult, leading to motor deficits	Chapter 8, Neurologic Disorders
Retinoblastoma	Malignant tumor of retina in children	Chapter 8, Neurologic Disorders
Developmental dysplasia of the hip	Poor development of acetabulum in fetus, leading to congenital hip dislocation	Chapter 9, Musculoskeletal Disorders
Scoliosis	Noncorrecting curvature of the spine	Chapter 9, Musculoskeletal Disorders
Acne vulgaris	Inflammation of hair follicles and sebaceous glands common in adolescence	Chapter 10, Dermatology
Precocious puberty	Pubertal development beginning before anticipated age of sexual development	Chapter 11, Gynecologic and Breast Disorders
Primary amenorrhea	Absence of menses by time of anticipated initiation with normal secondary sexual characteristic development	Chapter 11, Gynecologic and Breast Disorders
Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder	Problematic inattention and hyperactivity in school-aged children	Chapter 14, Psychiatric Disorders

Rh, rhesus factor.



I. PSYCHIATRIC EVALUATION

A. History

1. The patient's chief complaint (i.e., what he or she perceives as wrong) may **not** be the only issue that the physician needs to address.
2. Review of systems (e.g., signs and symptoms) as well as medical history should be performed to help detect if any **medical conditions** might be causing a psychiatric disturbance.
3. Family history should be explored to determine if certain psychiatric behaviors appear to be inherited.
4. Social history should address **drug use**, employment history, legal issues, **relationships**, education, sexual history, and precipitating factors.
5. Effects of perceived complaint and potential psychiatric issues on ability to function (e.g., employment, relationships, daily activity) should be discussed.
6. Family members or friends may be included in the evaluation to help obtain a history (must be done with patient's permission and confidentiality must be maintained).

B. Examination and studies

1. Use the physical examination to detect contributory and comorbid medical conditions (frequently performed by other provider before psychiatric presentation).
2. Labs can be performed to aid in detection of any medical conditions or drug use.
3. Head computed tomography (CT) or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is useful for detecting cerebral lesions when suspected.

C. Mental status examination

1. **Appearance, behavior, and cooperation**
 - a. Appearance and behavior help evaluate the patient's ability to function and mental state (e.g., depression, mania, psychosis, etc.).
 - b. Degree of cooperation with examination may suggest paranoia, personality disorders, or mood disorders.
 - c. Examination of movement should include gait, coordination, posture, and facial expressions.
2. **Speech**
 - a. Tone, rate, rhythm, articulation, and volume should be noted.
 - b. Augmented qualities may suggest mania or aggressive behavior.
 - c. Reduced qualities may suggest depressed mood, social withdrawal, or impaired consciousness.
3. **Thought process and content**
 - a. **Production of thought** abnormalities include:
 - (1) **Impoverished** thought (i.e., decreased interaction with others or difficulty reasoning)
 - (2) **Blocked** thoughts (i.e., sudden stops in thought processes)
 - (3) **"Flight of ideas"** (i.e., rapid transitions from one incomplete thought to another)



QUICK HIT

Ability to function generally refers to a patient's ability to live independently, perform normal activities of daily life, and function as a contributing member of society.

- b. **Form of thought abnormalities** include:
 - (1) **Circumstantiality** (i.e., unnecessary details but arrival at a conclusion)
 - (2) **Tangentiality** (i.e., deviations from original topic to another one)
 - (3) **Loose associations** (i.e., illogical jumps from one subject to another)
 - (4) **“Word salad”** (i.e., using individual words without logical sense or sentence form)
 - (5) **Neologisms** (i.e., using made-up words)
 - c. **Thought content** can feature:
 - (1) **Abnormal fears** (i.e., phobias)
 - (2) **Persistent thoughts** (i.e., obsessions)
 - (3) **Urges to perform a task** (i.e., compulsions)
 - (4) **False beliefs without a realistic basis** (i.e., delusions)
 - 4. **Mood and affect**
 - a. **Mood** is the patient’s **subjective** emotional state.
 - b. **Affect** is the way a patient **expresses** his or her state of mood.
 - 5. **Perception**
 - a. Processing of sensory information
 - b. **Hallucinations** and paranoid delusions are examples of abnormalities.
 - 6. **Level of consciousness**
 - a. Alertness of patient during interview
 - b. Variations during examination should be noted.
 - 7. **Insight and judgment**
 - a. **Insight** is patient’s awareness of any problems and their effect on daily life.
 - (1) Patient may not be aware that a psychiatric problem is causing limitations on function and may not realize that treatment can improve the situation.
 - (2) Frequently progresses through the stages of **precontemplation** (i.e., denial), **contemplation** (i.e., thought of addressing problem), **preparation** (i.e., forming plan to deal with problem), **action** (i.e., implementing plan), and **maintenance** (i.e., making sure changes are continued)
 - b. **Judgment** is patient’s response to a given situation.
 - 8. **Cognition**
 - a. **Orientation** is awareness of time, place, and identity.
 - b. **Memory** is the ability to retrieve mentally stored information.
 - c. **Concentration** is the ability to maintain attention to task.
 - 9. **Knowledge base**
 - a. Note logical and chronological gaps in common knowledge.
 - b. Consider patient’s intelligence (i.e., ability to learn, process, and retain new information).
 - 10. **Endings**
 - a. Suicidal or homicidal ideation
 - b. If suicidal or homicidal ideation exists, risk assessment must be performed.
 - 11. **Reliability**
 - a. Assessment of whether information gathered during interview is reliable
 - b. Consideration of inconsistencies and ability of patient to participate in examination
- D.** Psychiatric disorders can be described according to the multi-axis system (see Table 14-1).

TABLE 14-1 **DSM-IV Multi-Axis Classification of Psychiatric Disorders**

Axis	Category	Examples
I	Clinical psychiatric disorders	Mood disorders, anxiety disorders, substance abuse, delirium
II	Personality and development disorders	Borderline personality disorder, mental retardation
III	Medical conditions	Encephalopathy, neoplasm, HIV
IV	Psychosocial stresses	Support structures, social environment, occupational factors
V	Global assessment of functioning	(100-point scale that describes how well the patient has functioned in society)

DSM-IV, *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders Fourth Edition*; HIV, human immunodeficiency virus.

**MNEMONIC**

Remember the characteristics of major depressive disorder by the mnemonic **SIG E CAPS**: **S**leep disturbances (insomnia), **I**nterest loss, **G**uilt, **E**nergy reduction (fatigue), **C**oncentration impairment, **A**ppetite changes, **P**sychemotor disturbances, **S**uicidal ideation.

NEXT STEP

Always assess the depressed patient for suicidal risk.

**QUICK HIT**

Risks for **successful** suicide attempts include age >45 years, violent behavior, **drug use**, prior suicidal attempts, existence of a suicide plan, male gender, recent loss, **depression**, unemployment, or being single, widowed, or divorced.

**QUICK HIT**

Bereavement is **grief** following the death of a loved one and is characterized by sadness, difficulty concentrating, decreased appetite, insomnia, and recurrent thoughts or dreams of the deceased person. Symptoms appear periodically, can last up to 6 months, **self-resolve**, and **do not** affect ability to function.

**QUICK HIT**

Depression following the death of a loved one **differs from bereavement** in that it **lasts >6 months** and can be characterized by **detachment** from the incident, **bitterness** toward the deceased, **inability to accept life** without the deceased, frequent **agitation**, or **distrust** of others.

**II. MOOD DISORDERS****A. Major depressive disorder**

1. Experience of significant depression that
 - a. Is not attributable to drug use, medical conditions, or bereavement
 - b. Has an impact on the patient's ability to function
 - c. Lasts >2 weeks
2. Following resolution, these depressive episodes have a 50% chance of recurring.
3. Infrequently, patients may show signs of psychosis.
4. Pathology is not fully understood but is related to central nervous system (CNS) serotonin activity; CNS norepinephrine and dopamine may also be involved.
5. **History and physical (H/P)**
 - a. Diagnosis requires presence of **five of the following symptoms**, including either depressed mood or anhedonia (i.e., loss of interest in previously pleasurable activity) **lasting >2 weeks**:
 - (1) **Depressed mood or anhedonia**
 - (2) Change in sleep patterns (e.g., insomnia, hypersomnia)
 - (3) Feelings of worthlessness
 - (4) Fatigue
 - (5) Inability to concentrate
 - (6) Changes in appetite (usually reduction)
 - (7) Psychomotor disturbances (i.e., impaired motor ability related to mental state)
 - (8) **Suicidal ideation**
6. **Treatment**
 - a. **Psychotherapy** (i.e., cognitive or behavioral counseling and instruction designed to provide insight into condition and modify behavior) and **pharmacologic therapy** are initial treatments (combined or alone) (see Table 14-2).
 - b. Electroconvulsive therapy (ECT) can be used for refractory or severe cases to decrease frequency of major depressive episodes.

B. Dysthymic disorder

1. Feelings of depression on more days than not for >2 years with **no history of major depressive episodes**
2. Milder but more chronic than major depressive disorder
3. **H/P** = Diagnosis requires **depressed mood** plus two or more of the symptoms below for most days for >2 years and no history of major depressive episodes:
 - a. Feelings of hopelessness
 - b. Change in sleep patterns
 - c. Change in appetite
 - d. Fatigue
 - e. Inability to concentrate
 - f. Low self-esteem
4. **Treatment** = psychotherapy is initial treatment; pharmacologic agents can be used for continued depressive symptoms

C. Bipolar disorder

1. Cyclic **depression** and **mania** (or hypomania) that impair the patient's ability to function during episodes; patient is able to function normally between episodes
2. Types
 - a. Bipolar I: depression with the history of at least one manic episode
 - b. Bipolar II: depression occurs with at least one hypomanic episode
3. **H/P** = depressive episodes are similar to those seen with major depressive disorder
 - a. **Manic episodes**
 - (1) **Elation** or irritability lasting >1 week
 - (2) Three or more of the following symptoms: grandiosity, pressured speech, decreased need for sleep, flight of ideas, easy distractibility, increased goal-oriented activity, increased risky pleasurable activity
 - (3) Episodes cause **significant impairment** of ability to function.

TABLE 14-2 Antidepressant Medications

Drug/Class	Mechanism	Indications	Adverse Effects
Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) (e.g., fluoxetine, sertraline, paroxetine, citalopram, escitalopram)	Block presynaptic serotonin reuptake to increase synaptic free-serotonin concentration and postsynaptic serotonin receptor occupancy	First-line treatment for depression; anxiety	Require 3–4 wk of administration before they take effect; sexual dysfunction, decreased platelet aggregation, may increase risk of suicidal ideation in adolescents
Selective serotonin-norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors (SNRIs) (e.g., venlafaxine, duloxetine)	Inhibit reuptake of both serotonin and norepinephrine in similar fashion to tricyclic antidepressants (TCAs)	First-line treatment for depression with comorbid neurologic pain; second-line treatment for patients failing SSRIs	Nausea, dizziness, insomnia, sedation, constipation, HTN ; side effects more benign than TCAs
TCAs (e.g., imipramine, amitriptyline, desipramine, nortriptyline)	Block norepinephrine and serotonin reuptake to potentiate postsynaptic receptor activity	Second-line treatment for depression; can be useful in patients with comorbid neurologic pain	Easy to overdose and may be fatal at only five times therapeutic dose (due to cardiac QT interval prolongation that causes arrhythmias), sedation, weight gain, sexual dysfunction, anticholinergic symptoms
Monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs) (e.g., phenelzine, isocarboxazid, tranylcypromine, selegiline)	Block monoamine oxidase activity to inhibit deamination of serotonin, norepinephrine, and dopamine and increase levels of these substances	Second-line treatment for depression; can be particularly useful in treatment of depression with neurologic symptoms or in refractory cases	Dry mouth, indigestion, fatigue, headache, dizziness ; consumption of foods containing tyramine (cheese, aged meats, beer) can cause hypertensive crisis
Bupropion	Inhibits reuptake of dopamine and norepinephrine	Depression with fatigue and difficulty concentrating or comorbid ADHD; smoking cessation	Insomnia, weight loss, headache; no sexual dysfunction
Trazodone	Poorly understood, but related to serotonin activity	Depression with significant insomnia	Hypotension, nausea, sedation , priapism; seizure risk at high doses
Mirtazapine	Blocks α_2 -receptors and serotonin receptors to increase adrenergic neurotransmission	Depression with insomnia	Dry mouth, weight gain, sedation
St. John's wort (<i>Hypericum perforatum</i>)	Decreases reuptake of serotonin and, to a lesser extent, norepinephrine and dopamine	Used as first-line agent in Europe but only considered an alternative therapy in United States	GI distress, dizziness, sedation; drug interactions common

ADHD, attention deficit hyperactivity disorder; GI, gastrointestinal; HTN, hypertension.

b. Hypomanic episodes

- (1) **Elation** or irritability lasting at least 4 days
- (2) Three or more of the following symptoms: grandiosity, pressured speech, **decreased need for sleep**, flight of ideas, **easy distractibility**, psychomotor agitation, engaging in risky pleasurable activity
- (3) Episode **does not** cause significant impairment of ability to function.

c. Episodes cannot be caused by substance use or a medical condition.

d. Diagnosis requires history of **at least one** manic or hypomanic episode and recurrent **major depressive episodes**.

4. Treatment

a. Patients should be hospitalized if psychotic or judged to be a risk to themselves or others until they can be stabilized.

b. **Mood stabilizers** (e.g., lithium, lamotrigine, atypical antipsychotics) are used to control and prevent manic and hypomanic episodes and to treat depression.

c. Lithium is frequently the first-line drug for long-term treatment of mania.

(1) Mechanism is unknown but likely involves inositol triphosphate activity.

(2) Adverse effects include hypothyroidism, polyuria (nephrogenic diabetes insipidus), tremor, weight gain, renal insufficiency, teratogenesis, and confusion.

d. Electroconvulsive therapy can be used for severe depression.



QUICK HIT

76% of children with dysthymic disorder develop major depressive disorder, and 13% develop bipolar disorder.



MNEMONIC

Remember the characteristics of manic episodes by the mnemonic **DIG FAST**: **D**istractibility, **I**nsomnia, **G**randiosity (feelings of), **F**light of ideas, **A**ctivity (increase in goal oriented), **S**peech (pressured), **T**aking risks.


**NEXT
STEP**

A history of **mania** must be ruled out by a thorough history in a patient suspected of having major depressive disorder before antidepressants are prescribed. **Antidepressants** given to a patient with **bipolar disorder** who is **not** taking mood stabilizers can induce a **manic episode**.

**QUICK HIT**

Adjustment disorder differs from **bereavement** in that the patient's ability to function normally is **impaired** in the **former** but **not** in the **latter**

**QUICK HIT**

Panic disorder:

- Increased incidence in patients with **mitral valve prolapse**
- Occasionally associated with **agoraphobia** (fear of public places)

D. Cyclothymia

1. Rapid cycling of hypomania and mild depression lasting >2 years without a period of normal mood >2 months
2. Mood level does not impair ability to function.
3. **H/P** = symptoms of dysthymia that alternate with hypomanic episodes
4. **Treatment** = psychotherapy or mood stabilizers

E. Adjustment disorder with depressed mood

1. Behavioral and mood changes that occur within 3 months of a **stressful event** (e.g., death in family, assault, divorce) and cause **significant impairment** of ability to function
2. **H/P**
 - a. **Distress in excess** of what is expected following a stressful event, inability to concentrate, **self-isolation**, change in sleep patterns, change in appetite
 - b. Symptoms **begin within 3 months** of stressful event and **end 6 months** after end of stressor.
3. **Treatment** = psychotherapy; antidepressants can be used if psychotherapy alone is unable to effect normal daily functioning

**III. ANXIETY DISORDERS****A. Panic disorder**

1. Experience of recurrent, spontaneous panic attacks with associated fear that these episodes will occur; typically begins in late adolescence
2. **H/P**
 - a. **Recurrent panic attacks** that occur without warning and last up to 30 minutes and consist of extreme anxiety, feelings of impending danger, chest pain, shortness of breath, palpitations, diaphoresis, nausea, dizziness, feeling of losing control, or chills or hot flashes
 - b. Diagnosis requires a history of recurrent episodes plus a **persistent fear that attacks will happen again**.
3. **Treatment**
 - a. Psychotherapy may help alleviate fear between attacks and decrease panic attack occurrence.
 - b. Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) and serotonin-norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors (SNRIs) are used for long-term therapy in patients with frequent attacks; tricyclic antidepressants (TCAs) are considered a second-line long-term treatment.
 - c. Benzodiazepines can be used to break attacks once they have started (see Table 14-3).

B. Specific phobia

1. Fear of a **particular object, activity, or situation** that causes the patient to avoid feared subject; typically begins in childhood

TABLE 14-3 Anxiolytic Medications

Drug	Mechanism	Indications	Adverse Effects
Benzodiazepines (e.g., alprazolam, clonazepam, diazepam, lorazepam)	Increase GABA inhibition of neuronal firing	Alprazolam has a rapid onset and short half-life and is particularly useful to break panic attacks; clonazepam and diazepam are more useful for prolonged therapy	Sedation, confusion; stopping alprazolam usage is associated with withdrawal symptoms of restlessness, confusion, and insomnia (especially with frequent use)
Buspirone	Unclear, but related to serotonin and dopamine receptors	Anxiety disorders in which abuse or sedation is a concern	Headaches, dizziness, nausea

GABA, γ -aminobutyric acid.

2. H/P = encountering feared subject incites panic attack, the patient makes great effort to avoid feared subject and realizes that behavior is irrational; some patients may experience vasovagal response (i.e., fainting) during episodes
3. **Treatment** = psychotherapy involving desensitization through repeated exposure, relaxation techniques, hypnosis, or insight modification

C. Social phobia

1. Excessive fear of **social situations** and anxiety that results when the patient encounters such situations; typically begins in childhood
2. H/P = social situations (e.g., performances, conversations) cause anxiety that can be mild or severe (i.e., panic attacks); patients avoid these situations and have a persistent fear of being embarrassed
3. **Treatment**
 - a. Psychotherapy
 - b. β -Blockers can be used in mild cases to prevent tachycardia and diaphoresis.
 - c. SSRIs frequently are effective at reducing anxiety and permitting social interactions; monamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs) can be used in refractory cases.
 - d. Benzodiazepines are an alternative option for reducing acute anxiety.

D. Obsessive-compulsive disorder (OCD)


1. Significant, recurrent **obsessions** (e.g., feeling unclean, need for organization, recurrent images) and **compulsions** (e.g., counting, frequent or repetitive hand-washing, placing items in a certain order) that **affect daily life** and function; typically begins in adolescence
2. H/P
 - a. Defined recurrent obsessions and compulsions that significantly affect ability to function and may take up considerable time in daily activity
 - b. Patients are aware of behaviors but feel unable to control them.
 - c. Stressful events can exacerbate behaviors.
 - d. Diagnosis requires presence of obsessions or compulsions that significantly affect daily life.
3. **Treatment** = psychotherapy and pharmacologic therapy (SSRIs or clomipramine) help limit and control behavior

E. Post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD)

1. Syndrome of anxiety symptoms that occurs following **exposure to a significantly stressful event**; symptoms typically begin within 3 months of event
2. H/P
 - a. **Vivid dreams** or **recurrent intrusive thoughts** of traumatic event
 - b. Avoidance of activity or settings associated with event, anhedonia, feelings of **detachment**, increased state of arousal, survivor guilt, social withdrawal
 - c. Diagnosis requires patient to have been **exposed to a traumatic event** that caused significant distress, **symptoms of reliving the event** through dreams or intrusive thoughts, **avoidance** of associations with the event, and **increased arousal** (e.g., insomnia, irritability, difficulty concentrating) lasting >1 month in acute cases and >3 months in chronic cases.
3. **Treatment** = SSRIs, MAOIs, or mood stabilizers; psychotherapy may also be helpful in eliminating intrusive thoughts


F. Generalized anxiety disorder

1. Excessive, **persistent** anxiety that impairs ability to function and occurs more days than not for >6 months; typically begins in early adulthood
2. **Risk factors** = women twice as likely affected than men
3. H/P
 - a. Feeling of restlessness or being on edge, inability to concentrate, restlessness, insomnia, irritability, muscle tension
 - b. Diagnosis requires excessive anxiety for most days, impairment of ability to function, and three of the symptoms listed in a. for >6 months.
4. **Treatment** = psychotherapy and anxiolytics improve symptoms (see Table 14-3); SSRIs and SNRIs are emerging as a promising treatment because of their lower rate of side effects compared with benzodiazepines



QUICK HIT

Patients with **OCD** may be at a higher risk for **tic disorders**.



QUICK HIT

It is **very difficult** to commit suicide using an overdose of benzodiazepines because their lethal dose is >1,000 times the therapeutic dose. **Flumazenil** is a benzodiazepine antagonist that can reverse the effects of an overdose.

**QUICK HIT**

Patients with schizophrenia are at a high risk for **substance abuse** (20%–70% cases) and **suicide** (10% cases).

**QUICK HIT**

High-potency antipsychotics have **more extrapyramidal** side effects and **fewer anticholinergic** side effects. Low-potency antipsychotics have **fewer extrapyramidal** side effects and **more anticholinergic** side effects.

NEXT STEP

Tardive dyskinesia is a complication of antipsychotic medications that begins **after several months** of therapy and is characterized by **repetitive facial movements** (e.g., chewing, lip smacking). It should be treated by stopping the offending drug if the patient's condition allows, but it may be **irreversible**.

NEXT STEP

Neuroleptic malignant syndrome is:

- An uncommon complication of antipsychotic medications that starts within **days** of usage and carries a high mortality rate.
- Characterized by **high fever, muscle rigidity**, decreased consciousness, and increased blood pressure and heart rate.
- Treated by immediately **stopping** use of the drug and administering **dantrolene**.

**IV. PSYCHOTIC DISORDERS****A. Schizophrenia**

1. Severe psychotic disorder that causes significant limitations in ability to function; typically begins in late adolescence
2. **Risk factors** = family history, maternal malnutrition or illness during pregnancy; significantly higher rate in homeless and indigent patients likely secondary to their inability to function in society
3. **H/P** = periodic psychotic exacerbations, with increased severity of symptoms; baseline function is generally impaired and worsens over time
 - a. **Positive symptoms:** **delusions, hallucinations** (usually auditory), **disorganized thoughts and behavior**, thought broadcasting (i.e., belief that others can read the patient's thoughts or that thoughts are being transmitted to others), ideas of reference (i.e., belief that hidden meanings are found in common items)
 - b. **Negative symptoms:** **social withdrawal, flat affect** (i.e., displaying little emotional response to stimuli), apathy, anhedonia, lack of motivation
 - c. **Cognitive symptoms:** attention deficits, inability to organize or form abstractions, poor memory
 - d. Patterns of certain symptoms can classify disease into subtypes (see Table 14-4).
 - e. Diagnosis requires presence of two or more symptoms (e.g., delusions, hallucinations, disorganized speech, disorganized or catatonic behavior, or negative symptoms), presence of symptoms for at least 1 month within a 6-month period, and impaired social function for >6 months.
4. **Treatment**
 - a. **Antipsychotics** (also known as neuroleptics) are the mainstay of therapy (see Table 14-5).
 - b. Psychotic exacerbations may require hospitalization.
 - c. Psychotherapy may be helpful in teaching the patient how to recognize symptoms.
5. **Complications**
 - a. Generally poor prognosis, with gradual deterioration over several years in ability to function in society
 - b. Good prognostic factors include a history of mood disorder or substance abuse, predominantly positive symptoms, and good support systems.
 - c. Prognostic factors for a worse outcome include predominantly negative symptoms, motor or sensory neurologic signs, and poor support systems.

B. Other psychotic disorders

1. Psychotic disorders that are less common than schizophrenia but can have several similarities (see Table 14-6)
2. Not from organic causes
3. Differs from schizophrenia by being of shorter duration (e.g., schizophreniform or brief psychotic disorder), accompanied by mood disorder (e.g., schizoaffective disorder), defined by the presence of delusions only (e.g., delusional disorder) or involving multiple persons (e.g., shared psychotic disorder)

TABLE 14-4 Subtypes of Schizophrenia

Subtype	Description
Paranoid	Excessive paranoia; hallucinations and ideas of reference may be particularly severe
Catatonic	Rigid posturing, poor response to stimuli, poor interaction
Disorganized	Flat affect, disorganized speech, inappropriate and disorganized behavior
Undifferentiated	Does not fit into other subtype descriptions
Residual	Previously diagnosed schizophrenia with resolution of positive symptoms but lingering negative symptoms

TABLE 14-5 Antipsychotic Medications

Drug	Mechanism	Indications	Adverse Effects
Atypical antipsychotics (clozapine, risperidone, olanzapine, sertindole, quetiapine, ziprasidone, paliperidone, aripiprazole)	Block dopamine and serotonin receptors	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • First-line drugs for maintenance therapy for psychotic disorders • Clozapine is the most effective antipsychotic but is reserved for refractory psychosis because of risk of agranulocytosis 	Anticholinergic effects, weight gain, arrhythmias, seizures; clozapine carries risk of agranulocytosis ; frequency and severity of side effects are significantly lower than seen with traditional neuroleptics
High-potency neuroleptics (haloperidol, droperidol, fluphenazine, loxapine, thiothixene, perphenazine, trifluoperazine)	Block D₂ dopamine receptors	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Strong positive symptoms • Emergency control of psychosis or agitation • Frequently second-line drugs for maintenance therapy 	Extrapyramidal effects (dystonia, parkinsonism, akinesia, akathisia), tardive dyskinesia , sexual dysfunction, hyperprolactinemia, neuroleptic malignant syndrome , seizures, arrhythmias; fewer anticholinergic effects
Low-potency neuroleptics (thioridazine, chlorpromazine)	Block D₂ dopamine receptors	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Strong positive symptoms • Frequently second-line drugs for maintenance therapy 	Fewer extrapyramidal effects than high-potency neuroleptics, but more anticholinergic effects (confusion, constipation, urinary retention, hypotension)

TABLE 14-6 Psychotic Disorders Not Classified as Schizophrenia

Disorder	Description	Treatment
Schizophreniform	Symptoms similar to schizophrenia but last >1 month and <6 months ; patients return to normal function following resolution of psychotic episode; two-thirds of patients will go on to develop true schizophrenia in future	Antipsychotics, psychotherapy
Schizoaffective	Presence of mood disorder and psychotic symptoms , but not meeting criteria for either diagnosis alone; diagnosis requires presence of psychotic symptoms during normal mood for >2 wk	Combination of antipsychotics with mood stabilizers and/or antidepressants; psychotherapy is a useful adjunct
Delusional	Presence of one or more distinct realistic delusions lasting >1 month without any other psychotic symptoms; patient is able to function normally; unrealistic delusions are classified as schizophreniform disorder or schizophrenia	Antipsychotics, psychotherapy; SSRIs are helpful when delusions are of somatic nature
Brief psychotic	Sudden onset of psychotic symptoms (possibly stress related) that last <1 month	Psychotherapy or short-term antipsychotics; hospitalization necessary if symptoms affect ability to function
Shared psychotic (folie à deux)	Second patient accepts and becomes involved in delusions of a patient with pre-existing delusions	Group psychotherapy, antipsychotics; second patient's acceptance of delusions often wanes if separated from primary patient

SSRIs, selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors.

V. PERSONALITY DISORDERS

A. Persistent behavior that deviates significantly from cultural norms

1. Manifested through perception of others, affect, interpersonal relationships, and impulse control
2. Is **persistent** and **inflexible** despite situation
3. Leads to impaired ability to function
4. Begins in late adolescence
5. Is not attributable to drug use, medical condition, or other psychiatric disorder



QUICK HIT

A patient who exhibits mild signs of a personality disorder but is able to function normally in society is said to have a **personality trait** and may not require treatment.

B. Clusters (see Table 14-7)

1. Classification system of personality disorders
 - a. Cluster A: odd or eccentric (“weird”)
 - b. Cluster B: dramatic or emotional (“wild”)
 - c. Cluster C: anxious or fearful (“wimpy or worried”)
2. Personality disorders not meeting criteria for any of the defined variants are classified as “personality disorder not otherwise specified (NOS).”

TABLE 14-7 Personality Disorders

Disorder	Characteristics	Treatment
Cluster A		
Paranoid	Persistent distrust of others, others' actions consistently interpreted as harmful or deceptive, reluctant to share information, frequent misinterpretation of comments, frequent angry reactions, common suspicions of partner fidelity	Supportive, nonjudgmental psychotherapy, low-dose antipsychotics
Schizoid	Inability to form close relationships, social detachment, emotionally restricted, anhedonia, flat affect, lack of sexual interests	Antipsychotics initially to resolve behavior, supportive psychotherapy focusing on achieving comfortable interactions with others
Schizotypal	Paranoia, ideas of reference, eccentric and inappropriate behavior, social anxiety, disorganized speech, odd beliefs	Supportive psychotherapy focusing on recognition of reality, low-dose antipsychotics or anxiolytics
Cluster B		
Antisocial	Aggressive behavior toward people and animals, destruction of property, illegal activity, pathologic lying, irritability, risk-taking behavior, lack of responsibility, lack of remorse for actions; patient >18 yr of age, history of conduct disorder prior to 15 yr of age; more common in men	Structured environment, psychotherapy with defined limit-setting may be helpful in controlling behavior
Borderline	Unstable relationships, feelings of emptiness, fear of abandonment, poor self-esteem, impulsivity, mood lability, suicidal ideation, inappropriate irritability, paranoia, splitting (seeing others as either all good or all bad); much more common in women	Extensive psychotherapy using multiple techniques combined with low-dose antipsychotics, SSRIs, or mood stabilizers
Histrionic	Dire need for attention, inappropriate seductive or theatrical behavior, emotional lability, shallow relationships, dramatic speech, uses appearance to draw attention to self, easily influenced by others, believes relationships more intimate than they are	Long-term psychotherapy focusing on relationship development and limit-setting
Narcissistic	Grandiosity, fantasies of success, manipulation of others, expectation of admiration, arrogance, sense of entitlement, believes self to be “special,” lacks empathy, envious of others	Psychotherapy focusing on acceptance of shortcomings
Cluster C		
Avoidant	Fear of criticism and embarrassment, social withdrawal, fear of intimacy, poor self-esteem, reluctance to try new activities, preoccupied by fear of rejection, inhibited by feelings of inadequacy	Psychotherapy (initially individualized, then group therapy later) focusing on self-confidence combined with antidepressants or anxiolytics
Dependent	Difficulty making decisions, fear of responsibility, difficulty expressing disagreement, lack of confidence in judgment, need for others' support, fear of being alone, requires constant close relationships	Psychotherapy focusing on developing social skills and development of decisive behavior
Obsessive-compulsive	Preoccupied with details, perfectionistic, excessively devoted to work, inflexible in beliefs, miserly, difficulty working with others, hoarding of worthless objects, stubbornness	Psychotherapy focusing on accepting alternative ideas and working with others

SSRIs, selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors.

VI. SUBSTANCE ABUSE

- A. Substance use:** occasional use of a substance (e.g., alcohol, drug) without negative consequences associated with use
- B. Intoxication:** reversible CNS effect of a substance following usage
- C. Substance abuse:** repetitive use of a substance that results in negative consequences
- D. Physical dependence:** physical adaptation to repetitive substance use in which abrupt cessation or antagonist use causes a withdrawal syndrome
- E. Psychological dependence:** perceived need for a given substance because of its associated positive effects or because of fear of effects from lack of use
- F. Addiction:** chronic substance use leading to physical and psychological dependence, development of tolerance (i.e., increasing doses required for desired effect), feelings of loss of control over use, and a significant amount of time devoted to procuring the substance (see Table 14-8)

NEXT STEP

Use the **CAGE** questionnaire to screen for drug abuse (especially alcohol). More than one “yes” response to any of these conditions should raise suspicion for excessive use: desire to **Cut down** on usage; **Annoyance** over others’ suggestions to stop usage; **Guilt** over usage; drug use on waking (i.e., **Eye-opener**).

TABLE 14-8 Characteristics of Substance Abuse

Substance	Intoxication	Withdrawal	Complications of Chronic Use	Treatment
Alcohol	Decreased inhibition , slurred speech, impaired coordination , inattentiveness, decreased consciousness, retrograde amnesia	Diaphoresis, tachycardia , anxiety, nausea, vomiting, tremor, delirium tremens (seizures, delirium), tactile hallucinations	Malnutrition (vitamin B ₁₂ , thiamine), encephalopathy (Wernicke-Korsakoff), accidents , suicide, cirrhosis , GI bleeding, aspiration pneumonia; higher incidence of abuse in patients with other psychiatric disorders	Supplemental nutrition, supportive psychotherapy or group counseling (Alcoholics Anonymous, etc.), naltrexone decreases cravings, disulfiram causes unpleasant nausea and vomiting if taken before alcohol consumption, benzodiazepines prevent delirium tremens during withdrawal
Amphetamines (methamphetamine, methylphenidate, etc.)	Hyperactivity , psychomotor agitation, pupillary dilation , tachycardia, HTN, psychosis	Anxiety, depression, increased appetite, fatigue	Psychosis, depression, fatigue, parkinsonian symptoms	Rehabilitative counseling, anti-psychotics, benzodiazepines
Benzodiazepines (alprazolam, etc.)	Sedation, amnesia, slurred speech, decreased coordination	Anxiety, insomnia, tremor, seizures	Memory loss	Rehabilitative counseling, anticonvulsants
Caffeine	Insomnia , restlessness, tremor, anxiety, tachycardia	Headaches, fatigue, inattentiveness	GI irritation, fatigue, inattentiveness	Gradual reduction in usage
Cocaine	Euphoria , tachycardia, psychomotor agitation, pupillary dilation, hypertension, paranoia, grandiosity	Sedation, depression , psychomotor retardation, fatigue, anhedonia	Arrhythmias, sudden cardiac death , stroke, suicidal ideation, inattentiveness	Reduction of hypertension, antipsychotics, benzodiazepines, rehabilitative counseling
Hallucinogens (LSD, mescaline, ketamine)	Hallucinations , delusions, anxiety, paranoia, tachycardia, pupillary dilation, tremors	Minimal	Psychosis, “flashbacks”	Remove patient from dangerous environment until intoxication resolves, antipsychotics
Marijuana	Euphoria , paranoia, psychomotor retardation, impaired judgment, increased appetite, conjunctival injection , dry mouth	Irritability, depression, insomnia, nausea, tremor	Amotivational syndrome , infertility, depression, psychosis	Rehabilitative counseling, antipsychotics

(continued)

TABLE 14-8 Characteristics of Substance Abuse (Continued)

Substance	Intoxication	Withdrawal	Complications of Chronic Use	Treatment
Nicotine (and other substances found in tobacco and cigarettes)	Restlessness, nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain	Insomnia, weight gain, irritability, inability to concentrate, nervousness, headaches	Smoking (but not necessarily nicotine) increases the risk of various cancers , COPD , respiratory infections, atherosclerosis	Counseling, transdermal (patch) or mucosal (gum) nicotine to reduce cravings for cigarettes, hypnosis, varenicline , bupropion
Opioids	Euphoria , slurred speech, pupillary constriction , inattentiveness, decreased consciousness, respiratory depression	Depression, anxiety, stomach cramps , nausea, vomiting , diarrhea, myalgias	Constipation, increased risk of bloodborne infection with IV drug use	Methadone therapy , inpatient rehabilitative counseling, naltrexone may prevent euphoria with use; naloxone is opioid antagonist used for acute overdose with significant respiratory depression
Phencyclidine (PCP)	Euphoria, impulsiveness, aggressive behavior , nystagmus (vertical and horizontal) , hyperreflexia	Sudden violent behavior , variable levels of consciousness	Psychosis, memory deficits, impaired cognitive function, inability to retrieve words	Isolated containment until after resolution of intoxication, benzodiazepines, antipsychotics, ascorbic acid

COPD, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease; GI, gastrointestinal; HTN, hypertension; IV, intravenous; LSD, lysergic acid diethylamide.

NEXT STEP

Patients with anorexia nervosa should be screened for **depression**, and SSRIs should be included in treatment if depression is diagnosed.

QUICK HIT

Anorexia nervosa carries a 6% 10-year mortality rate caused by disease complications or suicide.

QUICK HIT

Refeeding syndrome results from the sudden shift from fat to carbohydrate metabolism in severe anorexics who resume eating and is characterized by **hypophosphatemia**, **cardiovascular collapse**, **rhabdomyolysis**, **confusion**, and **seizures**.

VII. EATING DISORDERS

A. Anorexia nervosa

1. Eating disorder in which patients **refuse to maintain normal body weight** through fasting, excessive exercise, or purging
2. Patients have distorted body image and believe that they are overweight.
3. **Risk factors** = adolescence, high socioeconomic status; 90% of cases are women
4. **H/P** = body weight <85% ideal body weight, **fixation on prevention of weight gain**, severe body image disturbance, amenorrhea, cold intolerance, hypothermia, dry skin, lanugo hair growth (i.e., fine, short hair similar to that in the newborn), bradycardia
5. **Treatment**
 - a. Inpatient treatment is frequently required to aid in weight gain.
 - b. Psychotherapy involving family that focuses on body image, weight gain; sufficient caloric intake is needed to maintain long-term control
 - c. Pharmacologic therapy has not been proved beneficial, but anxiolytics before meals may help decrease anxiety associated with eating.
6. **Complications** = electrolyte abnormalities, arrhythmias (especially ventricular types), refeeding syndrome

B. Bulimia

1. Eating disorder in which patients **feel lack of control over eating behavior** and engage in binge eating but maintain **normal body weight** through purging, excessive exercise, or laxative use
2. **H/P**
 - a. Episodes of binge eating accompanied by a sense of loss of control
 - b. Episodes of hinging are followed by some type of compensatory behavior (e.g., purging, excessive exercise, laxative use).
 - c. Binging–compensation episodes occur at least two times per week for >3 months.
 - d. Dissatisfaction with weight and body shape
 - e. Dental enamel erosion (from repeated vomiting), scars on hands (from inducing vomiting), parotid enlargement, oligomenorrhea
3. **Treatment** = psychotherapy directed at body image and reduction of hinging–compensation cycles; SSRIs, TCAs, or buspirone help in behavior modification



VIII. SOMATOFORM AND FACTITIOUS DISORDERS

A. Somatization disorder

1. Multiple recurrent physical symptoms that are **unintentional** and **cannot be explained by any medical condition**; typically begin in young adulthood
2. **Risk factors** = women five times more likely than men
3. **H/P** = diagnosis requires symptoms in four unrelated regions:
 - a. Two gastrointestinal (GI) symptoms: nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, indigestion
 - b. One sexual symptom: decreased libido, erectile dysfunction, menorrhagia
 - c. One pseudoneurologic symptom: ataxia, weakness, urinary retention, paresthesias, hallucinations
 - d. Pain at multiple body regions
 - e. Symptoms cannot be explained by medical conditions and are unintentional.
4. **Treatment** = psychotherapy focusing on maintenance of function may help alleviate symptoms; patients may be resistant to psychiatric treatment

B. Conversion disorder

1. Development of **sensory or motor deficits following stress** without associated medical conditions or intention
2. **H/P** = onset of sensory (e.g., paresthesias, blindness, deafness) or motor (e.g., paralysis, loss of voice) deficits or pseudoseizures that generally **follow stressful situations**; symptoms cannot be linked to any findings on examination but cannot be shown to be intentional
3. **Treatment** = psychotherapy helps identify stressors with reactions and encourages normal responses to stressful situations; frequent self-resolution of symptoms

C. Hypochondriasis

1. Excessive fear that a minor symptom represents a serious illness that limits daily function; typically begins in middle age
2. **H/P**
 - a. **Preoccupation with fear of having a serious illness** that persists despite a healthy medical evaluation; fear impairs ability to function normally
 - b. Symptoms consistent with patient's perception of disease (not necessarily consistent with true symptoms of condition)
 - c. Diagnosis requires above-mentioned symptoms lasting >6 months.
3. **Treatment**
 - a. Regular physician visits help to alleviate fears.
 - b. Group psychotherapy for support and cognitive psychotherapy focusing on realistic beliefs about disease; patient frequently resistant to psychiatric treatment
 - c. Treatment of comorbid mood and anxiety disorders with antidepressants and anxiolytics can improve patient concerns.
 - d. Primary care physician should work with psychiatrist to review therapies.

D. Pain disorder

1. Development of a **specific pain complaint** that cannot be explained entirely by a medical condition
2. **H/P** = pain in a focused site that becomes the focal complaint and cannot be shown to be intentionally produced; presence of stressors somehow related to occurrence of pain
3. **Treatment** = psychotherapy with biofeedback can reduce symptoms; hypnosis may be useful for eliminating symptoms; TCAs and SSRIs may be helpful

E. Body dysmorphic disorder

1. Preoccupation with an imagined defect in appearance that limits ability to function; typically begins in adolescence
2. **H/P** = patient imagines physical defect in distinct body region, frequently presents to dermatologist or plastic surgeon to "improve" defect, and continues to imagine defect following treatment

NEXT STEP

Conversion disorder and pain disorder can be distinguished from fibromyalgia by their relation to stressful events.

QUICK HIT

Analgesic medications **will not** relieve the pain symptoms when a genuine pain disorder exists.


**NEXT
STEP**

Munchausen syndrome *by proxy* is a disorder in which **parents** try to make their **children** appear to have a certain disease. It is considered **child abuse** and must be reported to the appropriate authorities.

3. **Treatment**
 - a. Psychotherapy addressing self-perception
 - b. Antidepressants may help in refractory cases.
 - c. Avoid performing needless surgery.

F. Factitious disorder (Munchausen syndrome)

1. Intentional induction of disease symptoms or signs by a patient that has no clear benefit to patient
2. Can involve any organ system
3. **H/P**
 - a. Patient reports symptoms or signs of a given disease and attempts to induce disease process (e.g., self-injections of insulin or excrement, attempts to become infected by a pathogen, induction of GI illness, etc.).
 - b. Diagnosis requires intentional production of symptoms or signs by patient, denial of intention, wandering of patient from one physician to another, and no clear incentive for patient's actions.
4. **Treatment**
 - a. Patient denial makes treatment difficult.
 - b. No unnecessary therapies should be administered.
 - c. Attempt to limit medical care to one physician and one hospital.
 - d. If patient is willing, psychotherapy involving family may be beneficial.

G. Malingering

1. Intentional induction of disease or reporting of symptoms by a patient who will benefit from appearing ill
2. **H/P** = patient reports symptoms for a certain disease to realize a personal gain (e.g., time off from work, financial compensation, particular therapy, etc.); patients will frequently leave site of care if they are confronted or realize that a goal is unattainable
3. **Treatment** = avoid necessary treatment; report suspicious activity to higher authority (e.g., psychiatrist, hospital patient data base, ethics committee)


QUICK HIT

Elderly patients are particularly susceptible to delirium during inpatient stays.


QUICK HIT

Delirium differs from "**sundowning**," the deterioration of behavior during evening hours in patients with dementia, in that it occurs in patients without a history of dementia and can be linked to a medical or substance-related cause.


IX. DELIRIUM AND DEMENTIA
A. Delirium

1. **Altered state of consciousness**
 - a. Secondary to
 - (1) **Drugs** (e.g., alcohol, corticosteroids, benzodiazepines, oral contraceptive pills, antipsychotics, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs [NSAIDs], chemotherapeutics, isoniazid, anticholinergics, antihistamines, antiarrhythmics)
 - (2) Infection, **hypoxia**, or CNS abnormalities
 - b. It is frequently quickly **reversible** once the underlying cause is identified and treated.
2. **H/P**
 - a. **Key features** (see Table 14-9)
 - (1) Altered level of consciousness with inattentiveness and confusion
 - (2) Change in cognition is not caused by preexisting dementia.
 - (3) Changes in cognition develop quickly and fluctuate over course of day.
 - (4) Changes are related to disease, medication, or drug use.
 - b. Psychomotor agitation or retardation, disturbance of sleep patterns
 - c. Emotional instability
 - d. Mini Mental State Examination (MMSE) can be used to test cognitive function (a score <25 indicates dysfunction) (see Figure 14-1).
3. **Labs** = should address potential metabolic or pharmacologic causes
4. **Radiology** = CT can be used to assess CNS insult
5. **Treatment**
 - a. **Treat underlying cause.**
 - b. Reorientation through observation, reassurance, normalization of sleep-wake cycles, and decreasing excess stimuli improves behavior.

TABLE 14-9 Comparison of Delirium and Dementia

Characteristic	Delirium	Dementia
Onset	Acute	Gradual
Daily course	Fluctuating cognitive function and behavior	Generally consistent; sundowning common
Level of consciousness	Decreased	Normal
Orientation	Aware of self; impaired for time and place	Generally impaired
Thought production	Disorganized, flight of ideas	Impoverished
Psychotic features	Delusions, hallucinations	Minimal
Memory	Short-term impairment	Short- and long-term impairment
Prognosis	Reversible	Usually irreversible

- c. Avoid restraints because they frequently exacerbate delirium (use only if patient is at danger of harming self).
- d. Antipsychotics (e.g., haloperidol) can be used to decrease agitation acutely.

B. Dementia

1. **Chronic, progressive** cognitive impairment (memory and at least one other cognitive function) without changes in consciousness that can significantly limit ability to function (see Table 14-9)
2. Etiologies
 - a. **Alzheimer disease:** most common cause (>70% of cases) (see Chapter 8, Neurologic Disorders)

FIGURE

14-1 Mini-mental state examination.

Score

1. Orientation to time—ask patient to identify year, season, date, day, and month (1 point each, 5 total)
2. Orientation to place—ask patient to name country, state, town, hospital, floor (1 point each, 5 total)
3. Registration—name three words and ask patient to repeat them (1 point for each correct repeat, 3 total)
4. Attention and calculation—ask patient to spell “world” backwards or to count backward from 100 by 7s (5 points total)
5. Language (9 points total)
 - a. point at a pen and a watch and ask patient to name them (1 point each)
 - b. ask patient to repeat phrase “No ifs, ands, or buts” (1 point)
 - c. give patient a sheet of paper and ask to hold it in the right hand, fold it in half, and put it on the floor (1 point for each activity)
 - d. ask patient to close eyes (1 point)
 - e. ask patient to write a sentence (1 point)
 - f. ask patient to copy design below (1 point):



6. Recall—ask patient to repeat three objects recited earlier (1 point for each correct repeat, 3 total)

TOTAL SCORE



QUICK HIT

Dementia is generally a irreversible condition.



QUICK HIT

Ideally, the three words should be one noun, one adjective, and one verb to avoid ease of recall due to patterns among words.

- b. **Vascular dementia:** dementia caused by multiple cerebral infarcts (15% of cases); features **neurologic symptoms** in addition to dementia
 - c. **Parkinson dementia:** dementia associated with Parkinson disease; risk for dementia significantly higher in patients with this disease than in those without it
 - d. **Alcohol induced:** caused by chronic alcoholism; typically associated with aphasia
 - e. Less common causes: Huntington disease, normal pressure hydrocephalus, endocrine diseases, metabolic diseases, neoplasms, infection
3. H/P
- a. **Key features**
 - (1) Impaired memory
 - (2) Presence of aphasia (i.e., impaired speech), apraxia (i.e., impaired purposeful movement), agnosia (i.e., impaired recognition of objects), or impaired executive function
 - (3) Impaired ability to function
 - (4) Unrelated to delirium
 - b. Symptoms are initially mild and progress gradually (weeks to months).
 - c. MMSE shows impaired cognitive function.
4. **Labs** = should be used to rule out endocrine or metabolic causes (glucose, vitamin B₁₂, thyroid hormones, electrolytes)
5. **Radiology** = CT or MRI of head may be useful for detecting cortical infarcts
6. **Treatment**
- a. Treat underlying cause in rare cases of reversibility (e.g., metabolic, endocrine, infectious causes).
 - b. Cholinesterase inhibitors (e.g., donepezil, rivastigmine, galantamine) and memantine help to slow further cognitive decline.
 - c. **Occupational therapy** and **cognitive psychotherapy** are helpful for extending independence, maximizing function, and preventing accidents.
 - d. Eventually, patients frequently require supervised care.
 - e. Antidepressants can be used to treat associated depression.
 - f. Frequent reorientation of patient may help optimize function.



NEXT STEP

Do not use **benzodiazepines** or **anticholinergics** in the treatment of delirium or dementia-related agitation because they can **worsen** symptoms.



QUICK HIT

Up to 50% of children may continue to exhibit signs of ADHD into adulthood.



X. PEDIATRIC PSYCHIATRIC DISORDERS

A. Attention-deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD)

1. Disorder of inattention and hyperactivity in school-aged children that causes problems both at home and at school
2. **Risk factors** = four times more common in males than females
3. H/P
 - a. **Inattention:** decreased attention span, difficulty following instructions, carelessness in tasks, easily losing items, forgetfulness, poor listening, easy distractibility, difficulty organizing activity, avoidance of tasks requiring prolonged focus
 - b. **Hyperactivity:** fidgetiness, **inappropriate activity**, excessive talking, inability to remain quiet, inability to remain seated at times when prolonged sitting is required, constantly “on the go”
 - c. **Impulsivity:** difficulty waiting turn to speak, interrupts others, answers questions before they are completed
 - d. Children exhibit behaviors in **multiple settings**.
 - e. Diagnosis requires child to have **six** inattention symptoms or **six** hyperactivity or impulsivity symptoms **before 7 years of age** that **limit ability to function** in social, educational, or organized settings.
4. **Treatment**
 - a. Psychostimulants (e.g., methylphenidate, pemoline) or atomoxetine improve ability to focus and control behavior.
 - b. Bupropion, α -agonists, and TCAs are used in refractory cases.
 - c. Psychotherapy is used to address child’s self-esteem and help modify behavior.
 - d. Adjustments may need to be made in selecting an educational setting to optimize ability to learn and participate.
 - e. Limit consumption of food high in caffeine or sugar.

B. Conduct disorder

1. Repetitive disruptive and antisocial behavior that violates others' rights and social norms
2. H/P = **aggressive behavior** to people or animals, **destruction of property**, **deceitfulness** or theft, **violation of serious rules**; diagnosis requires one of above behaviors before <10 years of age and three behaviors >10 years of age
3. **Treatment** = psychotherapy involving family and parent management training; psychostimulants are helpful when comorbid ADHD is diagnosed; mood stabilizers may be used in severe cases
4. **Complications** = increased risk of substance abuse, **antisocial personality disorder**

C. Tourette syndrome

1. Chronic tic disorder beginning in childhood; associated with ADHD and OCD
2. H/P = **multiple motor** (e.g., blinking, twitching, etc.) and **vocal** (e.g., sounds, words) tics that occur every day and worsen with stress; location, frequency, and severity of tics change over time; diagnosis requires presence of tics for >1 year and beginning before patient is 21 years of age
3. **Treatment** = psychotherapy with family addressing nature of tics; low-dose fluphenazine, pimozide, or tetrabenazine may reduce tic occurrence; SSRIs are useful in treating comorbid behavioral disorders

D. Learning disabilities

1. **Impairment in educational development** in a **healthy child** with no other psychiatric diagnosis or cognitive pathology (e.g., Down syndrome, fragile X syndrome)
2. Disorder can be specific to ability to read, perform mathematics, or express thoughts.
3. H/P
 - a. Child demonstrating otherwise **normal intelligence** with **delays in certain academic goals**
 - b. Child frequently has poor self-esteem.
 - c. Disabilities can include language delays, impaired coordination, poor memory, inattentiveness, or spatial or temporal ordering skills.
4. **Labs** = scores on standardized tests are consistently lower than normal range
5. **Treatment** = special education and therapy focusing on the specific learning disorder can help the child to improve his or her ability to learn; parent education; child's strengths should be recognized and encouraged

E. Autism

1. Severe, persistent impairment in **interpersonal interactions**, communication, and social activities; can be associated with mental retardation and schizophrenia
2. H/P
 - a. **Impaired social interactions**: impaired used of nonverbal behaviors, failure to develop peer relationships, failure to seek social interaction, lack of social reciprocity
 - b. **Impaired communication**: developmental language delays, poor initiation or sustenance of conversation, repetitive language, lack of imaginative or imitative play for age
 - c. **Restricted behavior**: inflexible routines, preoccupation with a restricted pattern of interest, repetitive motor mannerisms, preoccupation with parts of objects
 - d. Delays in language, imaginative play, and social interaction <3 years of age
 - e. Diagnosis requires at least six abnormal patterns of interpersonal interactions, including at least two impaired social interactions and at least one of both impaired communication and restricted behavior.
3. **Labs** = metabolic and genetic analyses should be performed to rule out a medical cause of behavior
4. **Treatment**
 - a. Behavior, speech, and social psychotherapy with peers and family may help improve social interaction.
 - b. Aggressive behavior can be treated with antipsychotics.
 - c. Supervised environment is usually required long term.

**QUICK HIT**

Oppositional defiant disorder is similar to conduct disorder in that patients exhibit aggressive behavior, but illegal and destructive activity does not occur.

**QUICK HIT**

Coprolalia (vocal tics of repeated obscenities) is only seen in a **minority (40%)** of cases of Tourette syndrome.

**QUICK HIT**

Tics typically **diminish** during sleep and focused activity.


NEXT STEP

Auditory and **visual** pathologies must be ruled out in a patient suspected for having a learning disorder.

Epidemiology and Ethics



I. RESEARCH STUDIES

A. Study requirements

1. Subjects in a study must be **representative of the population** that the study seeks to examine.
2. The study must contain a **sufficient number of subjects** to make it statistically significant.
3. Subjects must give **informed consent**, except under special circumstances approved by an institutional review board (IRB) (e.g., trauma patients).
4. Proper **controls** should be included in studies that examine the efficacy of a given treatment.
5. The interests of the patient must take priority over the interests of the study (study must be approved by IRB), and researchers must follow data to determine if a study carries any risk to the subjects at any point during its course.
6. Subject confidentiality must be maintained, and subjects must consent to the release of personal information.

B. Study designs (see Table 15-1)

C. Bias (see Table 15-2)



QUICK HIT

Confounding variables are factors that affect **both** the experimental and control groups to interfere with the relationship **between** these groups.

TABLE 15-1 Study Designs Used in Clinical Research

Study Type	Description	Conclusions	Advantages	Disadvantages
Randomized clinical trial	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Prospective comparison of experimental treatment with placebo controls and existing therapies • Double-blinded to avoid bias • Patients randomized into study groups 	Effectiveness of experimental treatment compared with controls and existing therapies	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Gold standard for testing therapies • Can be controlled for several confounders 	Often costly and time consuming ; patients may not be willing to undergo randomization
Cohort study	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Examines a group of subjects exposed to a given situation or factor • Can be prospective (exposed group identified and followed over time) or retrospective (examines exposed group in whom disease has already occurred) 	Relative risk	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Able to examine rare exposures • Can study multiple effects of exposure 	May be costly and time consuming; difficult to study rare diseases
Case-control study	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Retrospective comparison of patients with a disease with healthy controls; frequency of certain exposures in both groups is considered 	Odds ratio	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Can examine rare diseases or those with long course in short amount of time • Can study multiple types of exposure • May examine small group size 	Susceptible to recall and selection bias ; cannot determine disease incidence


(continued)

TABLE 15-1 Study Designs Used in Clinical Research (Continued)

Study Type	Description	Conclusions	Advantages	Disadvantages
Cross-sectional survey	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Survey of large number of people at one time to assess exposure and disease prevalence 	Hypothesis for risk factors; disease prevalence	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Can be used as estimate for disease prevalence following exposure 	Cannot be used to test hypotheses
Case series	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Report of characteristics of a disease by examining multiple cases 	Hypothesis for risk factors	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • May be easy to complete • Provides insight into poorly understood conditions 	Cannot be used to test hypotheses
Meta-analysis	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pooling of multiple studies examining a given disease or exposure 	Depends on original study type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Larger study size • Can resolve conflicts in literature 	Unable to eliminate limiting factors in original studies

TABLE 15-2 Types of Bias in Clinical Studies

Types of Bias	Description	Consequences
Enrollment (selection)	Nonrandom assignment of subjects to study groups	Results of study not applicable to general population
Investigator	Subjective interpretation of data by investigator deviates toward “ desired ” conclusions	Results of study incorrectly resemble proposed hypothesis
Lead-time	Screening test provides earlier diagnosis in studied group compared with controls but has no effect on time of survival	Time from diagnosis to outcome gives the false appearance of increased time of survival; time from disease occurrence to outcome actually remains the same regardless of screening
Length	Screening test detects several slowly progressive cases of a disease and misses rapidly progressive cases	Effectiveness of screening test is overstated
Observational	Subjects may respond to subjective questions in a different way than normal because awareness of the study changes their perception of the examined issue	Effectiveness of therapy is not accurately depicted by study group
Publication	Studies that show a difference between groups are more likely to be published than studies that do not show a difference	Data available for meta-analyses may not include studies that support the null hypothesis
Recall	Errors of memory within subjects because of prior confounding experiences	Patients with negative experiences are more likely to recall negative details
Self-selection	Patients with a certain medical history may be more likely to participate in a study related to their condition	Subjects are not representative of the general population and introduce confounding variables



QUICK HIT

Investigator and observational bias may be avoided by **double-blinding** a study.

**II. BIOSTATISTICS****A. Rates of disease**

1. Incidence
 - a. Number of new cases that occurs at a given time within a population (i.e., likelihood of developing that condition in that period of time)
 - b. Incidence =

$$\frac{(\# \text{ of new cases of a disease in a given time})}{(\text{total population})}$$

2. Prevalence
 - a. Number of individuals with a certain condition at a given time
 - b. Prevalence =

$$\frac{(\# \text{ of existing cases of a disease})}{(\text{total population})}$$

3. Case fatality rate
 - a. Percentage of people with a given disease who die within a certain amount of time
 - b. Fatality rate =

$$\frac{(\text{people who die from a disease in a given time})}{(\# \text{ of cases of disease during a given time})}$$

**QUICK HIT**

Relative risk is determined through **cohort** studies.

B. Risk of disease

1. Relative risk (RR)
 - a. Risk of disease in people exposed to a given factor
 - b. RR =

$$\frac{(\text{disease in exposed population})}{(\text{disease in unexposed population})} = \frac{A/(A + B)}{C/(C + D)} \quad (\text{see Table 15-3})$$

- c. RR value
 - (1) >1 suggests a **positive** relationship between exposure and disease
 - (2) <1 suggests a **negative** relationship between exposure and disease
 - (3) $=1$ suggests **no** relationship between exposure and disease
2. Odds ratio (OR)
 - a. Odds of exposure among patients with a disease compared with odds of exposure among patients without a disease
 - b. Estimate of relative risk if prevalence is low
 - c. OR =

$$\frac{A/C}{B/D} = \frac{A \times D}{B \times C} = \frac{A/B}{C/D} \quad (\text{see Table 15-3})$$

**QUICK HIT**

Odds ratio is determined through **case-control** studies.

**QUICK HIT**

The OR is most accurate as an estimate of RR in cases of **rare diseases**.

TABLE 15-3 Calculation of Disease Risk

		Disease	
		Yes	No
Exposure	Yes	A	B
	No	C	D
Relative risk (RR) = $\frac{A/(A + B)}{C/(C + D)}$ Odds ratio (OR) = $\frac{A/C}{B/D} = \frac{A \times D}{B \times C} = \frac{A/B}{C/D}$			

3. **Attributable risk (AR)**
 - a. Difference in rates of disease between exposed and unexposed populations
 - b. AR = (rate of disease in exposed population) – (rate of disease in unexposed population)

C. Statistics of diagnostic tests

1. **Sensitivity**
 - a. Probability that a screening test will be **positive** in patients with a disease
 - b. Sensitivity = $\frac{A}{A+C}$ (see Table 15-4)
 - c. Most acceptable screening tests are typically >80% sensitive.
 - d. **False-negative findings** occur in patients with a disease and a negative test; approximated by (1 – sensitivity).

2. **Specificity**
 - a. Probability that a test will be **negative** in patients without a disease
 - b. Specificity = $\frac{D}{B+D}$ (see Table 15-4)
 - c. Most acceptable confirmatory tests are typically >85% specific.
 - d. **False-positive findings** occur in patients without a disease and a positive test; approximated by (1 – specificity).

3. **Positive predictive value (PPV)**
 - a. Probability that a patient with a positive test has a disease
 - b. PPV = $\frac{A}{A+B}$ (see Table 15-4)

4. **Negative predictive value (NPV)**
 - a. Probability that a patient with a negative test does not have a disease
 - b. NPV = $\frac{D}{C+D}$ (see Table 15-4)

QUICK HIT

Screening tests seek reliable detection of a disease in a patient without incorrectly diagnosing disease in people without the disease (ideally **both high sensitivity and high specificity**).

QUICK HIT

Confirmatory tests are used to **validate** that a patient with a positive test truly has a disease.

QUICK HIT

A disease with a

- **high** prevalence will be associated with a high **positive** predictive value in a screening test.
- **low** prevalence will be associated with a high **negative** predictive value in a screening test.

TABLE 15-4 Analysis of Diagnostic Tests

		Disease	
		Yes	No
Test	Positive	A	B
	Negative	C	D
<p>Sensitivity = $\frac{A}{A+C}$; Specificity = $\frac{D}{B+D}$; Positive predictive value (PPV) = $\frac{A}{A+B}$;</p> <p>Negative predictive value (NPV) = $\frac{D}{C+D}$</p>			

5. **Likelihood ratios**
 - a. Odds of having a positive test result for those with a disease compared with those without it (positive likelihood ratio) or odds of having a negative test result for those with a disease compared with those without it (negative likelihood ratio)
 - b. Measures performance of diagnostic tests while eliminating dependence on disease prevalence

c. Positive likelihood ratio (PLR) =

$$\frac{(\text{sensitivity})}{(1 - \text{specificity})}$$

d. Negative likelihood ratio (NLR) =

$$\frac{(1 - \text{sensitivity})}{(\text{specificity})}$$

6. Accuracy

a. Performance of diagnostic tests considering only number of true results

b. Accuracy =

$$\frac{A+D}{A+B+C+D}$$

D. Types of error

1. **Null hypothesis:** states that no association exists between exposure and disease or treatment and response
2. **Type I error:** null hypothesis is rejected even though it is true (false-positive)
3. **Type II error:** null hypothesis is not rejected even though it is false (false-negative)
4. Risk of these errors decreases with increasing sample size (therefore increasing power).

E. Statistical significance

1. Statistically detectable difference between groups
2. Probability value (**p-value**)
 - a. Chance of a type I error occurring for a given result
 - b. If $p < 0.05$, the null hypothesis can be rejected (i.e., a significant relationship exists between groups).

F. Power

1. Ability of a study to detect an actual difference between two groups
2. Studies with insufficient power may state two groups are equal when they are actually significantly different (i.e., occurrence of a type II error).



QUICK HIT

The **null hypothesis** suggests that **no association** exists between exposure and disease or treatment and response. The **alternative hypothesis** suggests that **an association does exist**.



III. ETHICS

A. Rights of the patient

1. **Confidentiality**
 - a. All information regarding the patient must be kept **private** between the **physician** and the **patient**.
 - b. The Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA)
 - (1) All patient account handling, billing, and medical records must be designed to maintain patient confidentiality.
 - (2) Exchange of patient information can occur only between care providers involved with the care of the patient in question.
 - c. Confidentiality is **not mandated** when the patient
 - (1) Allows the physician to share information with designated others (family, etc.)
 - (2) Has a disease that is legally reportable (reported only to appropriate public officials)
 - (3) Is considered to be **suicidal** or **homicidal**
 - (4) Has suffered a gunshot or other type of penetrating wound from an assault
 - (5) Is an adolescent with a condition that is potentially harmful to self or others
2. **Public reporting**
 - a. Reporting of several diseases to a public health department is required by law (including **HIV**, **STDs**, hepatitis, Lyme disease, several foodborne illnesses, meningitis, rabies, and **tuberculosis**).
 - b. Impaired ability to drive, **child abuse**, and **elder abuse** must be reported to authorities (exact legal requirements vary from state to state).



QUICK HIT

Confidentiality should be maintained in **adolescents** seeking contraception, treatment for sexually transmitted diseases (**STDs**), or treatment for **pregnancy** (this point may need to be clarified with parents).



QUICK HIT

The patient should be made aware that certain diseases or conditions must be reported.

3. **Informed consent**
 - a. **Before any procedure or therapy**, the patient must be made aware of the indications, risks, and potential benefits of a proposed treatment; alternative treatments and their risks and the risks of refusing treatment must also be described.
 - b. Informed consent or parental consent for minors is not required for emergent therapy (i.e., **implied consent**).
 - c. If a patient is not capable of making a decision, a designated surrogate decision-maker is required for nonemergent care.
4. **Full disclosure**
 - a. Patients have the right to be made aware of their medical status, prognosis, treatment options, and medical errors in their care.
 - b. If a family requests that a physician withhold information from the patient, physicians must deny the request unless it is determined that disclosing information would significantly harm the patient.

B. Patient decision making

1. **Capacity**
 - a. “Capacity” means that the patient has the mental ability to make decisions regarding his or her medical care. A patient that lacks capacity might be declared “incompetent” by the legal/judicial system.
 - b. To be judged competent, a patient must
 - (1) Not be diagnosed as presently psychotic or intoxicated
 - (2) Have an **understanding** of his or her **medical situation**
 - (3) Must be capable of making decisions that are in agreement with his or her history of values
 - c. Medical decisions for non-emancipated minors (i.e., <18 years of age) are made by a minor’s parents unless legally ruled not to be in the best interests of the child.
2. **Durable power of attorney**
 - a. Legal documentation that designates a **second party** (e.g., family member) as a **surrogate decision maker** for medical issues
 - b. Designated individual should be able to make decisions **consistent with the patient’s values**.
 - c. Not valid in all U.S. states (e.g., NY)
3. **Living will**
 - a. Written document that details a patient’s wishes in specific medical situations (e.g., resuscitation, ventilation, extraordinary maintenance of life)
 - b. May be less flexible than durable power of attorney

C. End-of-life issues

1. **Do-not-resuscitate (DNR) order**
 - a. A type of advanced directive document that details care in cases of coma, cardiac arrest, severe dementia, and terminal illness
 - b. DNR can refuse all nonpalliative therapies or can only restrict use of specific therapies (e.g., ventilation, cardiopulmonary resuscitation, feeding tubes, antibiotics, etc.).
2. **Life support**
 - a. Competent patients can request having supportive measures withdrawn at any time.
 - b. Wishes for life support (or withholding it) can be described in a living will or DNR.
 - c. Physicians can remove respiratory care in cases in which **no living will** exists and the patient is **incapable** of voicing a decision **if the family and the physician** believe that removal of care is **consistent with what the patient would want**.
3. **Physician-aided death**
 - a. Physician-assisted suicide occurs when a physician **supplies** a patient with a means of ending his or her life.



QUICK HIT

A **competent** patient can change his or her mind regarding accepting therapy **at any time**.



QUICK HIT

Parents’ decisions regarding their children can be legally **overruled** if they are considered **harmful** to the children.

**QUICK HIT**

The absence of electroencephalogram (EEG) activity does **not** define brain death but may help prompt a brain death workup.

**QUICK HIT**

Conditions that can mimic brain death include metabolic encephalopathy, hypothermia, intoxication, locked-in syndrome, and Guillain-Barré syndrome.

**QUICK HIT**

Physicians are not required to supply therapies that are irrational for the current condition or when the maximal therapy has already failed.

- b. Euthanasia is the **active administration** by a **physician** of a lethal agent to a patient to end suffering from a condition.
 - c. Physician-assisted suicide is currently legal only in Oregon, and euthanasia is illegal in the entire United States.
4. **Death**
- a. **Brain death** is defined as the irreversible **absence** of all brain activity (including the brainstem) in a patient lasting >6 hr.
 - (1) Absence of cephalic (i.e., cranial nerve) reflexes (e.g., gag, corneal, and caloric reflexes)
 - (2) Apnea off of a ventilator for a duration considered sufficient to produce a normal hypercarbic drive
 - (3) Absence of hypothermia or intoxication
 - (4) Absent brainstem-evoked responses, persistent isoelectric EEG, or absent cerebral circulation on radiologic testing
 - (5) Patient appearance cannot be explained by a medical condition that mimics death.
 - b. **Heart death** is considered the inability to restore a spontaneous heartbeat in an asystolic patient.
 - c. Either brain death or heart death can be used to define formal patient death (both are not required).
 - d. **Hypothermic** patients must be warmed to normal body temperature before death can be declared.
5. **Organ donation**
- a. Patients can declare themselves as organ donors before death (e.g., living will, driver's license).
 - b. Hospitals receiving payments from Medicare are required to approach the family of the deceased regarding organ donation.
 - c. Patients and families can define exactly what organs are to be donated.
 - d. Organs may be judged unsuitable for donation in cases of widespread or uncured **neoplasm**, **sepsis**, compromised organ function, organ-specific infection or disease, hypothermia, HIV infection, age >80 years, hemoglobinopathy, or **prolonged ischemia**.

NOTE: Page numbers followed by *f* indicate figures; *t* indicates tables.

- A**
- AAA. *See* Abdominal aortic aneurysm
- A-a gradient. *See* Alveolar-arterial gradient
- Abacavir (ABC), 146t
- Abciximab, for myocardial infarction, 8t, 9
- ABCs, 162
- Abdomen, acute, 172–173, 172t
- Abdominal aortic aneurysm (AAA), 26
- Abdominal trauma, 164
- Ability to function, 292
- Abnormal fears, 293
- Abnormal uterine bleeding, 248
- ABO blood groups, 167
- Abortion, spontaneous, 270–271, 270t
- Abruptio placenta, 274
- Abstinence, 243t–245t
- Abuse, 166
- AC. *See* Assist-control ventilation
- ACA. *See* Anterior cerebral artery
- Acarbose, 112
- Acceleration-deceleration injuries, 161
- Accidents and injury, 154–157
 - burns, 154–155, 154f
 - choking, 156
 - drowning, 155–156
 - heat emergencies, 156, 156t
 - hypothermia, 156, 157f
 - venomous bites and stings, 157, 157f
- ACE-I. *See* Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor
- Acetaminophen poisoning, 158t
- Acetazolamide, 92t, 200
- Acetylcholinesterase, 196
- Acetylsalicylic acid (ASA), for myocardial infarction, 8t, 9
- Achalasia, 20, 62, 63f
- Acid-base disorders, 100–101
 - anion gap disturbances, 100, 101f, 101t, 102t
 - mixed disturbances, 101
 - renal tubular acidosis, 100, 100t
- Acid-base physiology, 100
- Acidosis
 - metabolic, 101t, 102t, 127
 - renal tubular, 100, 100t
 - respiratory, 101f, 101t, 102t
- Acid poisoning, 158t
- ACL. *See* Anterior cruciate ligament
- Acne vulgaris, 225–226, 291t
- Acoustic neuroma, 202
- Acoustic schwannoma, 202
- Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS), 143, 144t
- Acral lentiginous, 236
- Acromegaly, 121
- ACTH. *See* Adrenocorticotropic hormone
- Actinic keratosis, 234, 235f
- Action potentials, 3, 3f
- Acute abdomen, 172–173, 172t
- Acute lymphocytic leukemia (ALL), 147–149, 149f
- Acute myelogenous leukemia (AML), 149, 149f
- Acute pericarditis, 20
- Acute renal failure (ARF), 98–99
- Acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS), 40–41, 49
- Addiction, 301, 301t–302t
- Addison disease, 123
- Adenocarcinoma
 - bladder, 106
 - cervical, 254
 - esophageal, 64–66, 65f
 - gallbladder, 82–83
 - lung, 44, 44t, 45t
- Adenomatous polyposis coli (APC) gene, 77
- Adenomyosis, 247
- Adenosine, 14t
- ADHD. *See* Attention-deficit hyperactivity disorder
- Adie pupil, 198t
- Adjustment disorder with depressed mood, 296
- Adolescents
 - confidentiality with, 286, 312
 - development of, 286, 286t
- Adrenal disorders, 122–125
 - adrenal insufficiency, 123–124
 - congenital adrenal hyperplasia, 124–125, 124f
 - Cushing syndrome, 122, 123f
 - hyperaldosteronism, 122–123
 - pheochromocytoma, 125
- Adrenal function, 122, 122t
- Adrenal insufficiency, 123–124
- Adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), 119–121, 120f, 121t
- Adult onset diabetes, 112, 112t, 113t
- Adult polycystic kidney disease, 183
- Affect, 293
- Afib. *See* Atrial fibrillation
- Afterload, 2, 14
- Agoraphobia, 296
- Agranulocytosis, 137
- AICA. *See* Anterior inferior cerebral artery
- AIDS. *See* Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome
- Albright hereditary osteodystrophy, 119
- Albuterol, 42t
- Alcohol-induced dementia, 306
- Alcohol-related liver disease, 85
- A-line. *See* Arterial line
- Alkali poisoning, 158t
- Alkalosis
 - metabolic, 101f, 101t, 102t, 127
 - respiratory, 101f, 101t, 102t
- ALL. *See* Acute lymphocytic leukemia
- Allergic contact dermatitis, 229–230, 230f
- Allergic granulomatosis with angiitis, 28
- Allopurinol, 210–211
- 17- α -Hydroxylase deficiency, 124, 124f
- 21- α -Hydroxylase deficiency, 124–125, 124f
- α_1 -Antitrypsin deficiency, 87
- α -Blocker, for hypertension, 23t
- α -Fetoprotein, 196
- α -Fetoprotein, maternal, 261
- α -Glucosidase inhibitors, 112
- Alport syndrome, 97t
- ALS. *See* Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis
- Alveolar-arterial (A-a) gradient, 35, 35f
- Alzheimer disease, 190, 305
- Amantadine, 189t
- Amblyopia, 198t
- Amenorrhea, 240t, 241, 245–246, 246f, 291t
- Amiloride, 92t
- Aminoglycosides, teratogenic effects of, 268t
- Amiodarone, 14, 14t
- AML. *See* Acute myelogenous leukemia
- Amlodipine, 23t
- Amniocentesis, 263t
- Amniotic fluid deficiency, 271
- Amphetamines, abuse of, 301t
- Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), 178t, 189
- Anal fissures, 76
- Anaphylactic shock, 26t
- Anaphylaxis, 138
- Anaplastic thyroid carcinoma, 116t
- Anemia, 127–134
 - aplastic, 133–134
 - of chronic disease, 129t, 131t, 132
 - Diamond-Blackfan, 152–153
 - Fanconi, 152
 - folate-deficiency, 129t, 132
 - hemolytic, 129, 129t, 130t
 - hypovolemia, 129t
 - iron-deficiency, 77, 129–131, 129t, 131f, 131t
 - lead poisoning, 129t, 131, 131t, 132f
 - pernicious, 66
 - sideroblastic, 129t, 131t, 134, 134f
 - thalassemia, 129t, 131t
 - vitamin B₁₂ deficiency, 129t, 132, 133f
- Anencephaly, 196
- Angelman syndrome, 290t
- Angina, unstable, 6–7
- Angina pectoris, 6
- Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor (ACE-I), 23
 - for CHF, 15, 16f
 - for hypertension, 23t, 24t
 - for myocardial infarction, 8t, 9
 - teratogenic effects of, 265, 268t
- Angiotensin receptor blockers (ARB)
 - for hypertension, 23t, 24t
 - teratogenic effects of, 265
- Anion gap disturbances, 100, 101f, 101t, 102t
- Ankle fracture, 205t
- Ankylosing spondylitis, 214t, 217
- Anorectal abscesses, 76
- Anorexia nervosa, 302
- Anterior cerebral artery (ACA), 176f, 177t, 182f
- Anterior cruciate ligament (ACL) tear, 204
- Anterior inferior cerebral artery (AICA), 176f, 177t
- Antibiotic-resistant strains, 35
- Anticholinergic poisoning, 158t
- Anticoagulation, during pregnancy, 267
- Anticonvulsants, in pregnancy, 266
- Antidepressant medications, 295t
- Antidotes, 157–159, 158t
- Antilipid therapy, 182
- Antimalarials, 143
- Antimuscarinic agents, 189t
- Antiphospholipid syndrome, 141t
- Antiplatelet therapy, 182–183
- Antipsychotics, 299t
- Antiretroviral therapy, 145–146, 146t
- Antisocial disorder, 300t
- Antithrombotic drugs, 139, 140t
- Antithymocyte globulin, 175t
- Anxiety disorders, 296–297
 - generalized, 297
 - obsessive-compulsive disorder, 297
 - panic disorder, 296, 296t
 - phobia, specific, 296–297
 - post-traumatic stress disorder, 297
 - social phobia, 297
- Aortic dissection, 26–27
- Aortic regurgitation, 16f, 17t
- Aortic stenosis, 16, 16f, 17t
- APC gene. *See* Adenomatous polyposis coli gene
- Apgar scoring system, 279, 279t

- Aphasias, 186, 186t
 Aplastic anemia, 133–134
 Apnea, sleep, 51–52, 193
 Appendicitis, 74, 172t
 ARB. *See* Angiotensin receptor blockers
 Arboviruses, 179
 ARDS. *See* Acute respiratory distress syndrome
 ARF. *See* Acute renal failure
 Argyll Robertson pupil, 198t
 Arnold-Chiari malformation type II, 195
 Arrhythmias, 9–14
 atrial fibrillation, 12, 12f
 atrial flutter, 13, 13f
 bradycardia, 12
 heart block, 9, 10f
 medications for, 14t
 multifocal atrial tachycardia, 11, 12f
 paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia, 9–11, 10f, 11f
 premature ventricular contraction, 13
 ventricular fibrillation, 14
 ventricular tachycardia, 13–14, 13f
 Arterial aneurysm, 184
 Arterial line (A-line), in ICU, 167
 Arteriovenous malformations (AVM), 27
 Arthritis. *See also* Osteoarthritis; Rheumatoid arthritis
 psoriatic, 214t, 217, 232
 septic, 211–212, 212t, 250
 ASA. *See* Acetylsalicylic acid
 Asbestosis, 47t
 Ascending loop of Henle, 91f, 92
 ASD. *See* Atrial septal defect
 Asherman syndrome, 245
 Aspiration of foreign body, 156
 Assist-control ventilation (AC), 53t
 Asthma, 41, 42t, 43t
 maternal, 266
 Astigmatism, 198t
 Asystole, 159, 160f
 Ataxia-telangiectasia, 287t
 Atelectasis, 52
 Atenolol, 23t
 Atherosclerosis, 4–5, 4f
 in diabetes, 114
 Athetosis, 192t
 Atopic dermatitis, 231, 232f
 Atrial fibrillation (Afib), 12, 12f
 Atrial flutter, 13, 13f
 Atrial septal defect (ASD), 30, 31f, 291t
 Atrophic vaginitis, 253
 Attention-deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD), 291t, 306
 Audiovestibular disorders, 201–202
 acoustic neuroma, 202
 benign paroxysmal positional vertigo, 202
 Ménière disease, 202
 otitis externa, 202
 otitis media, 201–202
 Autism, 307
 Autologous blood, 168t
 AVM. *See* Arteriovenous malformations
 AV nodal reentry, 9, 10f
 Avoidant disorder, 300t
 AV reentry, 11, 11f
 Axillary nerve injury, 204
 Azathioprine, 175t
 AZT. *See* Zidovudine
- B**
 Bacillus Calmette-Guérin (BCG) vaccine, 37
 Back pain, 206, 206f
 Bacterial gastroenteritis, 58t
 Bacterial meningitis, 179, 179t, 180t
 Bariatric surgery, 52
 Barium swallow
 for diffuse esophageal spasm, 62, 63f
 for diverticular disease, 75, 75f
 for dysphagia, 62, 63f
 for esophageal cancer, 65, 65f
 for gastric lesion, 67
 for Zenker diverticulum, 62, 64f
 Barlow maneuver, 219
 Barrier methods of contraception, 243t–245t, 250
 Basal cell carcinoma, skin, 235, 236f
 Basilar artery, 176f, 177t
 B-cell Disorders, 287t
 BCG vaccine. *See* Bacillus Calmette-Guérin
 BCR-ABL gene, 150
 Becker muscular dystrophy, 223
 Beck triad, 20
 Beclomethasone, 42t
 Bell palsy, 212
 Benign cystic teratoma, ovarian, 255t
 Benign essential tremor, 192t
 Benign ovarian tumors, 255–256, 255t
 Benign paroxysmal positional vertigo (BPPV), 202
 Benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH), 107
 Benzodiazepine, 188t, 296t
 abuse of, 301t
 poisoning, 158t
 Bereavement, 294
 Berger disease, 97t
 Berry aneurysms, 183–184
 Berylliosis, 47t
 11- β -Hydroxylase deficiency, 124f, 125
 β -Blocker, 14t
 for CHF, 15
 for hypertension, 23t, 24t
 for myocardial infarction, 8t, 9
 poisoning with, 158t
 β -Globin defects, 136
 β -hCG pregnancy test, 245
 Bethesda classification, 254t
 Biguanides, 112, 113t
 Bilateral renal artery stenosis, 23
 Bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy, 254
 Bile acid sequestrants, 6t
 Biliary disorders, 81–85
 cholangitis, 82, 83f
 cholecystitis, acute, 81–82
 cholelithiasis, 81, 82f
 Crigler-Najjar syndrome, 84–85, 84t
 gallbladder cancer, 82–83
 Gilbert disease, 84–85, 84t
 hepatic bilirubin transport, 84–85, 84t
 primary biliary cirrhosis, 83
 primary sclerosing cholangitis, 83–84
 Bilirubinemia, 84–85, 84t
 Bilirubin transport disorders, hepatic, 84–85, 84t
 Biostatistics, 310–312
 of diagnostic tests, 311–312, 311t
 power, 312
 rates of disease, 310
 risk of disease, 310–311, 310t
 statistical significance, 312
 types of error in, 312
 Bipolar disorder, 294–295
 Birth canal trauma, 280
 Birth defects, nutrients and, 261, 262t
 Bishop scoring system, 276, 277t
 Bisoprolol, for CHF, 15
 Bites, venomous, 157, 157f
 Bitolterol, 42t
 Black widow spider bite, 157, 157t
 Bladder cancer, 106
 Bleeding
 abnormal uterine, 248
 gastrointestinal, 78–79, 78f
 postmenopausal, 253
 postpartum, 280
 Blocked thought, 292
 Blood loss, traumatic, 164
 Blue bloaters, 41
 Body dysmorphic disorder, 303–304
 Body packing, 159
 Bone abnormalities, 193
 Bone infection
 osteomyelitis, 212
 septic joint and septic arthritis, 211–212, 212t
 Bone marrow transplantation, 174t
 Bone metastases, 218
 Borderline disorder, 300t
 Bouchard nodes, 213
 Boutonniere deformities, 214
 Bowel obstruction, 72, 73f, 74t
 Bowman capsule, 91, 91f
 Boxer fracture, 205t
 BPH. *See* Benign prostatic hyperplasia
 BPPV. *See* Benign paroxysmal positional vertigo
 Brachial plexus, 208, 208f, 209t
 Bradycardia, 12
 hypertension with, 162
 Brain abscess, 180
 Brain death, 159, 314
 Braxton-Hicks contractions, 275
 BRCA1/BRCA2 gene, 256, 259
 Breast abscess, 257
 Breast cancer, 257–259, 258f, 258t
 estrogen and, 241
 Breast disorders, 256–259
 abscess, 257
 cancer, 257–259, 258f, 258t
 fibroadenoma, 257
 fibrocystic changes, 256
 intraductal papilloma, 257
 Breast milk, 279
 Breech presentation, 275, 278, 278f
 Bretylium, 14t
 Brief psychotic, 299t
 Broca aphasia, 186, 186t
 Bromocriptine, 189t
 Bronchiectasis, 42
 Bronchiolitis, 54–55
 Bronchitis
 acute, 37
 chronic, 41
 Brown recluse spider bite, 157, 157t
 Brown-Sequard syndrome, 178t
 Brudzinski signs, 179
 Buffalo hump, 122
 Bulimia, 302
 Bullous diseases, 233–234
 bullous pemphigoid, 233, 234f
 pemphigus vulgaris, 233, 233f
 porphyria cutanea tarda, 233–234
 Bullous pemphigoid, 233, 234f
 Bumetanide, 92t
 Bupropion, 295t
 Burns, 154–155, 154f
 Burr cells, 129, 130f
 Buspirone, 296t
- C**
 CA-125, 256
 CABG. *See* Coronary artery bypass graft
 CAD. *See* Coronary artery disease
 Caesarean section, 278–279
 Café-au-lait macules, 193
 Caffeine, abuse of, 301t
 CAGE questionnaire, 301
 CAH. *See* Congenital adrenal hyperplasia
 Calcified gallbladder, 82
 Calcitonin, 118, 118f
 Calcium, in pregnancy, 262t
 Calcium channel blockers, 14t
 for hypertension, 23t
 poisoning with, 158t
 Calcium pyrophosphate dihydrate deposition disease (CPPD), 211, 211f
 Cancer. *See specific cancer*
 Cancer surgery, 151
 Capacity, 313
 Captopril, 23t
 Carbamazepine, 188t
 teratogenic effects of, 268t
 Carbidopa, 189t
 Carbonic anhydrase, 91
 inhibitors, 92t
 Carbon monoxide poisoning, 127, 159

- Carcinoid tumor, 76–77
- Cardiac anatomy, 1, 1f
- Cardiac arrest, 159, 159f, 160f
- Cardiac cycle, 2f
- Cardiac function, 3
- Cardiac output (CO), 2
- Cardiac risk, preoperative assessment of, 169–170
- Cardiac tamponade, 20
- Cardiac transplantation, 174t
- Cardiogenic shock, 26t
post-MI, 9
- Cardiomyopathies, 18f, 19t
- Cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR), 159f
- Cardiovascular disorders, 1–32
arrhythmias, 9–14
atrial fibrillation, 12, 12f
atrial flutter, 13, 13f
bradycardia, 12
heart block, 9, 10f
medications for, 14t
multifocal atrial tachycardia, 11, 12f
paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia, 9–11, 10f, 11f
premature ventricular contraction, 13
ventricular fibrillation, 14
ventricular tachycardia, 13–14, 13f
- cardiomyopathies, 18f, 19t
- heart failure, 14–15
congestive, 15, 16f
diastolic dysfunction, 15
systolic dysfunction, 15
- hypertension, 22–25
hypertensive urgency, 24–25
primary, 22–23, 23t, 24t
secondary, 24, 25t
- ischemic heart disease, 4–9
angina pectoris, 6
atherosclerosis, 4–5, 4f
coronary artery disease, 4
hypercholesterolemia, 5, 5f, 6t
myocardial hypoxia, 4
myocardial infarction, 7–9, 7f, 8t
unstable angina, 6–7
- myocardial infections, 20–22, 21f, 22t
endocarditis, 21–22, 22t
myocarditis, 20–21
rheumatic fever, acute, 21, 21f
- pediatric, 29–32
atrial septal defect, 30, 31f
endocardial cushion defect, 31f, 32
fetal circulation, 29–30, 29f
patent ductus arteriosus, 30, 31f
persistent truncus arteriosus, 31f, 32
tetralogy of Fallot, 31f, 32
transposition of great vessels, 31, 31f
ventricular septal defect, 30, 31f
- pericardial diseases, 20
- shock, 25, 26t
- valvular diseases, 16f, 17t
- vascular diseases, 26–29
abdominal aortic aneurysm, 26
allergic granulomatosis with angiitis, 28
aortic dissection, 26–27
arteriovenous malformations, 27
deep vein thrombosis, 27
Henoch-Schönlein purpura, 28
Kawasaki disease, 28–29
peripheral vascular disease, 27
polyarteritis nodosa, 28
Takayasu arteritis, 28
temporal arteritis, 28
varicosities, 27
vasculitis, 28
- Cardiovascular emergencies, 159–161
acute stroke, 159, 161f
cardiac arrest, 159, 159f, 160f
- Carotid massage, 11
- Carpal tunnel syndrome, 203, 203f
- Carvedilol, for CHF, 15
- Case-control study, 308t
- Case series, 309t
- Cataracts, 199
- Catatonic disorder, 298t
- Catheter ablation, 11
- Cauda equina syndrome, 208
- Caustics poisoning, 158t
- CCR5 antagonist, 146t
- Celiac sprue, 68, 69f
- Cellulitis, 224, 224f
- Central nervous system neoplasms
metastatic, 192
primary, 192
- Cerebral palsy (CP), 196, 291t
- Cerebral vasculature, 176, 176f, 177t
- Cerebrovascular accident (CVA), 182–183, 182f, 183t
- Cerebrovascular and hemorrhagic diseases, 181–186
aphasias, 186, 186t
epidural hematoma, 184, 185f
normal pressure hydrocephalus, 186
parenchymal hemorrhage, 183–184
stroke, 182–183, 182f, 183t
subarachnoid hemorrhage, 184, 184f
subdural hematoma, 185, 185f
transient ischemic attack, 181–182
- Cervical cancer, 254–255, 254t
- Cervical cap, 243t–245t
- Cervical dysplasia, 254–255
- Cervicitis, 250
- CF. *See* Cystic fibrosis
- Chagas disease, 20, 62
- Chancroid, 252
- Chandelier sign, 250
- Charcot joints, 114
- Charcot triad, 82
- Chediak-Higashi syndrome, 288t
- Chemotherapy, 151, 152t
teratogenic effects of, 268t
- Chest trauma, 164
- CHF. *See* Congestive heart failure
- Chickenpox, 227, 227t, 228f
- Child abuse, 166, 282, 304
- Childhood. *See* Pediatric entries
- Childhood health maintenance, 282, 284t–285t
- Childhood hydrocephalus, 195
- Chlamydia trachomatis* infection, 250
in pregnancy, 269t
- Chlorthalidone, 92t
- Choking, 156
- Cholangitis, 82, 83f
primary sclerosing, 83–84
- Cholecystitis, acute, 81–82
- Cholelithiasis, 81, 82f
- Cholesterol, 5, 5f
- Cholesterol absorption inhibitors, 6t
- Cholestyramine, 6t
- Chorea, 192t
- Choriocarcinoma, 280
- Chorionic villi sampling, 263t
- Chromosome abnormalities, 245
- Chronic constrictive pericarditis, 20
- Chronic granulomatous disease, 288t
- Chronic kidney failure (CKD), 99
- Chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL), 150, 150f
- Chronic mucocutaneous candidiasis, 287t
- Chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML), 150
- Churg-Strauss syndrome, 28
- Circle of Willis, 176, 176f, 177t
- Circumstantiality, 293
- Cirrhosis, 85
- CKD. *See* Chronic kidney failure
- CK-MB. *See* Creatine kinase myocardial fraction
- Clavicular fracture, 221
- Claw hand, 209t
- Clean catch urine sample, 105
- CLL. *See* Chronic lymphocytic leukemia
- Clopidogrel, for myocardial infarction, 8t, 9
- Closed angle glaucoma, 199–200
- Clotting disorders, 138–142
disseminated intravascular coagulation, 141–142
hemophilia, 140–141
thrombocytopenia, 139, 141t
vitamin K deficiency, 140
von Willebrand disease, 139
- Clotting factors, 168t
- Club foot, 222
- Clusters, 300, 300t
- CML. *See* Chronic myelogenous leukemia
- CMV. *See* Controlled mechanical ventilation
- CO. *See* Cardiac output
- Coagulation cascade, 138, 139f
- Coagulation concerns, in preoperative assessment, 170
- Coal worker disease, 47t
- Cocaine
abuse of, 301t
on pregnancy, 267t
- Cocaine poisoning, 158t
- Codman triangle, 218, 219f
- Cognition, 293
- Cohort study, 308t
- Colesevelam, 6t
- Colestipol, 6t
- Collecting duct, 91f, 92
- Collecting tubule, 91f, 92
- Colles fracture, 205t
- Colon cancer, 129
- Colorectal cancer, 77–78, 77t, 78t
- Colostrum, 279
- Coma, 194, 194f
- Combivir, 146t
- Common cold, 35
- Common variable immunodeficiency, 287t
- Compartment syndrome, 165, 204
- Complement deficiencies, 288t
- Complete breech, 278, 278f
- Complex regional pain syndrome (CRPS), 191
- Composite graft, 237t
- Compulsions, 293
- Concentration, 293
- Condom, 243t–245t
- Conduct disorder, 307
- Conduction aphasias, 186t
- Confidentiality, 286, 312
- Congenital adrenal hyperplasia (CAH), 124–125, 124f
- Congenital disease assessment, 263t
- Congenital immune disorders, 286, 287t–288t
- Congenital infections, 268, 269t
- Congestive heart failure (CHF), 15, 16f
- Conjunctivitis, 199
- Constrictive pericarditis, 18
- Contemplation, 293
- Continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP), 52, 53t
- Contraception, 243, 243t–245t
- Contraceptive sponge, 243t–245t
- Contractility, 2, 14
- Contraction stress test, 275
- Controlled mechanical ventilation (CMV), 53t
- Conversion disorder, 303
- Coombs test, 129
- COPD, right-sided failure from, 15
- Copperhead snake bite, 157, 157t
- Copper intrauterine device, 243t–245t
- Coral snake bite, 157, 157t
- Coronary angiography, 4
- Coronary arteries. *See also specific arteries*
anatomy of, 1, 1f
atherosclerosis of, 4
- Coronary artery bypass graft (CABG), 7
- Coronary artery disease (CAD), 4, 6
- Coronary artery occlusion, 1
- Coronary vessel occlusion, 7
- Cor pulmonale, 15
- Corpus luteum cyst, ovarian, 255t
- Corticoadrenal insufficiency
secondary, 123
tertiary, 123
- Corticospinal tract, 177f, 177t
- Corticosteroids
Cushing syndrome and, 122
for transplant rejection, 175t
- Cosmetic surgery, 238

Cotton wool spots, 200
 COX-2. *See* Cyclooxygenase-2
 CP. *See* Cerebral palsy
 CPAP. *See* Continuous positive airway pressure
 CPPD. *See* Calcium pyrophosphate dihydrate deposition disease
 CPR. *See* Cardiopulmonary resuscitation
 Cradle cap, 231
 Cranial nerves, 178, 178t
 in vision, 197, 198f
 Creatine kinase myocardial fraction (CK-MB), 7
 CREST syndrome, 214t
 Cretinism, 126, 291t
 Cri du chat syndrome, 290t
 Crigler-Najjar syndrome, 84–85, 84t
 Critical care, 167–169
 hemodynamic stability, 167–168
 transfusions, 167–168, 168t
 vasoactive medications, 168, 169t
 ICU issues, 167
 Crohn's disease, 72, 72t
 Cross-sectional survey, 309t
 Croup, 53, 54f, 291t
 CRPS. *See* Complex regional pain syndrome
 Cryoprecipitate, 168t
 Cryptorchidism, 109
 Curling ulcers, 67
 Cushing syndrome, 122, 123f
 Cushing ulcers, 67
 CVA. *See* Cerebrovascular accident
 Cyanide poisoning, 158t
 Cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2), for PUD, 67
 Cyclosporine, 175t
 Cyclothymia, 296
 Cystic fibrosis (CF), 56, 291t
 infertility and, 108
 Cytomegalovirus, 269t

D

Dandy-Walker malformations, 195
 Dantrolene, 173
 DCIS. *See* Ductal carcinoma in situ
 DDH. *See* Developmental dysplasia of hip
 ddl. *See* Didanosine
 Death, 314
 brain, 159, 314
 heart, 314
 physician-aided, 313–314
 Decision-making, patient, 313
 Deep vein thrombosis (DVT), 27
 maternal, 267
 Degenerative disc disease, 206–207, 207f, 207t
 Degenerative neurologic disorders, 189–190
 Alzheimer disease, 190
 amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, 189
 Huntington disease, 190
 multiple sclerosis, 190
 Parkinson disease, 189
 syringomyelia, 190
 Delavirdine (DLV), 146t
 Deletion syndromes, 290, 290t
 Delirium, 304–305, 305t
 Delivery. *See* Labor and delivery
 Deltoid malfunction, 204
 Deltoid paralysis, 209t
 Delusional, 299t
 Delusions, 293
 Dementia, 305–306, 305f, 305t
 Dependent disorder, 300t
 Depression, 294
 Dermatitis
 allergic contact, 229–230, 230f
 atopic, 231, 232f
 seborrheic, 231
 Dermatology, 224–238
 bullous diseases, 233–234
 bullous pemphigoid, 233, 234f
 pemphigus vulgaris, 233, 233f
 porphyria cutanea tarda, 233–234

infections, 224–229
 acne vulgaris, 225–226
 cellulitis, 224, 224f
 fungal, 228, 229f, 229t
 gangrene, 225
 herpes simplex virus, 226, 227f
 impetigo, 225, 226f
 molluscum contagiosum, 228
 necrotizing fasciitis, 225
 scabies, 228
 skin abscess, 224–225
 varicella, 227, 227t
 warts, 228
 inflammatory conditions, 229–233
 atopic dermatitis, 231, 232f
 erythema multiforme, 230
 erythema nodosum, 233
 hypersensitivity reactions, 229–230, 230f
 pityriasis rosea, 232–233, 232f
 psoriasis, 231–232, 232f
 seborrheic dermatitis, 231
 Stevens-Johnson syndrome, 230
 toxic epidermal necrolysis, 230–231, 231f
 neoplasms, 234–237
 actinic keratosis, 234, 235f
 basal cell carcinoma, 235, 236f
 melanoma, 235–237, 236f, 237f
 squamous cell carcinoma, 234, 235f
 plastic surgery, 237–238
 cosmetic surgery, 238
 grafts and flaps, 237, 237t
 reconstructive surgery, 238
 Dermatomyositis, 214t, 216
 Descending loop of Henle, 91f, 92
 Developmental dysplasia of hip (DDH), 219–220, 291t
 Developmental milestones, 282, 283t
 Dexamethasone suppression test, 122
 DI. *See* Diabetes insipidus
 Diabetes insipidus (DI), 102–103
 Diabetes mellitus (DM)
 complications of, 110, 113–114
 gestational, 264–265, 264f
 myocardial ischemia in, 6
 pregestational, 265
 in preoperative assessment, 170
 type I, 110, 111f, 111t, 112t
 type II, 112, 112t, 113t
 Diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA), 110, 113
 Diabetic nephropathy, 98t, 114
 Diabetic neuropathy, 114
 Diabetic retinopathy, 114, 200f
 Dialysis, 99
 Diamond-Blackfan anemia, 152–153
 Diaphragm, 243t–245t
 Diarrhea, 70–71, 70f, 71f
 Diastole, 1
 Diastolic dysfunction, 15
 Diazepam, teratogenic effects of, 268t
 DIC. *See* Disseminated intravascular coagulation
 Didanosine (ddI), 146t
 Diffuse esophageal spasm, 62, 63f
 DiGeorge syndrome, 287t
 Digoxin poisoning, 158t
 Dihydropyridines, 23t
 Dilated cardiomyopathy, 18f, 19, 19t
 Diltiazem, 14t, 23t
 Disclosure, full, 313
 Disorganized disorder, 298t
 Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC), 141–142
 Distal convoluted tubule, 91f, 92
 Diuretics, 92, 92t. *See also* Thiazides
 for hypertension, 23t
 loop, 92, 92t, 105
 Diverticulitis, 76, 172t
 Diverticulosis, 75, 75f
 Dix-Hallpike maneuver, 202
 Dizygotic twinning, 274
 DKA. *See* Diabetic ketoacidosis
 DLV. *See* Delavirdine

DM. *See* Diabetes mellitus
 DNR. *See* Do not resuscitate
 Dobutamine, 169t
 Doctor-parent-child relationship, 282
 Do not resuscitate (DNR), 160, 313
 Donovan bodies, 253
 Dopamine, 169t
 Dorsal columns, 177f, 177t
 Down syndrome. *See* Trisomy 21
 Doxazocin, 23t
 DPP-IV inhibitors, 112
 Dressler syndrome, 9
 Drowning, 155–156
 Drug-induced lupus, 214t
 Drug use, maternal, 267–268, 267t, 268t
 Dry gangrene, 225
 Ds, 6, 102
 DSM-IV multi-axis classification, 293t
 Duchenne muscular dystrophy, 223
 Ductal carcinoma in situ (DCIS), 258t, 259
 Duke Classification of colorectal cancer, 77, 78t
 Duke criteria, 22, 22t
 Duodenal ulcers, 67, 67t
 Durable power of attorney, 313
 DVT. *See* Deep vein thrombosis
 Dysmenorrhea, 247
 Dyspareunia, 241
 Dysphagia, 62, 63f
 Dysthymic disorder, 294–295
 Dystonia, 192t

E

Eating disorders, 302
 EBV. *See* Epstein-Barr virus
 ECG. *See* Electrocardiogram
 Echocardiography. *See also* Transesophageal echocardiogram
 exercise stress test with, 4
 Eclampsia, 266
 Ectopic pregnancy, 247, 270
 ruptured, 172t
 Eczema, 231, 232f
 Edrophonium, 191
 EF. *See* Ejection fraction
 Efavirenz (EFV), 146t
 Eisenmenger syndrome, 30
 Ejection fraction (EF), 14
 Elder abuse, 166
 Electric burn, 154
 Electrocardiogram (ECG), 3
 action potentials and, 3, 3f
 of atrial fibrillation, 12, 12f
 of cardiac cycle, 2f
 general structure of, 3f
 of heart block, 9, 10f
 of hypothermia, 157f
 of MI, 6, 7f, 8t
 of multifocal atrial tachycardia, 11, 12f
 ST elevation on, 9, 20
 of ventricular tachycardia, 13, 13f
 of Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome, 11, 11f
 Electrolyte disorders, 102–105
 diabetes insipidus, 102–103
 hypercalcemia, 104–105
 hyperkalemia, 104
 hyponatremia, 102, 103f
 hypocalcemia, 105
 hypokalemia, 104, 105f
 hyponatremia, 103, 104f
 syndrome of inappropriate ADH secretion, 103–104
 Embolic ischemic stroke, 182
 Embryonic age, 260
 Emergency contraception, 243t–245t
 Emergency medicine, 154–166
 abuse, 166
 accidents and injury, 154–157
 burns, 154–155, 154f
 choking, 156

- drowning, 155–156
 heat emergencies, 156, 156t
 hypothermia, 156, 157f
 venomous bites and stings, 157, 157f
- cardiovascular, 159–161
 toxicology, 157–159, 158t
- traumatology, 161–165
 abdominal, 164
 assessment of, 161–162, 162t
 chest, 164
 extremity, 165
 genitourinary and pelvic, 165
 head, 162–163
 mechanisms of injury in, 161
 neck, 163–164, 163f
 during pregnancy, 165
 spinal cord, 163
- Emphysema, 41–42
 Enalapril, 23t
 Encephalitis, 180
 Encephalopathy, 227
 Endings, 293
 Endocardial cushion defect, 31f, 32
 Endocarditis, 21–22, 22t
 Endocrine disorders, 110–126
 adrenal disorders, 122–125
 adrenal insufficiency, 123–124
 congenital adrenal hyperplasia, 124–125, 124f
 Cushing syndrome, 122, 123f
 hyperaldosteronism, 122–123
 pheochromocytoma, 125
 glucose metabolism, 110–115
 diabetes complications, 113–114
 diabetes mellitus type I, 110, 111f, 111t, 112t
 diabetes mellitus type II, 112, 112t, 113t
 hypoglycemia, 114–115, 115t
 multiple endocrine neoplasia, 125, 125t
 parathyroid, 118–119
 pediatric, 126
 pituitary and hypothalamic disorders, 119–122
 acromegaly, 121
 hyperprolactinemia, 119
 hypopituitarism, 121–122, 121t
 thyroid, 115–117
 Hashimoto thyroiditis, 116
 hyperthyroidism, 115, 116t
 thyroid carcinoma, 116, 116t
 thyroid storm, 115–116
- End-of-life issues, 313–314
 Endometrial cancer, 248, 253–254
 Endometrioma, ovarian, 255t
 Endometriosis, 247
 Enfuvirtide, 146t
 Enrollment bias, 309t
 Enuresis, 109
 Eosinophilia, 137
 Epididymitis, 108
 Epidural hematoma, 184, 185f
 Epiglottitis, 53–54, 54f, 291t
 Epilepsy, 195
 eclampsia compared with, 266
 Epinephrine, 169t
 for anaphylaxis, 138
 Eplerenone, 92t
 Epstein-Barr virus (EBV), 143
 Eptifibatide, for myocardial infarction, 8t, 9
 Epzicom, 146t
 Erb-Duchenne palsy, 209t
 Error, 312
 ERV. *See* Expiratory reserve volume
 Erythema chronicum migrans, 212, 213f
 Erythema multiforme, 230
 Erythema nodosum, 233
 Erythematous nodules, 233
 Esmolol, 14t, 23t
 Esophageal cancer, 64–66, 65f
 Esophageal spasm, diffuse, 62, 63f
 Estrogen, in menstrual cycle, 241, 243t
 Estrogen-progesterone challenge, 246
 Ethanol
 abuse of, 301t
 on pregnancy, 267t
- Ethics, 312–314
 end-of-life issues, 313–314
 patient decision-making, 313
 rights of patient, 312–313
- Ethosuximide, 188t
 Ethylene glycol
 alcohol abusers and, 157
 poisoning with, 158t
- Ewing sarcoma, 218
 Exenatide, 112
 Exercise, during pregnancy, 261
 Exercise stress test, 4
 with echocardiography, 4
 Expiratory reserve volume (ERV), 33f, 34t
 Extremity trauma, 165
 Exudates, 20
 Eye function, 197, 198f, 198t
 Ezetimibe, 6t
- F**
 Factitious disorders, 303–304
 Failure to thrive, 90
 False beliefs, 293
 Familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP), 77, 77t
 Familial hypocalciuric hypercalcemia, 105
 Fanconi anemia, 152
 FAP. *See* Familial adenomatous polyposis
 Fasciocutaneous flap, 237t
 Fasciotomy, 165
 Febrile seizures, 195
 Femur fracture, 205t
 Fenofibrate, 6t
 Fertilization, 241, 242f
 Fertilizer poisoning, 158t
 Fetal circulation, 29–30, 29f
 Fetal demise, intrauterine, 271
 Fetal development, 260, 260f
 Fetal distress, 275
 Fetal lung maturity, 272
 Fetal scalp blood sampling, 275
 Fetal scalp monitoring, 275
 Fever, postoperative, 171, 171f, 171t
 FFP. *See* Fresh frozen plasma
 Fibric acids, 6t
 Fibroadenoma, 257
 Fibrocystic changes, breast, 256
 Fibromyalgia, 216–217
 Fick principle, 2
 Flame hemorrhages, 23
 Flecainide, 14t
 “Flight of ideas,” 292
 Fluids, in pregnancy, 262t
 Flumazenil, 297
 Flunisolide, 42t
 Fluoroquinolones, 93
 teratogenic effects of, 268t
 Focal segmental glomerular sclerosis, 98t
 Folate, in pregnancy, 262t
 Folate-deficiency anemia, 129t, 132
 Folie à deux, 299t
 Follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH), 119–121, 120f, 121t
 in menstrual cycle, 241, 243t
 Follicular cyst, ovarian, 255t
 Follicular phase, 241, 242f
 Footling breech, 278, 278f
 Foreign body, aspiration of, 156
 Formoterol, 42t
 45XO karyotype, 288, 289t
 Fractures, 204, 205t
 Fragile X syndrome, 290–291
 Frank breech, 278, 278f
 Frank-Starling relationship, 14
 FRC. *See* Functional reserve capacity
 Fresh frozen plasma (FFP), 168t
 Fs, 5, 81
 FSH. *See* Follicle-stimulating hormone
 Full disclosure, 313
 Full integrated test, 263t
 Full-thickness epidermal necrosis, 230, 231f
 Full-thickness graft, 237t
 Functional reserve capacity (FRC), 33f, 34t
 Functional vital capacity (FVC), 33f, 34t
 Fungal infections, 228, 229f, 229t
 Fungal meningitis, 179, 180t
 Furosemide, 92t
 Fusion inhibitor, 146t
 FVC. *See* Functional vital capacity
- G**
 Gabapentin, 188t
 Galeazzi fracture, 205t
 Galeazzi sign, 219
 Gallbladder, calcified, 82
 Gallbladder cancer, 82–83
 Gallstones, 81–82, 82f
 Gallstone obstruction of cystic duct, 81–82
 Gangrene, 225
 Gardner syndrome, 77, 77t
 Gastric cancer, 68
 Gastric conditions, 66–68
 gastritis, 66–67, 66t
 hiatal hernia, 66
 peptic ulcer disease, 67, 67t
 Zollinger-Ellison syndrome, 67–68
 Gastric ulcers, 67, 67t
 Gastritis, 66–67, 66t
 Gastroenteritis
 bacterial, 58t
 viral, 57
 Gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD), 64, 65t
 Gastrointestinal bleeding, 78–79, 78f
 Gastrointestinal disorders, 57–90
 biliary, 81–85
 cholangitis, 82, 83f
 cholecystitis, acute, 81–82
 cholelithiasis, 81, 82f
 Crigler-Najjar syndrome, 84–85, 84t
 gallbladder cancer, 82–83
 Gilbert disease, 84–85, 84t
 hepatic bilirubin transport, 84–85, 84t
 primary biliary cirrhosis, 83
 primary sclerosing cholangitis, 83–84
 gastric, 66–68
 cancer, 68
 gastritis, 66–67, 66t
 hiatal hernia, 66
 peptic ulcer disease, 67, 67t
 Zollinger-Ellison syndrome, 67–68
 hepatic, 85–87
 alcohol-related liver disease, 85
 α -antitrypsin deficiency, 87
 cirrhosis, 85
 hemochromatosis, 86–87
 neoplasms, 87
 portal hypertension, 85–86, 86f
 Wilson disease, 87
 infections, 57, 58t, 59f, 59t, 60f, 60t, 61f, 61t
 intestinal, 68–79
 appendicitis, 74
 bowel obstruction, 72, 73f, 74t
 carcinoid tumor, 76–77
 colorectal cancer, 77–78, 77t, 78t
 diarrhea, 70–71, 70f, 71f
 diverticulitis, 76
 diverticulosis, 75, 75f
 GI bleeding, 78–79, 78f
 ileus, 75
 inflammatory bowel disease, 72, 72t
 irritable bowel syndrome, 71–72, 71t
 ischemic colitis, 74
 malabsorption disorders, 68–70, 69f
 rectal conditions, 76
 volvulus, 75

- Gastrointestinal disorders (*continued*)
- oral and esophageal conditions, 62–66
 - achalasia, 62, 63f
 - diffuse esophageal spasm, 62, 63f
 - dysphagia, 62
 - esophageal cancer, 64–66, 65f
 - gastroesophageal reflux disease, 64, 65t
 - salivary gland disorders, 62
 - Zenker diverticulum, 62, 64f
 - pancreatic, 79–81
 - cancer, 80–81
 - pancreatitis, 79, 79t, 80t
 - pseudocyst, 80
 - pediatric, 87–90
 - failure to thrive, 90
 - Hirschsprung disease, 88–89
 - intussusception, 89
 - Meckel diverticulum, 89
 - necrotizing enterocolitis, 88
 - neonatal jaundice, 89–90
 - pyloric stenosis, 88, 89f
 - tracheoesophageal fistula, 87–88, 88f
- Gastrointestinal infections, 57, 58t, 59f, 59t, 60f, 60t, 61f, 61t
- gastroenteritis
 - bacterial, 58t
 - viral, 57
 - hepatitis, 60f, 60t, 61f, 61t
 - parasitic and protozoan, 59f, 59t
- GCS. *See* Glasgow Coma Scale
- Gemfibrozil, 6t
- Gender reassignment, 238
- Generalized anxiety disorders, 297
- Genetic disorders, 288–291
- deletion syndromes, 290, 290t
 - fragile X syndrome, 290–291
 - of hemoglobin, 134–137
 - sex chromosomes, 288–289, 289t
 - trisomies, 289–290, 289t
- Genital herpes, 252
- Genitourinary disorders, 91–109
- acid-base disorders, 100–101
 - acid-base physiology, 100
 - anion gap disturbances, 100, 101f, 101t, 102t
 - mixed disturbances, 101
 - renal tubular acidosis, 100, 100t
 - bladder and ureteral, 105–106
 - electrolyte disorders, 102–105
 - diabetes insipidus, 102–103
 - hypercalcemia, 104–105
 - hyperkalemia, 104
 - hypernatremia, 102, 103f
 - hypocalcemia, 105
 - hypokalemia, 104, 105f
 - hyponatremia, 103, 104f
 - syndrome of inappropriate ADH secretion, 103–104
 - glomerular diseases, 96
 - kidney, 93–96
 - hydronephrosis, 94–95, 94f
 - interstitial nephropathy, 96
 - nephrolithiasis, 93–94, 93t, 94t
 - polycystic kidney disease, 95, 95f
 - pyelonephritis, 93
 - renal cell carcinoma, 95–96
 - male reproduction, 107–109
 - benign prostatic hyperplasia, 107
 - epididymitis, 108
 - impotence, 108–109
 - infertility, 108
 - prostate cancer, 107–108
 - prostatitis, 107
 - testicular cancer, 108
 - testicular torsion, 108
 - urethritis, 107
 - pediatric, 109
 - renal failure, 98–99
- Genitourinary reconstruction, 238
- Genitourinary trauma, 165
- GERD. *See* Gastroesophageal reflux disease
- Gestational age, 260
- Gestational diabetes mellitus, 264–265, 264f
- Gestational trophoblastic disease, 280
- GH. *See* Growth hormone
- Giant cell arteritis, 28
- Gigantism, 121
- Gilbert disease, 84–85, 84t
- Glasgow Coma Scale (GCS), 162, 162t
- Glaucoma, 199–200
- Glimepiride, 113t
- Glipizide, 113t
- Global aphasia, 186t
- Glomerular diseases, 96
 - nephritic syndrome, 96, 97t
 - nephrotic syndrome, 96, 98t
- Glucagon, 110
- Glucagonoma, 81
- Glucose intolerance, new onset, 264
- Glucose metabolism, normal, 110
- Glucose metabolism disorders, 110–115
 - diabetes mellitus type I, 110, 111f, 111t, 112t
 - diabetes mellitus type II, 112, 112t, 113t
 - hypoglycemia, 114–115, 115t
- Glyburide, 113t
- Gonorrhea. *See* *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* infection
- Goodpasture syndrome, 47, 97t
- Gout, 210–211, 210f
- Gower maneuver, 223
- GP IIb/IIIa inhibitor, for myocardial infarction, 8t, 9
- Grafts, skin, 237, 237t
- Graft vs. host disease, 173–175
- Granuloma inguinale, 253
- Granulomatosis with polyangiitis, 47–48, 97t
- Grasp reflex, 283t
- Growth hormone (GH), 119–121, 120f, 121t
- Growth in children, 281–282
- Guillain-Barré syndrome, 191
- Gunshot wounds, 161
- Gynecologic development, 239
 - by age, 239, 239t
 - of female breast, 239, 240t
 - hormone and oögonia levels by age in, 239, 240f
 - of pubic hair, 239, 240t
- Gynecologic infections, 249–250
 - toxic shock syndrome, 249–250
 - vaginitis, 249, 249t, 250f
- Gynecologic neoplasms, 253–256
 - benign ovarian tumors, 255–256, 255t
 - cervical cancer, 254–255, 254t
 - endometrial cancer, 253–254
 - ovarian cancer, 256
 - uterine fibroids, 253
- H**
- HAART. *See* Highly active antiretroviral treatment
- Haemophilus influenzae*, 37
 - meningitis and, 179
- Haemophilus influenzae* type B (Hib), 53
 - vaccine
 - childhood, 282, 285t
 - epiglottitis and, 53
- Hairy cell leukemia, 150–151, 151f
- Hallucinations, 293
- Hallucinogens
 - abuse of, 301t
 - on pregnancy, 267t
- Hashimoto thyroiditis, 116
- hCG. *See* Human chorionic gonadotropin
- HDL. *See* High-density lipoprotein
- Headache, 181, 181t
 - tension, 181
- Head circumference, in children, 281–282
- Head trauma, 162–163
- Health maintenance, in children, 282, 284t–285t
- Heart
 - anatomy of, 1, 1f
 - physiology of, 14
- Heart block, 9, 10f
- Heart death, 314
- Heart failure, 14–15
 - congestive, 15, 16f
 - diastolic dysfunction, 15
 - systolic dysfunction, 15
- Heart rate (HR), 2
- Heart transplantation, 174t
- Heat exhaustion/stroke, 156, 156t
- Heberden nodes, 213
- Height, in children, 281
- Heimlich maneuver, 156
- HELLP syndrome, 141t, 265–266
- Hemangioblastoma, 95
- Hematochezia, 77, 78, 78f
- Hematology, 127–153
 - anaphylaxis, 138
 - anemias, 127–134
 - aplastic, 133–134
 - of chronic disease, 131t, 132
 - folate-deficiency, 129t, 132
 - hemolytic, 129, 129t, 130t
 - iron-deficiency, 129–131, 129t, 131f, 131t
 - lead poisoning, 129t, 131, 131t, 132f
 - vitamin B₁₂ deficiency, 129t, 132, 133f
 - clotting disorders, 138–142
 - disseminated intravascular coagulation, 141–142
 - hemophilia, 140–141
 - thrombocytopenia, 139, 141t
 - vitamin K deficiency, 140
 - von Willebrand disease, 139
 - genetic disorders of hemoglobin, 134–137
 - sickle cell disease, 136–137, 136f
 - sideroblastic anemia, 129t, 131t, 134, 134f
 - thalassemia, 131t, 134–136, 135f, 135t
 - infections, 142–147
 - human immunodeficiency virus, 143–147, 144t–145t, 145f, 146t
 - malaria, 142, 143f
 - mononucleosis, 143
 - sepsis, 142
 - leukocyte disorders, 137
 - leukocyte hypersensitivity reactions, 137–138, 138t
 - neoplastic conditions, 147–151
 - leukemia, 147–151, 149f, 150f, 151f
 - lymphoma, 147, 147f, 147t
 - multiple myeloma, 147
 - polycythemia vera, 147
 - pediatric, 152–153- Hematoma, 87
 - epidural, 184, 185f
 - subdural, 185, 185f
- Hematuria, 94t
- Hemiballismus, 192t
- Hemochromatosis, 86–87
- Hemodialysis, 99
- Hemodynamically unstable patient with blunt trauma, 164
- Hemodynamic stability, 167–168, 169t
 - transfusions, 167–168, 168t
 - vasoactive medications, 168, 169t
- Hemoglobin A_{1c}, 110
- Hemoglobin disorders, genetic, 134–137
 - sickle cell disease, 136–137, 136f
 - sideroblastic anemia, 129t, 131t, 134, 134f
 - thalassemia, 131t, 134–136, 135f, 135t
- Hemoglobin-oxygen dissociation curve, 127, 127f
- Hemolytic anemia, 129, 129t, 130t
- Hemolytic disease of newborn, 152, 291t
- Hemophilia, 140–141
- Hemorrhage
 - headache and, 181
 - parenchymal, 183–184
 - retinal, 200
 - subarachnoid, 95
- Hemorrhoids, 76
- Hemothorax, 51
- Henoch-Schönlein purpura, 28
- Heparin, 48
 - low molecular weight, 48, 139
 - for myocardial infarction, 8t, 9

- poisoning with, 158t
 PTT monitoring of, 139
 teratogenic effects of, 268t
- Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (HIT), 141t
- Hepatic bilirubin transport disorders, 84–85, 84t
- Hepatic concerns, in preoperative assessment, 170
- Hepatic disorders, 85–87
 alcohol-related liver disease, 85
 α -antitrypsin deficiency, 87
 cirrhosis, 85
 hemochromatosis, 86–87
 neoplasms, 87
 portal hypertension, 85–86, 86f
 Wilson disease, 87
- Hepatic neoplasms, 87
- Hepatic shunting, 86
- Hepatic transplantation, 174t
- Hepatitis, 60f, 60t, 61f, 61t, 85
 hepatitis A virus, 57, 60t
 hepatitis B virus, 57, 60f, 60t, 61t
 hepatitis C virus, 57, 60t, 61f
 hepatitis D virus, 57, 60t
 hepatitis E virus, 57, 60t
 in pregnancy, 269t
- Hepatocellular carcinoma, 87, 95
- Herald patch, 232, 232f
- Hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer (HNPCC), 77t
- Hernia, hiatal, 66
- Herpes simplex virus (HSV), 226, 227f
 in pregnancy, 269t
- Heterosexual precocious puberty, 240
- HHNS. *See* Hyperosmolar hyperglycemic nonketotic syndrome
- Hiatal hernia, 66
- Hib. *See* *Haemophilus influenzae* type B
- High-density lipoprotein (HDL), 5, 5f
- Highly active antiretroviral treatment (HAART), 146, 146t
- Hip dislocations, 204
- Hip fracture, 205t
- Hirschsprung disease, 88–89
- Histrionic disorder, 300t
- HIT. *See* Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia
- HIV. *See* Human immunodeficiency virus
- HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors, 6t
 for myocardial infarction, 8t, 9
- HNPCC. *See* Hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer
- HOCM. *See* Hypertrophic obstructive cardiomyopathy
- Hodgkin disease, 147, 148f
- Homan sign, 27
- Homicidal ideation, 293
- Hormone replacement therapy, breast cancer and, 257, 259
- Horner syndrome, 44, 181t, 198t
- Hot flashes, 241
- HPV. *See* Human papillomavirus
- HR. *See* Heart rate
- Hs, 7, 48
- HSV. *See* Herpes simplex virus
- HTN. *See* Hypertension
- Human bite, 157, 157t
- Human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG), in menstrual cycle, 241, 243t
- Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), 143–147
 antiviral medications for, 146, 146t
 opportunistic infections with, 143, 144t–145t
 in pregnancy, 269t
 serologic profile of, 145, 145f
- Human papillomavirus (HPV), 228, 252, 252f
- Humerus fracture, 205t
- Huntington disease, 190
- Hydatidiform mole, 280
- Hydralazine, 23t, 24t
- Hydrocephalus, childhood, 195
- Hydrochlorothiazide, 92t
- Hydronephrosis, 94–95, 94f
- Hydroxychloroquine, 175t
- Hyper-19M disease, 287t
- Hyperaldosteronism, 122–123
- Hyperbilirubinemia, 89
- Hypercalcemia, 104–105, 118
- Hypercholesterolemia, 5, 5f, 6t
- Hypercoagulability, 139
- Hyperemesis gravidarum, 266
- Hyper-IgE disease, 288t
- Hyperkalemia, 104
- Hyperkinetic disorders, 191, 192t
- Hypernatremia, 102, 103f
- Hyperopia, 198t
- Hyperosmolar hyperglycemic nonketotic syndrome (HHNS), 113–114
- Hyperparathyroidism, 118–119, 125t
- Hyperprolactinemia, 119
- Hypersensitivity reactions
 leukocyte, 137–138, 138t
 of skin, 229–230, 230f
- Hypersomnia, 193
- Hypertension (HTN), 22–25
 with bradycardia, 162
 hypertensive urgency, 24–25
 portal, 85–86, 86f
 primary, 22–23, 23t, 24t
 pulmonary, 48
 secondary, 24, 25t
- Hypertensive emergency, 24
- Hypertensive urgency, 24–25
- Hyperthermia, 156
 malignant, 173
- Hyperthyroidism, 115, 116t
- Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, 18f, 19t
- Hypertrophic obstructive cardiomyopathy (HOCM), 16, 19
- Hypocalcemia, 105, 117
- Hypochondriasis, 303
- Hypoglycemia, 114–115, 115t
- Hypokalemia, 104, 105f
- Hypomanic episodes, 295
- Hyponatremia, 103, 104f
- Hypoparathyroidism, 119
- Hypopituitarism, 121–122, 121t
- Hypothalamic disorders, 119–122
- Hypothalamic function, 119, 120f
- Hypothermia, 156, 157f
- Hypothyroidism, 117
- Hypovolemic shock, 26t
- Hypoxia, chronic, 147
- Hysterectomy, 253–254
- I**
- IBD. *See* Inflammatory bowel disease
- IBS. *See* Irritable bowel syndrome
- IC. *See* Inspiratory capacity
- ICP. *See* Increased intracranial pressure
- ICU. *See* Intensive care unit
- Idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis (IPF), 46
- Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP), 141t
- IDV. *See* Indinavir
- IgA antibodies, in breast milk, 279
- IgA deficiency, 287t
- Ileus, 75
- Immune disorders, pediatric, 286–288
 congenital, 286, 287t–288t
- Immunosuppressive drugs, for transplantation, 173, 175t
- Impacted stones, 93
- Impetigo, 225, 226f
- Impotence, 108–109
- Impoverished thought, 292
- IMV. *See* Intermittent mandatory ventilation
- Incomplete breech, 278, 278f
- Increased intracranial pressure (ICP), 179
- Incretin mimetics, 112
- Indinavir (IDV), 146t
- Infections
 with burns, 155
 congenital, 268, 269t
 dermatology, 224–229, 224f, 226f, 227f, 227t, 228f, 229f, 229t
- ear, 201–202
- eye, 199
- gastrointestinal, 57, 58t, 59f, 59t, 60f, 60t, 61f, 61t
- gynecologic, 249–250, 249t, 250f
- hematologic, 142–147, 143f, 144t, 145f, 145t, 146t
- musculoskeletal, 211–212, 212t, 213f
- myocardial, 20–22, 21f, 22t
- neurologic, 179–181, 179t, 180t
- respiratory
 lower, 36f, 37–38
 upper, 35–37, 36f
 with transplantation, 173
 urinary tract, 105–106
- Infertility
 male, 108
 with transplantation, 173
- Infiltrating ductal carcinoma, 258t
- Infiltrating lobular carcinoma, 258t
- Inflamed conjunctiva, 199
- Inflammation, eye, 199
- Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD), 72, 72t
- Inflammatory carcinoma, 258t
- Inflammatory conditions of skin, 229–233
 atopic dermatitis, 231, 232f
 erythema multiforme, 230
 erythema nodosum, 233
 hypersensitivity reactions, 229–230, 230f
 pityriasis rosea, 232–233, 232f
 psoriasis, 231–232, 232f
 seborrheic dermatitis, 231
 Stevens-Johnson syndrome, 230
 toxic epidermal necrolysis, 230–231, 231f
- Informed consent, 308, 313
- Injury. *See* Accidents and injury
- Inotropes, 168, 169t
- INR. *See* International normalized ratio
- Insecticide poisoning, 158t
- Insight, 293
- Inspiratory capacity (IC), 33f, 34t
- Inspiratory reserve volume (IRV), 33f, 34t
- Insulin, 110
- Insulinomas, 81
- Insulin resistance, with acromegaly, 121
- Insulin therapy, 111f, 112t
- Integrase inhibitor, 146t
- Intensive care unit (ICU), 167
- Intermittent mandatory ventilation (IMV), 53t
- International normalized ratio (INR), 139
- Interstitial lung diseases, 46–48, 47t
- Interstitial nephropathy, 96
- Intertrigo, 229t
- Intestinal conditions, 68–79
 appendicitis, 74
 bowel obstruction, 72, 73f, 74t
 carcinoid tumor, 76–77
 colorectal cancer, 77–78, 77t, 78t
 diarrhea, 70–71, 70f, 71f
 diverticulitis, 76
 diverticulosis, 75, 75f
 GI bleeding, 78–79, 78f
 ileus, 75
 inflammatory bowel disease, 72, 72t
 irritable bowel syndrome, 71–72, 71t
 ischemic colitis, 74
 malabsorption disorders, 68–70, 69f
 rectal conditions, 76
 volvulus, 75
- Intraductal papilloma, 257
- Intrauterine devices (IUDs), 243t–245t
- Intrauterine fetal demise, 271
- Intrauterine growth restriction (IUGR), 271
- Intravaginal ring, 243t–245t
- Intubation, 52
- Intussusception, 89, 291t
- Invasive monitoring, in ICU, 167
- Investigator bias, 309t
- IPF. *See* Idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis
- Ipratropium, 42t
- Irbesartan, 23t

Iron, in pregnancy, 262t
 Iron-deficiency anemia, 77, 129–131, 129t, 131f, 131t
 Iron poisoning, 158t
 Irritable bowel syndrome (IBS), 71–72, 71t
 IRV. *See* Inspiratory reserve volume
 Ischemic colitis, 74
 Ischemic heart disease, 4–9
 angina pectoris, 6
 atherosclerosis, 4–5, 4f
 coronary artery disease, 4
 hypercholesterolemia, 5, 5f, 6t
 myocardial hypoxia, 4
 myocardial infarction, 7–9, 7f, 8t
 unstable angina, 6–7
 Ischemic stroke
 embolic, 182
 thrombotic, 182
 Isoniazid poisoning, 158t
 Isopropyl alcohol poisoning, 158t
 Isoproterenol, 169t
 Isosexual precocious puberty, 240
 Isotretinoin, 226
 ITP. *See* Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura
 IUDs. *See* Intrauterine devices
 IUGR. *See* Intrauterine growth restriction

J

Janeway lesions, 22
 Jaundice
 neonatal, 89–90
 prolonged, 126
 Job syndrome, 288t
 Jones criteria, 21, 21f
 JRA. *See* Juvenile idiopathic arthritis
 Judgment, 293
 Juvenile idiopathic arthritis (JRA), 220, 221t
 Juvenile onset diabetes, 110, 111f, 111t, 112t
 Juvenile polyposis, 77t

K

Kawasaki disease, 28–29
 Kayser-Fleischer rings, 87
 Kerley B lines, 15
 Kernicterus, 90
 Kernig signs, 179
 Kidney disorders, 93–96
 hydronephrosis, 94–95, 94f
 interstitial nephropathy, 96
 nephrolithiasis, 93–94, 93t, 94t
 polycystic kidney disease, 95, 95f
 pyelonephritis, 93
 renal cell carcinoma, 95–96
 Kidney function, 91, 91f
 Klinefelter syndrome, 289t
 Klumpke palsy, 209t
 Knowledge base, 293
 Kussmaul sign, 20

L

Labetalol, 24t
 Labor and delivery, 275–280
 assessment of fetal well-being, 275, 276f, 276t
 caesarean section, 278–279
 fetal heart rate in, 275, 276f, 276t
 induction of, 277, 278t
 malpresentation, 277–278, 278f
 normal puerperium and postpartum activity, 279, 279t
 postpartum bleeding, 280
 preterm, 272–273
 stages of, 275, 277t
 Lactase dehydrogenase (LDH), 7
 Lactation, 243t–245t
 Lactose intolerance, 70
 Lambert-Eaton syndrome, 191
 Lamivudine (3TC), 143, 146t
 Lamotrigine, 188t
 Large cell carcinoma, lung, 44t, 45t
 Laryngeal cancer, 46

Lateral meniscus tear, 204
 LCIS. *See* Lobular carcinoma in situ
 LDH. *See* Lactase dehydrogenase
 LDL. *See* Low-density lipoprotein
 Lead poisoning, 158t
 Lead poisoning anemia, 129t, 131, 131t, 132f
 Lead-time bias, 309t
 Learning disabilities, 307
 Left anterior descending artery, 1, 1f
 Left ventricular hypertrophy (LVH), 15
 Left ventricular pressure-volume loop, 2f
 Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease, 222
 Length bias, 309t
 Lentigo maligna, 236
 Leopold maneuvers, 263
 Leukemia, 147–151, 291t
 acute lymphocytic, 147–149, 149f
 acute myelogenous, 149, 149f
 chronic lymphocytic, 150, 150f
 chronic myelogenous, 150
 hairy cell, 150–151, 151f
 Leukocoria, 197, 197f
 Leukocyte adhesion deficiency, 288t
 Leukocyte disorders, 137
 Leukocyte hypersensitivity reactions, 137–138, 138t
 Level of consciousness, 293
 Levetiracetam, 188t
 Levodopa, 189t
 LH. *See* Luteinizing hormone
 Libman-Sacks endocarditis, 21
 Lidocaine, 14t
 Life support, 313
 Ligament tears, 204
 Linagliptin, 112
 Liraglutide, 112
 Lisch nodules, 193
 Lisinopril, 23t
 Lithium, teratogenic effects of, 268t
 Liver metastases, 87
 Liver transplantation, 174t
 Living will, 313
 LMN disease, 189
 LMWH. *See* Low molecular weight heparin
 Lobular carcinoma in situ (LCIS), 258t, 259
 Loop diuretics, 92, 92t, 105
 Loose associations, 293
 Losartan, 23t
 Loss of consciousness, 162
 Lovastatin, 6t
 Low-density lipoprotein (LDL), 5, 5f
 Lower respiratory infections, 36f, 37–38
 bronchitis, acute, 37
 pneumonia, 37, 38t, 39f, 39t
 tuberculosis, 37–38, 40f, 40t
 Low molecular weight heparin (LMWH), 48, 139
 Lumpectomy, 259
 Lung cancer, 44–46, 44t, 45t
 Lung transplantation, 174t
 Lung volume measurement, 33, 33f, 34f, 34t
 Lupus nephritis, 97t
 Luteal phase, 241, 242f
 Luteinizing hormone (LH), 119–121, 120f, 121t
 in menstrual cycle, 241, 243t
 LVH. *See* Left ventricular hypertrophy
 Lyme disease, 212, 213f
 Lymphogranuloma venereum, 252–253
 Lymphoid cell line development, 128, 128f
 Lymphoma, 147, 147f, 147t
 Lymphopenia without immune deficiency, 137

M

Macular degeneration, 200
 Major depressive disorder, 294, 295t
 Malabsorption disorders, 68–70, 69f
 Malaria, 142, 143f
 Male reproductive disorders, 107–109
 benign prostatic hyperplasia, 107
 epididymitis, 108
 impotence, 108–109

infertility, 108
 prostate cancer, 107–108
 prostatitis, 107
 testicular cancer, 108
 testicular torsion, 108
 urethritis, 107
 Malignant hyperthermia, 173
 Malignant mesothelioma, 51
 Malingering, 304
 Malpresentation, fetal, 277–278, 278f
 Mammal bite, 157, 157t
 Mammogram, 257, 258f
 Manic episodes, 294
 Mannitol, 92t
 MAOIs. *See* Monoamine oxidase inhibitors
 Maraviroc, 146t
 Marcus Gunn pupil, 198t
 Marfan syndrome, 183
 Marijuana
 abuse of, 301t
 on pregnancy, 267t
 Mastectomy, 259
 MAT. *See* Multifocal atrial tachycardia
 Maternal asthma, 266
 Maternal deep venous thrombosis, 267
 Maternal drug use, 267–268, 267t, 268t
 Maternal nausea and vomiting, 266
 Maternal physiology, 260, 261t
 Maternal seizures, 266
 MCA. *See* Middle cerebral artery
 MCL. *See* Medial collateral ligament
 MCTD. *See* Mixed connective tissue disease
 MCV. *See* Mean corpuscular volume
 Mean arterial pressure, 2
 Mean corpuscular volume (MCV), 129, 129t
 Mechanical ventilation, 52–53, 53t
 Meckel diverticulum, 89
 Meconium aspiration syndrome, 55–56
 Medial collateral ligament (MCL) tear, 204
 Medroxy-progesterone acetate, 243t–245t
 Medullary carcinoma, 258t
 Medullary thyroid cancer, 116t, 125t
 Meglitinides, 112
 Melanocyte-stimulating hormone (MSH), 121, 121t
 Melanocytic nevi, 236, 237f
 Melanoma, 235–237, 236f, 237f
 Membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis, 98t
 Membranous glomerulonephritis, 98t
 Memory, 293
 MEN. *See* Multiple endocrine neoplasia
 Menarche, 239
 Ménière disease, 202
 Meningitis
 bacterial, 179, 179t, 180t
 fungal, 179, 180t
 viral, 179, 180t
 Meningocele, 195
 Meniscus tears, 204
 Menopause, 241–242
 Menorrhagia, 253
 Menstrual cycle, normal, 241, 242f, 242t
 Menstrual disorders, 245–249
 abnormal uterine bleeding, 248
 amenorrhea, 240t, 245–246, 246f
 dysmenorrhea, 247
 endometriosis, 247
 polycystic ovary syndrome, 248–249
 premenstrual syndrome, 247
 Menstrual irregularity, 241
 Menstrual physiology, 239–243
 gynecologic development, 239, 239t, 240f, 240t
 menopause, 241–242
 menstrual cycle, normal, 241, 242f, 242t
 precocious puberty, 240–241
 Mental status examination, 292–293
 Mercury poisoning, 158t
 Mesenteric ischemia, 172t
 Mesothelioma, malignant, 51
 Meta-analysis, 309t

- Metabolic acidosis, 101t, 102t, 127
 Metabolic alkalosis, 101f, 101t, 102t, 127
 Metabolic bone diseases
 gout, 210–211, 210f
 osteogenesis imperfecta, 210
 osteopetrosis, 209
 osteoporosis, 209
 Paget disease of bone, 210
 pseudogout, 211, 211f
 Metal poisoning, 158t
 Metastases
 bone, 218
 CNS, 192
 liver, 87
 Metformin, 113t
 Methanol poisoning, 158t
 Methyl dopa, 24t
 Methylprednisolone, 42t
 Metoprolol, 14t, 23t
 for CHF, 15
 MI. *See* Myocardial infarction
 Middle cerebral artery (MCA), 176f, 177t, 182, 182f
 Middle meningeal artery, 184
 Milestones, developmental, 282, 283t
 Minerals, absorption of, 69f
 Minimal change disease, 98t
 Minoxidil, 23t
 Mirtazapine, 295t
 Mitral regurgitation, 16f, 17t
 Mitral stenosis, 16f, 17t
 Mitral valve prolapse, 16f
 Mixed connective tissue disease (MCTD), 214t, 217–218
 MLF syndrome, 198t
 Molluscum contagiosum, 228, 252
 Monitoring, invasive, in ICU, 167
 Monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs), 295t
 Mononucleosis, 143
 Monozygotic twinning, 274
 Monteggia fracture, 205t
 Mood, 293
 Mood disorders, 294–296
 adjustment disorder with depressed mood, 296
 bipolar disorder, 294–295
 cyclothymia, 296
 dysthymic disorder, 294
 major depressive disorder, 294, 295t
 Mood stabilizers, 295
 Moon facies, 122
 Moro reflex, 283t
 Morphine, for myocardial infarction, 8t, 9
 Mosaicism, 288, 289t
 Motor neurons, 176, 177f, 177t
 MS. *See* Multiple sclerosis
 MSH. *See* Melanocyte-stimulating hormone
 Mucinous carcinoma, 258t
 Mucinous cystadenoma, ovarian, 255t
 Mucosal neuromas, 125t
 Multi-axis classification, DSM-IV, 293t
 Multifocal atrial tachycardia (MAT), 11, 12f
 Multiple endocrine neoplasia (MEN), 125, 125t
 Multiple gestations, 274
 Multiple myeloma, 147
 Multiple sclerosis (MS), 190
 Münchausen syndrome, 304
 Münchausen syndrome *by proxy*, 304
 Murmurs, 16f
 Muromonab-D3 (OKT3), 175t
 Murphy sign, 81
 Muscle flap, 237t
 Musculoskeletal disorders, 203–223
 carpal tunnel syndrome, 203, 203f
 compartment syndrome, 204
 fractures, 204, 205t
 hip dislocations, 204
 infection, 211–212
 Lyme disease, 212, 213f
 osteomyelitis, 212
 septic joint and septic arthritis, 211–212, 212t
 ligament tears, 204
 meniscus tears, 204
 metabolic bone diseases, 209–211
 gout, 210–211, 210f
 osteogenesis imperfecta, 210
 osteopetrosis, 209
 osteoporosis, 209
 Paget disease of bone, 210
 pseudogout, 211, 211f
 neoplasms, 218–219
 bone metastases, 218
 Ewing sarcoma, 218
 osteochondroma, 219
 osteosarcoma, 218, 219f
 osteoarthritis, 213–214, 213f
 pediatric, 219–223
 clavicular fracture, 221
 club foot, 222
 developmental dysplasia of hip, 219–220
 Duchenne muscular dystrophy, 223
 juvenile idiopathic arthritis, 220, 221t
 Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease, 222
 nursemaid's elbow, 222
 Osgood-Schlatter disease, 220–221
 physeal fractures, 221, 222t
 rickets, 220
 scoliosis, 222
 slipped capital femoral epiphysis, 220
 rheumatologic diseases, 214–218
 ankylosing spondylitis, 214t, 217
 dermatomyositis, 214t, 216
 fibromyalgia, 216–217
 mixed connective tissue disease, 214t, 217–218
 polymyalgia rheumatica, 216
 polymyositis, 214t, 216
 psoriatic arthritis, 214t, 217
 rheumatoid arthritis, 214–215, 214t
 scleroderma, 214t, 217
 Sjögren syndrome, 214t, 218
 systemic lupus erythematosus, 214t, 215–216, 215f
 shoulder dislocations, 204
 spine, 206–208
 back pain, 206, 206f
 brachial plexus, 208, 208f, 209t
 cauda equina syndrome, 208
 degenerative disc disease, 206–207, 207f, 207t
 spinal stenosis, 207
 Myasthenia gravis, 191
 Mycophenolic acid, 175t
Mycoplasma pneumoniae, 37
 Myeloid cell line development, 128, 128f
 Myelomeningocele, 195
 Myocardial hypoxia, 4
 Myocardial infarction (MI), 7–9, 7f, 8t
 ECG of, 6, 7f, 8t
 ST-elevation, 9
 Myocardial infections, 20–22, 21f, 22t
 endocarditis, 21–22, 22t
 myocarditis, 20–21
 rheumatic fever, acute, 21, 21f
 Myocardial ischemia
 in DM, 6
 temporary, 6
 Myocarditis, 20–21
 Myomectomy, 253
 Myopia, 198t
- N**
 Naegle's rule, 260
 Narcissistic disorder, 300t
 Narcolepsy, 193
 Nateglinide, 112
 Nausea and vomiting, maternal, 266
 Neck trauma, 163–164, 163f
 Necrotizing enterocolitis, 88
 Necrotizing fasciitis, 225
 Negatively birefringent crystals, 210, 210f
 Neglect, 166
 Negri bodies, 181
Neisseria gonorrhoeae infection, 250
 in pregnancy, 269t
 Nelfinavir (NFV), 146t
 Neologisms, 293
 Neonatal jaundice, 89–90
 Neoplasms. *See* specific neoplasm
 Nephritic syndrome, 96, 97t
 Nephrolithiasis, 93–94, 93t, 94t
 Nephrotic syndrome, 96, 98t, 115
 Neural tube disorders, 195–196, 291t
 Neuroblastoma, 153
 Neurofibromas, 193
 Neurofibromatosis type 1, 193
 Neurogenic shock, 26t
 Neuroleptic malignant syndrome, 298
 Neurologic disorders, 176–202
 cerebrovascular and hemorrhagic diseases, 181–186
 aphasias, 186, 186t
 epidural hematoma, 184, 185f
 normal pressure hydrocephalus, 186
 parenchymal hemorrhage, 183–184
 stroke, 182–183, 182f, 183t
 subarachnoid hemorrhage, 184, 184f
 subdural hematoma, 185, 185f
 transient ischemic attack, 181–182
 coma, 194, 194f
 degenerative, 189–190
 Alzheimer disease, 190
 amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, 189
 Huntington disease, 190
 multiple sclerosis, 190
 Parkinson disease, 189
 syringomyelia, 190
 headache, 181, 181t
 infections, 179–181
 bacterial meningitis, 179, 179t, 180t
 brain abscess, 180
 encephalitis, 180
 poliomyelitis, 180
 rabies, 180–181
 viral meningitis, 179, 180t
 neoplasms, 192–193
 metastatic CNS, 192
 neurofibromatosis type 1, 193
 primary CNS, 192
 pediatric, 195–197
 cerebral palsy, 196
 childhood hydrocephalus, 195
 febrile seizures, 195
 neural tube disorders, 195–196
 retinoblastoma, 197, 197f
 Tay-Sachs disease, 195
 peripheral, 191, 192t
 seizure disorders, 186–188
 causes of, 186, 187t
 status epilepticus, 188
 treatment of, 186, 188t
 types of, 186, 187t, 188t
 sleep, 193
 syncope, 193–194
 Neurologic organization, 176–178, 177f, 177t, 178t
 Neutropenia without immune deficiency, 137
 Nevirapine (NVP), 146t
 NFV. *See* Nelfinavir
 Niacin, 6t
 Nicotine, abuse of, 302t
 Nifedipine, 23t, 24t
 Nipple discharge, 257
 Nitroglycerin
 for angina pectoris, 6
 for myocardial infarction, 8t, 9
 Nitroprusside, 23t
 Non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors, 146t
 Nonstress test, 275
 Norepinephrine, 169t
 Normal clotting function, 138–139, 139f
 Normal pressure hydrocephalus, 186

- Nuclear exercise test, 4
 Nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors, 146t
 Nulliparity, 265
 Nursemaid's elbow, 222
 Nutrients
 absorption of, 69f
 birth defects and, 261, 262t
 Nutrition
 pregnancy needs, 260
 for prenatal care, 261, 262t
 NVP. *See* Nevirapine
- O**
 OA. *See* Osteoarthritis
 Obesity
 DM type II and, 112
 osteoporosis and, 209
 Observational bias, 309t
 Obsessions, 293
 Obsessive-compulsive disorder (OCD), 297, 300t
 Obstetrics, 260–280
 activity during, 261
 gestational trophoblastic disease, 280
 labor and delivery, 275–280
 assessment of fetal well-being, 275, 276f, 276t
 caesarean section, 278–279
 induction of, 277, 278t
 malpresentation, 277–278, 278f
 normal puerperium and postpartum activity, 279, 279t
 postpartum bleeding, 280
 stages of, 275, 277t
 maternal physiology in, 260, 261t
 medical complications of pregnancy, 264–269
 congenital infections, 268, 269t
 eclampsia, 266
 gestational diabetes mellitus, 264–265, 264f
 maternal asthma, 266
 maternal deep venous thrombosis, 267
 maternal drug use, 267–268, 267t, 268t
 maternal nausea and vomiting, 266
 maternal UTIs, 267
 preeclampsia, 265–266
 pregestational diabetes mellitus, 265
 nutritional needs in, 260
 obstetric complications of pregnancy, 270–274
 abruptio placenta, 274
 ectopic pregnancy, 270
 intrauterine fetal demise, 271
 intrauterine growth restriction, 271
 multiple gestations, 274
 oligohydramnios, 271–272
 placenta previa, 273–274, 273f
 polyhydramnios, 272
 premature rupture of membranes, 272
 preterm labor, 272–273
 spontaneous abortion, 270–271, 270t
 pregnancy physiology in, 260, 260f, 261t
 prenatal care in, 261–263
 nutrition, 261, 262t
 visits, 261–263, 262t, 263t
 Obstructive airway diseases, 41–42
 asthma, 41, 42t, 43t
 bronchiectasis, 42
 chronic bronchitis, 41
 emphysema, 41–42
 Occlusion of coronary vessels, 7
 OCD. *See* Obsessive-compulsive disorder
 OCPs. *See* Oral contraceptive pills
 OKT3. *See* Muromonab-D3
 Oligohydramnios, 271–272
 Oncology therapy, 151, 152t
 pediatric, 153
 Open angle glaucoma, 199
 Ophthalmology, 197–201
 cataracts, 199
 common vision abnormalities, 197, 198t
 glaucoma, 199–200
 inflammation and infection, 199
 macular degeneration, 200
 normal eye function, 197, 198f, 198t
 retinal detachment, 200
 retinal vessel occlusion, 200–201, 200f, 201f
 Opioids
 abuse of, 302t
 poisoning with, 158t
 on pregnancy, 267t
 Oral contraceptive pills (OCPs), 243t–245t
 Organ donation, 314
 Organophosphates, 158
 poisoning with, 158, 158t
 Orientation, 293
 Orthopaedics. *See* Musculoskeletal disorders
 Ortolani maneuver, 219
 Osgood-Schlatter disease, 220–221
 Osler nodes, 22
 Osmotic agents, 92t
 Osteoarthritis (OA), 213–214, 213f
 Osteochondroma, 219
 Osteogenesis imperfecta, 210
 Osteomalacia, 220
 Osteomyelitis, 212
 Osteopetrosis, 209
 Osteoporosis, 209
 estrogen and, 241
 Osteosarcoma, 218, 219f
 Otitis externa, 202
 Otitis media, 201–202
 Ovarian cancer, 256
 Ovarian cysts, 248
 Ovarian tumors, benign, 255–256, 255t
 Overflow incontinence, 106
 Oxcarbazepine, 188t
- P**
 Packed RBCs, 168t
 Paget disease of bone, 210
 Pain disorder, 303
 Pancoast syndrome, 45
 Pancreas transplantation, 174t
 Pancreatic cancer
 endocrine, 81
 exocrine, 80–81
 Pancreatic disorders, 79–81
 cancer, 80–81
 pancreatitis, 79, 79t, 80t
 pseudocyst, 80
 Pancreatic pseudocyst, 80
 Pancreatitis, 79, 79t, 80t, 172t
 Panic disorder, 296, 296t
 Pannus formation, 214
 Papillary thyroid carcinoma, 116t
 Pap smears, 254
 Paracentesis, 86
 Paraneoplastic syndromes
 with hepatocellular carcinoma, 87
 with lung cancer, 44, 44t
 with SIADH, 103
 Paranoid disorder, 300t
 Paranoid schizophrenia, 298t
 Parasitic infections, 59f, 59t
 Parathyroid disorders, 118–119
 Parathyroid function, 118, 118f
 Parathyroid hormone (PTH), 118, 118f
 Parathyroid hyperplasia, 125t
 Parenchymal hemorrhage, 183–184
 Parkinson dementia, 306
 Parkinson disease, 189
 Parkland formula, 155
 Paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia (PSVT), 9–11, 10f, 11f
 Partial thromboplastin time (PTT), 138–139
 Partner abuse, 166
 Parvovirus B19, 269t
 Patent ductus arteriosus (PDA), 30, 31f, 291t
 Pathognomonic injuries, 166
 Patient decision-making, 313
 Patient rights, 312–313
 Pavlik harness, 220
 PBC. *See* Primary biliary cirrhosis
 PCA. *See* Posterior cerebral artery
 PCOS. *See* Polycystic ovary syndrome
 PCP. *See* Phencyclidine
 PDA. *See* Patent ductus arteriosus; Posterior descending artery
 PE. *See* Pulmonary embolism
 PEA. *See* Pulseless electrical activity
 Pediatric development and health supervision, 281–286
 in adolescence, 286, 286t
 childhood health maintenance, 282, 284t–285t
 developmental milestones, 282, 283t
 physical growth in, 281–282
 Pediatric disorders
 cardiovascular, 29–32
 atrial septal defect, 30, 31f
 endocardial cushion defect, 31f, 32
 fetal circulation, 29–30, 29f
 patent ductus arteriosus, 30, 31f
 persistent truncus arteriosus, 31f, 32
 tetralogy of Fallot, 31f, 32
 transposition of great vessels, 31, 31f
 ventricular septal defect, 30, 31f
 endocrine, 126
 gastrointestinal, 87–90
 failure to thrive, 90
 Hirschsprung disease, 88–89
 intussusception, 89
 Meckel diverticulum, 89
 necrotizing enterocolitis, 88
 neonatal jaundice, 89–90
 pyloric stenosis, 88, 89f
 tracheoesophageal fistula, 87–88, 88f
 genetic, 288–291
 deletion syndromes, 290, 290t
 fragile X syndrome, 290–291
 sex chromosomes, 288–289, 289t
 trisomies, 289–290, 289t
 genitourinary, 109
 hematologic, 152–153
 immune, 286–288
 musculoskeletal, 219–223
 clavicular fracture, 221
 club foot, 222
 developmental dysplasia of hip, 219–220
 Duchenne muscular dystrophy, 223
 juvenile idiopathic arthritis, 220, 221t
 Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease, 222
 nursemaid's elbow, 222
 Osgood-Schlatter disease, 220–221
 physeal fractures, 221, 222t
 rickets, 220
 scoliosis, 222
 slipped capital femoral epiphysis, 220
 neurologic, 195–197
 cerebral palsy, 196
 childhood hydrocephalus, 195
 febrile seizures, 195
 neural tube disorders, 195–196
 retinoblastoma, 197, 197f
 Tay-Sachs disease, 195
 oncology, 153
 psychiatric, 306–307
 attention-deficit hyperactivity disorder, 306
 autism, 307
 conduct disorder, 307
 learning disabilities, 307
 Tourette syndrome, 307
 pulmonary, 53–56
 bronchiolitis, 54–55
 croup, 53, 54f
 cystic fibrosis, 56
 epiglottitis, 53–54, 54f
 meconium aspiration syndrome, 55–56
 respiratory distress syndrome of newborn, 55, 55f
 Pelvic fracture, 205t

- Pelvic inflammatory disease (PID), 172t, 250–251
 Pelvic trauma, 165
 Pemphigus vulgaris, 233, 233f
 Penetrating injuries, 161, 165
 Pentobarbital, 188t
 Peptic ulcer disease (PUD), 67, 67t
 Perception, 293
 Percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty (PTCA), 7
 Percutaneous umbilical blood sampling, 263t
 Pericardial diseases, 20
 Pericarditis
 acute, 20
 chronic constrictive, 20
 Perimenopausal period, 241
 Peripheral neurologic disorders, 191, 192t
 Peripheral vascular disease (PVD), 27
 Peritoneal dialysis, 99
 Peritonitis, 93
 spontaneous bacterial, 86
 Peritonsillar abscess, 35
 Pernicious anemia, 66
 Persistent behavior that deviates significantly from cultural norms, 299
 Persistent thought, 293
 Persistent truncus arteriosus, 31f, 32
 Persistent vegetative state, 194
 Personality disorders, 299–300
 clusters, 300, 300t
 persistent behavior that deviates significantly from cultural norms, 299
 Peutz-Jeghers syndrome, 77t
 PFTs. *See* Pulmonary function tests
 Phagocytic Cell Disorders, 288t
 Phalen sign, 203
 Pharmacologic stress testing, 4
 Pharyngitis, 35
 Phencyclidine (PCP), abuse of, 302t
 Phenobarbital, 188t
 teratogenic effects of, 268t
 Phenylephrine, 169t
 Phenytoin, 188t
 teratogenic effects of, 268t
 Pheochromocytoma, 95, 125, 125t
 Philadelphia chromosome, 150
 Phobias, 293
 agoraphobia, 296
 social, 297
 specific, 296–297
 Physical fractures, 221, 222t
 Physician-aided death, 313–314
 PICA. *See* Posterior inferior cerebral artery
 PID. *See* Pelvic inflammatory disease
 Pilocarpine, 200
 Pilonidal disease, 76
 Pink puffers, 41
 Pioglitazone, 113t
 Pirbuterol, 42t
 Pituitary adenoma, 122
 Pituitary disorders, 119–122
 acromegaly, 121
 hyperprolactinemia, 119
 hypopituitarism, 121–122, 121t
 Pituitary function, 119, 120f
 Pityriasis rosea, 232–233, 232f
 Pityriasis versicolor, 229f, 229t
 Placental abruption, 165
 Placental tissue, retained, 280
 Placenta previa, 273–274, 273f
 Placing reflex, 283t
 Plaque rupture, 6
 Plaque surgery, 237–238
 cosmetic surgery, 238
 grafts and flaps, 237, 237t
 reconstructive surgery, 238
 Platelets, 138, 168t
 Pleural diseases, 49–51
 hemothorax, 51
 malignant mesothelioma, 51
 pleural effusion, 49–50, 49t
 pneumothorax, 50, 50f, 50t
 sleep apnea, 51–52
 Pleural effusion, 49–50, 49t
 PMDD. *See* Premenstrual dysphoric disorder
 PMS. *See* Premenstrual syndrome
 Pneumoconioses, 46–47, 47t
 Pneumonia, 37, 38t, 39f, 39t
 Pneumothorax (PTX), 50, 50f, 50t
 Podagra, 210–211
 Poisons, 157–159, 158t
 Poliomyelitis, 178t, 180
 Polyarteritis nodosa, 28
 Polycystic kidney disease, 95, 95f, 183
 Polycystic ovary syndrome (PCOS), 248–249
 Polycythemia vera, 147
 Polyhydramnios, 272
 Polymyalgia rheumatica, 28, 216
 Polymyositis, 214t, 216
 Porphyria cutanea tarda, 233–234
 Portal hypertension, 85–86, 86f
 Positively birefringent, rhomboid crystals, 211, 211f
 Posterior cerebral artery (PCA), 176f, 177t
 Posterior descending artery (PDA), 1, 1f
 Posterior inferior cerebral artery (PICA), 176f, 177t
 Posterior urethral valves, 109
 Postinfectious glomerulonephritis, 97t
 Postmenopausal bleeding, 253
 Postoperative fever, 171, 171f, 171t
 Postpartum activity, 279, 279t
 Postpartum bleeding, 280
 Post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD), 297
 Potassium channel blockers, 14t
 Potassium-sparing aldosterone antagonists, 92t
 Power, 312
 Power of attorney, durable, 313
 Prader-Willi syndrome, 290t
 Pravastatin, 6t
 Prazosin, 23t
 Precocious puberty, 240–241, 291t
 Precontemplation, 293
 Prednisone, 42t
 Preeclampsia, 265–266
 Pregestational diabetes mellitus, 265
 Pregnancy
 activity during, 261
 congenital disease assessment, 263t
 maternal physiology in, 260, 261t
 medical complications of, 264–269
 congenital infections, 268, 269t
 eclampsia, 266
 gestational diabetes mellitus, 264–265, 264f
 maternal asthma, 266
 maternal deep venous thrombosis, 267
 maternal drug use, 267–268, 267t, 268t
 maternal nausea and vomiting, 266
 maternal UTIs, 267
 preeclampsia, 265–266
 pregestational diabetes mellitus, 265
 nutritional needs in, 260, 262t
 obstetric complications of
 abruptio placentae, 274
 intrauterine fetal demise, 271
 intrauterine growth restriction, 271
 multiple gestations, 274
 oligohydramnios, 271–272
 placenta previa, 273–274, 273f
 polyhydramnios, 272
 premature rupture of membranes, 272
 preterm labor, 272–273
 obstetric complications of pregnancy, 270–274
 ectopic pregnancy, 270
 spontaneous abortion, 270–271, 270t
 physiology of, 260, 260f, 261t
 ruptured ectopic, 172t
 screening labs during, 262t
 trauma during, 165
 Preload, 2, 14
 Premature rupture of membranes (PROM), 272
 Premature ventricular contraction (PVC), 13
 Premenstrual dysphoric disorder (PMDD), 247
 Premenstrual syndrome (PMS), 247
 Prenatal care, 261–263
 nutrition, 261, 262t
 visits, 261–263, 262t, 263t
 Preoperative risk assessment, 169–170
 Preparation, 293
 Preterm labor, 272–273
 Primary biliary cirrhosis (PBC), 83
 Primary hypertension, 22–23, 23t, 24t
 Primary sclerosing cholangitis (PSC), 83–84
 Procainamide, 14t
 Progesterone, in menstrual cycle, 241, 243t
 Progesterin challenge, 246
 Progesterin implant, 243t–245t
 Progesterin-releasing IUD, 243t–245t
 Prolactin, 119–121, 120f, 121t, 246
 Prolactinoma, 119
 Prolonged jaundice, 126
 PROM. *See* Premature rupture of membranes
 Propafenone, 14t
 Propranolol, 14t, 23t
 Prostate cancer, 107–108
 Prostatitis, 107
 Protease inhibitors, 146t
 Protein, in pregnancy, 262t
 Prothrombin time (PT), 138
 Protozoan infections, 59f, 59t
 Proximal convoluted tubule, 91, 91f
 Ps
 6, 27, 204
 3, 125
 12, 162
 PSC. *See* Primary sclerosing cholangitis
 Pseudogout, 211, 211f
 Pseudohyperkalemia, 104
 Pseudohypertrophy, 223
 Pseudohyponatremia, 103
 Pseudohypoparathyroidism, 119
 Psoriasis, 231–232, 232f
 Psoriatic arthritis, 214t, 217, 232
 PSVT. *See* Paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia
 Psychiatric disorders
 anxiety disorders, 296–297
 generalized, 297
 obsessive-compulsive disorder, 297
 panic disorder, 296, 296t
 phobia, specific, 296–297
 post-traumatic stress disorder, 297
 social phobia, 297
 delirium, 304–305, 305t
 dementia, 305–306, 305f, 305t
 DSM-IV multi-axis classification of, 293t
 eating disorders, 302
 factitious, 303–304
 mood disorders, 294–296
 adjustment disorder with depressed mood, 296
 bipolar disorder, 294–295
 cyclothymia, 296
 dysthymic disorder, 294
 major depressive disorder, 294, 295t
 pediatric, 306–307
 attention-deficit hyperactivity disorder, 306
 autism, 307
 conduct disorder, 307
 learning disabilities, 307
 Tourette syndrome, 307
 personality, 299–300
 clusters, 300, 300t
 persistent behavior that deviates significantly from cultural norms, 299
 psychotic, 298–299
 other, 298, 299t
 schizophrenia, 298, 298t, 299t
 somatoform, 303–304
 substance abuse, 301, 301t–302t
 Psychiatric evaluation, 292–293, 293t

- Psychotic disorders, 298–299
 other, 298, 299t
 schizophrenia, 298, 298t, 299t
- PT. *See* Prothrombin time
- PTCA. *See* Percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty
- PTH. *See* Parathyroid hormone
- PTSD. *See* Post-traumatic stress disorder
- PTT. *See* Partial thromboplastin time
- PTX. *See* Pneumothorax
- Pubarche, 240
- Publication bias, 309t
- Public reporting, 312
- PUD. *See* Peptic ulcer disease
- Puerperium, 279, 279t
- Pulmonary artery catheter, in ICU, 167
- Pulmonary concerns
 in ICU, 167
 in preoperative assessment, 170
- Pulmonary disorders, 33–56
 acute respiratory distress syndrome, 40–41
 interstitial and other lung diseases, 46–48, 47t
 obstructive airway diseases, 41–42
 asthma, 41, 42t, 43t
 bronchiectasis, 42
 chronic bronchitis, 41
 emphysema, 41–42
- pediatric, 53–56
 bronchiolitis, 54–55
 croup, 53, 54f
 cystic fibrosis, 56
 epiglottitis, 53–54, 54f
 meconium aspiration syndrome, 55–56
 respiratory distress syndrome of newborn, 55, 55f
- pleural diseases, 49–51
 hemothorax, 51
 malignant mesothelioma, 51
 pleural effusion, 49, 49t
 pneumothorax, 50, 50f, 50t
 sleep apnea, 51–52
- pulmonary surgical concerns, 52–53, 53t
- respiratory infections, 35–38
 lower, 36f, 37–38
 upper, 35–37, 36f
- respiratory neoplasms, 43–46
 laryngeal cancer, 46
 lung cancer, 44–46, 44t, 45t
 solitary pulmonary nodule, 43, 43f, 44f
- Pulmonary edema, 49, 92, 155
- Pulmonary embolism (PE), 48
- Pulmonary function tests (PFTs), 33, 33f, 34f, 34t
- Pulmonary hypertension, 48
- Pulmonary nodule, solitary, 43, 43f, 44f
- Pulmonary surgical concerns, 52–53, 53t
 atelectasis, 52
 intubation, 52
 ventilation, 52–53, 53t
- Pulmonic regurgitation, 16f
- Pulmonic stenosis, 16f
- Pulseless electrical activity (PEA), 159, 159f, 160f
- Pulse oximetry, in carbon monoxide poisoning, 159
- Pulse pressure, 2
- PVC. *See* Premature ventricular contraction
- PVD. *See* Peripheral vascular disease
- Pyelonephritis, 93
- Pyloric stenosis, 88, 89f, 291t
- Q**
- Quadruple screen, 263t
- Quinidine, 14t
- R**
- RA. *See* Rheumatoid arthritis
- Rabies, 180–181
- Radiation therapy, 151
- Radioallergosorbent test (RAST), 138
- Raltegravir, 146t
- Randomized clinical trial, 308t
- Ranson Criteria, 80t
- Rapamycin, 175t
- Rape, 166
- Rapidly progressive glomerulonephritis (RPGN), 97t
- RAST. *See* Radioallergosorbent test
- Rates of disease, 310
- Rattlesnake bite, 157, 157t
- Raynaud phenomenon, 217
- RBCs. *See* Red blood cells
- Recall bias, 309t
- Reconstructive surgery, 238
- Rectal conditions, 76
- Rectal fistula, 76
- Red blood cells (RBCs)
 declining count of, 184
 packed, 168t
 physiology of, 127–129, 127f, 128f, 129t
- Reflexes in children, 283t
- Reflex sympathetic dystrophy (RSD), 191
- Rejection, of transplantation, 173, 174t
- Reliability, 293
- Renal cell carcinoma, 95–96
- Renal concerns, in preoperative assessment, 170
- Renal failure, 98–99
 acute, 98–99
 chronic, 99
 dialysis for, 99
- Renal function, normal, 91–92, 91f
- Renal transplantation, 174t
- Renal tubular acidosis, 100, 100t
- Repaglinide, 112
- Reproducible angina, 4
- Research studies
 bias in, 308, 309t
 study designs, 308, 308t–309t
 study requirements, 308
- Residual disorder, 298t
- Residual volume (RV), 33f, 34t
- Respiratory acidosis, 101f, 101t, 102t
- Respiratory alkalosis, 101f, 101t, 102t
- Respiratory distress syndrome of newborn, 55, 55f, 291t
- Respiratory infections, 35–38
 lower, 36f, 37–38
 bronchitis, acute, 37
 pneumonia, 37, 38t, 39f, 39t
 tuberculosis, 37–38, 40f, 40t
 upper, 35–37, 36f
 common cold, 35
 pharyngitis, 35
 sinusitis, 36–37
 tonsillar infections, 36
 viral influenza, 36
- Respiratory neoplasms, 43–46, 50
 laryngeal cancer, 46
 lung cancer, 44–46, 44t, 45t
 solitary pulmonary nodule, 43, 43f, 44f
- Restrictive cardiomyopathy, 18, 18f, 19t
- Retained placental tissue, 280
- Retinal artery, 197
 occlusion, 200, 201f
- Retinal detachment, 200
- Retinal hemorrhages, 200
- Retinal vein, 197, 198f, 198t
 occlusion, 200, 201f
- Retinal vessel occlusion, 200–201, 200f, 201f
- Retinitis, 227
- Retinoblastoma, 197, 197f, 291t
- Retinoids, teratogenic effects of, 268t
- RET protooncogene, 125
- Revised Trauma Score (RTS), 162, 162t
- Reye syndrome, 179, 195
- Rhabdomyosarcoma, 153
- Rh blood groups, 167
- RHD. *See* Rheumatic heart disease
- Rheumatic fever, acute, 21, 21f
- Rheumatic heart disease (RHD), 21
- Rheumatoid arthritis (RA), 214–215, 214t
- Rheumatologic diseases, 214–218
 ankylosing spondylitis, 214t, 217
 dermatomyositis, 214t, 216
 fibromyalgia, 216–217
 mixed connective tissue disease, 214t, 217–218
 polymyalgia rheumatica, 216
 polymyositis, 214t, 216
 psoriatic arthritis, 214t, 217
 rheumatoid arthritis, 214–215, 214t
 scleroderma, 214t, 217
 Sjögren syndrome, 214t, 218
 systemic lupus erythematosus, 214t, 215–216, 215f
- Rhinitis, viral, 35
- Rhythm method, 243t–245t
- Rib fracture, 205t
- Rickets, 220
- Rights of patient, 312–313
- Right ventricular hypertrophy (RVH), 15
- Rinne test, 202
- Risk of disease, 310–311, 310t
- Ritonavir (RTV), 146, 146t
- Rooting reflex, 283t
- Rosiglitazone, 113t
- Roth spots, 22
- RPGN. *See* Rapidly progressive glomerulonephritis
- RSD. *See* Reflex sympathetic dystrophy
- RTS. *See* Revised Trauma Score
- RTV. *See* Ritonavir
- Rubella, 269t
- Rubeola, 269t
- Rule of 2s, 89
- Ruptured ectopic pregnancy, 172t
- RV. *See* Residual volume
- RVH. *See* Right ventricular hypertrophy
- S**
- SAH. *See* Subarachnoid hemorrhage
- Salicylate poisoning, 158t
- Salivary gland disorders, 62
- Salmeterol, 42t
- Salter-Harris Classification of Physeal Fractures, 222t
- Sarcoidosis, 46
- Saxagliptin, 112
- Scabies, 228
- Scaphoid fracture, 205t
- SCFE. *See* Slipped capital femoral epiphysis
- Schilling test protocol, 132, 133f
- Schistocytes, 129, 130f
- Schizoaffective, 299t
- Schizoid disorder, 300t
- Schizophrenia, 298, 298t, 299t
- Schizophreniform, 299t
- Schizotypal disorder, 300t
- SCID. *See* Severe combined immunodeficiency syndrome
- Scleroderma, 62, 214t, 217
- Scoliosis, 222, 291t
- Scorpion bite, 157, 157t
- Screening
 pediatric, 284t–285t
 during pregnancy, 262t
- Seborrheic dermatitis, 231
- Secondary corticoadrenal insufficiency, 123
- Secondary hypertension, 24, 25t
- Seizures, 186–188
 causes of, 186, 187t
 febrile, 195
 maternal, 266
 status epilepticus, 188
 treatment of, 186, 188t
 types of, 186, 187t, 188t
- Selection bias, 309t
- Selective serotonin/norepinephrine-reuptake inhibitors (SNRIs), 295t
- Selective serotonin-reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs), 295t
- Selegiline, 189t
- Self-breast examinations, 256

- Self-selection bias, 309t
 Sensory neurons, 176, 177f, 177t
 Sensory neuropathy, foot infections with, 114
 Sentinel lymph node biopsy, 259
 Sepsis, 142
 Septic arthritis, 211–212, 212t, 250
 Septic embolization, 22
 Septic joint, 211–212, 212t
 Septic shock, 26t
 Serous cystadenoma, ovarian, 255t
 Severe combined immunodeficiency syndrome (SCID), 287t
 Sex chromosome disorders, 288–289, 289t
 Sexual abuse, 166
 Sexual intercourse, during pregnancy, 261
 Sexually transmitted diseases (STDs), 250–253
 barrier methods of contraception and, 243
 cervicitis, 250
 chancroid, 252
 genital herpes, 252
 granuloma inguinale, 253
 human papillomavirus, 252, 252f
 lymphogranuloma venereum, 252–253
 molluscum contagiosum, 252
 pelvic inflammatory disease, 250–251
 syphilis, 251
 Shared psychotic, 299t
 Shave biopsy, 235
 Shingles, 227, 227t
 Shock, 25, 26t
 Shoulder dislocations, 204
 SIADH. *See* Syndrome of inappropriate ADH secretion
 Sicca syndrome, 218
 Sickle cell disease, 136–137, 136f
 Sideroblastic anemia, 129t, 131t, 134, 134f
 Silicosis, 47t
 SIMV. *See* Synchronized intermittent mandatory ventilation
 Simvastatin, 6t
 Sinusitis, 36–37
 Sitagliptin, 112
 Sjögren syndrome, 214t, 218
 Skin abscess, 224–225
 Skin grafts, 237, 237t
 Skin sloughing, 230, 231f
 SLE. *See* Systemic lupus erythematosus
 Sleep, 193
 Sleep apnea, 51–52, 193
 Sleep disorders, 193
 Slipped capital femoral epiphysis (SCFE), 220
 Small bowel ischemic, 74
 Small cell carcinoma, lung, 44t, 45t
 Smith fracture, 205t
 Smoke inhalation, 155
 Snake bite, 157, 157t
 SNRIs. *See* Selective serotonin/norepinephrine-reuptake inhibitors
 Social phobia, 297
 Sodium channel blockers, 14, 14t
 Sodium urate crystals, 210
 Solitary pulmonary nodule, 43, 43f, 44f
 Somatization disorder, 303
 Somatoform disorders, 303–304
 Sotalol, 14t
 Speech abnormalities, 292
 Spermicide, 243t–245t
 Spherocytes, 129, 130f
 Spider bite, 157, 157t
 Spina bifida occulta, 195
 Spinal artery syndrome, 178t
 Spinal cord
 lesions of, 178, 178t
 trauma of, 163
 Spinal stenosis, 207
 Spine disorders, 206–208
 back pain, 206, 206f
 brachial plexus, 208, 208f, 209t
 cauda equina syndrome, 208
 degenerative disc disease, 206–207, 207f, 207t
 spinal stenosis, 207
 Spinothalamic tract, 177f, 177t
 Spirocholactone, 92t
 for CHF, 15
 Splinter hemorrhages, 22
 Split-thickness graft, 237t
 Spontaneous abortion, 270–271, 270t
 Spontaneous bacterial peritonitis, 86
 Spousal abuse, 166
 Squamous cell carcinoma
 bladder, 106
 cervical, 254
 esophageal, 64–66, 65f
 lung, 44t, 45t
 skin, 234, 235f
 Ss, 3, 53
 SSRIs. *See* Selective serotonin-reuptake inhibitors
 St. John's wort, 295t
 Stab wounds, 161
 Stanford classification, 26
 Staphylococcal infections, 142
 Statin, for myocardial infarction, 8t, 9
 Statistical significance, 312
 Statistics. *See* Biostatistics
 Status asthmaticus, 41
 Status epilepticus, 188
 STDs. *See* Sexually transmitted diseases
 ST-elevation MI (STEMI), 9
 Sterilization, 243t–245t
 Stevens-Johnson syndrome, 230
 Stimulants, on pregnancy, 267t
 Stings, venomous, 157, 157f
 Stomach. *See* Gastric entries
 Strabismus, 198t
 Streptococcal infections, 35, 37
 in pregnancy, 269t
 Stress incontinence, 106
 String sign, 88
 Stroke, 182–183, 182f, 183t
 acute, 159, 161f
 ischemic
 embolic, 182
 thrombotic, 182
 Stroke volume (SV), 2
 Stromal cell tumor, ovarian, 255t
 Subarachnoid hemorrhage (SAH), 95, 184, 184f
 Subdural hematoma, 185, 185f
 Subjects, for research study, 308
 Substance abuse, 301, 301t–302t
 schizophrenia and, 299
 Suicidal ideation, 293–294
 Sulfonamides, teratogenic effects of, 268t
 Sulfonyleurea poisoning, 158t
 Sulfonyleureas, 112, 113t
 Sunburst pattern, 218, 219f
 Sundowning, 304
 Sunscreen, 234
 Superior vena cava syndrome, 45
 Surgical concerns, 169–175
 postoperative fever, 171, 171f, 171t
 preoperative risk assessment, 169–170
 wounds and healing, 171–172
 Surgical emergencies, 172–173
 SV. *See* Stroke volume
 Swan-Ganz catheter, 49
 in ICU, 167
 Swan neck deformities, 214
 Symmetric polyarthropathy, 214
 Synchronized intermittent mandatory ventilation (SIMV), 53t
 Syncope, 193–194
 Syndrome of inappropriate ADH secretion (SIADH), 103–104
 Synovial hypertrophy, 214
 Syphilis, 251
 in pregnancy, 269t
 tertiary, 178t, 251
 Syringomyelia, 178t, 190
 Systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), 214t, 215–216, 215f
 Systole, 1
 Systolic dysfunction, 15
- T**
- Tabes dorsalis, 178t, 251
 Tacrolimus, 175t
 Takayasu arteritis, 28
 Tangentiality, 293
 Tanner stages, 239, 240t, 286t
 Tardive dyskinesia, 298
 Tay-Sachs disease, 195
 TB. *See* Tuberculosis
 3TC. *See* Lamivudine
 TCAs. *See* Tricyclic antidepressants
 T-cell Disorders, 287t
 TEE. *See* Transesophageal echocardiogram
 Temporal arteritis, 28, 216
 TEN. *See* Toxic epidermal necrolysis
 Tension headache, 181
 Tension pneumothorax, 50, 50f, 50t
 Teratogens, 260
 Terazosin, 23t
 Tertiary corticoadrenal insufficiency, 123
 Tertiary syphilis, 178t, 251
 Testicular cancer, 108, 245
 Testicular torsion, 108
 Tetracycline, teratogenic effects of, 268t
 Tetralogy of Fallot, 31f, 32, 291t
 Thalassemia, 131t, 134–136, 135f, 135t
 Thalidomide, 175t
 teratogenic effects of, 268t
 Thelarche, 240
 Theophylline, 42t
 Thermal airway injury, 159
 Thermal burns, 159
 Thiazides, 92t, 105
 for hypertension, 23t, 24t
 Thiazolidinediones, 112, 113t
 Thought, 292
 blocked, 292
 impoverished, 292
 persistent, 293
 Thrombocytopenia, 139, 141t
 Thromboembolic pulmonary conditions, 48–49
 Thrombolytics, for myocardial infarction, 8t, 9
 Thrombophlebitis, 27
 Thrombotic ischemic stroke, 182
 Thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura-hemolytic uremic syndrome (TTP-HUS), 141t
 Thymoma, 191
 Thyroid carcinoma, 116, 116t
 Thyroid disorders, 115–117
 carcinoma, 116, 116t
 Hashimoto thyroiditis, 116
 hyperthyroidism, 115, 116t
 thyroid storm, 115–116
 Thyroid function, 115, 116f
 Thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH), 119–121, 120f, 121t
 Thyroid storm, 115–116
 TIA. *See* Transient ischemic attack
 Tiagabine, 188t
 Tibial fracture, 205t
 Tics, 192t
 Tic disorders, 297
 Tidal volume (TV), 33f, 34t
 Timolol, 23t
 Tinea, 229t
 Tinea versicolor, 229f, 229t
 Tinel sign, 203
 Tissue flaps, 237, 237t
 TLC. *See* Total lung capacity
 Tobacco, on pregnancy, 267t
 Tocainide, 14t
 Tonic neck reflex, 283t
 Tonsillar infections, 36

Topiramate, 188t
 TORCH infections, 268
 Torsades de pointes, 13
 Torsemide, 92t
 Total lung capacity (TLC), 33f, 34t
 Tourette syndrome, 307
 Toxic epidermal necrolysis (TEN), 230–231, 231f
 Toxicology, 157–159, 158t
 Toxic shock syndrome, 249–250
 Toxoplasmosis, 269t
 tPA, for myocardial infarction, 8t, 9
 Tracheoesophageal fistula, 87–88, 88f
 Transdermal contraceptive patch, 243t–245t
 Transesophageal echocardiogram (TEE), for Afib, 12
 Transfusions, 167–168, 168t
 Transfusion reactions, 167–168
 Transient ischemic attack (TIA), 181–182
 Transitional cell carcinoma, bladder, 106
 Transplantation, 173–175
 common types of, 173, 174t
 graft vs. host disease, 173–175
 immunosuppressive drugs for, 173, 175t
 indications and selection for, 173
 infection risk in, 173
 rejection of, 173, 174t
 Transposition of great vessels, 31, 31f
 Transudates, 20
 Trastuzumab, 259
 Traumatology, 161–165
 abdominal, 164
 assessment of, 161–162, 162t
 chest, 164
 extremity, 165
 genitourinary and pelvic, 165
 head trauma, 162–163
 mechanisms of injury in, 161
 neck, 163–164, 163f
 during pregnancy, 165
 spinal cord, 163
 Trazodone, 295t
 Triamterene, 92t
 Tricuspid regurgitation, 16f
 Tricyclic antidepressants (TCAs), 295t
 poisoning with, 158t
 Trigeminal neuralgia, 181
 Trisomies, 289–290, 289t
 Trisomy 13, 263t, 289t
 Trisomy 18, 261, 262t, 263t, 289t
 Trisomy 21, 261, 262t, 263t, 289, 289t
 Trizivir, 146t
 Tropical sprue, 68–70, 69f
 Troponin-I, 7
 Ts, 5, 31
 TSH. *See* Thyroid-stimulating hormone
 TTP-HUS. *See* Thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura-hemolytic uremic syndrome

U

Ulcers, 67
 Ulcerative colitis, 72, 72t
 UMN disease, 189
 Uncal herniation, 179
 Undescended testes, 109

Undifferentiated disorder, 298t
 Unhappy triad, 204
 Unresponsive patient, 159f
 Unstable angina, 6–7
 Upper respiratory infections (URI), 35–37, 36f
 common cold, 35
 pharyngitis, 35
 sinusitis, 36–37
 tonsillar infections, 36
 viral influenza, 36
 Urea, 92t
 Uretero-vesical junction, 93
 Urethral displacement, 109
 Urethral rupture, 165
 Urethritis, 105, 107
 Urges, 293
 URI. *See* Upper respiratory infections
 Urinary incontinence, 106
 Urinary tract infection (UTI), 105–106
 maternal, 267
 Urine sample, clean catch, 105
 Urokinase, for myocardial infarction, 8t, 9
 Uterine atony, 280
 Uterine bleeding, abnormal, 248
 Uterine fibroids, 253
 Uterine leiomyoma, 253
 UTI. *See* Urinary tract infection
 Uveitis, 199

V

Vaccinations, 285t. *See also* specific vaccines
 Vaginitis, 249, 249t, 250f
 Valproate, 188t
 teratogenic effects of, 268t
 Valsalva maneuver, 16, 206
 Valsalva massage, 11
 Valsartan, 23t
 Valvular diseases, 16f, 17t
 Varicella-zoster infection, 227, 227t, 228f
 in pregnancy, 269t
 Varicosities, 27
 Vascular dementia, 306
 Vascular diseases
 abdominal aortic aneurysm, 26
 allergic granulomatosis with angiitis, 28
 aortic dissection, 26–27
 arteriovenous malformations, 27
 deep vein thrombosis, 27
 Henoch-Schönlein purpura, 28
 Kawasaki disease, 28–29
 peripheral vascular disease, 27
 polyarteritis nodosa, 28
 Takayasu arteritis, 28
 temporal arteritis, 28
 varicosities, 27
 vascular and thromboembolic pulmonary conditions, 48–49
 vasculitis, 28
 Vascular pulmonary conditions, 48–49
 Vasculitis, 28
 Vasoactive medications, 168, 169t
 Vasodilators, 168, 169t
 for hypertension, 23t
 Vasopressin, 169t
 Vasopressors, 168, 169t
 Vasospasm, 7
 Vegetative state, persistent, 194
 Velocardiofacial syndrome, 290t
 Venomous bites and stings, 157, 157f
 Ventilation, mechanical, 52–53, 53t
 Ventricular fibrillation (Vfib), 14
 post-MI, 9
 treatment of, 159, 159f, 160f

Ventricular septal defect (VSD), 30, 31f, 291t
 Ventricular tachycardia (Vtach), 13–14, 13f, 159f
 post-MI, 9
 treatment of, 159, 159f, 160f
 Ventricular wall rupture, post-MI, 9
 Verapamil, 14t, 23t
 Vfib. *See* Ventricular fibrillation
 VIPoma, 81
 Viral gastroenteritis, 57
 Viral influenza, 36
 Viral meningitis, 179, 180t
 Viral rhinitis, 35
 Virchow triad, 27
 Vitamins, absorption of, 69f
 Vitamin B₁₂ deficiency, 178t
 anemia, 129t, 132, 133f
 Vitamin D, 118, 118f
 1,25-(OH)₂ Vitamin D, 118, 118f
 Vitamin K, 139
 deficiency, 140
 Vulvulus, 75
 von Willebrand disease, 139
 VSD. *See* Ventricular septal defect
 Vtach. *See* Ventricular tachycardia

W

Waiter's tip, 209t
 Warfarin
 poisoning with, 158t
 PT monitoring of, 139
 teratogenic effects of, 267, 268t
 vitamin K and, 140
 Warts, 228
 Water moccasin bite, 157, 157t
 Weber test, 202
 Wegener granulomatosis, 47–48, 97t
 Weight, in children, 281
 Weight gain, in pregnancy, 261
 Wernicke aphasia, 186, 186t
 West Nile virus, 179
 Wet gangrene, 225
 Whipple disease, 70
 Whipple triad, 81
 White matter lesions, 190
 Whole blood transfusions, 168t
 Williams syndrome, 290t
 Wilms tumor, 109, 291t
 Wilson disease, 87
 Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome, 287t
 Withdrawal method, 243t–245t
 Wolff-Parkinson-White (WPW) syndrome, 11, 11f
 Wolf-Hirschhorn syndrome, 290t
 “Word salad,” 293
 Wound healing, 171–172
 Wounds, 171–172
 WPW syndrome. *See* Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome
 Wrist drop, 209t
 Ws, 3, 186

X

X-linked agammaglobulinemia, 287t
 XXX, 289t
 XXX, 288, 289t

Z

Zafirlukast, 42t
 Zenker diverticulum, 62, 64f
 Zidovudine (AZT), 143, 146t
 Zileuton, 42t
 Zollinger-Ellison syndrome, 67–68
 endocrine pancreatic cancers with, 81
 Zonisamide, 188t

STEP-UP TO USMLE STEP 2 CK

Brian Jenkins • Jonathan P. Van Kleunen
Michael McInnis • Chris Lewis

THIRD EDITION

Your one-stop shop for high-yield, systems-based review!

Revised and updated for this edition, *Step-Up to USMLE Step 2 CK* is an effective systems-based review for the USMLE Step 2 CK exam. Now in its third edition, *Step-Up to USMLE Step 2 CK* packs illustrations, “Quick Hits,” “Next Steps,” and mnemonics in a single ingenious tool. Each element is tailored for immediate content absorption, and an all-new full-color interior provides an even faster, more efficient review.

NEW Features for this blockbuster edition:

- ✔ **Full-color, updated interior design** brings the content to you in a memorable style.
- ✔ **Full-color, updated figures and graphs** illustrate concepts when a picture says it best.

CLASSIC Features students swear by:

- ✔ **Coverage of high-yield topics** ensures that you are test-ready!
- ✔ **Quick Hits** and mnemonics in the margins highlight highly testable topics—just see how the sparks fly at test time!
- ✔ **Next Step** margin notes guide you through the patient workup—easing the transition to clinical medicine!

BONUS Material and study resources:

- ✔ **eBook** with fully searchable text available via [thePoint](#).
- ✔ **Image bank** with all the images and tables from the book.

LWW.com

ISBN-13: 978-1-4511-8959-9
ISBN-10: 1-4511-8959-1

